



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

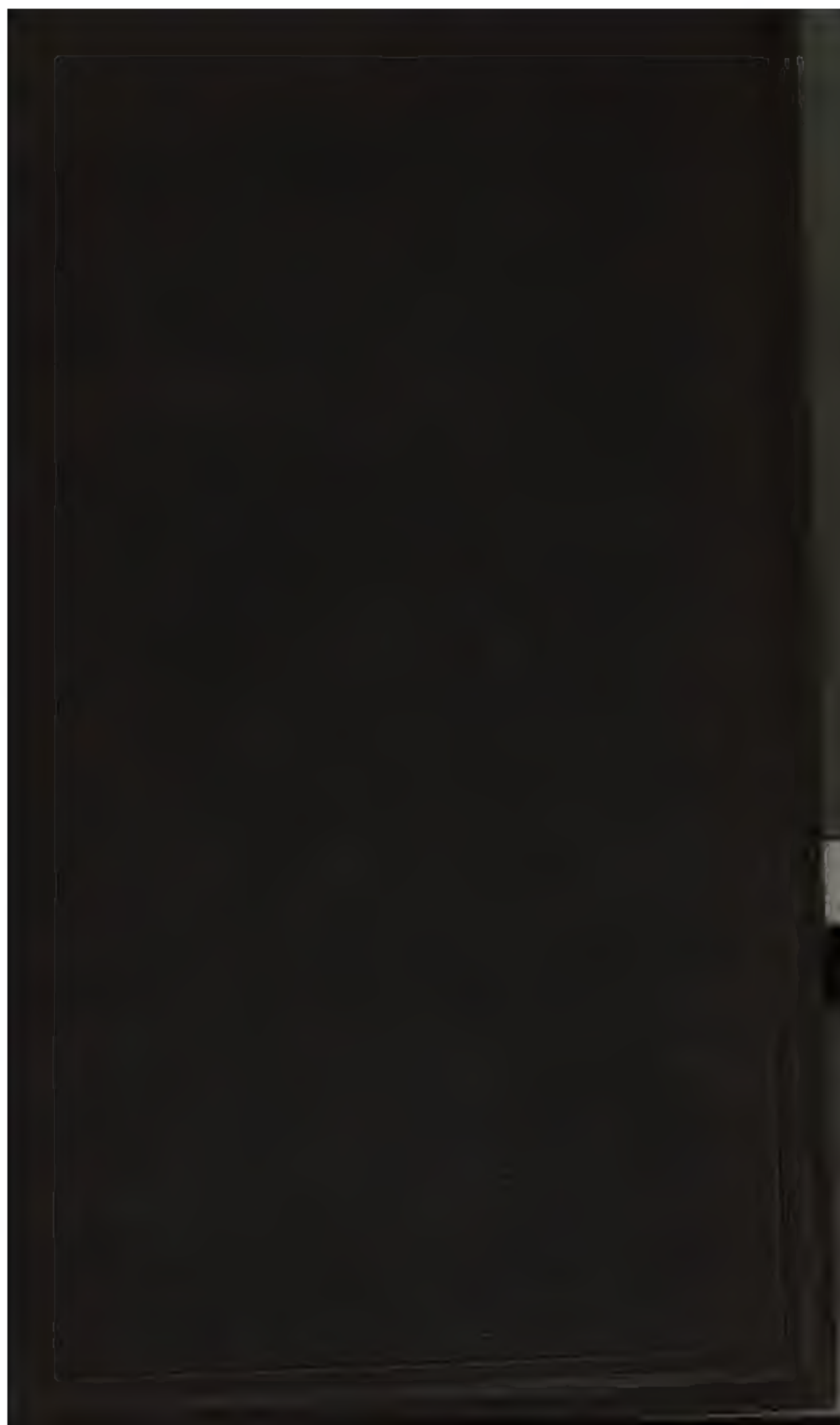
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



ENGLISH CLASSICS

ANNOTATED by the Rev. JOHN HUNTER, M.A.

SHAKESPEARE'S SELECT PLAYS,

With Explanatory and Illustrative Notes, Critical Remarks,
and Other Aids to a thorough understanding
of each Drama.

*The following PLAYS may now be had,
Price ONE SHILLING each:—*

KING JOHN.
RICHARD II.
RICHARD III.
HENRY IV. PART I.
HENRY IV. PART II.
HENRY V.
HENRY VI. PART I.
HENRY VI. PART II.
HENRY VIII.
JULIUS CÆSAR.
CORIOLANUS.
ANTONY and CLEOPATRA.
TROILUS and CRESSIDA.
HAMLET.
MACBETH.
KING LEAR.

OTHELLO.
AS YOU LIKE IT.
TWELFTH-NIGHT.
MIDSUMMER NIGHT'S DREAM.
The COMEDY of ERRORS.
MEASURE for MEASURE.
MUCH ADO about NOTHING.
TAMING of the SHREW.
MERRY WIVES of WINDSOR.
TWO GENTLEMEN of VERONA.
MERCHANT of VENICE.
ROMEO and JULIET.
WINTER'S TALE.
CYMBELINE.
The TEMPEST.

'Each of these plays is a separate publication, and all are equally well adapted for scholastic or private study, and for those qualifying for the University Examinations. They are of a handy size, and are well and clearly printed. The introductory remarks give in a condensed form all the ascertained information as to the period when the play was produced, the time the action covers in the historical dramas, the conduct of the plot in the comedies and tragedies, and the historical or other facts to which allusion or reference is made by the characters. The notes are clear and copious, and never obvious. The series will be of great service to all the classes for whom it is intended; and even to those readers and students who may only desire to peruse the works of our great dramatist with the advantage of a clear and steady light thrown upon the many corrupt, doubtful, and obscure passages which, having originated in the negligence and incapacity of the old printers, still disfigure the text of SHAKESPEARE'S plays.'

BIRMINGHAM GAZETTE.

BOOKS I. to IV. of MILTON'S PARADISE LOST; with a
Prose Translation or Paraphrase, the Parsing of the more difficult Words, Specimens of
Analysis, and numerous Notes. **BOOKS I. and II.** price 1s. 6d. each; **BOOK III.** price 1s.—
BOOK IV. nearly ready.

EXAMINATION QUESTIONS on the FIRST TWO BOOKS
of MILTON'S PARADISE LOST, and on SHAKESPEARE'S MERCHANT OF
VENICE. 12mo. 1s.

MILTON'S SAMSON AGONISTES and LYCIDAS; with
Notes explaining peculiarities of Grammar, Diction, &c. 12mo. price 1s. 6d.

MILTON'S COMUS, L'ALLEGRO, and IL PENNEROSO;
with numerous Notes, Critical, Illustrative, and Explanatory. 12mo. 1s. 6d.

SPENSER'S FAERIE QUEENE; the First Six Cantos of Book I.
Unabridged and in the Old Spelling. With Explanatory and Illustrative Notes. 12mo. 2s.

JOHNSON'S RASSELAS; with Explanatory and Grammatical
Annotations, Specimens of Interrogative Lessons, Answers to Examination Questions &c.
12mo. 2s. 6d.

JOHNSON'S ADVANCEMENT of LEARNING; Annotated Sum-
mary of the Works of JOHNSON, I. and II. with numerous extracts from the Work, and Specimens of

Paternoster Row.



600084427V

ETON FRENCH GRAMMAR

AND

EXERCISE BOOK.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING AND VIVÂ-VOCE
PRACTICE, PRECEDED BY GRAMMAR AND SYNTAX RULES
AND FULL TABLES OF THE VERBS.

BEING

A NEW AND COMPLETE EDITION

INCLUDING AN

APPENDIX ON GENDERS AND ACCENTS AND
AN INDEX TO THE SYNTAX.

BY F. TARVER, M.A.

Merton College, Oxford : Second French Master at Eton College.



LONDON:
LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.
1873.

303 . 9 . 132 .

**LONDON : PRINTED BY
SPOTTISWOODE AND CO., NEW-STREET SQUARE
AND PARLIAMENT STREET**

PREFACE.

IN the Preface to the First Part, which was originally published separately, it was stated that the Author's first idea had been 'to bring out a new and improved edition of Tarver's "French Exercises," a book which had been long in use at Eton College,' but that this idea had been 'entirely abandoned, and the whole work rewritten from beginning to end;' that 'the plan of arrangement of verbs in classes drawn up in paradigms, capable of being taken in at a glance (pages 38-41 inclusive) had alone been retained.'

Attention was also called to the fact, that although sixteen models of verbs were given, numbered 1 to 8 and lettered *a* to *h*, it was not intended to affirm that there are more than *four* conjugations of French verbs: this plan was adopted solely with a view to avoid the difficulty and confusion resulting from referring pupils for *all* their verbs to *four* heads only.

The First Part, from pages 1 to 238 inclusive, contains the Accidence rules and exercises, with complete

Vocabulary for those exercises, and an Appendix on genders and accents (pages 197–238). This Part has now been in use at Eton (and in other schools) for upwards of five years, and, as far as Eton is concerned, has been found to work well. The Second Part (pages 239–486) contains Syntax rules and exercises drawn up on the same plan and, as far as was considered expedient, in the same order of subjects as the Accidence rules and exercises, with the addition of a complete Index to Part II. (pages 487–493).

The Author's intention in compiling this Second Part has been to give to *English* students a grammar as complete as the excellent works of Poitevin and Noël and Chapsal, which, however, are better fitted for more advanced students and for *much smaller classes* than those of a public school like Eton. It is hoped that *all* the matter contained in the above-mentioned French Grammars will be found in this edition, with the addition of a great deal of matter not contained in them, and which is of essential importance to English students.

The Author would particularly call attention to the rules on the Past Participle (pages 378–387), and to the chapter on *Numerals* (pages 291–298). A few etymological explanations have been given (notes to pages 299, 310, 311, 318, 325, 345), and some idiomatic uses

of such words as *en* and *y* (pages 311, 312), *que* (pages 331–334); but space would not allow of those branches being more fully treated, and they can be better studied in the special works written on such subjects.

The Author cannot conclude without acknowledging how much he is indebted to the excellent works of MM. Littré and Brachet—the newly completed Dictionary of the former, and the ‘Dictionnaire étymologique’ and ‘Grammaire historique’ of the latter; and especially to a not much known but invaluable work, the ‘Grammaire des Grammaires’ of Ch. P. Girault-Duvivier (Paris, 1814), a work often cited in M. Littré’s Dictionary.

ETON : *September* 1873.

CONTENTS.



	PAGE
Declension of the <i>Definite Article</i>	1
Declension of the <i>Indefinite Article</i>	3
Declension of <i>Proper Names</i> of Persons and Towns.	3
<i>Plural of Nouns Substantive</i>	4
The <i>Partitive Article</i>	6
Formation of the <i>Feminine Gender of Adjectives</i>	8
<i>Plural of Adjectives</i>	10
<i>Position of Adjectives</i> in a sentence	11
<i>Adjectives</i> having a <i>double masculine</i> form	11
<i>Degrees of Comparison</i> of Adjectives	11
<i>Numerals</i>	13
<i>Cardinals</i>	13
<i>Ordinals</i>	14
<i>Pronominal Adjectives, mon, ton, son, &c.</i>	15
The <i>Demonstrative Adjective ce</i>	16
The <i>Relative, Interrogative, or Admirative Adjective quel</i>	16
<i>Personal Pronouns Conjunctive</i>	16
Position of <i>Personal Pronouns Conjunctive</i> in a sentence, where <i>one</i> <i>only</i> is governed by the Verb	19
The Pronoun <i>ce</i> , used in the place of <i>il, elle, ils, elles</i>	20
Table to show the order in which <i>Personal Pronouns Conjunctive</i> are placed when <i>more than one</i> are governed by the same Verb	21
Examples to illustrate the use of foregoing Table	21
<i>Personal Pronouns Disjunctive</i>	24
<i>Possessive Pronouns le mien, le tien, &c.</i>	26
<i>Relative Pronouns qui, lequel</i>	27
<i>Interrogatives qui, que, quoi, où</i>	28
<i>Demonstrative Pronoun celui</i>	29
<i>Indefinite Pronouns on, quiconque, quelqu'un, chacun,</i> <i>autrui, personne, rien, l'un l'autre, nul, même, qui</i> <i>que, quoi que, quel que</i>	30

	PAGE
THE VERB:—	
The Auxiliary Verb Avoir conjugated affirmatively	33
Negatively	35
Interrogatively	35
The Auxiliary Verb Être conjugated	36
Explanation of the <i>order</i> in which the Regular Verbs are conjugated	37
Table of Conjugation of the Verbs <i>Donner, Finir, Recevoir, Vendre, Sentir, Conduire, Craindre, Connaître</i>	38
Table of Conjugation of the Verbs <i>Tenir, Ouvrir, Dire, Faire, Prendre, Mettre, Écrire, Courir</i>	40
Note on Peculiarities of Conjugation in the Verbs <i>Dire</i> and <i>Faire</i>	40
Note, containing List of all Verbs conjugated after the Model of the eight Verbs on pages 40–41	41
Explanation of the term <i>Reflective Verb</i>	42
Reflective Verb of First Conjugation, <i>Se reposer</i> , conjugated through all its tenses, affirmatively, negatively, and interrogatively	42
Reflective Verb of Second Conjugation, <i>Se divertir</i>	46
Reflective Verb of the Third Conjugation, <i>S'apercevoir</i>	47
Reflective Verb of the Fourth Conjugation, <i>Se plaindre</i>	48
Rule by which to determine whether a Verb is <i>regular</i> or otherwise	50
Rule for forming <i>Derived Tenses</i> from <i>Primitive Tenses</i>	50
Table to exemplify foregoing rule	50
List of Deviations from the established rule of Tense Formation which occur in some of the Verbs given on pages 39–42	51
Peculiarities in the <i>Orthography</i> of Verbs of the First Conjugation, ending in <i>ger, cer, ler, ner, ter, ver, yer</i>	52
Peculiarities in the <i>Orthography</i> of the Verbs <i>Bénir, Fleurir, Haïr, Peindre, Absoudre, &c.</i>	53
Tables of the principal <i>Irregular</i> and <i>Defective Verbs</i> , arranged in alphabetical order	54
The Verbs <i>S'en aller</i> and <i>S'asseoir</i> conjugated	62
Impersonal Verbs	64
Adverbs	68
Prepositions	73
Conjunctions	74
Interjections	75

EXERCISES.

	PAGE
On the Articles, Nouns Substantive, Adjectives, Numerals, Pronouns, personal, possessive, relative, and indefinite	77—98
On the Verbs <i>Avoir</i> and <i>Être</i>	98—106
<i>Must</i> , how expressed in French	104
<i>Time</i> (by the clock), manner of expressing in French	105
On the Verbs <i>Donner, Finir, Recevoir, Vendre, Sentir, Conduire, Craindre, Connaître</i>	107—135
On the Verbs <i>Tenir, Ouvrir, Dire, Faire, Prendre, Mettre, Écrire, Courir</i>	135—156
On all the Moods and Tenses of the eight Verbs given on pages 38—39	156—158
On all the Moods and Tenses of the eight Verbs given on pages 40—41	158—159
On Verbs employed in the Passive form	160—161
On Reflective Verbs of the four Conjugations	162—172
On Peculiarities of Orthography occurring in certain Verbs	172—174
On the Principal Irregular and Defective Verbs	174—178
On Impersonal Verbs	178—180

VOCABULARY, giving the French of the principal words employed in the Exercises	181—196
--	---------

APPENDIX	197—238
--------------------	---------

<i>Article, Definite</i>	239—244
„ <i>Indefinite</i>	245—248
„ <i>Partitive</i>	248—249
<i>Nouns Substantive</i>	250—259
Double Nouns	250—251
Gender of <i>Gens</i>	251—252
Epicene	252
Plurals of Common Nouns	253—257
Plurals of Proper Names	257—258
Collectives, General and Partial	258—259

	PAGE
Adjective	260-290
Agreement of	260-265
Used adverbially	266
Compound	266-267
<i>possessive</i>	267-270
Comparison of	270-271
Position in Sentence	272-276
Governing <i>à</i> or <i>de</i>	276-277
Aucun, autre, certain, chaque, maint, même, nul, plusieurs, quel, quelque, quelconque, tel, tout	278-290
Numerals, Cardinal	291-295
<i>Ordinal</i>	295-296
<i>Collective, Fractional, &c.</i>	296-297
Pronouns	299-346
Personal Pronouns	299
Place of	299-303
Repetition of	303
Peculiarities of	305-307
Je, soi	307-310
En	310-311
Y	311-312
Le, la, les	313-314
Idiomatic use of	314-315
Possessive Pronouns	316-318
Demonstrative Pronouns	318-325
Ce	318-323
Celui, &c.	323-325
Relative Pronouns	325-330
Interrogative Pronouns	330-331
Peculiarities of que	331-334
" " quel	334-336
Indefinite Pronouns: autrui, chacun, l'un l'autre, on, personne, quiconque, quelqu'un, qui or quel que ce soit, rien	337-346
VERB	347-394
Model of Transitive Verb, conjugated with <i>Avoir</i>	348-349
Model of Intransitive Verb, conjugated with <i>Être</i>	350-351
<i>Present Tense</i>	352-353
<i>Imperfect Tense</i>	353-354
<i>Preterite Tense</i>	354-355
<i>Compound Tenses</i>	355-356
<i>Future</i>	356-357

CONTENTS.

xi

	PAGE
<i>Conditional.</i>	358-360
<i>Subjunctive Mood</i>	360-368
Governed by Verbs	360-365
" " Conjunctions, &c.	365-367
" " Relative Pronouns following Negative or Superlative	367-368
<i>Rule of Attraction</i> (i.e. dependence of Moods and Tenses on one another)	369-370
<i>Infinitive Mood</i>	371-373
Governed by <i>à</i> or <i>de</i>	371-374
Used for English Present Participle	374-375
French use Active Infinitive when English use Passive	375
<i>Present Participle</i>	376
Invariable	376-377
Distinguished from Verbal Adjective	378
<i>Past Participle</i>	378
Rules of agreement of	378-387
Agreement with <i>Subject</i>	379
" " <i>Object</i> , with <i>Avoir</i>	379-380
" " <i>Object</i> , with <i>Être</i>	380-382
Past Participles of Impersonal Verbs, <i>invariable</i>	382
Past Participle with <i>le peu</i>	383
" " <i>en</i>	384
Followed by Infinitive	384-385
Ellipse of Infinitive	385
Other Rules regarding Past Participles	386-387
<i>Concord of Verb</i>	387-388
" " with <i>l'un et l'autre</i> , &c.	389
" " with <i>Collectives</i>	389-390
" " with Relative Pronouns	391
<i>Auxiliaries.</i> When to use <i>Avoir</i> , when <i>Être</i>	391-394
<i>Adverbs and Adverbial Expressions</i> (see Index for details)	395-412
<i>Prepositions</i> (see Index for details)	413-428
<i>Conjunctions</i> (see Index for details).	429-438
<i>Negatives</i>	439-448
<hr/>	
EXERCISES ON SYNTAX RULES	449-475
Miscellaneous Versions, with reference to Syntax Rules	476-486
INDEX	487-492

ETON FRENCH GRAMMAR

AND

EXERCISE BOOK

I. THE ARTICLE.

THE ARTICLE is of two kinds in French, the Definite and the Indefinite.

The Definite Article is thus declined :

SINGULAR.

Masculine.

With nouns beginning with a consonant or aspirated *h* :

Nom. & Acc. le. *Gen. & Abl.* du.* *Dat.* au.*

With nouns beginning with a vowel or unaspirated *h* :

Nom. & Acc. l'. *Gen. & Abl.* de l'. *Dat.* à l'.

Feminine.

With nouns beginning with a consonant or aspirated *h* :

Nom. & Acc. la. *Gen. & Abl.* de la. *Dat.* à la.

With nouns beginning with a vowel or unaspirated *h* :

Nom. & Acc. l'. *Gen. & Abl.* de l'. *Dat.* à l'.

PLURAL.

For all genders and all descriptions of nouns whatsoever :

Nom. & Acc. les. *Gen. & Abl.* des.* *Dat.* aux.*

Examples.

SINGULAR.

Masculine.

<i>Nom. & Acc.</i>	le livre	the book
<i>Gen. & Abl.</i>	du livre	of or from the book
<i>Dat.</i>	au livre	to the book.

* Du is a contraction of de le, au of à le, des of de les, aux of à les.

Noun masculine beginning with an aspirated *h* :

<i>Nom. & Acc.</i>	le héros	the hero
<i>Gen. & Abl.</i>	du héros	of or from the hero
<i>Dat.</i>	au héros	to the hero.

Noun masculine beginning with a vowel :

<i>Nom. & Acc.</i>	l'arbre	the tree
<i>Gen. & Abl.</i>	de l'arbre	of or from the tree
<i>Dat.</i>	à l'arbre	to the tree.

Noun masculine beginning with an unaspirated *h* :

<i>Nom. & Acc.</i>	l'homme	the man
<i>Gen. & Abl.</i>	de l'homme	of or from the man
<i>Dat.</i>	à l'homme	to the man.

Feminine.

<i>Nom. & Acc.</i>	la maison	the house
<i>Gen. & Abl.</i>	de la maison	of or from the house
<i>Dat.</i>	à la maison	to the house.

Noun feminine beginning with an aspirated *h* :

<i>Nom. & Acc.</i>	la harpe	the harp
<i>Gen. & Abl.</i>	de la harpe	of or from the harp
<i>Dat.</i>	à la harpe	to the harp.

Noun feminine beginning with a vowel :

<i>Nom. & Acc.</i>	l'orange	the orange
<i>Gen. & Abl.</i>	de l'orange	of or from the orange
<i>Dat.</i>	à l'orange	to the orange.

Noun feminine beginning with an unaspirated *h* :

<i>Nom. & Acc.</i>	l'huile	the oil
<i>Gen. & Abl.</i>	de l'huile	of or from the oil
<i>Dat.</i>	à l'huile	to the oil.

PLURAL.

Same for both genders and for all descriptions of nouns, whether beginning with a vowel or consonant, an aspirated or unaspirated *h* ; viz.:

<i>Nom. & Acc.</i>	livres	books
les	héros	heroes
	arbres	trees
	hommes	men
	maisons	houses
	harpes	harps
	oranges	oranges
	huiles	oils.

<i>Gen. & Abl.</i> des	livres	of or from the	books
	héros		heroes
	arbres		trees
	hommes		men
	maisons		houses
	harpes		harps
	oranges		oranges
<i>Dat.</i> aux	huiles	to the	oils.
	livres		books
	héros		heroes
	arbres		trees
	hommes		men
	maisons		houses
	harpes		harps
	oranges		oranges
	huiles		oils.

II. THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE is of two genders, masculine and feminine.

The indefinite article masculine is **un**, and is thus declined :

<i>Nom. & Acc.</i>	un homme	a man
<i>Gen. & Abl.</i>	d'un homme	of or from a man
<i>Dat.</i>	à un homme	to a man.

The indefinite article feminine is **une**, and is thus declined :

<i>Nom. & Acc.</i>	une femme	a woman
<i>Gen. & Abl.</i>	d'une femme	of or from a woman
<i>Dat.</i>	à une femme	to a woman.

As in English, the indefinite article can have no *regular* plural; but it will be explained farther on in the book how the French decline nouns *indefinitely* in the plural number. (See Rule V.)

III. PROPER NAMES of persons and towns are declined, as in English, with the help of the prepositions **of** and **to**, and undergo no change in their different cases.

Examples.

<i>Nom. & Acc.</i>	Cicéron	<i>Cicero</i>
<i>Gen. & Abl.</i>	<i>de</i> Cicéron	<i>of or from Cicero</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>à</i> Cicéron	<i>to Cicero.</i>
<i>Nom. & Acc.</i>	Alexandre	<i>Alexander</i>
<i>Gen. & Abl.</i>	<i>d'</i> Alexandre	<i>of or from Alexander</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>à</i> Alexandre	<i>to Alexander.</i>

<i>Nom. & Acc.</i>	Londres	<i>London</i>
<i>Gen. & Abl.</i>	de Londres	<i>of or from London</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	à Londres	<i>to London.</i>

IV. THE SUBSTANTIVE.

FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

THE plural of nouns substantive is generally formed, as in English, by adding *s* to the singular ; as :

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
un homme	<i>a man</i>	des* hommes	<i>men</i>
une table	<i>a table</i>	des* tables	<i>tables.</i>

EXCEPTIONS.

S, X, Z.

Substantives whose singular form ends in *s*, *x*, or *z*, retain the same form in the plural ; as :

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
un enelos	<i>an enclosure</i>	des enclos	<i>enclosures</i>
un pas	<i>a step</i>	des pas	<i>steps</i>
une souris	<i>a mouse</i>	des souris	<i>mice</i>
une voix	<i>a voice</i>	des voix	<i>voices</i>
une noix	<i>a nut</i>	des noix	<i>nuts</i>
un nez	<i>a nose</i>	des nez	<i>noses.</i>

AU, EU.

Substantives ending in *au* or *eu* take an *x* in the plural ; as :

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>	
un étau	<i>a vice</i>	des étaux	<i>vices</i>
un tableau	<i>a picture</i>	des tableaux	<i>pictures</i>
un bateau	<i>a boat</i>	des bateaux	<i>boats</i>
un marteau	<i>a hammer</i>	des marteaux	<i>hammers</i>
un chapeau	<i>a hat</i>	des chapeaux	<i>hats</i>
un cheveu	<i>a hair</i>	des cheveux	<i>hairs</i>
un jeu	<i>a game</i>	des jeux	<i>games</i>

OU.

Of nouns ending in *ou*, the greater part take an *s* ; as :

* The meaning of *des* will be explained farther on. See page 6.

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
un clou	<i>a nail</i>	des clous	<i>nails</i>
un trou	<i>a hole</i>	des trous	<i>holes.</i>

The following take an *x* :

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
un bijou	<i>a jewel</i>	des bijoux	<i>jewels</i>
un caillou	<i>a flint</i>	des cailloux	<i>flints</i>
un chou	<i>a cabbage</i>	des choux	<i>cabbages</i>
un genou	<i>a knee</i>	des genoux	<i>knees</i>
un joujou	<i>a plaything</i>	des joujoux	<i>playthings</i>
un hibou	<i>an owl</i>	des hiboux	<i>owls.</i>

AL.

Of nouns ending in *al*, the greater part form their plural in *aux* ; as :

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
un cheval	<i>a horse</i>	des chevaux	<i>horses</i>
un animal	<i>an animal</i>	des animaux	<i>animals</i>
un bocal	<i>a jar</i>	des bocaux	<i>jars</i>
un mal	<i>an evil</i>	des maux	<i>evils.</i>

The following, however, form their plurals in the ordinary way, by adding an *s* ; as :

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
un bal	<i>a ball</i>	des bals	<i>balls</i>
un cal	<i>a callosity</i>	des cals	<i>callosities</i>
un cantal	<i>a sort of cheese</i>	des cantals	<i>cheeses</i>
un carnaval	<i>a carnival</i>	des carnavals	<i>carnivals</i>
un chacal	<i>a jackal</i>	des chacals	<i>jackals</i>
un narval	<i>a swordfish</i>	des narvals	<i>swordfishes</i>
un sandal	<i>a sandal</i>	des sandals	<i>sandals.</i>

AIL.

Of nouns ending in *ail*, some take an *s* ; as :

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
un attirail	<i>an apparatus</i>	des attirails	<i>apparatus</i>
un détail	<i>a detail</i>	des détails	<i>details</i>
un éventail	<i>a fan</i>	des éventails	<i>fans</i>
un épouvantail	<i>a scarecrow</i>	des épouvantails	<i>scarecrows</i>
un gouvernail	<i>a rudder</i>	des gouvernails	<i>rudders</i>
un mail	<i>a mallet</i>	des mails	<i>mallets</i>
un portail	<i>a portal</i>	des portails	<i>portals</i>
un sérail	<i>a seraglio</i>	des sérails	<i>seraglios.</i>

The following change *ail* into *aux* :

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
un bail	<i>a lease</i>	des baux	<i>leases</i>
du bétail	<i>cattle</i>	des bestiaux	<i>cattle</i>

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
un corail	<i>a coral</i>	des coraux	<i>corals</i>
un émail	<i>an enamel</i>	des émaux	<i>enamels</i>
un soupirail	<i>a cellar-window</i>	des soupiraux	<i>cellar-windows</i>
un travail	<i>a labour</i>	des travaux	<i>labours.</i>

The word *ail*, garlic, rarely used in the plural, makes *des aulx*, cloves of garlic.

PECULIARITIES.

Un duo, a duet, and *un in-octavo*, an octavo (book), do not change in the plural; as:

<i>des duo</i>	<i>duets</i>
<i>des in-octavo</i>	<i>octavos.</i>

Ciel, heaven, makes *cieux*, the heavens; but *un ciel-de-lit*, the head of a bed, makes *des ciels-de-lit*, and *un ciel*, a sky (in a landscape), *des ciels*.

Œil, an eye, makes *yeux*; but *œil-de-bœuf* (a sort of round window) makes in the plural *des œils-de-bœuf*.

Aïeul, a grandfather, makes *aïeuls*; but *aïeul*, an ancestor, makes *aïeux*.

The rules for the formation of the plurals of nouns compounded of two or more words will be found in the Syntax.

It will have been remarked that the French plurals of the preceding nouns have been preceded by the article *des*, whereas in the English plurals there is no article whatever used. This leads us to the consideration of

V. THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE.

a. When in English you use a substantive without any article, definite or indefinite, implying thereby that you mean *some* or *part* of that object or those objects, as, for instance, wine (*i.e.* some wine), water (*i.e.* some water), sheep (*i.e.* some sheep), shops (*i.e.* some shops), &c., you MUST in French employ the *Partitive Article*.

β. Now the *Partitive Article* is the *genitive of the Definite Article*, agreeing in gender and number with its substantive; as, for instance:

SINGULAR.

Masculine **du**, before a substantive beginning with a consonant or aspirated *h*.

„ **de l'** before a substantive beginning with a vowel or mute *h*.

Feminine **de la** before a substantive beginning with a consonant or aspirated *h*.

„ **de l'** before a substantive beginning with a vowel or mute *h*.

PLURAL.

For both genders, and before all manner of substantives, **des**.

Examples of the Use of the Partitive Article.

<i>English.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>French.</i>
Wine	before a consonant	du vin
Holly	„ an aspirated <i>h</i>	du houx
Air	„ a vowel	de l'air
Honour	„ a mute <i>h</i>	de l'honneur.

	<i>Feminine.</i>	
Beer	before a consonant	de la bière
Hatred	„ an aspirated <i>h</i>	de la haine
Water	„ a vowel	de l'eau
Moisture	„ a mute <i>h</i>	de l'humidité.

PLURAL.

Masculine and Feminine.

oranges	des oranges
sheep	des moutons
horses	des chevaux
clocks	des horloges,

&c., &c., never varying, whatever be the gender of the substantive.

N.B.—*α*. Sometimes, in a French sentence, the adjective precedes the substantive. The partitive article then is simply **de**; as:

good bread	de bon pain
fine oranges	de belles oranges.

β. When a negative occurs in a French sentence, the partitive article is simply **de**; as:

I do not drink wine	je ne bois pas de vin
I do not drink water	je ne bois pas d'eau
I do not eat oranges	je ne mange pas d'oranges.

VI. THE ADJECTIVE.

FORMATION OF THE FEMININE OF ADJECTIVES.

THE feminine of adjectives and participles is generally formed by the addition of the letter *e* ; as :

<i>Masc.</i>		<i>Fem.</i>
vrai	<i>true</i>	vraie
joli	<i>pretty</i>	jolie
connu	<i>known</i>	connue
général	<i>general</i>	générale
charmant	<i>charming</i>	charmante
charmé	<i>charmed</i>	charmée
fin	<i>fine</i>	fine
fier	<i>proud</i>	fière
peint	<i>painted</i>	peinte
surpris	<i>surprised</i>	surprise
petit	<i>small</i>	petite
grand	<i>great</i>	grande.

EXCEPTIONS.

Adjectives ending in *e* mute remain the same in the feminine ; as :

<i>Masc.</i>		<i>Fem.</i>
sage	<i>wise</i>	sage
aimable	<i>amiable</i>	aimable
tranquille	<i>quiet</i>	tranquille.

PECULIAR FEMININES.

Adjectives ending in—

C.		
<i>Masc.</i>		<i>Fem.</i>
blanc	<i>white</i>	blanche
franc	<i>frank</i>	franche
sec	<i>dry</i>	sèche
public	<i>public</i>	publique
turc	<i>Turkish</i>	turque
caduc	<i>decrepit</i>	caduque
grec	<i>Greek</i>	grecque.
F.		
actif	<i>active</i>	active
bref	<i>short</i>	brève
neuf	<i>new</i>	neuve
vif	<i>quick</i>	vive.

<i>Mass.</i>	<i>G.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
long	long	longue.
<i>I.</i>		
favori coi	<i>favourite</i> <i>close</i>	favorite coite.
<i>L.</i>		
cruel	<i>cruel</i>	cruelle
pareil	<i>similar</i>	pareille
nul	<i>no or null</i>	nulle
éternel	<i>eternal</i>	eternelle
formel	<i>formal</i>	formelle
gentil	<i>pretty</i>	gentille
tel	<i>such</i>	telle
vermeil	<i>vermilion</i>	vermeille.
<i>NN.</i>		
chrétien	<i>Christian</i>	chrétienne
ancien	<i>ancient</i>	ancienne
parisien	<i>Parisian</i>	parisienne.
<i>NN.</i>		
bénin	<i>benign</i>	bénigne
malin	<i>cunning</i>	maligna.
<i>ON.</i>		
bon	<i>good</i>	bonne.*
<i>R.</i>		
corrupteur	<i>corrupting</i>	corruptrice
consolateur	<i>consoling</i>	consolatrice
destructeur	<i>destroying</i>	destructrice
séducteur	<i>seducing</i>	séductrice
enchanteur	<i>enchanting</i>	enchanteresse
vengeur	<i>avenging</i>	vengeresse
pécheur	<i>sinning</i>	pécheresse
menteur	<i>lying</i>	menteuse
grondeur	<i>scolding</i>	grondeuse.

The following are nouns *substantive*; but, having another feminine form, may be inserted here:—

acteur	<i>actor</i>	actrice	<i>actress</i>
ambassadeur	<i>ambassador</i>	ambassadrice	<i>ambassadress</i>
empereur	<i>emperor</i>	impératrice	<i>empress</i>

* And so all others that end in *n*.

<i>Masc.</i>			<i>Fem.</i>
conducteur	<i>conductor</i>	conductrice	<i>conductor</i>
gouverneur	<i>governor</i>	gouvernante	<i>governess</i>
instituteur	<i>tutor</i>	institutrice	<i>governess</i>
pêcheur	<i>fisherman</i>	pêcheuse	<i>fisherwoman</i>
joueur	<i>gambler</i>	joueuse	<i>gambler</i>
porteur	<i>porter</i>	porteuse	<i>porteress.</i>

S.

gras	<i>fat</i>	grasse	tiers	<i>third</i>	tierce
gros	<i>large</i>	grosse	exprès	<i>express</i>	expresse
las	<i>tired</i>	lasse	absous	<i>absolved</i>	absoute
has	<i>low</i>	hasse	dissous	<i>dissolved</i>	dissoute
épais	<i>thick</i>	épaisse	résous	<i>solved.</i>	

Résous (solved) and *dispos* (ready) have no feminine form.

T.

coquet	<i>coquettish</i>	coquette	sujet	<i>liable</i>	sujette
fluet	<i>thin, spare</i>	flurette	complet	<i>complete</i>	complète
muet	<i>dumb</i>	muette	discret	<i>discreet</i>	discrète
net	<i>clear, neat</i>	nette	secret	<i>secret</i>	secrète
sot	<i>foolish</i>	sotte	inquiet	<i>anxious</i>	inquiète.

Fat, conceited, has no feminine.

U.

jumeau	<i>twin</i>	jumelle	mou	<i>soft</i>	molle
beau	<i>fine</i>	belle	aigu	<i>sharp</i>	aiguë
nouveau	<i>new</i>	nouvelle	ambigu	<i>ambiguous</i>	ambiguë
fou	<i>mad</i>	folle	and all others in <i>gu.</i>		

X.

heureux	<i>happy</i>	heureuse	roux	<i>red (of hair)</i>	rousse.
doux	<i>sweet</i>	douce			

But *vieux*, old, makes *vieille*, from its other masculine form, *vieil*.

VII. PLURAL OF ADJECTIVES.

The plural of adjectives is formed in the same way as that of substantives, by adding *s* to the singular ; as :

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
<i>m.</i> grand	<i>great</i>	<i>m.</i> grands
<i>f.</i> grande	<i>"</i>	<i>f.</i> grandes.

Adjectives terminating in *al* form their plural masculine in *aux* ; as :

égal	<i>equal</i>	égaux	brutal	<i>brutal</i>	brutaux.
------	--------------	-------	--------	---------------	----------

Their feminine plurals being, of course, formed by adding *s* to the feminine singular ; as, *égales, brutales, &c.*

A few, such as *amical, fatal, final, frugal, glacial, matinal, nasal, naval, théâtral*, take an *s* in the plural : *amicals, fatals, &c.* *Frugal* and *natal* take sometimes the one form (in *aux*), sometimes the other (in *als*).

VIII. POSITION OF ADJECTIVES IN A SENTENCE.

Adjectives are generally placed *after* the noun substantive which they qualify ; as, for instance :

l'empire romain	<i>the Roman Empire</i>
l'homme heureux	<i>the happy man.</i>

But the following, in their common acceptation, are generally placed *before* their nouns :—

autre	<i>other</i>	demi	<i>half</i>	méchant	<i>wicked</i>	petit	<i>small</i>
beau	<i>fine</i>	grand	<i>great</i>	mauvais	<i>bad</i>	saint	<i>holy</i>
bon	<i>good</i>	gros	<i>large</i>	meilleur	<i>better</i>	tout	<i>all</i>
brave	<i>brave</i>	jeune	<i>young</i>	moindre	<i>less</i>	vieux	<i>old</i>
cher	<i>dear</i>	joli	<i>pretty</i>	nouveau	<i>new</i>	vrai	<i>true.</i>

Many of these, however, may be constantly found in French books placed *after*, and many of the others may be found *before* their nouns. The reasons for these exceptions will be given in Part II.

N.B.—The following adjectives have a second masculine form to be employed *before* words beginning with a vowel or unaspirated *h* :

Masculine.

1st Form.		2nd Form.	1st Form.		2nd Form.
nouveau	<i>new</i>	nouvel	vieux	<i>old</i>	vieil
fou	<i>mad</i>	fol	beau	<i>fine</i>	bel ;
mou	<i>soft</i>	mol			

as :

un bel homme	<i>a fine man</i>	un fol espoir	<i>a foolish hope</i>
un nouvel habit	<i>another coat</i>	un mol édredon	<i>a soft eiderdown.</i>

The object of this is obvious—to prevent the hiatus that would ensue upon the meeting of the final vowel *u* of the adjective and the opening vowel of the substantive.

IX. DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

The degrees of comparison in French are formed by means of *the adverb of increase, plus*, in the following manner :—

For the comparative degree, prefix *plus* to the positive; as:

<i>Positive.</i>		<i>Comparative.</i>	
grand	<i>great</i>	plus grand	<i>greater.</i>

For the superlative degree, prefix the definite article *le, la,* or *les,* to the comparative; as:

<i>Comparative.</i>		<i>Superlative.</i>	
		<i>Sing.</i>	
plus grand	<i>greater</i>	m. le plus grand	} <i>the greatest.</i>
		f. la plus grande	
		<i>Plur.</i>	
		m. les plus grands	
		f. les plus grandes	

N.B.—Excepting in the case of such adjectives as precede their substantives (of which see a list, Rule VIII.), the definite article must be repeated in the superlative degree; as:

<i>Sing. m.</i>	l'homme le plus aimable	<i>the most amiable man</i>
	f. la femme la plus aimable	<i>the most amiable woman</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	les hommes les plus distingués	<i>the most distinguished men.</i>

But note that, in the oblique cases, the definite article will be declined with the substantive, but will remain unchanged with the adjective; as:

SINGULAR.

Masculine.

<i>Gen.</i>	de l'homme le plus aimable	<i>of the most amiable man</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	au roi le plus puissant	<i>to the most powerful king.</i>

Feminine.

<i>Gen.</i>	de la femme la plus aimable	<i>of the most amiable woman</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	à la reine la plus puissante	<i>to the most powerful queen.</i>

PLURAL.

Masculine and Feminine.

<i>Gen.</i>	des hommes les plus aimables	<i>of the most amiable men</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	aux reines les plus puissantes	<i>to the most powerful queens.</i>

X. There are a few adjectives in French which form their degrees of comparison in a different manner; as:

	<i>Pos.</i>	bon	<i>good</i>
	<i>Comp.</i>	meilleur	<i>better</i>
	<i>Sup.</i>	le meilleur	<i>the best</i>
	<i>Pos.</i>	mauvais	<i>bad</i>
	<i>Comp.</i>	pire	<i>worse (also plus mauvais)</i>
	<i>Sup.</i>	le pire	<i>the worst (also le plus mauvais)</i>
	<i>Pos.</i>	petit	<i>small</i>
	<i>Comp.</i>	moindre	<i>less (also, and more commonly, plus petit)</i>
		le moindre	<i>the least (also le plus petit).</i>

As these adjectives, in their positive forms, *precede* their substantives, so will they do in their comparative forms; as:

un bon peintre	<i>a good painter</i>
le meilleur peintre	<i>the best painter</i>
un pire accident	<i>a worse accident</i>
le moindre bruit	<i>the least noise.</i>

The French have another particle of comparison (to express diminution), the adverb *moins*, less. Adjectives forming their degrees of comparison with *moins* follow the same rules as when forming their degrees of comparison with *plus*; as, for instance:

un roi puissant	<i>a powerful king</i>
un roi moins puissant	<i>a less powerful king</i>
le roi le moins puissant	<i>the least powerful king.</i>

XI. NUMERALS.

Numerals are of two kinds, the Cardinal and the Ordinal. The Cardinal Numerals (or numbers) are:

1 un	27 vingt-sept
2 deux	28 vingt-huit
3 trois	29 vingt-neuf
4 quatre	30 trente
5 cinq	31 trente et un
6 six	32 trente-deux
7 sept	33 trente-trois
8 huit	34 trente-quatre
9 neuf	35 trente-cinq
10 dix	36 trente-six
11 onze	37 trente-sept
12 douze	38 trente-huit
13 treize	39 trente-neuf
14 quatorze	40 quarante
15 quinze	41 quarante et un
16 seize	42 quarante-deux
17 dix-sept	43 quarante-trois
18 dix-huit	44 quarante-quatre
19 dix-neuf	45 quarante-cinq
20 vingt	46 quarante-six
21 vingt et un	47 quarante-sept
22 vingt-deux	48 quarante-huit
23 vingt-trois	49 quarante-neuf
24 vingt-quatre	50 cinquante
25 vingt-cinq	51 cinquante et un
26 vingt-six	52 cinquante-deux

53	cinquante-trois	81	quatre-vingt-un
54	cinquante-quatre	82	quatre-vingt-deux
55	cinquante-cinq	83	quatre-vingt-trois
56	cinquante-six	84	quatre-vingt-quatre
57	cinquante-sept	85	quatre-vingt-cinq
58	cinquante-huit	86	quatre-vingt-six
59	cinquante-neuf	87	quatre-vingt-sept
60	soixante	88	quatre-vingt-huit
61	soixante et un	89	quatre-vingt-neuf
62	soixante-deux	90	quatre-vingt-dix
63	soixante-trois	91	quatre-vingt-onze
64	soixante-quatre	92	quatre-vingt-douze
65	soixante-cinq	93	quatre-vingt-treize
66	soixante-six	94	quatre-vingt-quatorze
67	soixante-sept	95	quatre-vingt-quinze
68	soixante-huit	96	quatre-vingt-seize
69	soixante-neuf	97	quatre-vingt-dix-sept
70	soixante-dix	98	quatre-vingt-dix-huit
71	soixante et onze	99	quatre-vingt-dix-neuf
72	soixante-douze	100	cent
73	soixante-treize	101	cent un
74	soixante-quatorze	102	cent deux, &c.
75	soixante-quinze	200	deux cents
76	soixante-seize	201	deux cent un
77	soixante-dix-sept	202	deux cent deux, &c.
78	soixante-dix-huit	1,000	mille
79	soixante-dix-neuf	2,000	deux mille
80	quatre-vingts	1,000,000	un million.

NOTE 1. The numbers 21, 31, 41, 51, 61, and 71 are written *vingt et un, trente et un, &c.*, but 81 is written *quatre-vingt-un*, without the copula *et*.

2. *Quatre-vingts*, 80, has a final *s* which is omitted in all subsequent numbers.

3. *Deux cents*, 200, *trois cents*, 300, &c., are written with a final *s*; whereas these numbers followed by any other number drop the *s*; as, *deux cent un*, 201, *trois cent quatre*, 304, &c.

4. *Mille* never takes the *s*.

5. There being no *modern* French number to express 70 or 90 (the old forms *septante* and *nonante* being almost obsolete, and only used in Switzerland), one counts from 60 to 80, and from 80 to 90, continuously, as though one were to say in English, *eighty-eight, eighty-nine, eighty-ten, eighty-eleven, &c.*

XII. The Ordinal Numbers are as follows :

premier	1 st	troisième	3 rd
second or	} 2 nd	quatrième	4 th ;
deuxième			

and all the others are formed by adding *ième* to the cardinal number ; as, for instance :

From cinq	<i>five,</i>	cinquième	<i>fifth</i>
six	<i>six,</i>	sixième	<i>sixth</i>
vingt	<i>twenty,</i>	vingtième	<i>twentieth</i>
vingt et un	<i>twenty-one,</i>	vingt et unième	<i>twenty-first.</i>

The following adjectives are generally found in most grammars under the head of *Pronouns*; as, however, they may be more properly termed *adjectives*, it has been thought better to insert them in this place.

XIII. PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	
1. mon	ma	mes	<i>my</i>
2. ton	ta	tes	<i>thy</i>
3. son	sa	ses	<i>his, her, or its.</i>

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>		<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	
1. notre		nous	<i>our</i>
2. votre		vous	<i>your</i>
3. leur		leurs	<i>their.</i>

These pronominal adjectives agree in gender and number with the nouns substantive which they qualify; as:

mon livre	<i>my book</i>
ma maison	<i>my house</i>
mes enfants	<i>my children</i>
son cheval	<i>his (or her) horse</i>
ses chevaux	<i>his (or her) horses</i>
notre maison	<i>our house</i>
nos enfants	<i>our children</i>
leur maison	<i>their house</i>
leurs enfants	<i>their children.</i>

NOTE 1. The masculine forms *mon*, *ton*, *son*, and not *ma*, *ta*, *sa*, are used before nouns substantive of the feminine gender beginning with a vowel or unaspirated *h* for the sake of euphony, and to avoid the meeting of two vowels; as:

mon opinion (<i>f.</i>)	<i>my opinion</i>
ton humeur (<i>f.</i>)	<i>thy temper</i>
son histoire (<i>f.</i>)	<i>his (or her) history.</i>

2. The pronominal adjectives *notre*, *our*, and *votre*, *your*, have no circumflex accent (to distinguish them from the possessive pronouns *le nôtre*, *le vôtre*, see page 26), and are pronounced short, almost as if written *not'*, *vo'*.

XIV. DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVE.

The Demonstrative Adjective, sometimes (but erroneously) called a demonstrative pronoun, is thus declined :

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>m.</i>	<i>ce</i>	} <i>this or that</i>	<i>m. & f.</i>	<i>ces</i>	<i>these or those.</i>
<i>f.</i>	<i>cette</i>				

It agrees with its noun substantive in gender and number ; as :

<i>ce cheval</i>	<i>this horse</i>
<i>cette maison</i>	<i>this house</i>
<i>ces enfants</i>	<i>these children.</i>

NOTE.—The form *cet* is employed for the masculine when preceding a noun beginning with a vowel or mute *h* ; as :

<i>cet homme</i>	<i>this man</i>
<i>cet arbre</i>	<i>this tree.</i>

XV. RELATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, OR ADMIRATIVE ADJECTIVE

The Relative, Interrogative, or Admirative Adjective *quel* is thus declined :

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>m.</i>	<i>quel</i>	} <i>which or what</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>quels</i>	} <i>which or what</i>
<i>f.</i>	<i>quelle</i>		<i>f.</i>	<i>quelles</i>	

It agrees in gender and number with the noun substantive which it qualifies ; as :

<i>quel homme ? (!)</i>	<i>which man ? or what a man !</i>
<i>quelle femme ? (!)</i>	<i>which woman ? or what a woman !</i>
<i>quels chevaux ? (!)</i>	<i>which horses ? or what horses !</i>
<i>quelles fleurs ? (!)</i>	<i>which flowers ? or what flowers !</i>

PRONOUNS.

XVI. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS are of two kinds :

1. Conjunctive,—or those used conjointly with, and directly governing or governed by, a verb.
2. Disjunctive,—or those used independently of a verb or governed by a preposition.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS CONJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.

1st Person.

<i>Nom.</i>	je.	<i>I</i>	} <i>myself.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	me, moi*	<i>to me</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	me, moi*	<i>me</i>	

2nd Person.

<i>Nom.</i>	tu	<i>thou</i>	} <i>thyself.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	te, toi*	<i>to thee</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	te, toi*	<i>thee</i>	

3rd Person.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	il	<i>he or it</i>
	<i>Dat.</i>	lui	<i>to him or to it</i>
	<i>Acc.</i>	le	<i>him or it.</i>
<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	elle	<i>she or it</i>
	<i>Dat.</i>	lui	<i>to her or to it</i>
	<i>Acc.</i>	la	<i>her or it.</i>

PLURAL.

1st Person.

<i>Nom.</i>	nous	<i>we</i>	} <i>to ourselves</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	nous	<i>to us</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	nous	<i>us</i>	

2nd Person.

<i>Nom.</i>	vous	<i>you</i>	} <i>to yourselves</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	vous	<i>to you</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	vous	<i>you</i>	

3rd Person.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	ils	<i>they</i>
	<i>Dat.</i>	leur	<i>to them</i>
	<i>Acc.</i>	les	<i>them</i>
<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	elles	<i>they</i>
	<i>Dat.</i>	leur	<i>to them</i>
	<i>Acc.</i>	les	<i>them.</i>

The reflective pronoun *se* is thus declined :

* These forms are used when the pronoun follows the verb, which is only the case in the 2nd sing. and the 1st and 2nd plur. of the imperative used affirmatively.

SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

<i>Dat. m. & f.</i>	se	<i>to himself, herself, itself, oneself, themselves</i>
<i>Acc. m. & f.</i>	se	<i>himself, herself, itself, oneself, themselves.</i>

The genitive form **en**, of both genders, *of it, of them, &c.*, and the dative form **y**, also of both genders, *to it, to them, &c.*, are of constant occurrence. They are more generally used when speaking of inanimate objects, rarely of animals or persons.

NOTE.—**Y** is also frequently employed as an adverb, meaning *there* or *thither*.

N.B.—In order to facilitate the explanation of the use of the personal pronouns and their position with regard to the verb, it has been thought better to give a few simple tenses of verbs :—

Present.	je donne	<i>I give</i>	Future.	je donnerai	<i>I will give</i>
	tu donnes	<i>thou givest</i>		tu donneras	<i>thou wilt give</i>
Imper. Affir.	il donne	<i>he gives</i>	Imper. Neg.	il donnera	<i>he will give</i>
	nous donnons	<i>we give</i>		nous donnerons	<i>we will give</i>
	vous donnez	<i>you give</i>		vous donnerez	<i>you will give</i>
Imper.	ils donnent	<i>they give.</i>	Imper.	ils donneront	<i>they will give</i>
Imper. Affir.	donne	<i>give</i>	Imper. Neg.	*ne donne pas	<i>give not</i>
	qu'il donne	<i>let him give</i>		qu'il ne donne pas	<i>let him not give</i>
Imper.	donnons	<i>let us give</i>	Imper.	ne donnons pas	<i>let us not give</i>
	donnez	<i>give</i>		ne donnez pas	<i>give not</i>
Imper.	qu'ils donnent	<i>let them give</i>		qu'ils ne donnent pas	<i>let them not give</i>
Present.	je vois	<i>I see</i>	Future.	je verrai	<i>I shall see</i>
	tu vois	<i>thou seest</i>		tu verras	<i>thou shalt see</i>
Imper. Affir.	il voit	<i>he sees</i>	Imper. Neg.	il verra	<i>he shall see</i>
	nous voyons	<i>we see</i>		nous verrons	<i>we shall see</i>
	vous voyez	<i>you see</i>		vous verrez	<i>you shall see</i>
Imper.	ils voient	<i>they see</i>		ils verront	<i>they shall see</i>
Imper. Affir.	vois	<i>see</i>	Imper. Neg.	ne vois pas	<i>see not</i>
	qu'il voie	<i>let him see</i>		qu'il ne voie pas	<i>let him not see</i>
Imper.	voyons	<i>let us see</i>		ne voyons pas	<i>let us not see</i>
	voyez	<i>see</i>		ne voyez pas	<i>see not</i>
Imper.	qu'ils voient	<i>let them see</i>		qu'ils ne voient pas	<i>let them not see</i>

* A form of the negative imperative has been introduced to show that, although the forms **moi, toi**, are used (See Table of Pronouns, Note, page 21) with the imperative affirmative, the proper forms **me** and **te** are resumed with the imperative negative.

Present.	je parle	<i>I speak</i>	Future.	je parlerai	<i>I shall speak</i>
	tu parles	<i>thou speakest</i>		tu parleras	<i>thou wilt speak</i>
	il parle	<i>he speaks</i>		il parlera.	<i>he will speak</i>
	nous parlons	<i>we speak</i>		nous parlerons	<i>we will speak</i>
	vous parlez	<i>you speak</i>		vous parlerez	<i>you will speak</i>
	ils parlent	<i>they speak</i>		ils parleront	<i>they will speak</i>
Imper. Affr.	parle	<i>speak</i>	Imper. Neg.	ne parle pas	<i>speak not</i>
	qu'il parle	<i>let him speak</i>		qu'il ne parle pas	<i>let him not speak</i>
Imper.	parlons	<i>let us speak</i>		ne parlons pas	<i>let us not speak</i>
	parlez	<i>speak</i>		ne parlez pas	<i>speak not</i>
	qu'ils parlent	<i>let them speak</i>		qu'ils ne parlent pas	<i>let them not speak.</i>

*Examples to illustrate the Use of the Personal Pronouns
Conjunctive.*

1st Person Singular.

Nom.	je parle	I speak
Dat.	il me parle	<i>he speaks to me</i>
Acc.	il me voit	<i>he sees me.</i>

2nd Person Singular.

Nom.	tu parles	thou speakest
Dat.	je te parle	<i>I speak to thee</i>
Acc.	je te vois	<i>I see thee.</i>

3rd Person Singular.

Masc.	Nom.	il parle	he speaks
	Dat.	je lui parle	<i>I speak to him</i>
	Acc.	je le vois	<i>I see him</i>
Fem.	Nom.	elle parle	she speaks
	Dat.	je lui parle	<i>I speak to her</i>
	Acc.	je la vois	<i>I see her.</i>

N.B.—Nominative **il** (m.), **elle** (f.), and accusative **le** (m.) and **la** (f.) are used for **it** in speaking of things. The genitive is **en**, and the dative **y** for both genders.

Examples.

Nom.	{ m. il est bon	it is good
	{ f. elle est bonne	it is good
Gen. m. & f.	il en parle	<i>he speaks of it</i>
Dat. m. & f.	il y regarde	<i>he looks to it.</i>

PLURAL.

1st Person.

N.	nous parlons	we speak
D.	il nous parle	<i>he speaks to us</i>
A	il nous voit	<i>he sees us</i>

2nd Person.

N.	vous parlez	you speak
D.	je vous parle	<i>I speak to you</i>
A.	il vous voit	<i>he sees you.</i>

3rd Person.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	ils donnent	they give
	<i>Dat.</i>	je leur donne	<i>I give (to) them</i>
	<i>Acc.</i>	je les vois	<i>I see them</i>
<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Nom.</i>	elles donnent	they give
	<i>Dat.</i>	je leur donne	<i>I give (to) them</i>
	<i>Acc.</i>	je les vois	<i>I see them.</i>

N.B.—Nominative **ils** (*m.*) and **elles** (*f.*), *they*, and accusative **les**, *them*, for both genders, are used in speaking of *things*, and, as in the singular, so in the plural, **en** is the genitive and **y** the dative for both genders.

Examples.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>m.</i>	ils sont bons	they are good
	<i>f.</i>	elles sont bonnes	they are good
<i>Gen. m. & f.</i>		j' en parle	<i>I speak of them</i>
<i>Dat. m. & f.</i>		j' y regarde	<i>I look to them.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD AFFIRMATIVE.

parle- moi	<i>speak to me</i>
qu'il } me regarde	let { <i>him</i> } <i>look at me</i>
qu'elle }	<i>her</i> }
amusons- nous	<i>let us amuse ourselves</i>
amusez- vous	<i>amuse yourselves</i>
qu'ils }	
qu'elles } me parlent	<i>let them speak to me.</i>

NEGATIVE.

ne me parle pas	ne nous pressons pas
ne te lève pas	ne vous blessez pas
qu'il }	qu'ils }
qu'elle } ne me regarde pas	qu'elles } ne se lèvent pas
	encore.

XVII. There is another pronoun, **ce**, much used in French for *he, she, it, or they*, of both numbers and genders. It is generally used in the place of the more ordinary personal pronouns, *il, elle, ils, and elles*, in sentences composed with the verb *être* and a *noun substantive* for the predicate. This rule, however, is not altogether inviolable, and the peculiarities of the use of this pronoun **ce** will be explained in a later part of this work.

The verb *être* following **ce** is put in the third singular in all persons excepting the third plural.

SINGULAR.

c'est moi	it is I	c'est un soldat	he is a soldier
c'était toi	it was thou	c'est une princesse	she is a princess
ce sera lui	it will be he		

IMPERATIVE AFFIRMATIVE.

<i>Acc. Dat.</i>	
donne- { <i>le</i> } <i>moi</i>	<i>give it to me</i>
donnez- <i>les moi</i>	<i>give them to me.</i>

IMPERATIVE NEGATIVE.

<i>Dat. Acc.</i>	
ne <i>me</i> { <i>le</i> } donne pas	<i>do not give it to me</i>
ne <i>me les</i> donnez pas	<i>do not give them to me</i>
<i>Acc. Dat.</i>	
il <i>m' y</i> mène	<i>he takes me there (literally to it).</i>

IMPERATIVE AFFIRMATIVE.

<i>Dat. Acc.</i>	
mènes- <i>y moi</i>	<i>take me there.</i>

IMPERATIVE NEGATIVE.

<i>Acc. Dat.</i>	
ne <i>m' y</i> menez pas	<i>do not take me there</i>
<i>Dat. Gen.</i>	
il <i>m' en</i> donne	<i>he gives me (some) of it.</i>

2nd Person.

<i>Dat. Acc.</i>	
je <i>te le</i> donne	<i>I give it (m.) to thee</i>
je <i>te la</i> donne	<i>I give it (f.) to thee</i>
je <i>te les</i> donne	<i>I give them (m. & f.) to thee</i>
<i>Acc. Dat.</i>	
je <i>t' y</i> mène	<i>I take thee there.</i>

IMPERATIVE AFFIRMATIVE.

<i>Dat. Acc.</i>	
mènes- <i>y toi</i>	<i>take thyself there.</i>

IMPERATIVE NEGATIVE.

<i>Acc. Dat.</i>	
ne <i>t' y</i> mène pas	<i>do not take thyself there</i>
<i>Dat. Gen.</i>	
je <i>t' en</i> donnerai	<i>I will give thee (some) of it.</i>

3rd Person.

<i>Acc. Dat.</i>	
je <i>le lui</i> donne	<i>I give it (m.) to him or her</i>
je <i>la lui</i> donne	<i>I give it (f.) to him or her</i>
je <i>les lui</i> donne	<i>I give them (m. & f.) to him or her</i>
<i>Acc. Dat.</i>	
je <i>l' y</i> mène	<i>I take him or her there</i>
<i>Dat. Gen.</i>	
je <i>lui en</i> donne	<i>I give him or her (some) of it or of them.</i>

PLURAL.

1st Person.

<i>Dat. Acc.</i>	
il nous le donne	he gives it (m.) to us
il nous la donne	he gives it (f.) to us
il nous les donne	he gives them (m. & f.) to us.

IMPERATIVE AFFIRMATIVE.

<i>Acc. Dat.</i>	
donnez-le nous	give it (m.) to us
donnez-la nous	give it (f.) to us
donnez-les nous	give them (m. & f.) to us

<i>Acc. Dat.</i>	
il nous y mène	he takes us there.

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Acc. Dat.</i>	
menez-nous y	take us there

<i>Dat. Gen.</i>	
il nous en donne	he gives us (some) of it or of them.

2nd Person.

<i>Dat. Acc.</i>	
je vous le donnerai	I will give it (m.) to you
je vous la donnerai	I will give it (f.) to you
je vous les donnerai	I will give them (m. & f.) to you

<i>Acc. Dat.</i>	
je vous y mènerai	I will take you there

<i>Dat. Gen.</i>	
je vous en donnerai	I will give you (some) of it or of them.

3rd Person.

<i>Acc. Dat.</i>	
je le leur donne	I give it (m.) to them
je la leur donne	I give it (f.) to them
je les leur donne	I give them (m. & f.) to them.

IMPERATIVE AFFIRMATIVE.

<i>Acc. Dat.</i>	
donnez-le leur	give it (m.) to them
donnez-la leur	give it (f.) to them
donnez-les leur	give them (m. & f.) to them

<i>Acc. Dat.</i>	
je les y mènerai	I will take them there.

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Acc. Dat.</i>	
menez-les y	take them there

<i>Dat. Gen.</i>	
je leur en donnerai	I will give them (some) of it or of them

The reflexive pronoun **se**, whether in the dative or accusative case, is always placed first.

Examples.

<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Acc.</i>		
il se	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{le} \\ \text{la} \\ \text{les} \end{array} \right\}$	donne	he gives $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{it (m.)} \\ \text{it (f.)} \\ \text{them} \end{array} \right\}$ to himself

<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Acc.</i>		
elle se	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{le} \\ \text{la} \\ \text{les} \end{array} \right\}$	donne	she gives $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{it (m.)} \\ \text{it (f.)} \\ \text{them} \end{array} \right\}$ to herself

<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Acc.</i>		
ils or elles se	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{le} \\ \text{la} \\ \text{les} \end{array} \right\}$	donnent	they give $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{it (m.)} \\ \text{it (f.)} \\ \text{them} \end{array} \right\}$ to themselves

<i>Dat. Gen.</i>			
ils or elles s' en	donnent	they give	themselves (some) of it or of them

<i>Acc. Dat.</i>			
il or elle s' y	promène	he or she	walks there.

XIX. (II.) PERSONAL PRONOUNS DISJUNCTIVE.

SINGULAR.

1st Person.

<i>Nom.</i>		<i>Gen.</i>		<i>Dat.</i>		<i>Acc.</i>	
moi	<i>I</i>	de moi	<i>of me</i>	à moi	<i>to me</i>	moi	<i>me.</i>

2nd Person.

toi	<i>thou</i>	de toi	<i>of thee</i>	à toi	<i>to thee</i>	toi	<i>thee.</i>
-----	-------------	--------	----------------	-------	----------------	-----	--------------

3rd Person.

<i>m.</i>	lui	<i>he</i>	de lui	<i>of him</i>	à lui	<i>to him</i>	lui	<i>him</i>
<i>f.</i>	elle	<i>she</i>	d'elle	<i>of her</i>	à elle	<i>to her</i>	elle	<i>her.</i>

PLURAL.

1st Person.

<i>Nom.</i>		<i>Gen.</i>		<i>Dat.</i>		<i>Acc.</i>	
nous	<i>we</i>	de nous	<i>of us</i>	à nous	<i>to us</i>	nous	<i>us.</i>

2nd Person.

vous	<i>you</i>	de vous	<i>of you</i>	à vous	<i>to you</i>	vous	<i>you.</i>
------	------------	---------	---------------	--------	---------------	------	-------------

3rd Person.

<i>m.</i>	eux	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \\ \end{array} \right\} \text{they}$	d'eux	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \\ \end{array} \right\} \text{of them}$	à eux	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \\ \end{array} \right\} \text{to them}$	eux	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \\ \end{array} \right\} \text{them.}$
<i>f.</i>	elles		d'elles		à elles		elles	

Soi (*sing. & plur.*), *oneself, itself, &c.*, is thus declined :

Nom. soi *Gen.* de soi *Dat.* à soi *Acc.* soi.

The *disjunctive* personal pronouns are to be used—

1. As the predicate where **ce** is the subject; as :

c'est moi	it is I
c'est toi	it is thou
c'est lui	it is he
ce sont eux	it is they.

2. In answer to questions; as :

Q. <i>Who did it?</i>	<i>qui l'a fait?</i>
4. I, thou, he, she, we, ye, or they (<i>m. & f.</i>)	moi, toi, lui, elle, nous, vous, eux (<i>m.</i>), elles (<i>f.</i>).

3. Standing alone in, and separated by a comma from the rest of, the sentence, at the beginning or end, to add emphasis; as :

I, do such a thing!	moi, faire une chose pareille!
he, speak so to you!	lui, vous parler ainsi!
they, do it!	eux, le faire!
he will not win!	il ne gagnera pas, lui!
I will not do it, indeed!	je ne le ferai pas, moi!

4. When there are two or more subjects to the verb; as :

he and I will go	lui et moi, nous irons
you and they will remain	eux et vous, vous resterez.

5. α. In comparisons after *que*; as :

plus grand que **moi, lui, or eux** *taller than I, he, or they.*

β. After *comme*; as :

faites comme **eux** *do as they.*

γ. After *ou*; as :

ou **vous ou moi** *either you or I.*

δ. After *ni*; as :

ni **toi ni lui** *neither thou nor he.*

6. The forms **moi** and **toi** are used as dative and accusative after the second person singular and plural of the imperative affirmative;* as :

<i>Dat.</i> parle- moi	<i>speak to me</i>
<i>Acc.</i> gronde- moi	<i>scold me</i>

* When the imperative is in the *negative*, then the personal pronoun conjunctive will be used, and in its proper place, i. e. *before the verb*.

<i>Dat.</i>	donnez-moi	<i>give to me</i>
	donne-toi cela	<i>give thyself that</i>
	lève-toi	<i>raise thyself (i. e. rise).</i>

7. With reflective verbs; as :

vous pouvez vous fier à moi	<i>you may trust me.</i>
------------------------------------	--------------------------

8. After prepositions; as :

avec moi	<i>with me</i>	sans nous	<i>without us</i>
sans toi	<i>without thee</i>	sans vous	<i>without you</i>
à lui	<i>to him</i>	pour { eux ^(m.) } <i>for them.</i>	
avec elle	<i>with her</i>		
		elles ^(f.)	

Examples to illustrate the Use of soi.

<i>Nom.</i>	on le fera soi-même	<i>one will do it oneself</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	chacun parle de soi	<i>each one speaks of himself</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	chacun pense à soi	<i>each one thinks of (in French to) oneself.</i>

XX. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

The Possessive Pronouns, properly so called because they stand *pro nomine*, for, and in the place of, a noun, are :

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
1.	le mien	la mienne	les miens	les miennes	<i>mine</i>
2.	le tien	la tienne	les tiens	les tiennes	<i>thine</i>
3.	le sien	la sienne	les siens	les siennes	{ <i>his,</i> <i>hers</i>
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>		
1.	le nôtre	la nôtre	les nôtres		<i>ours</i>
2.	le vôtre	la vôtre	les vôtres		<i>yours</i>
3.	le leur	la leur	les leurs		<i>theirs.</i>

These pronouns are thus declined :

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
<i>N. & Acc.</i>	le mien	la mienne	les miens	les miennes
<i>G. & Abl.</i>	du mien	de la mienne	des miens	des miennes
<i>Dat.</i>	au mien	à la mienne	aux miens	aux miennes.

Examples to illustrate the Use of the Possessive Pronouns.

<i>Nom. & Acc.</i>	{ mon cheval et le tien ma maison et la tienne	<i>my horse and thine</i> <i>my house and thine</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	{ de mon cheval et du sien de ma maison et de la sienne	<i>of my horse and his, or hers</i> <i>of my house and his, or hers</i>

<i>Dat.</i>	{ à mon frère et au vôtre à ma sœur et à la vôtre	<i>to my brother and yours to my sister and yours</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	{ de votre frère et du mien de ma maison et de la leur	<i>of your brother and mine of my house and theirs</i>
<i>Nom. & Acc.</i>	{ nos chevaux et les vôtres vos chevaux et les nôtres	<i>our horses and yours your horses and ours</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	de vos chevaux et des nôtres	<i>of your horses and ours</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	{ à nos chevaux et aux vôtres à leurs enfants et aux miens à mes enfants et aux leurs	<i>to our horses and yours to their children and mine to my children and theirs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	de mes enfants et des leurs	<i>of my children and theirs.</i>

XXI. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. The Relative Pronoun **qui**, *who, which*, is thus declined:

<i>Nom. sing. & plur.</i>	qui	<i>who, which</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	dont	<i>of whom, of which</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	que	<i>whom, who, which, that.</i>

2. NOTE.—**Qui**, governed by a preposition, is invariable; as:

à qui *	<i>to whom</i>	de qui *	<i>of whom</i>
contre qui	<i>against whom</i>	envers qui	<i>towards whom</i>
	<i>pour qui</i>		<i>for whom.</i>

3. There is still another relative pronoun, **lequel**, which may be styled the *compound relative pronoun*, and is thus declined:

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
<i>Nom. & Acc.</i>	lequel	laquelle	<i>which</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	duquel	de laquelle	<i>of which</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	auquel	à laquelle	<i>to which.</i>

PLURAL.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
<i>Nom. & Acc.</i>	lesquels	lesquelles	<i>which</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	desquels	desquelles	<i>of which</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	auxquels	auxquelles	<i>to which.</i>

4. This pronoun is also used interrogatively; as:

<i>Masc.</i>	lequel voulez-vous ?	which do you want ?
<i>Fem.</i>	de laquelle parlez-vous ?	of which do you speak ?

The rules for determining when to use the simple relative pronoun **qui**, and when the compound **lequel**, will be treated of in the Syntax.

* These two forms may also be considered as the genitive and dative of the relative pronoun.

It will be enough to remark *here* that *lequel*, &c., apply to persons and things, *qui* to persons only ; as :

le cheval est l'animal auquel je donne la préférence	<i>the horse is the animal to which I give the preference</i>
Alexandre est le héros à qui je donne la préférence	<i>Alexander is the hero to whom I give the preference.</i>

XXII. Qui, que, INTERROGATIVE.

The interrogative pronoun *qui* (invariable in its form) refers to persons ; *que* to things.

Qui (RELATING TO PERSONS ONLY).

<i>Nom.</i> qui vient là ?	who comes there ?
<i>Gen.</i> de qui parlez-vous ?	of whom are you speaking ?
<i>Dat.</i> à qui parlez-vous ?	to whom are you speaking ?
<i>Acc.</i> qui accusez-vous ?	whom do you accuse ?

Que (RELATING TO THINGS ONLY).*

<i>Nom.</i> que vous semble-t-il ?	what does it seem to you ?
<i>Acc.</i> que dit-il ?	what does he say ?

If any other oblique case of the interrogative pronoun is required, recourse must be had to the pronoun *quoi*, which see.

Quoi (*what*), INTERROGATIVE, RELATIVE, AND EXCLAMATORY.

1. *Interrogative* :

<i>Nom.</i> quoi de nouveau ?	what news ?
<i>Gen.</i> de quoi parlez-vous ?	of what are you speaking ?
<i>Dat.</i> à quoi travaillez-vous ?	at what are you working ?

2. *Relative* :

<i>Gen.</i> voilà de quoi je voulais vous parler	<i>that is (the thing) about which I wished to speak to you</i>
<i>Dat.</i> la chose à quoi nous pen- sons	<i>the matter of which we are thinking</i>

3. *Exclamatory* :

quoi ! tout cela !	what ! all that ! †
---------------------------	----------------------------

XXIII. The pronoun *où* (*where* or *whither*) is either interrogative or relative.

* *Qui* is occasionally found as an interrogative relating to things, not persons ; as :

qui vous donne aujourd'hui cet air triste et sévère ?	<i>what gives you to-day this sad and sombre air ?</i>
--	--

where probably *qui* is put for *qu'est-ce qui*, what is it that, &c.

† The pronoun *quoi* will be more fully treated of in the Syntax.

Où, interrogative :

où allez-vous ?	whither are you going ?
où l'avez-vous mis ?	where have you placed it ?
où est-il ?	where is he ?
d'où vient-il ?	whence does he come ?
par où est-il venu ?	which way did he come ?

Où relative always refers to inanimate objects ; as :

le pays où nous vivons	<i>the country in which we live</i>
le pays d'où il vient	<i>the country from which he comes</i>
le chemin par où il est venu	<i>the road by which he came.</i>

XXIV. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

The Demonstrative Pronouns are :

SINGULAR.

celui, m., celle, f.	<i>he, she, the one, this, that.</i>
-----------------------------	--------------------------------------

PLURAL.

ceux, m., celles, f.	<i>they, those</i>
and ce (neuter pronoun)	<i>this or that.</i>

Celui, celle, ceux, celles, are :

1. Invariably followed either by the relatives **qui, que, dont** ;
2. " " by the preposition **de** ; or
3. " " by the particles **ci** or **là**.

1. celui, m. } que j'ai	the one which I have
celle, f. }	
ceux, m. } que vous avez	those which you have.
celles, f. }	

2. The demonstrative pronoun followed by *de* is used when the letter *s* is affixed in English to a noun substantive, referring to some noun previously expressed ; as, *my house and my brother's*, i.e. *that of my brother* :

ma maison et celle de mon frère	<i>my house and my brother's</i>
mes chevaux et ceux de mon père	<i>my horses and my father's.</i>

3. The particles **ci** and **là** are affixed to the demonstrative pronouns to denote, respectively, proximity or distance ; as :

celui-ci }	<i>this one</i>	celui-là }	<i>that one</i>
celle-ci }		celle-là }	
ceux-ci }	<i>these</i>	ceux-là }	<i>those.</i>
celles-ci }		celles-là }	

Examples to illustrate the foregoing.

voici deux chevaux; je prendrai *here are two horses; I shall take this*
celui-ci, vous, prenez **celui-là** *one, do you take that one*
 de ces deux maisons **celle-ci** est à *of these two houses this one is*
 moi, **celle-là** est à vous *mine, that one yours.*

4. **Ceci, cela**, are neuter forms relating to things only, not persons, and mean **this, that**; as:

prenez **ceci** *take this* laissez **cela** *leave that.*

5. **Ce**, demonstrative pronoun, is invariably followed by the relative pronoun; as:

ce qui me plaît en lui, etc. *what pleases me in him, &c.*
ce que vous dites est vrai *what you say is true.*

XXV. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

Indefinite Pronouns may be divided into three classes.

1st. Those properly called pronouns, i.e. employed in the place of nouns, and never joined to any expressed substantive.

2nd. Those employed at one time as pronouns properly so called, at another as adjectives.

3rd. Those followed by the particle *que*, and having in consequence a peculiar signification.

I. Indefinite Pronouns which are never joined to a Noun Substantive.

on	<i>one, people, they, &c.</i>
quiconque	<i>whosoever</i>
quelqu'un, quelqu'une, quel-	<i>some one, some people, some</i>
ques-uns, quelques-unes	
chacun, chacune	<i>each one</i>
autrui	<i>other people</i>
personne	<i>nobody, or anyone</i>
rien	<i>nothing</i>
l'un l'autre, l'une l'autre, les	<i>one another.</i>
uns les autres, les unes les	
autres	

Many of these indefinite pronouns present great difficulties in the construction of sentences in which they are employed, and will be treated at greater length in the syntax part of this work. For the present it will be sufficient to lay down some simple and invariable rules with regard to their use.

On, signifying *one, people, they*; as, *on dit*, one says, people

say, they say, &c., is of very frequent occurrence in French, many sentences that would be rendered in English by the passive voice being rendered in French *indefinitely* by means of this pronoun.

On is invariably followed by a verb in the singular number.

It is sometimes preceded by the definite article *le*, especially after the conjunctions *et*, *si*, *où*, and *que*; as:

*si l'on savait
ce que l'on voit là-bas*

*if one knew
that which is seen down there.*

But the form *l'on* is never used when immediately followed by a word beginning with *l*, such as *le*, *la*, *les*, &c.

Personne is always masculine and singular; if alone, or followed by the negative particle *ne*, it means *no one*; as:

personne n'est aussi heureux que vous *no one is as happy as you.*

If used without a negative, it means *anyone*; as:

y a-t-il personne d'aussi heureux? *is there anyone so happy?*

Rien, with the negative particle *ne*, means *nothing*; as:

rien n'est plus incertain que notre dernière heure *nothing is so uncertain as our last hour.*

Without the negative it means *anything*; as:

y a-t-il rien de plus rare? *is there anything more rare?*

When employed with an adjective it requires the preposition *de*; as:

*rien de bon
rien de meilleur*

*nothing good
nothing better, &c. (cf. Lat. nihil boni)*

L'un l'autre, *one another* (not to be mistaken for *l'un et l'autre*, *both* (which see in Section II.), has this peculiarity, that where in English the preposition generally precedes both words, it is invariably placed between them in French, as:

SINGULAR.

ils parlent l'un de l'autre	<i>they speak of one another</i>
ils se parlent l'un à l'autre	<i>they speak to one another.</i>

PLURAL.

ils médisent les uns des autres	<i>they slander one another</i>
elles pensent les unes aux autres	<i>they think of one another.</i>

II. *Indefinite Pronouns sometimes employed as Pronouns without a Substantive, sometimes as Adjectives with a Substantive*
Such are:

nul	<i>no one</i>
aucun, aucune, aucuns, aucunes	<i>any, or (with ne) none</i>
autre, d'autres	<i>other, others</i>
l'un (l'une) et l'autre, les uns (les unes) et les autres	<i>both</i>
même	<i>same</i>
plusieurs	<i>several</i>
tout	<i>all.</i>

We shall only consider the above in their quality of *pronouns* in the present place.

Nul must be followed by the negative particle **ne** and a verb in the singular; as:

nul n'est prophète en son pays	<i>no one is a prophet in his own country.</i>
---------------------------------------	--

L'un et l'autre requires the preposition to be repeated before each word; as:

je parle à l'un et à l'autre	<i>I speak to both.</i>
------------------------------	-------------------------

Même can only be properly considered a pronoun when used with the definite article, and referring to some person or persons or things previously mentioned; as:

c'est le même }	<i>it is the same</i>
c'est la même }	
ce sont les mêmes	<i>they are the same, &c.</i>

Plusieurs has no singular or feminine form.

Tout, *everything, all*, used absolutely, is invariable in gender and number; it is often followed by *ce qui* or *ce que*; as:

tout ce qui vit **everything that lives**
tout ce que vous voulez **everything that you wish.**

III. *Indefinite Pronouns followed by the Particle que, and having in consequence a peculiar signification. Such are :*

qui que ce soit	(relating to persons)	whoever, or any persons
		whatsoever
quoi que ce soit	(relating to things)	whatever, or what thing
		soever
quoi que	whatever	
quel	} que	whatever, or of what sort, or how great.
quelle		
quels		
quelles		

Examples.

quel que soit votre	} vous ne	} whatever be your courage (or	
courage,			
quelle que soit vo-	} réussirez	} strength), you will not succeed	
tre force,			
	pas		
quels que soient les humains,	whatever men may be, one must		
il faut vivre avec eux	live with them.		

XXVI. THE VERB.

THERE are two auxiliary verbs in French : AVOIR, *to have*, and ÊTRE, *to be* and they are thus conjugated :

The Verb AVOIR, *to have*.

INFINITIVE.

(INFINITIF.)

AVOIR *to have.*

PARTICIPLES.

(PARTICIPES.)

<i>Present. (Présent.)</i>	<i>Past. (Passé.)</i>
ayant <i>having</i>	eu <i>had.*</i>

* NOTE.—The past participles of all verbs form their plurals and feminines in the same manner as adjectives ; as :—*Sing. m. eu ; f. eue. Plur. m. eus ; f. eues.* The present participles *never* vary for either gender or number.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

(MODE INDICATIF.)

<i>Present Tense.</i> (<i>Temps présent.</i>)		<i>Imperfect.</i> (<i>Imparfait.</i>)		<i>Perfect.</i> (<i>Prétérit défini.</i>)	
j'ai	<i>I have</i>	j'avais	<i>I had</i>	j'eus	<i>I had</i>
tu as	<i>thou hast</i>	tu avais	<i>thou hadst</i>	tu eus	<i>thou hadst</i>
il a	<i>he has</i>	il avait	<i>he had</i>	il eut	<i>he had</i>
nous avons	<i>we have</i>	nous avions	<i>we had</i>	nous eûmes*	<i>we had</i>
vous avez	<i>you have</i>	vous aviez	<i>you had</i>	vous eûtes*	<i>you had</i>
ils ont	<i>they have</i>	ils avaient	<i>they had</i>	ils eurent	<i>they had</i>

Compound Tense. (*Prétérit indéfini.*)*Future.* (*Futur.*)

j'ai eu	<i>I have had</i>	j'aurai	<i>I shall or will have</i>
tu as eu	<i>thou hast had</i>	tu auras	<i>thou shalt or wilt have</i>
il a eu	<i>he has had</i>	il aura	<i>he shall or will have</i>
nous avons eu	<i>we have had</i>	nous aurons	<i>we shall or will have</i>
vous avez eu	<i>you have had</i>	vous aurez	<i>you shall or will have</i>
ils ont eu	<i>they have had</i>	ils auront	<i>they shall or will have.</i>

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

(MODE CONDITIONNEL.)

j'aurais	<i>I should or would have</i>
tu aurais	<i>thou shouldst or wouldst have</i>
il aurait	<i>he should or would have</i>
nous aurions	<i>we should or would have</i>
vous auriez	<i>you should or would have</i>
ils auraient	<i>they should or would have.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

(MODE SUBJONCTIF.)

<i>Present.</i> (<i>Présent.</i>)		<i>Imperfect.</i> (<i>Imparfait.</i>)	
que j'aie	<i>that I may have</i>	que j'eusse	<i>that I might have</i>
que tu aies	<i>that thou mayst have</i>	que tu eusses	<i>that thou mightst have</i>
qu'il ait	<i>that he may have</i>	qu'il eût*	<i>that he might have</i>
que nous ayons	<i>that we may have</i>	que nous eussions	<i>that we might have</i>
que vous ayez	<i>that you may have</i>	que vous eussiez	<i>that you might have</i>
qu'ils aient	<i>that they may have</i>	qu'ils eussent	<i>that they might have.</i>

* Observe the circumflex accent placed over the first and second persons plural of the perfect indicative, and over the third person singular of the imperfect subjunctive of every verb denoting the suppression of the letter *s*, which used to precede the letters *m* and *t*.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

(MODE IMPÉRATIF.)

<i>aie</i>	<i>have</i>
<i>qu'il ait</i>	<i>let him have</i>
<i>ayons</i>	<i>let us have</i>
<i>ayez</i>	<i>have</i>
<i>qu'ils aient</i>	<i>let them have.</i>

XXVII. As all tenses of all verbs are rendered negative in the same manner, i.e. by placing the negative particle *ne* before, and *pas* after the person of the verb, it will be sufficient to give examples of one of each description of tense in this verb, a simple and a compound, to serve as models for all other verbs.

NEGATIVE FORM OF

Present Tense.

<i>je n'ai pas</i>	<i>I have not</i>
<i>tu n'as pas</i>	<i>thou hast not</i>
<i>il n'a pas</i>	<i>he has not</i>
<i>nous n'avons pas</i>	<i>we have not</i>
<i>vous n'avez pas</i>	<i>you have not</i>
<i>ils n'ont pas</i>	<i>they have not</i>

Compound Tense.

<i>je n'ai pas eu</i>	<i>I have not had</i>
<i>tu n'as pas eu</i>	<i>thou hast not had</i>
<i>il n'a pas eu</i>	<i>he has not had</i>
<i>nous n'avons pas eu</i>	<i>we have not had</i>
<i>vous n'avez pas eu</i>	<i>you have not had</i>
<i>ils n'ont pas eu</i>	<i>they have not had.</i>

XXVIII. In like manner, two tenses, one simple and one compound, will be sufficient to show how all verbs are to be conjugated interrogatively; i.e. by the simple transposition of the personal pronoun; as:

Present Tense.

<i>ai-je ?</i>	<i>have I ?</i>
<i>as-tu ?</i>	<i>hast thou ?</i>
<i>a-t-il ? *</i>	<i>has he ?</i>
<i>avons-nous ?</i>	<i>have we ?</i>
<i>avez-vous ?</i>	<i>have you ?</i>
<i>ont-ils ?</i>	<i>have they ?</i>

Compound Tense.

<i>ai-je eu ?</i>	<i>have I had ?</i>
<i>as-tu eu ?</i>	<i>hast thou had ?</i>
<i>a-t-il* eu ?</i>	<i>has he had ?</i>
<i>avons-nous eu ?</i>	<i>have we had ?</i>
<i>avez-vous eu ?</i>	<i>have you had ?</i>
<i>ont-ils eu ?</i>	<i>have they had ?</i>

* Notice the insertion of the letter *-t-* here, which always takes place when the vowel *a* or *e*, terminating a person of a verb, immediately precedes the personal pronouns *il* or *elle* or *on*.

XXIX. The Verb **ÊTRE**, to be.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

ÊTRE to be.

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>
étant being.	été* been.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>		<i>Imperfect.</i>	
je suis	<i>I am</i>	j'étais	<i>I was</i>
tu es	<i>thou art</i>	tu étais	<i>thou wert</i>
il est	<i>he is</i>	il était	<i>he was</i>
nous sommes	<i>we are</i>	nous étions	<i>we were</i>
vous êtes	<i>you are</i>	vous étiez	<i>you were</i>
ils sont	<i>they are</i>	ils étaient	<i>they were</i>

<i>Perfect.</i>		<i>Compound Perfect.</i>	
je fus	<i>I was</i>	j'ai été	<i>I have been</i>
tu fus	<i>thou wert</i>	tu as été	<i>thou hast been</i>
il fut	<i>he was</i>	il a été	<i>he has been</i>
nous fûmes	<i>we were</i>	nous avons été	<i>we have been</i>
vous fûtes	<i>you were</i>	vous avez été	<i>you have been</i>
ils furent	<i>they were</i>	ils ont été	<i>they have been</i>

Future.

je serai	<i>I shall or will be</i>
tu seras	<i>thou shalt or wilt be</i>
il sera	<i>he shall or will be</i>
nous serons	<i>we shall or will be</i>
vous serez	<i>you shall or will be</i>
ils seront	<i>they shall or will be</i>

Conditional.

je serais	<i>I should or would be</i>
tu serais	<i>thou shouldst or wouldst be</i>
il serait	<i>he should or would be</i>
nous serions	<i>we should or would be</i>
vous seriez	<i>you should or would be</i>
ils seraient	<i>they should or would be</i>

* *NOTE.*—The past participle of the verb être (été) never changes in the feminine gender or the plural number.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

que je sois	<i>that I may be</i>
que tu sois	<i>that thou mayst be</i>
qu'il soit	<i>that he may be</i>
que nous soyons	<i>that we may be</i>
que vous soyez	<i>that you may be</i>
qu'ils soient	<i>that they may be</i>

Imperfect.

que je fusse	<i>that I might be</i>
que tu fusses	<i>that thou mightst be</i>
qu'il fût	<i>that he might be</i>
que nous fussions	<i>that we might be</i>
que vous fussiez	<i>that you might be</i>
qu'ils fussent	<i>that they might be</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

sois	<i>be</i>
qu'il soit	<i>let him be</i>
soyons	<i>let us be</i>
soyez	<i>be</i>
qu'ils soient	<i>let them be.</i>

XX. There are four conjugations of verbs in French, of which

the 1st	ends in	er
„ 2nd	„	ir
„ 3rd	„	oir
„ 4th	„	re.

as there are many varieties of verbs in each conjugation, it has been thought better to draw out a scheme, first, of eight principal regular verbs, serving as models for the construction of others, and, secondly, eight others, each forming, with its compounds and derivatives, a class in itself.

.B.—The numbers 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, prefixed to the verbs on the following pages are not intended to indicate that there are eight conjugations, but are simply to serve as references for the exercises on the verbs.

PR. TENSE	IMPERFECT	PERFECT	COMPOUND	FUTURE	CONDITIONAL	SUBJUNCT. PRES.	SUBJUNCT. IMPERF.	IMPERATIVE
<i>I give, or am giving.</i> je donne tu donnes il donne nous donnons vous donnez ils donnent	<i>I gave, or was giving.</i> je donnais tu donnais il donnait nous donnions vous donniez ils donnaient	<i>I gave.</i> je donnai tu donnas il donna nous donnâmes vous donnâtes ils donnèrent	<i>I gave, or have given.</i> * j'ai donné tu as donné il a donné nous avons donné vous avez donné ils ont donné	<i>I shall or will give.</i> je donnerai tu donneras il donnera nous donnerons vous donnerez ils donneront	<i>I should or would give.</i> je donnerais tu donnerais il donnerait nous donnerions vous donneriez ils donneraient	<i>That I may give.</i> que je donne que tu donnes qu'il donne que nous donnions que vous donniez qu'ils donnent	<i>That I might give.</i> que je donnasse que tu donnasses qu'il donnât que nous donnassions que vous donnassiez qu'ils donnassent	<i>Give.</i> — donne qu'il donne donnons donnez qu'ils donnent
<i>I finish, or am finishing.</i> je finis tu finis il finit nous finissons vous finissez ils finissent	<i>I finished, or was finishing.</i> je finissais tu finissais il finissait nous finissions vous finissiez ils finissaient	<i>I finished.</i> je finis tu finis il finit nous finîmes vous finîtes ils finirent	<i>I finished, or have finished.</i> * j'ai fini tu as fini il a fini nous avons fini vous avez fini ils ont fini	<i>I shall or will finish.</i> je finirai tu finiras il finira nous finirons vous finirez ils finiront	<i>I should or would finish.</i> je finirais tu finirais il finirait nous finirions vous finiriez ils finiraient	<i>That I may finish.</i> que je finisse que tu finisses qu'il finisse que nous finissions que vous finissiez qu'ils finissent	<i>That I might finish.</i> que je finisse que tu finisses qu'il finît que nous finissions que vous finissiez qu'ils finissent	<i>Finish.</i> — finis qu'il finisse finissons finissez qu'ils finissent
<i>I receive, or am receiving.</i> je reçois tu reçois il reçoit nous recevons vous recevez ils reçoivent	<i>I received, or was receiving.</i> je recevais tu recevais il recevait nous recevions vous receviez ils recevaient	<i>I received.</i> je reçus tu reçus il reçut nous reçûmes vous reçûtes ils reçurent	<i>I received, or have received.</i> * j'ai reçu tu as reçu il a reçu nous avons reçu vous avez reçu ils ont reçu	<i>I shall or will receive.</i> je recevrai tu recevras il recevra nous recevrons vous recevrez ils recevront	<i>I should or would receive.</i> je recevrais tu recevrais il recevrait nous recevions vous recevriez ils recevraient	<i>That I may receive.</i> que je reçoive que tu reçoives qu'il reçoive que nous recevions que vous receviez qu'ils reçoivent	<i>That I might receive.</i> que je reçusse que tu reçusses qu'il reçût que nous reçussions que vous reçussiez qu'ils reçussent	<i>Receive.</i> — reçois qu'il reçoive recevons recevez qu'ils reçoivent
<i>I sell, or am selling.</i> je vends tu vends il vend nous vendons vous vendez ils vendent	<i>I sold, or was selling.</i> je vendais tu vendais il vendait nous vendions vous vendiez ils vendaient	<i>I sold.</i> je vendis tu vendis il vendit nous vendîmes vous vendîtes ils vendirent	<i>I sold, or have sold.</i> * j'ai vendu tu as vendu il a vendu nous avons vendu vous avez vendu ils ont vendu	<i>I shall or will sell.</i> je vendrai tu vendras il vendra nous vendrons vous vendrez ils vendront	<i>I should or would sell.</i> je vendrais tu vendrais il vendrait nous vendrions vous vendriez ils vendraient	<i>That I may sell.</i> que je vende que tu vendes qu'il vende que nous vendions que vous vendiez qu'ils vendent	<i>That I might sell.</i> que je vendisse que tu vendisses qu'il vendît que nous vendissions que vous vendissiez qu'ils vendissent	<i>Sell.</i> — vends qu'il vende vendons vendez qu'ils vendent

(1) DONNER, donner, donne

(2) FINIR, finir, finis

(3) RECEVOIR, recevoir, reçois

(4) VENDRE, vendre, vends

(5) COGNITIVE. Cognitiver, cognitiv. I fear, or am fearing. je crains tu crains il craint nous craignons vous craignez ils craignent	I feel, or was feeling. je sens tu sens il sent nous sentons vous sentez ils sentent	I felt. je sentis tu sentis il sentit nous sentîmes vous sentîtes ils sentirent	I feared, or have feared. je craignais tu craignais il craignait nous craignions vous craigniez ils craignaient	I know, or have known. je connais tu connais il connaît nous connaissons vous connaissez ils connaissent	I shall, or will feel. je sentirai tu sentiras il sentira nous sentirons vous sentirez ils sentiront	I should, or would feel. je sentirais tu sentirais il sentirait nous sentirions vous sentiriez ils sentiraient	That I may feel. que je sente que tu sentes qu'il sente que nous sentions que vous sentiez qu'ils sentent	That I might feel. que je sentisse que tu sentisses qu'il sentît que nous sentissions que vous sentissiez qu'ils sentissent	Feel. — sente qu'il sente sentions sentiez qu'ils sentent
(6) CONDUCT. Conducter, conduct. I conduct, or am conducting. je conduis tu conduis il conduit nous conduisons vous conduisez ils conduisent	I conducted, or was conducting. je conduisis tu conduisis il conduisit nous conduisîmes vous conduisîtes ils conduisirent	I conducted. je conduisis tu conduisis il conduisit nous conduisîmes vous conduisîtes ils conduisirent	I feared, or have feared. je craignais tu craignais il craignait nous craignions vous craigniez ils craignaient	I know, or have known. je connais tu connais il connaît nous connaissons vous connaissez ils connaissent	I shall, or will conduct. je conduirai tu conduiras il conduira nous conduirons vous conduirez ils conduiront	I should, or would conduct. je conduirais tu conduirais il conduirait nous conduirions vous conduiriez ils conduiraient	That I may conduct. que je conduise que tu conduises qu'il conduise que nous conduisions que vous conduisiez qu'ils conduisent	That I might conduct. que je conduisisse que tu conduisisses qu'il conduisît que nous conduisissions que vous conduisissiez qu'ils conduisissent	Conduct. — conduise qu'il conduise conduisions conduisiez qu'ils conduisent
(7) CRUISE. Craindre, craindre. I fear, or am fearing. je crains tu crains il craint nous craignons vous craignez ils craignent	I know, or have known. je connais tu connais il connaît nous connaissons vous connaissez ils connaissent	I know. je connais tu connais il connaît nous connaissons vous connaissez ils connaissent	I shall, or will know. je connaîtrai tu connaîtras il connaîtra nous connaîtrons vous connaîtriez ils connaîtront	I should, or would know. je connaîtrais tu connaîtrais il connaîtrait nous connaîtrions vous connaîtriez ils connaîtraient	That I may know. que je connaisse que tu connaisses qu'il connaisse que nous connaissions que vous connaissiez qu'ils connaissent	That I might know. que je connussisse que tu connussisses qu'il connût que nous connussions que vous connussiez qu'ils connussent	Know. — connaisse qu'il connaisse connussions connussiez qu'ils connaissent	That I might fear. que je craignisse que tu craignisses qu'il craignît que nous craignissions que vous craignissiez qu'ils craignissent	Fear. — craigne qu'il craigne craignons craigniez qu'ils craignent

that although only one so-called compound tense (in French, *l'auxiliaire*) has been given, it stands to reason that any verb may have as many tenses composed of the auxiliary verb and its own compound as there are tenses to the auxiliary verb. e.g. *j'ai donné, j'avais donné, j'aurai donné, j'aurais donné*

INDICATIVE	PRESENT	COMPOUND	FUTURE	CONDITIONAL	PRES. SUBJUNC.	INTERP. SUBJUNC.	IMPERATIVE
I hold. Je tiens tu tiens il tient nous tenons vous tenez ils tiennent	I held. Je tins tu tins il tint nous tinmes vous tintes ils tinrent	I held, or have held. J'ai tenu tu as tenu il a tenu nous avons tenu vous avez tenu ils ont tenu	I shall or will hold. Je tiendrai tu tiendras il tiendra nous tiendrons vous tiendrez ils tiendront	I should or would hold. Je tiendrais tu tiendrais il tiendrait nous tiendrions vous tiendriez ils tiendraient	That I may hold. que je tienne que tu tiennes qu'il tienne que nous tenions que vous teniez qu'ils tiennent	That I might hold. que je tinsse que tu tinses qu'il tint que nous tinssions que vous tinssiez qu'ils tinssent	Hold. — tiens — qu'il tienne tenons tenez qu'ils tiennent
I open. J'ouvre tu ouvres il ouvre nous ouvrons vous ouvrez ils ouvrent	I opened, or was opening. J'ouvrais tu ouvrais il ouvrait nous ouvrions vous ouvriez ils ouvraient	I opened, or have opened. J'ai ouvert tu as ouvert il a ouvert nous avons ouvert vous avez ouvert ils ont ouvert	I shall or will open. J'ouvrirai tu ouvriras il ouvrira nous ouvrirons vous ouvrirez ils ouvriront	I should or would open. J'ouvrirais tu ouvrirais il ouvrirait nous ouvririons vous ouvririez ils ouvriraient	That I may open. que j'ouvre que tu ouvres qu'il ouvre que nous ouvrions que vous ouvriez qu'ils ouvrent	That I might open. que j'ouvrissse que tu ouvrisses qu'il ouvrît que nous ouvrissions que vous ouvrissiez qu'ils ouvrissent	Open. — ouvre — qu'il ouvre ouvrons ouvrez qu'ils ouvrent
I say. Je dis tu dis il dit nous disons vous dites ils disent	I said, or was saying. Je disais tu disais il disait nous disions vous disiez ils disaient	I said, or have said. J'ai dit tu as dit il a dit nous avons dit vous avez dit ils ont dit	I shall or will say. Je dirai tu diras il dira nous dirons vous direz ils diront	I should or would say. Je dirais tu dirais il dirait nous dirions vous diriez ils diraient	That I may say. que je dise que tu dises qu'il dise que nous disions que vous disiez qu'ils disent	That I might say. que je disse que tu dises qu'il dît que nous disions que vous disiez qu'ils disissent	Say. — dis — qu'il dise disons dites qu'ils disent
I do, or make. Je fais tu fais il fait nous faisons vous faites ils font	I did, or made, or was doing, &c. Je faisais tu faisais il faisait nous faisions vous faisiez ils faisaient	I did, or have done. J'ai fait tu as fait il a fait nous avons fait vous avez fait ils ont fait	I shall or will do, or make. Je ferai tu feras il fera nous ferons vous ferez ils feront	I should or would do, or make. Je ferais tu ferais il ferait nous ferions vous feriez ils feraient	That I may do, or make. que je fasse que tu fasses qu'il fasse que nous fassions que vous fassiez qu'ils fassent	That I might do, or make. que je fisse que tu fisses qu'il fît que nous fissions que vous fissiez qu'ils fissent	Do, or make. — fais — qu'il fasse faisons faites qu'ils fassent

* Note the peculiarity of the second person plural of *dire*, being the only verb, besides *faire* and *être*, which makes its second person plural present indicative and in *tes*, instead of *es*; but none of the compounds of *dire* (except *redire*) have this peculiarity.
† Present from *faire*, went from *aller* (to go), sent from *être*, and sent from *avoir*, are the four solitary instances of a third person plural present not ending in *ent*.

(e) PRENDRE, prendre, pris.		I take.	I took, or was taking.	I took.	I took, or have taken.	I shall or will take.	I should or would take.	That I may take.	That I might take.	Tabl.
je prends tu prends il prend nous prenons vous prenez ils prennent	je prenais tu prenais il prenait nous prenions vous preniez ils prenaient	je pris tu pris il prit nous prîmes vous prîtes ils prirent	j'ai pris tu as pris il a pris nous avons pris vous avez pris ils ont pris	je pris tu pris il prit nous prîmes vous prîtes ils prirent	j'ai pris tu as pris il a pris nous avons pris vous avez pris ils ont pris	je prendrai tu prendras il prendra nous prendrons vous prendrez ils prendront	je prendrais tu prendrais il prendrait nous prendrions vous prendriez ils prendraient	que je prenne que tu prennes qu'il prenne que nous prenions que vous preniez qu'ils prennent	que je prise que tu prises qu'il prit que nous prisions que vous prisiez qu'ils prisent	— prends qu'il prenne prenons prenez qu'ils prennent
(f) METTRE, mettre, mis.		I place.	I placed, or was placing.	I placed.	I placed, or have placed.	I shall or will place.	I should or would place.	That I may place.	That I might place.	Place.
je mets tu mets il met nous mettons vous mettez ils mettent	je mettais tu mettais il mettait nous mettions vous mettiez ils mettaient	je mis tu mis il mit nous mîmes vous mîtes ils mirent	j'ai mis tu as mis il a mis nous avons mis vous avez mis ils ont mis	je mis tu mis il mit nous mîmes vous mîtes ils mirent	j'ai mis tu as mis il a mis nous avons mis vous avez mis ils ont mis	je mettrai tu mettras il mettra nous mettrons vous mettrez ils mettront	je mettrais tu mettrais il mettrait nous mettrions vous mettriez ils mettraient	que je mette que tu mettes qu'il mette que nous mettions que vous mettiez qu'ils mettent	que je mise que tu mises qu'il mit que nous misions que vous misiez qu'ils misent	— mets qu'il mette mettons mettez qu'ils mettent
(g) ÉCRIRE, écrire, écrit.		I write.	I wrote, or was writing.	I wrote.	I wrote, or have written.	I shall or will write.	I should or would write.	That I may write.	That I might write.	Write.
j'écris tu écris il écrit nous écrivons vous écrivez ils écrivent	j'écrivais tu écrivais il écrivait nous écrivions vous écriviez ils écrivaient	j'écrivis tu écrivis il écrivit nous écrivîmes vous écrivîtes ils écrivirent	j'ai écrit tu as écrit il a écrit nous avons écrit vous avez écrit ils ont écrit	j'écrivis tu écrivis il écrivit nous écrivîmes vous écrivîtes ils écrivirent	j'ai écrit tu as écrit il a écrit nous avons écrit vous avez écrit ils ont écrit	j'écrirai tu écriras il écrira nous écrirons vous écrirez ils écriront	j'écirais tu écrirais il écrirait nous écriirions vous écririez ils écriraient	que j'écrive que tu écrives qu'il écrive que nous écrivions que vous écriviez qu'ils écrivent	que j'écirivise que tu écrivises qu'il écrivit que nous écrivissions que vous écrivissiez qu'il, écrivissent	— écris qu'il écrive écrivons écrivez qu'ils écrivent
(h) COURIR, courir, couru.		I run.	I ran, or was running.	I ran.	I ran, or have run.	I shall or will run.	I should or would run.	That I may run.	That I might run.	Run.
je cours tu cours il court nous courons vous courez ils courent	je courais tu courais il courait nous courions vous couriez ils couraient	je courus tu courus il courut nous courûmes vous courûtes ils coururent	j'ai couru tu as couru il a couru nous avons couru vous avez couru ils ont couru	je courus tu courus il courut nous courûmes vous courûtes ils coururent	j'ai couru tu as couru il a couru nous avons couru vous avez couru ils ont couru	je courrai tu courras il courra nous courrons vous courrez ils courront	je courrais tu courrais il courrait nous courrions vous courriez ils courraient	que je coure que tu courses qu'il coure que nous courions que vous couriez qu'ils courent	que je courusse que tu courusses qu'il courût que nous courrions que vous courrissiez qu'ils courussent	— cours qu'il coure courons courez qu'ils courent

(a.) Like tenir are conjugated venir (to come), and all the compounds of these two verbs : such as retarder, reculer, contenir, &c. &c. (b.) Like courir are conjugated couvrir (to cover), offrir (to offer), souffrir (to suffer), and all the compounds of these verbs. (c.) Like dire are conjugated all its compounds (see Note *), except maudire (to curse), which takes double s in all persons where that letter is single in dire. (d.) Like faire are conjugated all its compounds, and no other verbs. (e.) Like prendre are conjugated all its compounds, and no other verbs. (f.) Like écrire are conjugated all its compounds, and no other verbs. (g.) Like courir are conjugated all its compounds, and no other verbs. (h.) Like courir are conjugated all its compounds, and no other verbs.

XXXI. REFLECTIVE VERBS.

A *reflective verb* is one that has *one and the same person or thing for subject and object*: in other words, any *transitive verb* becomes *reflective* when its action is reflected back upon the nominative case; as:

je me blesse
je me plais

I wound myself
I please myself.

Reflective verbs differ in *no way* from all other verbs in their *manner of conjugation*; and yet the position of the double pronoun presents difficulties which have rendered it necessary to give a model of one verb of each conjugation, conjugated reflectively.

REFLECTIVE VERB OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

SE REPOSER *to rest oneself.*

*Present Tense.**Affirmative.*

je me repose
tu te reposes
il se repose
nous nous reposons
vous vous reposez
ils se reposent

I rest myself
thou retest thyself
he rests himself
we rest ourselves
you rest yourselves
they rest themselves

Negative.

je ne me repose pas
tu ne te reposes pas
il ne se repose pas
nous ne nous reposons pas
vous ne vous reposez pas
ils ne se reposent pas

I do not rest myself
thou dost not rest thyself
he does not rest himself
we do not rest ourselves
you do not rest yourselves
they do not rest themselves

*Imperfect Tense.**Affirmative.*

je me reposais
tu te reposais
il se reposait
nous nous reposions
vous vous reposiez
ils se reposaient

I was resting myself
thou wert resting thyself
he was resting himself
we were resting ourselves
you were resting yourselves
they were resting themselves

Negative.

je ne me reposais pas
 tu ne te reposais pas
 il ne se reposait pas
 nous ne nous reposions pas
 vous ne vous reposiez pas
 ils ne se reposaient pas

*I was not resting myself
 thou wert not resting thyself
 he was not resting himself
 we were not resting ourselves
 you were not resting yourselves
 they were not resting themselves*

*Perfect Tense.**Affirmative.*

je me reposai
 tu te reposas
 il se reposa
 nous nous reposâmes
 vous vous reposâtes
 ils se reposèrent

*I rested myself
 thou restedst thyself
 he rested himself
 we rested ourselves
 you rested yourselves
 they rested themselves*

Negative.

je ne me reposai pas
 tu ne te reposas pas
 il ne se reposa pas
 nous ne nous reposâmes pas
 vous ne vous reposâtes pas
 ils ne se reposèrent pas

*I did not rest myself
 thou didst not rest thyself
 he did not rest himself
 we did not rest ourselves
 you did not rest yourselves
 they did not rest themselves*

*Compound Tenses.**Present Affirmative.*

je me suis reposé, *or* reposée *
 tu t'es reposé, *or* reposée
 il } s'est { reposé
 elle } { reposée
 nous nous sommes reposés, *or* re-
 posées
 vous vous êtes reposés, *or* reposées
 ils } se sont { reposés }
 elles } { reposées }

*I have rested myself
 thou hast rested thyself
 he has rested himself
 she has rested herself
 we have rested ourselves*

*you have rested yourselves
 they have rested themselves*

Negative.

je ne me suis pas reposé, *or* re-
 posée
 tu ne t'es pas reposé, *or* reposée
 il } ne s'est pas { reposé
 elle } { reposée
 nous ne nous sommes pas reposés,
or reposées
 vous ne vous êtes pas reposés, *or*
 reposées
 ils } ne se sont pas { reposés }
 elles } { reposées }

I have not rested myself

*thou hast not rested thyself
 he has not rested himself
 she has not rested herself
 we have not rested ourselves*

you have not rested yourselves

they have not rested themselves

* The masculine or feminine form of the past participle to be employed, according as the subject of the verb is masculine or feminine.

Imperfect.

je m'étais reposé or reposée
 tu t'étais reposé or reposée
 il } s'était { reposé
 elle } { reposée
 nous nous étions reposés or re-
 posées
 vous vous étiez reposés or reposées
 ils } s'étaient { reposés }
 elles } { reposées }

*I had rested myself
 thou hadst rested thyself
 he had rested himself
 she had rested herself
 we had rested ourselves
 you had rested yourselves
 they had rested themselves*

Negative.

je ne m'étais pas reposé or re-
 posée
 tu ne t'étais pas reposé or reposée,
 etc.

*I had not rested myself
 thou hadst not rested thyself, &c.*

*Future Tense.**Affirmative.*

je me reposerai
 tu te reposeras
 il se reposera
 nous nous reposerons
 vous vous reposerez
 ils se reposeront

*I shall rest myself
 thou wilt rest thyself
 he will rest himself
 we will rest ourselves
 you will rest yourselves
 they will rest themselves*

Negative.

je ne me reposerai pas
 tu ne te reposeras pas
 il ne se reposera pas
 nous ne nous reposerons pas
 vous ne vous reposerez pas
 ils ne se reposeront pas

*I shall not rest myself
 thou wilt not rest thyself
 he will not rest himself
 we will not rest ourselves
 you will not rest yourselves
 they will not rest themselves*

*Conditional.**Affirmative.*

je me reposerais
 tu te reposerais
 il se reposerait
 nous nous reposerions
 vous vous reposeriez
 ils se reposeraient

*I should rest myself
 thou wouldst rest thyself
 he would rest himself
 we would rest ourselves
 you would rest yourselves
 they would rest themselves*

Negative.

je ne me reposerais pas
 tu ne te reposerais pas
 il ne se reposerait pas
 nous ne nous reposerions pas
 vous ne vous reposeriez pas
 ils ne se reposeraient pas

*I would not rest myself
 thou wouldst not rest thyself
 he would not rest himself
 we would not rest ourselves
 you would not rest yourselves
 they would not rest themselves*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.**Affirmative.*

que je me repose
 que tu te reposes
 qu'il se repose
 que nous nous reposions
 que vous vous reposiez
 qu'ils se reposent

*that I may rest myself
 that thou mayst rest thyself
 that he may rest himself
 that we may rest ourselves
 that you may rest yourselves
 that they may rest themselves*

Negative.

que je ne me repose pas
 que tu ne te reposes pas
 qu'il ne se repose pas
 que nous ne nous reposions pas
 que vous ne vous reposiez pas
 qu'ils ne se reposent pas

*that I may not rest myself
 that thou mayst not rest thyself
 that he may not rest himself
 that we may not rest ourselves
 that you may not rest yourselves
 that they may not rest themselves*

*Imperfect Tense.**Affirmative.*

que je me reposasse
 que tu te reposasses
 qu'il se reposât
 que nous nous reposassions
 que vous vous reposassiez
 qu'ils se reposassent

*that I might rest myself
 that thou mightst rest thyself
 that he might rest himself
 that we might rest ourselves
 that you might rest yourselves
 that they might rest themselves*

Negative.

que je ne me reposasse pas
 que tu ne te reposasses pas
 qu'il ne se reposât pas
 que nous ne nous reposassions pas
 que vous ne vous reposassiez pas
 qu'ils ne se reposassent pas

*that I might not rest myself
 that thou mightst not rest thyself
 that he might not rest himself
 that we might not rest ourselves
 that you might not rest yourselves
 that they might not rest themselves*

IMPERATIVE.

Affirmative.

repose-toi
 qu'il se repose
 reposons-nous
 reposez-vous
 qu'ils se reposent

*rest thyself
 let him rest himself
 let us rest ourselves
 rest yourselves
 let them rest themselves*

Negative.

ne te repose pas
 qu'il ne se repose pas
 ne nous reposons pas
 ne vous reposez pas
 qu'ils ne se reposent pas

*do not rest thyself
 let him not rest himself
 let us not rest ourselves
 do not rest yourselves
 let them not rest themselves.*

The first persons singular of each of the tenses of the going verb (and the whole of the compound tense) conjugated in the interrogative form, affirmative and negative:—

INTERROGATIVE.

Present Tense.

Affirmative.

me reposé-je ?

Negative.

| ne me reposé-je pas ?

Imperfect Tense.

me reposais-je ?

| ne me reposais-je pas ?

Perfect Tense.

me reposai-je ?

| ne me reposai-je pas ?

Compound Tense.

Affirmative.

me suis-je reposé, *or* reposée ?

t'es-tu reposé, *or* reposée ?

s'est-il reposé ?

s'est-elle reposée ?

nous sommes-nous reposés, *or* reposées ?

vous êtes-vous reposés, *or* reposées ?

se sont-ils reposés ?

se sont-elles reposées ?

Negative.

ne me suis-je pas reposé, *or* reposée ?

ne t'es-tu pas reposé, *or* reposée ?

ne s'est-il pas reposé ?

ne s'est-elle pas reposée ?

ne nous sommes-nous pas reposés, *or* reposées ?

ne vous êtes-vous pas reposés, *or* reposées ?

ne se sont-ils pas reposés ?

ne se sont-elles pas reposées ?

REFLECTIVE VERB OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

SE DIVERTIR *to amuse oneself.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

je me divertis

tu te divertis

il se divertit

nous nous divertissons

vous vous divertissez

ils se divertissent

Imperfect.

je me divertissais

tu te divertissais

il se divertissait

nous nous divertissions

vous vous divertissiez

ils se divertissaient

Perfect.

je me divertis
tu te divertis
il se divertit
nous nous divertîmes
vous vous divertîtes
ils se divertirent

Compound.

je me suis diverti, *or* divertie
tu t'es diverti, *or* divertie
il } s'est { diverti
elle } { divertie
nous nous sommes diverti, *or* di-
verties
vous vous êtes diverti, *or* diverties
ils } se sont { diverti
elles } { diverties

Future.

je me divertirai
tu te divertiras
il se divertira
nous nous divertirons
vous vous divertirez
ils se divertiront

Conditional.

je me divertirais
tu te divertirais
il se divertirait
nous nous divertirions
vous vous divertiriez
ils se divertiraient

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

que je me divertisse
que tu te divertisses
qu'il se divertisse
que nous nous divertissions
que vous vous divertissiez
qu'ils se divertissent

Imperfect.

que je me divertisse
que tu te divertisses
qu'il se divertît
que nous nous divertissions
que vous vous divertissiez
qu'ils se divertissent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

divertis-toi
qu'il se divertisse

divertissons-nous
divertissez-vous
qu'ils se divertissent.

REFLECTIVE VERB OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

S'APERCEVOIR *to perceive.**

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

je m'aperçois
tu t'aperçois
il s'aperçoit
nous nous apercevons
vous vous apercevez
ils s'aperçoivent

Imperfect.

je m'apercevais
tu t'apercevais
il s'apercevait
nous nous apercevions
vous vous aperceviez
ils s'apercevaient

* Observe that a verb *reflective* in French may frequently be rendered in English without the repetition of the pronoun.

Perfect.

je m'aperçus
tu t'aperçus
il s'aperçut
nous nous aperçûmes
vous vous aperçûtes
ils s'aperçurent

Compound.

je me suis aperçu, *or* aperçue
tu t'es aperçu, *or* aperçue
il } s'est { aperçu
elle } { aperçue
nous nous sommes aperçus,
aperçues
vous vous êtes aperçus, *or* aperç^u
ils } se sont { aperçus
elles } { aperçues

Future.

je m'apercevrai
tu t'apercevras
il s'apercevra
nous nous apercevrons
vous vous apercevrez
ils s'apercevront

Conditional.

je m'apercevrais
tu t'apercevrais
il s'apercevrait
nous nous apercevri^{ons}
vous vous apercevri^{ez}
ils s'apercevraient

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

que je m'aperçoive
que tu t'aperçoives
qu'il s'aperçoive
que nous nous apercevions
que vous vous aperceviez
qu'ils s'aperçoivent

Imperfect.

que je m'aperçusse
que tu t'aperçusses
qu'il s'aperçût
que nous nous aperçussions
que vous vous aperçussiez
qu'ils s'aperçussent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

aperçois-toi
qu'il s'aperçoive
apercevons-nous
apercevez-vous
qu'ils s'aperçoivent.

REFLECTIVE VERB OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

SE RENDRE *to surrender, betake oneself, go.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

je me rends
tu te rends
il se rend
nous nous rendons
vous vous rendez
ils se rendent

Imperfect.

je me rendais
tu te rendais
il se rendait
nous nous rendions
vous vous rendiez
ils se rendaient

Perfect.
 je me rendis
 tu te rendis
 il se rendit
 nous nous rendîmes
 vous vous rendîtes
 ils se rendirent

Compound.
 je me suis rendu, *or* rendue
 tu t'es rendu, *or* rendue
 il } s'est { rendu
 elle } { rendue
 nous nous sommes rendus, *or*
 rendues
 vous vous êtes rendus, *or* rendues
 ils } se sont { rendus
 elles } { rendues

Future.
 je me rendrai
 tu te rendras
 il se rendra
 nous nous rendrons
 vous vous rendrez
 ils se rendront

Conditional.
 je me rendrais
 tu te rendrais
 il se rendrait
 nous nous rendrions
 vous vous rendriez
 ils se rendraient

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.
 que je me rende
 que tu te rendes
 qu'il se rende
 que nous nous rendions
 que vous vous rendiez
 qu'ils se rendent

Imperfect.
 que je me rendisse
 que tu te rendisses
 qu'il se rendît
 que nous nous rendissions
 que vous vous rendissiez
 qu'ils se rendissent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Affirmative.
 rends-toi
 qu'il se rende
 rendons-nous
 rendez-vous
 qu'ils se rendent

Negative.
 ne te rends pas
 qu'il ne se rende pas
 ne nous rendons pas
 ne vous rendez pas
 qu'ils ne se rendent pas.

Like the above are to be conjugated the reflective forms of all ordinary verbs of the fourth conjugation—*se vendre, s'entendre, &c.*; and likewise the reflective forms of the verbs *battre, rompre, perdre, mordre*, and their compounds. (See page 120.)

Observe, in the four foregoing models of conjugation, the position of the pronoun in the imperative mood affirmative second person singular, and first and second persons plural, the only instances where a *governed* personal pronoun can follow the verb. (See Rule XIX. page 25.)

In the above reflective verbs the *governed* pronoun is in the accusative. Where the original verb requires a dative, as *donner, parler, &c.*, the governed pronouns are the same in form though different in case.

je me parle
tu te parles
il se parle
elle se parle
nous nous parlons
vous vous parlez
ils (elles) se parlent

*I speak to myself
thou speakest to thyself
he speaks to himself
she speaks to herself
we speak to ourselves
you speak to yourselves
they speak to themselves.*

XXXII. A verb is called *regular* when it follows certain special rules in the formation of some of its tenses.

Every regular verb has five *primitive* or *simple tenses* (*temps primitifs*), from which the others, called in French *temps dérivés* (*derived tenses*), are formed, in the following manner:—

Primitive Tenses.

Derived Tenses.

From the <i>Infinitive</i>	are formed	the <i>future</i> and <i>conditional</i> , by adding thereto for the future ai , for the cond. ais .
„ <i>Present Participle</i> „		the plural of the <i>present tense</i> , the <i>imperf. indic.</i> , and the <i>present subj.</i> , by changing the termination ant , for the plur. pres., into ons , &c. ; for the imperf. indic., into ais ; for the pres. subj., into e .
„ <i>Past Participle</i> „		all <i>compound tenses</i> , with the help of the auxiliary ; as, <i>j'ai donné</i> , &c.
„ <i>Present Indicative</i>	is formed	the <i>second singular imperative</i> .
„ <i>Perfect Indicative</i> „		the <i>imperf. subj.</i> , by adding se to the second sing. of perf. indic.

One verb will serve as a model to illustrate the foregoing rule.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Pres. Participle.</i>	<i>Past Part.</i>	<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Perfect Indic.</i>
connaître	connaissant	connu	je connais	je connus
—	—	—	—	tu connus
<i>Future.</i>	<i>Plural of Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Comp.</i>	<i>Second Pers.</i>	—
je connaîtrai,*	nous connaissons	j'ai connu	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Imperf. Subj.</i>
&c. &c.	vous connaissez	—	<i>Imperative.</i>	que je connusse,
—	ils connaissent	<i>Imperf. Comp.</i>	connais	&c. &c.
<i>Conditional.</i>	—	j'avais connu, &c. &c.	—	—
je connaîtrais,*	<i>Imperf. Indic.</i>	—	—	—
&c. &c.	je connaissais, &c.	—	—	—
—	—	—	—	—
—	<i>Present Subjunct.</i>	—	—	—
—	que je connaisse, &c.	—	—	—
—	&c.	—	—	—

* In the fourth conjugation the final e of the infinitive is elided before the **ai** of the *future* and **ais** of the *conditional*.

Many of the verbs conjugated in the foregoing schemes on pages 38, 39, 40, 41, err in some points against the above-mentioned rules, but not sufficiently so as to prevent their being classed amongst *regular verbs*.

The only deviations from these rules are to be found in—

1st. *Recevoir* (and those verbs conjugated like it), which makes in the third person plural pres., *reçoivent*; in the future and conditional, *recevrai* and *recevrais*; and in the pres. subj. sing., *que je reçoive, que tu reçoives, qu'il reçoive*; third person plural, *qu'ils reçoivent*. The first and second persons plural of the same tense follow the ordinary rule.

2nd. *Tenir* and *Venir*, making in the third person plural pres. *ils tiennent, ils viennent*; in the future and conditional, *je tiendrai, -ais, je viendrai, -ais*; in the pres. subj., *que je vienne, que je tienne, &c.* Both these verbs, however, are regular in the first and second persons plural of the same tense, *que nous tenions, que nous venions*.

3rd. *Dire*, which makes *vous dites* in the second person plural present.

4th. *Faire*, which makes in the plural of the present, *vous faites, ils font*; in the future and conditional, *je ferai, je ferais*; and in the pres. subj., *que je fasse, &c.*, irregular all through that tense.

5th. *Prendre*, which makes in the third person plural pres. indicative, *ils prennent*; and in the pres. subj., *que je prenne*.

6th. *Courir*, which makes in the future and conditional, *je courrai, je courrais*.

Faire and *Pouvoir* are the only two verbs which form their subjunctive present irregularly throughout; e.g.:

que je fasse
que tu fasses
qu'il fasse
que nous *fassions*
que vous *fassiez*
qu'ils fassent

que je puisse
que tu puisses
qu'il puisse
que nous *puissions*
que vous *puissiez*
qu'ils puissent

all others, however irregular in the singular and third person plural, forming their first and second persons plural by the ordinary rules.

There are four verbs which do *not* form their second person singular imperative from the first person singular present; they are:

			Pres. Indic.		Imper.
aller	to go,	which makes	je vais,	but	va
avoir	to have,	"	j'ai,	"	aie
savoir	to know,	"	je sais,	"	sache
être	to be,	"	je suis,	"	sois

XXXIII. Before proceeding to treat of irregular, impersonal, and defective verbs, it will not be out of place to mention certain peculiarities of some regular verbs of the first conjugation, which concern their *orthography* rather than their form of conjugation.

1. Of verbs terminating in *ger*.

All such verbs insert the letter *e* in all cases where an *a* or *o* would naturally follow the *g*; as, for instance, *manger*, to eat; pres. part. *mangeant*; pres. plur. *nous mangeons*; imperf. indic. *je mangeais*, &c.; perfect indic. *je mangeai*, &c.; imperf. subj. *que je mangeasse*, &c. The reason is obvious. The letter *g* being sounded hard before the vowels *a* and *o*, the insertion of the letter *e* is necessary to retain the soft sound of the *g*.

2. Of verbs terminating in *cer*.

The letter *c* has a soft sound before the vowels *e* and *i*, and a harsh sound before the vowels *a*, *o*, and *u*. Consequently, wherever the vowels *a* and *o* (*u* does not occur in the first conjugation) follow the letter *c*, that letter takes the *cedilla*, to restore its soft sound; as, *commencer*, to begin; plur. pres. *nous commençons*; imperf. indic. *je commençais*; imperf. subj. *que je commençasse*.

3. Of verbs ending in *ler*.

In all cases where an *e* mute (i.e. *not* accented, as in the past participle *lé*, or pronounced, as in the infinitive *ler*, or second person plur. pres. *lez*) follows the letter *l*, the latter letter is doubled; e.g. *appeler*, to call; pres. indic. *j'appelle*, *tu appelles*, &c.; pres. subj. *que j'appelle*, *que tu appelles*, &c.

4. The same rule applies to verbs ending in *ter*, the *t* being doubled before an *e* mute; as, *jeter*, to cast; pres. indic. *jette*; subj. *que je jette*, &c.: though it is more usual with some writers not to double the *t*, but to place a grave accent over the preceding *e*; as, *acheter*, to buy, *j'achète*, &c.

N.B.—This rule does *not* apply to words ending in *ler* or *ter*, preceded by an accentuated syllable, such as *révéler*, to reveal, *végéter*, to vegetate, &c.

5. Verbs ending in *ver* or *ner* take a grave accent on the preceding the *v* or *n*, when that letter is followed by an

ute ; as, *se promener*, to walk ; pres. indic. *je me promène* ; res. subj. *que je me promène*, &c. : *achever*, to complete ; res. indic. *j'achève* ; pres. subj. *que j'achève*.

6. Of verbs ending in *yer*.

These verbs change the *y* into *i* before a mute *e* ; as, from *employer*, to employ ; pres. indic. *j'emploie* ; pres. subj. *que j'emploie* : from *payer*, to pay ; pres. indic. *je paie* ; pres. subj. *que je paie*.

Certain peculiarities are to be observed in some verbs of the second conjugation which are in other respects *regular*.

Bénir, to bless, has two forms of past participle, *béni*, *bénie*, meaning *blessed* in the ordinary acceptation of the word ; *béni*, *bénite*, when applied to bread or water consecrated for ecclesiastical purposes.

Fleurir, to flourish, as of flowers, trees, &c., has for its present participle *fleurissant* ; imperf. *je fleurissais*, &c. ; but when used in a figurative sense, as applied to commerce, &c., it has *florissant* and *florissait*.

Hair, to hate, has two dots on the *i*, and the *ai* is pronounced as a dissyllable in all its persons, except in the three persons singular of the present indicative, *je hais*, *tu hais*, *il hait*, and in the second person sing. of the imperative, *hais*.

THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

All verbs of this conjugation whose infinitive ends in *indre*, as *peindre*, *craindre*, *joindre*, &c., and all verbs in *soudre*, as *absoudre*, omit the letter *d* from the three persons singular of the present indicative ; as :

<i>je peins</i>	<i>tu peins</i>	<i>il peint</i>
<i>je crains</i>	<i>tu crains</i>	<i>il craint</i>
<i>j'absous</i>	<i>tu absous</i>	<i>il absout.</i>

XXXIV. TABLE OF THE PRINCIPAL

ARRANGEMENT

PRIMITIVE TENSES.

PRESENT INFINITIVE	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	PAST PARTICIPLE	PRESENT INDICATIVE	PERFECT
ABSOUDRE <i>to</i> <i>absolve</i>	absolvant	absous, (fem.) absoute	j'absous	(wanting)
*ACQUÉRIR <i>to</i> <i>acquire</i>	acquérant	acquis	j'acquiens	j'acquis
ALLER <i>to go</i>	allant	allé	je vais	j'allai
S'EN ALLER <i>to</i> <i>go away</i>	(see p. 62)			
ASSAILLIR <i>to</i> <i>assail</i>	assaillant	assailli	j'assaille	j'assailis
S'ASSEOIR <i>to sit</i> <i>down</i>	(see p. 63)			
BOIRE <i>to drink</i>	buvant	bu	je bois	je bus
BOUILLIR <i>to boil</i>	bouillant	bouilli	je bous	je bouillis
BRAIRE <i>to bray</i>	—	—	il braie	—
BRUIRE <i>to make</i> <i>a noise</i>	bruyant (more often used as an adjective)	—	—	—
CHOIR <i>to fall</i>	—	chu	—	—
CLORE <i>to close</i>	—	clos, close	je clos	—
CONCLURE <i>to</i> <i>conclude</i>	concluant	conclus	je conclus	je conclus
CONFIRE <i>to pre-</i> <i>serve (fruits)</i>	confisant	confit	je confis	je confis
COUDRE <i>to sew</i>	cousant	cousu	je couds	je cousis
CROIRE <i>to</i> <i>believe</i>	croyant	cru	je crois	je crus
CROÎTRE <i>to</i> <i>grow</i>	croissant	crû	je crois	je crûs

* And so Conquérir, Enquérir, Requérir.

REGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS, ALPHABETICAL ORDER.

DERIVED TENSES.

N.B.—Only those tenses (or portions of tenses) which are not formed from the primitive tenses in the regular manner (vide Rule xxxii. page 49) are here given.

Pres. indic. j'acquiers, tu acquiers, il acquiert; ils acquièrent.
Fut. j'acquerrai. *Cond.* j'acquerrais. *Pres. subj.* que j'acquière, que tu acquières, qu'il acquière; qu'ils acquièrent.
Pres. indic. je vais, tu vas, il va; ils vont. *Fut.* j'irai. *Cond.* j'irais. *Pres. subj.* que j'aïlle, que tu aïlles, qu'il aïlle; qu'ils aïllent. *Second pers. imper.* va.

Pres. j'assaille, tu assailles, &c. *Fut.* j'assaillirai, or j'assaillerai, but more commonly the former.

Third pers. plur. pres. indic. ils boivent. *Pres. subj.* que je boive, que tu boives, qu'il boive; qu'ils boivent.

Pres. indic. je bous, tu bous, il bout; ils bouillent. (Rest regular.)
 This verb is hardly ever used except in the infinitive, and in the third person sing. and plur. of the present: il brait, ils braient.
 This verb is rarely used in any tenses but the infinitive mood and third person sing. and plur. of the imperfect: il bruyait, ils bruyaient.

This verb is rarely, if ever, used in any other tenses.

Pres. je clos, tu clos, il clôt. *Fut.* je clorai. Rarely used in other tenses.

Pres. indic. je couds, tu couds, il coud. *Third pers. plur.* ils cousent.

TABLE OF IRREGULAR / PRIMITIVE TENSES.

PRESENT INFINITIVE	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	PAST PARTICIPLE	PRESENT INDICATIVE	PERFECT
CUEILLIR <i>to</i> <i>gather</i>	cueillant	cueilli	je cueille	je cueillis
DÉCHOIR <i>to fall,</i> <i>decline</i>	—	déchu, dé- chue	je déchois	je déchus
DISSOUDRE <i>to</i> <i>dissolve</i>	dissolvant	dissons, dis- soute	je dissons	(wanting)
ÉCHOIR <i>to fall</i> <i>to the lot of,</i> <i>to fall due</i>	échéant	échu	j'échois	j'échus
ÉCLORE <i>to blow</i> <i>(as a flower)</i>	—	éclos, éclose	il éclot	—
ENVOYER <i>to</i> <i>send</i>	envoyant	envoyé	j'envoie	j'envoyai
EXCLURE <i>to</i> <i>exclude</i>	excluant	exclu	j'exclus	j'exclus
FALLOIR <i>to be</i> <i>wanting, to</i> <i>be necessary</i>	—	fallu	il faut	il fallut
FAILLIR <i>to be</i> <i>within a little</i> <i>of, or to fail</i> <i>(in trade)</i>	faillant	failli	je faux	je faillis
FRIRE <i>to fry</i>	—	frit, frite	je fris	—
FUIR <i>to fly (as</i> <i>also is con-</i> <i>jugated s'en-</i> <i>fuir, to escape)</i>	fuyant	fui	je fuis	je fuis
HAÏR <i>to hate</i>	haïssant	haï	je hais	je haïs
GÉSIR <i>to lie</i>	gisant	—	il gît	—
ISSIR <i>to issue</i>	—	issu, issue	—	—
LIRE <i>to read</i>	lisant	lu	je lis	je lus
LUIRE <i>to shine</i>	luisant	lui	je luis	(wanting)
MAUDIRE <i>to</i> <i>curse</i>	maudissant	maudit	je maudis	je maudis
MOUDRE <i>to grind (as</i> <i>corn)</i>	moulant	moulu	je mouds	je moulus

: VERBS—*continued.*

DERIVED TENSES.

only those tenses (or portions of tenses) which are not formed from the five tenses in the regular manner (vide Rule xxxii. page 49) are here

cueilleraï. *Cond.* je cueillerais.

er. of the pres., the whole of the imperf. indic. and pres. subj., formed as if from an existing present part., déchoyant. je décherrai. *Cond.* je décherrais.

erson sing. pres. written il échoit, or il échet. *Fut.* j'écherrai. j'écherrais.

used except in the third person sing. and plur.

d *Cond.* j'enverrai, j'enverrais.

erson sing. pres. il exclut. *Past part.* exclu, exclue, or exclus, se.

used impersonally in the third person sing. of all its tenses. il faudra. *Cond.* il faudrait. *Pres. subj.* qu'il faille. *Past* qu'il fallût.

used except in the pres. and sing. perf., je faillis, and com- l j'ai failli, *I was very near.*

used but in the sing. of the pres., the fut. je frirai, the past frit, frite, and the imperative, fris.

er : takes two dots in all persons of all tenses of this verb t the pres. sing., je hais, tu hais, il hait.

used except in the third person sing., first and third persons pres., il gît, nous gisons, ils gisent, and the imperfect, il . It is most commonly found as an inscription on tomb- s: ci gît, *here lies.*

d in any other persons.

es and persons formed regularly from primitives.

es and persons formed regularly.

rb differs from other compounds of *Dire*, in that the letter s ublished in all tenses and persons derived from the pres. part. *dic.* je mouds, tu mouds, il moud.

TABLE OF IRREGULAR PRIMITIVE TENSES.

PRESENT INFINITIVE	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	PAST PARTICIPLE	PRESENT INDICATIVE	PERFECT
MOURIR <i>to die</i>	mourant	mort, morte	je meurs	je mourus
MOUVOIR <i>to move</i>	mouvant	mû	je meus	je mus
NAÎTRE <i>to be born</i>	naissant	né	je nais	je naquis
NUIRE <i>to injure</i>	nuisant	nui (<i>no fem.</i>)	je nuis	je nuisis
OÛIR <i>to hear</i>	—	ouï, ouïe	—	j'ouïs
PAÎTRE <i>to feed (sheep, cattle)</i>	paissant	pu	je pais	(<i>wanting</i>)
PLAIRE <i>to please</i>	plaisant	plu	je plais	je plus
PLEUVOIR <i>to rain</i>	pleuvant	plu	il pleut	il plut
POURVOIR <i>to provide</i>	pourvoyant	pourvu	je pourvois	je pourvus
POUVOIR <i>to be able</i>	pouvant	pu (<i>no fem.</i>)	je puis, or je peux	je pus
PRÉVALOIR <i>to prevail</i>	prévalant	prévalu	je prévaux	je prévalus
PRÉVOIR <i>to foresee</i>	prévoyant	prévu	je prévois	je prévis
QUÉRIR <i>to seek</i>	—	—	—	—
RAVOIR <i>to have again</i>	—	—	—	—
RENOYER <i>to send away</i>	renvoyant	renvoyé	je renvoie	je renvoyai
REPARTIR <i>to set off again</i>	—	—	—	—
RÉPARTIR <i>to distribute</i>	—	—	—	—
RÉSOUORE	résolvant	résous* (<i>no fem.</i>), ré- solu, réso- lue	je résous	je résolus
RESSORTIR <i>to go out again</i>	—	—	—	—

* Résous means changed, or dissolved; as, le brouillard s'est résous en pluie, the fog has changed into rain, or 'solved,' as a problem. Résolu means resolved, determined.

CTIVE VERBS—*continued.*

DERIVED TENSES.

N.B.—Only those tenses (or portions of tenses) which are not formed from the primitive tenses in the regular manner (vide Rule xxxii. page 49) are here given.

Pres. indic. je meurs, tu meurs, il meurt; ils meurent. *Pres. subj.* que je meure, &c. *Fut. and Cond.* je mourrai, je mourrais.

Pres. indic. je meus, tu meus, il meut; ils meuvent. *Pres. subj.* que je meuve, que tu meuves, qu'il meuve; qu'ils meuvent.

All derived tenses formed regularly. It is conjugated with *Être*: je suis né, j'étais né, &c.

Hardly found except in the infinitive, the past part., and the second plur. pres., oyez! *listen!* in proclamations.

The derived tenses are formed regularly, but little used. The perf. indic. and imperf. subj. are wanting.

Derived tenses formed regularly.

Fut. and Cond. il pleuvra, il pleuvrait. Impersonal verb.

Fut. je pourvoirai. *Cond.* je pourvoirais. Other tenses regular.

Pres. indic. je peux, or je puis, tu peux, il peut; ils peuvent.

Fut. and Cond. je pourrai, je pourrais. *Pres. subj.* que je puisse, que tu puisses, qu'il puisse; que nous puissions, que vous puissiez, qu'ils puissent. *No imperative.*

Conjugated like *Valoir*, with the exception of the present subj., que je prévale, que tu prévaies, &c. Regular all through its persons.

Conjugated throughout like *Voir* (which see), except the fut. and cond., je prévoirai, je prévoirais.

Only used in the infinitive after the verbs *Envoyer, Aller, Venir.*

Only used in the infinitive mood.

Regular throughout, except in fut. and cond., je renverrai, je renverrais.

Conjugated in every respect like *Partir*.

Conjugated in every respect like an ordinary verb of the second conjugation. See *Finir*.

Conjugated in all respects like *Absoudre*.

Conjugated in all respects like *Sortir*. See *Sentir*, page 124.

TABLE OF IRREGULAR PRIMITIVE TENSES.

PRESENT INFINITIVE	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	PAST PARTICIPLE	PRESENT INDICATIVE	PERFECT
RESSORTIR <i>to</i> <i>be under the</i> <i>jurisdiction</i> <i>of</i>	—	—	—	—
RIRE <i>to laugh</i>	riant	ri (<i>no fem.</i>)	je ris	je ris
SAILLIR <i>to gush</i> <i>forth (as wa-</i> <i>ter)</i>	—	—	—	—
SAILLIR (<i>term of</i> <i>architecture</i>) <i>to stand out</i>	sailant	sailli	—	—
SAVOIR <i>to know</i>	sachant	su	je sais	je sus
SEoir <i>to sit</i> <i>(obsolete)</i>	séant, sé- ante	sis, sise, <i>situated.</i>	—	—
SEoir <i>to suit,</i> <i>or become</i>	seyant	—	—	—
IL SIED <i>it</i> <i>becomes</i>	—	—	—	—
SOURDRE <i>to</i> <i>spring (as</i> <i>water from</i> <i>the earth)</i>	—	—	—	—
SUFFIRE <i>to suf-</i> <i>fice</i>	suffisant	suffi (<i>no</i> <i>fem.</i>)	je suffis	je suffis
SUIVRE <i>to follow</i>	suivant	suivi	je suis	je suivis
S'ENSUIVRE <i>to</i> <i>ensue</i>	—	—	—	—
SURSEoir <i>to</i> <i>suspend, put</i> <i>off</i>	surseyant	sursis	je surseois	je sursis
TAIRE <i>to keep</i> <i>secret</i>	taisant	tu, tue	je tais	je tus
*TRAIRE <i>to milk</i>	trayant	trait	je trais	—
TRESSAILLIR <i>to</i> <i>shudder</i>	tressaillant	tressailli	je tressaille	je tressaillis
VAINCRE <i>to con-</i> <i>quer</i>	vainquant	vaincu	je vaincs	je vainquis
VALOIR <i>to be</i> <i>worth</i>	valant	valu (<i>no</i> <i>fem.</i>)	je vaud	je valus

* And Soustraire, to subtract, or draw away (stealthily).

REFLECTIVE VERBS—*continued.*

DERIVED TENSES.

N.B.—Only those tenses (or portions of tenses) which are not formed from the primitive tenses in the regular manner (vide Rule xxxii. page 49) are here given.

Conjugated in all respects like an ordinary verb of the second conjugation. See *Finir*.

Conjugated like an ordinary verb of the second conjugation, but rarely used except in the third person sing. of most tenses.

Used in the third persons of tenses, and thus conjugated:—*Pres.* il saille. *Imperf.* il saillait. *Fut.* il saillera.

Plur. of pres. nous savons, vous savez, ils savent. *Imperf.* je savais. *Fut. and Cond.* je saurai, je saurais. *Pres. subj.* que je sache, &c. *Imper.* sache, qu'il sache; sachons, sachez, qu'ils sachent.

Only employed in the third person sing. or plur. of certain tenses. *Pres.* il sied; ils sièent. *Imperf.* il séyait. *Fut. and Cond.* il siéra, il sierait.

Verb impersonal, formed from the preceding.

Only used in the infinitive mood, or in the third persons sing. and plur. of the pres. indic.: il sourd, ils sourdent.

Other tenses formed regularly.

Other tenses formed regularly.

Only used in the third persons sing. and plur. of the various tenses; then formed as *Suivre*.

Third person plur. pres. ils sursoient. *Fut. and Cond.* je surseoirai, je surseoirais. *Pres. subj.* que je soursoie, &c.

This verb is more common in its reflective or pronominal form of *Se Taire*, to be silent.

This verb has no perf. indic. or imperf. subj.

Fut. and Cond. je tressaillirai, je tressaillerais, or je tressaillirai, je tressaillirais.

Pres. indic. je vains, tu vains, il vaine. The rest is regularly formed.

Pres. je vaux, tu vaux, il vaut. *Fut.* je vaudrai. *Cond.* je vaudrais. *Pres. subj.* que je vaille, que tu vailles, qu'il vaille; qu'ils vaillent. *No imperative.*

TABLE OF IRREGULAR
PRIMITIVE TENSES.

PRESENT INFINITIVE	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	PAST PARTICIPLE	PRESENT INDICATIVE	PERFECT
VÊTRE <i>to clothe</i> VIVRE <i>to live</i> VOIR <i>to see</i>	vêtant vivant voyant	vêtu vécu vu	je vêts je vis je vois	je vêtis je vécus je vis
VOULOIR	voulant	voulu	je veux	je voulus

The verb *s'en aller*, to go away, is conjugated in all respects like the verb *aller*, to go, but the order of the two pronouns present some difficulty in the compound tenses and imperative mood.

je m'en suis allé, <i>or</i> allée	<i>I went away</i>
tu t'en es allé, <i>or</i> allée	<i>thou wentest away</i>
il s'en est allé	<i>he went away</i>
elle s'en est allée	<i>she went away</i>
nous nous en sommes allés, <i>or</i> allées	<i>we went away</i>
vous vous en êtes allés, <i>or</i> allées	<i>you went away</i>
ils s'en sont allés	<i>they went away</i>
elles s'en sont allées }	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Affirmative.</i>	<i>Negative.</i>
va-t'en	ne t'en va pas
qu'il s'en aille	qu'il ne s'en aille pas
allons-nous en	ne nous en allons pas
allez-vous en	ne vous en allez pas
qu'ils s'en aillent	qu'ils ne s'en aillent pas.

S'ASSEoir *to sit down.*

<i>Present part.</i>	s'asseyant
<i>Past part.</i>	assis, assise

THE VERBS—continued.

DERIVED TENSES.

—Only those tenses (or portions of tenses) which are not formed from the primitive tenses in the regular manner (vide Rule xxxii. page 49) are here given.

indic. je vêts, tu vêts, il vêt. (Rest regularly formed.)
indic. je vis, tu vis, il vit. (Rest regularly formed.)
 je verrai. *Cond.* je verrais. The *i* of the infinitive is changed to *y* in every instance where it is immediately followed by an *e* mute; as:—*Third pers. plur. pres. indic.* ils voient; and *Pres. subj.* que je voie, &c.
indic. je veux, tu veux, il veut; ils veulent. *Fut.* je voudrai.
ond. je voudrais. *Pres. subj.* que je veuille, que tu veuilles, qu'il veuille; qu'ils veuillent. No imperative, except second person *ur.* veuillez, *be so good as to.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

je m'assieds, or je m'asseois*
 tu t'assieds, or tu t'asseois
 il s'assied, or il s'asseoit
 nous nous asseyons, or nous nous assoyons
 vous vous asseyez, or vous vous assoyez
 ils s'asseyent, or ils s'asseoient

* The first form is the more commonly used.

Imperfect.

m'asseyais, or je m'asseyais

Perfect.

je m'assis

Future.

m'assiérai, or je m'asseyerai

Conditional.

je m'assiérais, or je m'asseyerais

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

je m'asseye, or que je m'assoie
 tu t'asseyes, or que tu t'assoies
 s'asseye, or qu'il s'assoie
 nous nous asseyions, or que nous nous assoyions
 vous vous asseyiez, or que vous vous assoyiez
 s'asseyent, or qu'ils s'assoient

Past.

que je m'assisse
 que tu t'assisses
 qu'il s'assît
 que nous nous assissions
 que vous vous assissiez
 qu'ils s'assissent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

assieds-toi
 qu'il s'asseye
 asseyons-nous
 asseyez-vous
 qu'ils s'asseyent.

XXXV. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

IMPERSONAL verbs are those verbs which are only employed in the infinitive mood or the third person singular of each tense. The following are the most common:—

Impersonal Verbs.

1. Arriver, *to happen*2. Y avoir, *to be*3. Aller, *to go, to be on the point of*4. S'agir, *to be the matter, or question*5. Convenir, *to suit, be becoming*6. En coûter, *to cost*7. S'ensuivre, *to follow (as a consequence)*8. Entrer, *to enter*9. Être, *to be*Examples of the Manner in which the
are employed1. Il arrive souvent, *it often happens*. Il m'est arrivé, *it happened to me*2. Il y a quelqu'un dans votre chambre, *there is some one in your room*. Il y aura l'orage bientôt, *there will be a storm*. Il va y avoir une revue, *there is going to be a review*3. Il va pleuvoir, *it is going to rain*4. Il s'agit de nous préparer, *we have to think of getting prepared*. De quoi s'agit-il? *what is the question, the matter, in hand*5. Il ne me convient pas que vous fassiez cela, *I do not like you doing that*. Venez quand vous conviendra, *come when it suits you*6. Il vous en coûtera cher, *it will cost you dear*. Il lui en a coûté un bras, *it cost him an arm*7. Il s'ensuivit un grand malheur, *a great misfortune was the result*. Il s'ensuivra que . . . *the result will be that . . .*8. Il y entre beaucoup de monde, *a good many people go in there*. Il ne m'est jamais entré dans la tête, *it never entered into my head*9. Il est à présumer, *it is to be presumed*. Il est des hommes qui . . ., *there are men who . . .*

. En être, *to result*

. En être (*in comparison*)

1. Faire chaud, *to be warm*; faire froid, *to be cold*; faire du vent, *to be windy*; faire beau temps, *to be fine*; faire mauvais temps, *to be bad weather*

3. Se faire tard, *to be getting late*

4. Se faire, *to be made, to take place*

15. Falloir, *to be necessary*. Pres. Il faut; imperf. il fallait; perf. il fallut. Comp. tenses. Il a fallu, il avait fallu, il aura fallu, &c. Fut. Il faudra. Cond. Il faudrait. Subj. pres. Qu'il faille; imperf. qu'il fallût

16. Falloir, *to be wanting*

17. S'en falloir peu, *or* beaucoup, *to be within a little of, or the contrary*

18. Geler, *to freeze*; dégeler, *to thaw*; neiger, *to snow*; pleuvoir (il pleut, il pleuvait, il a plu, il pleuvra), *to rain*; tonner, *to thunder*; tomber

10. Je m'attendais à un grand triomphe, mais il n'en a rien été, *I expected a great triumph, but nothing came of it*. Il en sera comme il vous plaira, *it shall be as you please*

11. Il en est de vous comme de moi, *it is just the same with you as with me*

12. Comme il fait chaud dans cette salle! *how hot it is in this room!* Il a fait bien froid hier, *it was very cold yesterday*. Il fera beaucoup plus chaud bientôt, *it will be much warmer soon, &c.*

13. Dépêchez-vous, il se fait tard, *make haste, it is getting late*

14. Il s'y fait beaucoup de bruit, *there is a good deal of noise made there*

15. Falloir followed by the infinitive:—Adieu! il faut partir, *good-bye! we must be off*. Il ne faut pas médire de ses amis, *one must not speak ill of one's friends*. Falloir followed by the subjunctive:—Il faut que je vous dise, *I must tell you*. Il fallait que je le suivisse partout, *I had to follow him everywhere*

16. Il me faut un chapeau et des gants, *I want a hat and some gloves*. Il vous faudra un passeport, *you will require a passport*

17. Il s'en est peu fallu qu'il n'ait été tué, *he was within a very little of being killed*. Peu s'en est fallu que je ne tombasse, *I was very near falling*. Tant s'en faut qu'il y consente, *he is so far from consenting to that*

18. Il va pleuvoir, *it is going to rain*. Il a plu toute la nuit, *it has rained all night*. Il gèlera cette nuit, *it will freeze to-night*. Hier il a venté

- de la pluie, de la grêle, *to rain, hail*; venter, *to blow (as the wind)*
19. Importer, *to be of consequence*
20. Manquer, *to be wanting*
21. Paraître, *to appear, seem*
22. Pouvoir (followed by *venir, se faire, or arriver*), *to be possible*
23. Se pouvoir (*the same*)
24. Rester, *to remain*
25. Revenir, *to be derived (as income), to recur to the mind*
26. Se souvenir, *to remember*
27. Seoir (il sied), *it becomes*
28. Sembler, *to appear, seem*
- beaucoup, *the wind blew very hard yesterday*
19. Il importe beaucoup que vous soyiez, *it is of great consequence that you should be there*
20. Il manque un pied à cette table *that table wants a foot*
21. Il paraît qu'il ne viendra pas *it seems that he will not come*
Il parut une très-belle comète cette année-là, *there appeared a very fine comet that year*
22. Il peut se faire que . . . , *it may happen that . . .* Il pourrait facilement arriver un malheur, *an accident might easily happen*
23. Il se peut que vous réussissiez, *it is possible that you may succeed*
24. A présent il ne reste plus qu'à nous en aller, *at present there is nothing left for us to do but to go away*. Après vous, s'il en reste, *after you, if there is any left*. Ôtez quatre de sept, reste (not *restent*) trois, *take four from seven, there remains three*
25. Il m'est revenu beaucoup de profit de cette affaire, *I derived much profit from that business*
Il revient plus de deux millions à l'État de cet impôt, *the State derives more than two millions from that tax*. Il me revient à la mémoire que . . . , *it recurs to my memory that . . .*
26. Il m'en souvient bien, *I perfectly well recollect it*. Il l'en souviendra longtemps, *he will long remember it*
27. Il vous sied mal de me parler de la sorte, *it ill becomes you to speak to me in that manner*
28. Il me semble que . . . , *it seems to me that . . .* Que vous en semble-t-il? *what do you think of it?*

ffire, *to be sufficient*

29. Il suffit que vous le disiez pour que je le croie, *it is quite sufficient that you say so for me to believe it.* Qu'il suffise que je le veux, *let it suffice that I desire it*

arder (il me, nous, vous, &c., arde), *to be anxiously waiting, expecting*

30. Il me tarde de le revoir, *I long to see him again.* Il lui tardait de voir achever l'affaire, *he was impatient to see the business finished*

mber (de la pluie, de la grêle, de la neige), *to fall, of snow, hail, rain, &c.*
mir à, *to depend on*

31. Il est tombé beaucoup de neige cette nuit, *a great deal of snow fell last night*

32. Il ne tient pas à moi qu'il ne soit invité, *it is not my fault that he is not invited.* À quoi tient-il qu'il ne vienne? *what prevents his coming?*

enir, *to occur*

33. Il me vient une idée! *I have an idea!* Il ne lui serait jamais venu dans l'esprit que . . ., *it would never have entered his head that . . .*

aloir mieux, *to be better*

34. Il vaut mieux se taire que de parler comme cela, *it is better to hold one's tongue than to speak like that.* Il vaudrait mieux nous en aller tout de suite, *it would be better to go away directly*

UNDECLINED PARTS OF SPEECH.

1. *Adverbs.* 2. *Prepositions.* 3. *Conjunctions.*
4. *Interjections.*

1. ADVERBS.

ADVERBS are undeclinable words which serve to modify verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs; that is to say, they show either in what manner, where, when, or to what extent such verb or adjective is employed; as:

il agit	<i>sagement</i>	<i>he acts wisely</i>
il marche	<i>devant</i>	<i>he walks before</i>
il revint	<i>hier</i>	<i>he came back yesterday</i>
il souffre	<i>beaucoup</i>	<i>he suffers much</i>
il pleut	<i>presque toujours</i>	<i>it nearly always rains</i>

Adverbs may be divided into (1) adverbs of *manner* (those expressing the manner in which anything is done); (2) of *time*; (3) of *place*; (4) of *quantity*; (5) of *comparison*; (6) of *affirmation*; (7) of *negation*.

(1.) Adverbs of manner are generally derived from adjectives by adding *ment* to the adjective if it ends with a vowel; as:

sage	<i>wise</i>	sagement	<i>wisely</i>
poli	<i>polite</i>	poliment	<i>politely</i>
résolu	<i>resolute</i>	résolument	<i>resolutely</i>
aisé	<i>easy</i>	aisément	<i>easily</i>

Exceptions:

(a.) In *e*. The final *e* of the following adjectives takes an acute accent before the termination *ment*:

aveugle	<i>blind</i>	aveuglement	<i>blindly</i>
commode	<i>convenient</i>	commodément	<i>conveniently</i>
conforme	<i>conformable</i>	conformément	<i>conformably</i>
énorme	<i>enormous</i>	énormément	<i>enormously</i>
immense	<i>immense</i>	immensément	<i>immensely</i>
opiniâtre	<i>obstinate</i>	opiniâtrément	<i>obstinately</i>
uniforme	<i>uniform</i>	uniformément	<i>uniformly</i>

TRAITRE, *treacherous*, makes TRAITREUSEMENT.

(β.) In *i*:

<i>impuni</i>	<i>unpunished</i>	impunément	<i>with impunity</i>
---------------	-------------------	------------	----------------------

If the adjective ends with a consonant, the termination *ment* is then added to its feminine form ; as :

fort	<i>strong</i>	<i>f. forte</i>	<i>adv. fortement</i>
sec	<i>dry</i>	<i>f. sèche</i>	<i>adv. sèchement</i>
doux	<i>gentle</i>	<i>f. douce</i>	<i>adv. doucement</i>
heureux	<i>happy</i>	<i>f. heureuse</i>	<i>adv. heureusement, &c.</i>

(γ.) In *u* :

Beau fine, fou, mad, nouveau, new, and mou soft, form their adverbs by adding ment to their feminine forms ; as, bellement, follement, nouvellement, mollement.

Exceptions :

(a.) Adjectives terminating in *ant* or *ent* form their adverbs in *amment* or *emment* ; as :

savant	<i>learned</i>	savamment
patient	<i>patient</i>	patiemment

N.B.—The termination *emment* is always pronounced *amment*.

Exceptions to this exception :

lent	<i>slow</i>	makes	lentement
présent	<i>present</i>	„	présentement (<i>now</i>)
véhément	<i>vehement</i>	„	véhémentement

(β.) The following adjectives take an acute accent on the *e* of their feminine forms before the final *ment* :

commun	<i>common</i>	communément
confus	<i>confused</i>	confusément
exprès	<i>express</i>	expressément
importun	<i>importunate</i>	importunément
obscur	<i>obscure</i>	obscurément
précis	<i>precise</i>	précisément
profond	<i>deep</i>	profondément

(γ.) *Gentil*, pretty, makes *gentiment*, and *bref*, short, makes *brèvement*, from the less common form *brief*.

(2.) Adverbs of time are :

Alors	<i>then</i>	Cependant	<i>however</i>
Après demain	<i>the day after to-morrow</i>	De bonne heure	<i>early, in good</i>
À présent	<i>now</i>	Déjà	<i>already [time</i>
Aujourd'hui	<i>to-day</i>	Demain	<i>to-morrow</i>
Auparavant	<i>before</i>	Dès lors	<i>from that time</i>
Aussitôt	<i>as soon, immediately</i>	Désormais	<i>henceforth</i>
Autrefois	<i>formerly</i>	Dorénavant	<i>henceforth</i>
Avant	<i>before</i>	Encore	<i>still, yet, again</i>
Avant-hier	<i>the day before</i>	Enfin	<i>at last</i>
Bientôt	<i>soon [yesterday</i>	Ensuite	<i>next, then</i>
		Hier	<i>yesterday</i>

Incessamment	<i>shortly, forthwith</i>	Quelquefois	<i>sometimes</i>
Jadis	<i>formerly</i>	*Souvent	<i>often</i>
Jamais	<i>ever</i>	Sur-le-champ	<i>immediately</i>
*Jamais (with ne)	<i>never</i>	Tantôt	<i>by and by, or a li while ago, and lowed by tan at one time, at other</i>
*Longtemps	<i>for a long time</i>		
Lors	<i>then</i>		
Maintenant	<i>now</i>		
Naguère	<i>formerly</i>	*Tard	<i>late</i>
Parfois	<i>sometimes</i>	Tôt	<i>soon</i>
Plus tôt	<i>sooner</i>	Tôt ou tard	<i>sooner or later</i>
Présentement	<i>now</i>	*Toujours	<i>always</i>
Puis	<i>then</i>	Tout à l'heure	<i>presently</i>
Quand	<i>when</i>	Tout de suite	<i>immediately</i>

N.B.—Those adverbs marked by an asterisk can be qualified by another adverb ; as:

Presque jamais	<i>hardly ever</i>
Bien, très longtemps	<i>for a very long time</i>
Bien, très souvent	<i>very often</i>
Bien, très tard	<i>very late</i>
Presque toujours	<i>nearly always</i>

(3.) Adverbs of place are :

Ailleurs	<i>elsewhere</i>	Devant	} <i>before</i>
Autour	<i>around</i>	Par devant	
À part	<i>aside</i>	D'ici	<i>from here</i>
Auprès	<i>near</i>	D'où	<i>whence</i>
Autre part	<i>elsewhere</i>	En arrière	<i>backwards</i>
Çà (as in <i>viens</i> ça !)	<i>hither</i>	En avant	<i>forward</i>
Çà et là	<i>here and there</i>	En bas	<i>downwards (down stairs)</i>
Céans	<i>here within (in this house)</i>	En haut	<i>upwards (upstairs)</i>
Ci (for <i>ici</i>)	<i>here</i>	En sus	<i>in addition</i>
Debout	<i>upright</i> [from	Environ	<i>about</i>
Deçà et delà	<i>up and down, to and</i>	Ici	<i>here</i>
Dedans	} <i>within</i>	Jusque là	<i>so far</i>
Au dedans		Jusqu'où	<i>how far ?</i>
En dedans		Là	<i>there</i>
Dehors	} <i>without</i>	Là bas	<i>down there</i>
Au dehors		Là haut	<i>up there</i>
En dehors		Là dedans	<i>there within</i>
Derrière	} <i>behind</i>	Là dessous	<i>under there</i>
Par derrière		Là dessus	<i>thereupon</i>
Dessous	} <i>under</i>	Loin	<i>afar</i>
En dessous		Nulle part	<i>nowhere</i>
Ci-dessous	<i>below</i>	Où	<i>where</i>
Dessus	} <i>over</i>	Partout	<i>everywhere</i>
En dessus		Près, ici près	<i>near, near her</i>
Ci-dessus	<i>above</i>	Proche, tout proche	<i>near, quite near</i>
—Ci-devant	<i>formerly</i>	Y,	<i>there, thither</i>

(4.) Adverbs of quantity are :

Assez	<i>enough</i>	Moins	<i>less</i>
Autant	<i>as much</i>	Peu	<i>little</i>
Beaucoup	<i>much</i>	Plus	<i>more</i>
*Bien	<i>much, many</i>	Que	<i>how much!</i>
Combien	<i>how much</i>	Tant	<i>so much</i>
Davantage	<i>more</i>	Trop	<i>too much</i>

The above adverbs require the preposition *de* after them ; as :

beaucoup de vin	<i>much wine</i>
peu d'argent	<i>little money</i>

* *Bien* requires the definite article with *de* ; as :

bien du monde	<i>many people</i>
bien des poètes	<i>many poets</i>

(5.) Adverbs of comparison and such as express to what an extent the quality expressed by the adjective is possessed :

Ainsi	<i>thus</i>	*Peu	<i>little</i>
Aussi	<i>as, also</i>	*Pis (or plus mal)	<i>worse; le pis, the worst</i>
Autant	<i>as much</i>	*Plus	<i>more; le plus, the most</i>
*Autrement	<i>otherwise</i>		
*Bien	<i>well</i>	Plutôt	<i>rather</i>
Comme	<i>as, how</i>	Presque	<i>almost</i>
Fort	<i>very</i>	Si	<i>so</i>
Guère	<i>but little, scarcely</i>	Tout à fait	<i>quite</i>
*Mal	<i>badly</i>	Très	<i>very</i>
Même	<i>even</i>	Tant	<i>so much</i>
*Mieux	<i>better; le mieux, the best</i>	Tellement	<i>to such an extent</i>
*Moins	<i>less; le moins, the least</i>		

Certain Combinations of the foregoing that are allowable in French Construction.

Bien autrement	<i>very differently</i>	Beaucoup, bien	} <i>much better</i>
Fort bien	} <i>very well</i>	mieux	
Très-bien		Tant mieux	<i>so much the better</i>
Moins bien	<i>not so well</i>	Très-peu	} <i>very little</i>
Bien mal	} <i>very badly</i>	Fort peu	
Très-mal		Bien pis	<i>much worse</i>
Fort mal		Tant pis	<i>so much the worse</i>
Moins mal	<i>not so badly</i>	Beaucoup plus	} <i>much more</i>
Beaucoup moins	<i>much less</i>	Bien plus	

(6.) Adverbs of affirmation :

Assurément	<i>assuredly</i>	*Si	} <i>yes</i>
Certainement	} <i>certainly</i>	Si fait	
Certes		Volontiers	<i>willingly</i>
Oui	<i>yes</i>	Vraiment	<i>truly</i>
Peut-être	<i>perhaps</i>		

*Si is only used in replying to a negation, or to contradict a neg statement; as :

Q. Vous ne l'aimez donc pas ? *you do not like him then ?*
 A. Si, je l'aime beaucoup *yes, I like him very much*

(7.) Adverbs of negation :

Aucunement	<i>not at all</i>	Ne, ne pas	} <i>not</i>
Guère	<i>hardly ever</i>	Ne point	
Non	} <i>no</i>	Nullement	<i>by no means</i>
Non pas		Point	<i>not at all</i>

ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS* ('Locutions adverbiales').

À droite	<i>to the right</i>	Dans peu	<i>soon</i>
À gauche	<i>to the left</i>	De but en blanc	<i>point blank</i>
À fond	<i>completely</i>	De côté	<i>on one side, by side</i>
Au fond	<i>after all</i>	De même	<i>in the same way</i>
Dans le fond	<i>in the main</i>	De nouveau	<i>again</i>
À la fois	<i>at once</i>	De près	<i>near</i>
À l'endroit	<i>on the right side</i>	Derechef	<i>afresh</i>
À l'envers	<i>on the wrong side</i>	De suite	<i>at once</i> [u
À l'envi	<i>vying with one an-</i>	De suite	<i>from that time,</i>
À part	<i>aside</i> [other	Dès lors	<i>across, wrong</i>
À peine	<i>hardly</i>	De travers	<i>at least</i>
À peu près	<i>nearly</i>	Du moins	<i>but, besides</i>
À présent	<i>at present</i>	Du reste	<i>not at all</i>
À propos	<i>by the way</i>	Du tout	<i>in addition</i>
À regret	<i>against one's will</i>	En sus	<i>by chance</i>
Au hasard	<i>by chance</i>	Par hasard	<i>pell-mell</i>
Au moins	<i>at least</i>	Pêle-mêle	<i>upside down</i>
Au reste	<i>after all</i>	Sens dessus	
Avant-hier	<i>the day before yes-terday</i>	dessous	
Ci-après	<i>afterwards</i>	Tant soit peu	<i>ever so little</i>
Ci-contre	<i>opposite</i>	Tour à tour	<i>by turns</i>
Ci-inclus	<i>here within</i>	Tout au plus	<i>at the best</i>
Ci-joint	<i>annexed</i>	Tout de bon	<i>in good earnest,</i>
D'accord	<i>granted</i>		<i>riously</i>
D'ailleurs	<i>besides</i>	Tout de suite	<i>immediately</i>
		Vis-à-vis	<i>opposite</i>

* So many 'adverbial expressions' are and may be formed by combining pre tions with adjectives or substantives, that this list does not pretend to be a con one, but contains those chiefly in use.

2. PREPOSITIONS.

positions are so called because they are placed before the which they govern.

y may be divided into—

(α.) Simple prepositions.

(β.) Compound prepositions.

(γ.) Adjectives or participles used as prepositions.

) The principal simple prepositions are :

	<i>at, to</i>	Hors	<i>except</i>
	<i>after</i>	Hors	<i>except, outside of</i>
t	<i>before (in time)</i>	Malgré	<i>in spite of</i>
	<i>with</i>	Moyennant	<i>by means of, for</i>
	<i>at the house of,</i>	Nonobstant	<i>notwithstanding</i>
	<i>among</i>	Outre	<i>besides</i>
e	<i>against</i>	Par	<i>by</i>
	<i>in</i>	Parmi	<i>among</i>
	<i>of, from, with</i>	Pendant	<i>during, for</i>
is	<i>since</i>	Pour	<i>for</i>
ère	<i>behind</i>	Près	<i>near</i>
	<i>from, since</i>	Proche	<i>near</i>
us	<i>upon</i>	Sans	<i>without</i>
ous	<i>under</i>	Selon	<i>according to</i>
nt	<i>before (place)</i>	Sous	<i>under</i>
rs	<i>towards</i>	Sur	<i>upon</i>
nt	<i>during</i>	Vers	<i>towards</i>
	<i>in</i>	Voici	<i>here is</i>
e	<i>among, between</i>	Voilà	<i>there is</i>
rs	<i>towards</i>		

.) Prepositions composed of two or more prepositions or substantive and one or more prepositions :

ri de	<i>under cover of, or</i>	À la mode de	<i>after the fashion of</i>
	<i>sheltered from</i>	À l'égard de	<i>with regard to</i>
se de	<i>because of</i>	À l'exception de	<i>with the exception of</i>
b de	<i>by the side of</i>	À l'instant de	<i>at the time of</i>
vert de	<i>under cover of, or</i>	À l'instar de	<i>after the manner of</i>
	<i>sheltered from</i>	À l'insu de	<i>unknown to</i>
ur de	<i>level with</i>	À moins de	<i>unless</i>
ce de	<i>by dint of</i>	À raison de	<i>at the rate of</i>

is is the only preposition in French that may be put after the word it governs ;

sa vie durant

during his whole lifetime

À travers	<i>through</i>	Avant de	<i>before</i> (followed by a verb)
Au delà de	<i>beyond</i>	En deçà de	<i>within</i>
Au dessous de	<i>under</i>	En dépit de	<i>in spite of</i>
Au dessus de	<i>above</i>	En raison de	<i>in proportion with</i>
Auprès de	<i>near</i>	Faute de	<i>for want of</i>
Autour de	<i>around</i>	Hors de	<i>outside of</i>
Au dedans de	<i>within</i>	Jusqu'à	<i>until</i>
Au dehors de	<i>without</i>	Le long de	<i>all along</i>
Au devant de	<i>before</i>	Loin de	<i>far from</i>
Au lieu de	<i>instead of</i>	Par delà	<i>beyond</i>
Au milieu de	<i>in the midst of</i>	Par dessus	<i>over</i>
Au péril de	<i>at the peril of</i>	Près de	<i>near</i>
Au prix de	<i>at the price of</i>	Proche de	<i>near</i>
Au risque de	<i>at the risk of</i>	Vis-à-vis de	<i>opposite to</i>
Au travers de	<i>through</i>		
Aux dépens de	<i>at the expense of</i>		

(γ.) Participles and adjectives which are used as prepositions, and as such are undeclinable :

Attendu	<i>considering</i>	Suivant	<i>according to</i>
Concernant	<i>concerning</i>	Supposé	<i>supposing</i>
Excepté	<i>except</i>	Touchant	<i>concerning</i>
Joignant	<i>next to</i>	*Vu	<i>considering</i>
Sauf	<i>except</i>		

* When followed by *que* (*vu que*), *it being considered*.

3. CONJUNCTIONS.

Conjunctions serve to connect words together, or different parts or clauses of a sentence; as :

Jean <i>et</i> Pierre	<i>John and Peter</i>
Vous êtes plus grand <i>que</i> moi, <i>quoique</i> je sois plus âgé <i>que</i> vous	<i>you are taller than I, although I am older than you</i>

They may be divided into:—(1.) Simple conjunctions.
(2.) Compound conjunctions.

(1.) The principal simple conjunctions are :

Car	<i>for</i>	Puisque	<i>since</i>
Comme	<i>as, like, how</i>	Quand	<i>when, even though</i>
Donc	<i>then</i>	Quand même	<i>even though</i>
Et	<i>and</i>	Que	<i>than, that, whether</i>
Lorsque	<i>when</i>	Quoique	<i>although</i>
Mais	<i>but</i>	Savoir	<i>to wit</i>
Ni	<i>nor, neither</i>	Si	<i>if, whether</i>
Or	<i>now</i>	Sinon	<i>or else, if not</i>
Ou	<i>either, or</i>	Soit	<i>either, whether</i>
Parce que	<i>because</i>		

(2.) The compound conjunctions are :

(a.) Afin de	<i>in order to</i>	Loin de	<i>far from</i>
Au lieu de	<i>instead of</i>	À moins de	<i>unless</i>
Avant de	<i>before</i>		

The above are followed by a verb in the infinitive mood.

(β.) À cause que	<i>because</i>	Aussitôt que	} <i>as soon as</i>
À condi- tion que	} <i>on condition that</i>	Sitôt que	
		Dès que	
Ainsi que	<i>as, in proportion as</i>	Au lieu que	<i>whereas</i>
À mesure que	<i>whilst</i>	Depuis que	<i>since</i> (in point of
Après que	<i>after</i>	Parce que	<i>because</i> [time])
Attendu que	<i>seeing that</i>	Pendant que	<i>whilst</i>
De manière	} <i>so that</i>	Puisque	<i>since</i>
que		Tandis que	<i>whereas</i>
De même que	<i>as, in like manner</i>	Tant que	<i>as long as</i>
	<i>as</i>	Vu que	<i>seeing that</i>

The above are followed by a verb in the indicative mood.

(γ.) Afin que	<i>in order that</i>	Pour que	<i>in order that</i>
À moins que	<i>unless</i>	Pourvu que	<i>provided that</i>
Avant que	<i>before</i>	Quoique	<i>although</i>
Bien que	<i>although</i>	Sans que	<i>without</i>
En cas que	<i>in case</i>	Soit que	<i>whether</i>
Encore que	<i>although</i>	Supposé que	<i>supposing that</i>
Loin que	<i>far from</i>		

The above require a verb in the subjunctive mood after them.

4. INTERJECTIONS.

Interjections are sounds, words, or phrases expressing in a concise and rapid manner sudden impulses of the mind under the influence of anger, joy, admiration, &c.

The following is an almost complete list of all interjections generally in use, arranged alphabetically.

Ah !	<i>ah !</i>	Bon !	<i>there now !</i>
Ah bah !	<i>nonsense !</i>	Bravo !	<i>capital !</i>
Aie !	<i>ah ! (expressing</i>	Chut !	<i>hush !</i>
	<i>pain)</i>	Ciel !	<i>heavens !</i>
Alerte !	<i>look sharp !</i>	Courage !	<i>never mind ! be of</i>
Allons !	<i>come !</i>		<i>good courage !</i>
Bah !	<i>nonsense !</i>	Dame !	<i>well really !</i>
Baste !	<i>enough !</i>	Diantre !	<i>the deuce !</i>
Bis !	<i>encore ! (to a song)</i>	Dieu !	<i>heavens !</i>

Doucement!	<i>gently!</i>	Or ça!	<i>now, look you!</i>
Eh!	<i>holloa!</i>	Ouais!	<i>upon my word!</i>
Encore!	<i>what, again!</i>	Ouf!	<i>oh! (expression of relief)</i>
Ferme!	<i>stand fast!</i>	Oui dà!	<i>really! (ironical)</i>
Fi!	} <i>fie!</i>	Paix!	<i>be quiet!</i>
Fi donc!		Pan!	<i>bang!</i>
Gare!	<i>look out!</i>	Parbleu!	<i>I should just think so!</i>
Ha!	<i>ha!</i>	Peste!	<i>by Jove!</i>
Ha ha!	<i>ha ha!</i>	Plait-il!	<i>I beg pardon, what did you say?</i>
Halte!	<i>halt!</i>	Pouah!	} <i>expressions of disgust!</i>
Hé bien!	<i>well!</i>	Pouf!	
Hé là bas!	<i>look out there!</i>	Silence!	<i>silence!</i>
Hélas!	<i>alas!</i>	Sus!	<i>at him!</i>
Hein!	<i>hey!</i>	Tiens!	} <i>holloa! look there!</i>
Hem!	<i>hem!</i>	Tenez!	
Heu!	<i>alas! lackaday!</i>	Tout beau!	<i>gently!</i>
Ho!	<i>oh!</i>	Tudieu!	<i>upon my word!</i>
Holà!	<i>holloa!</i>	Vivat!	} <i>hurrah!</i>
Houp!	<i>come up! (to a horse)</i>	Vive!	
Là!	<i>there then!</i>	Vrai!	} <i>really!</i>
Malheur!	<i>what a misfortune!</i>	Vraiment!	
Miséricorde!	<i>dear me!</i>		
Motus!	<i>hush!</i>		
Oh!	<i>oh!</i>		

Any word suddenly ejaculated is put in the dative case;
as :

<i>Au voleur!</i>	<i>thieves!</i>
<i>À l'assassin!</i>	<i>murder!</i>

EXERCISES ON THE ACCIDENCE.

EXERCISE I.

(Rule I. page 1 of *Accidence*.)

WRITE out the definite article, masculine and feminine, singular and plural, in all its cases.

EXERCISE II.

Decline the following nouns substantive, singular and plural, with the definite article (pages 1, 2, and 3 of *Accidence*, Rule I.)

Masculine.

1. le maître	<i>the master</i>
2. le matelot	<i>the sailor</i>
3. le perroquet	<i>the parrot</i>
4. le curé	<i>the vicar</i>
5. le haillon	<i>the rag</i>
6. le hamac	<i>the hammock</i>
7. le hangar	<i>the shed</i>
8. le héron	<i>the heron</i>
9. l'abîme	<i>the abyss</i>
10. l'abri	<i>the shelter</i>
11. l'insecte	<i>the insect</i>
12. l'œuf	<i>the egg</i>
13. l'habit	<i>the coat</i>
14. l'hiver	<i>the winter</i>
15. l'honneur	<i>the honour</i>
15. l'hôte	<i>the landlord</i>

Feminine.

1. la table	<i>the table</i>
2. la treille	<i>the vine-stalk</i>
3. la neige	<i>the snow</i>
4. la langue	<i>the tongue</i>
5. la hache	<i>the axe</i>
6. la haie	<i>the hedge</i>
7. la halle	<i>the market</i>
8. la halberde	<i>the halberd</i>

9. l'occasion	<i>the opportunity</i>
10. l'avalanche	<i>the avalanche</i>
11. l'insulte	<i>the insult</i>
12. l'orange	<i>the orange</i>
13. l'heure	<i>the hour</i>
14. l'hirondelle	<i>the swallow</i>
15. l'histoire	<i>the story</i>
16. l'huître	<i>the oyster</i>

EXERCISE III.

MASCULINE AND FEMININE MIXED.

1. le bras	<i>the arm</i>	6. la prière	<i>the prayer</i>
2. le hareng	<i>the herring</i>	7. l'hospice (m.)	<i>the hospital</i>
3. l'échange (m.)	<i>the exchange</i>	8. l'horloge (f.)	<i>the clock</i>
4. l'horloger	<i>the clockmaker</i>	9. l'herbe (f.)	<i>the grass</i>
5. la nation	<i>the nation</i>	10. la hache	<i>the axe</i>

EXERCISE IV.

THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE. (Rule II. page 3.)

Write down the following nouns substantive, in all cases, preceded by the indefinite article :

1. un maître	<i>a master</i>
2. un matelot	<i>a sailor</i>
3. un soupir	<i>a sigh</i>
4. un perroquet	<i>a parrot</i>
5. un hamac	<i>a hammock</i>
6. un hanneton	<i>a cockchafer</i>
7. un hareng	<i>a herring</i>
8. un héron	<i>a heron</i>
9. un homme	<i>a man</i>
10. un arbre	<i>a tree</i>
11. une femme	<i>a woman</i>
12. une table	<i>a table</i>
13. une huître	<i>an oyster</i>
14. une montre	<i>a watch</i>
15. une orange	<i>an orange</i>
16. une pendule	<i>a clock</i>
17. une hallebarde	<i>a halberd</i>
18. une Hollandaise	<i>a Dutchwoman</i>
19. une Anglaise	<i>an Englishwoman</i>
20. une cravate	<i>a cravat</i>

EXERCISE V.

PROPER NAMES. (Rule III. page 3.)

Decline the following proper names and towns :

1. Cicéron	<i>Cicero</i>	11. Frédéric	<i>Frederick</i>
2. Alexandre	<i>Alexander</i>	12. Louise	<i>Louisa</i>
3. César	<i>Cæsar</i>	13. Londres	<i>London</i>
4. Pompée	<i>Pompey</i>	14. Paris	<i>Paris</i>
5. Caton	<i>Cato</i>	15. Rome	<i>Rome</i>
6. Auguste	<i>Augustus</i>	16. Venise	<i>Venice</i>
7. Guillaume	<i>William</i>	17. Moscou	<i>Moscow</i>
8. Marie	<i>Mary</i>	18. Genève	<i>Geneva</i>
9. Édouard	<i>Edward</i>	19. Berlin	<i>Berlin</i>
10. Jeanne	<i>Jane</i>	20. Vienne	<i>Vienna</i>

EXERCISE VI.

PLURALS OF NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE. (Rule IV. pages 4, 5, and 6.)

Write down the plurals of the following nouns with the English, prefixing to the French plural the article *des*, and no article to the English plural ; in this manner :

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
un homme	<i>a man</i>	des hommes	<i>men</i>
α.			
1. un arbre	<i>a tree</i>	6. un sapin	<i>a fir-tree</i>
2. un rivage	<i>a shore</i>	7. un peigne	<i>a comb</i>
3. un chêne	<i>an oak</i>	8. une dame	<i>a lady</i>
4. un roseau	<i>a reed</i>	9. une preuve	<i>a proof</i>
5. un vase	<i>a vase</i>	10. une mode	<i>a fashion</i>

β. Words ending in *s*, *x*, or *z* :

1. un bras	<i>an arm</i>	6. une faux	<i>a scythe</i>
2. un palais	<i>a palace</i>	7. un ibis	<i>an ibis</i>
3. un corps	<i>a body</i>	8. un époux	<i>a husband</i>
4. un tapis	<i>a carpet</i>	9. un choix	<i>a choice</i>
5. une croix	<i>a cross</i>	10. un nez	<i>a nose</i>

γ. Words ending in *au* or *eu* :

1. un vaisseau	<i>a ship</i>	5. un bateau	<i>a boat</i>
2. un chameau	<i>a camel</i>	6. un essieu	<i>an axle</i>
3. un anneau	<i>a ring</i>	7. un gâteau	<i>a cake</i>
4. un aveu	<i>an avowal</i>	8. un feu	<i>a fire</i>

δ. Words ending in *ou* :

1. un fou	<i>a madman</i>	6. un verrou	<i>a bolt</i>
2. un clou	<i>a nail</i>	7. un bijou	<i>a jewel</i>
3. un trou	<i>a hole</i>	8. un chou	<i>a cabbage</i>
4. un cou	<i>a neck</i>	9. un genou	<i>a knee</i>
5. un coucou	<i>a cuckoo</i>	10. un hibou	<i>an owl</i>

ε. Words ending in *al* :

1. un général	<i>a general</i>	6. un bocal	<i>a jar</i>
2. un amiral	<i>an admiral</i>	7. un bal	<i>a ball</i>
3. un animal	<i>an animal</i>	8. un chacal	<i>a jackal</i>
4. un cheval	<i>a horse</i>	9. un carnaval	<i>a carnival</i>
5. un mal	<i>an evil</i>	10. un sandal	<i>a sandal</i>

ζ. Words ending in *ail* :

1. un détail	<i>a detail</i>	5. un bail	<i>a lease</i>
2. un éventail	<i>a fan</i>	6. un corail	<i>a coral</i>
3. un gouvernail	<i>a rudder</i>	7. un émail	<i>an enamel</i>
4. un mail	<i>a mallet</i>	8. un travail	<i>a labour</i>

PECULIAR PLURALS.

1. un œil	<i>an eye</i>	5. un aïeul	<i>a grandfather</i>
2. un œil-de-bœuf	<i>a bull's eye</i>	6. un aïeul	<i>an ancestor</i>
3. le ciel	<i>the heaven</i>	7. un duo	<i>a duet</i>
4. un ciel de lit	<i>a bed-top</i>	8. un in-octavo	<i>an octavo</i>

EXERCISE VII.

ON ALL THE PLURAL FORMS TOGETHER.

1. une porte	<i>a door</i>	7. un portail	<i>a doorway</i>
2. une croix	<i>a cross</i>	8. un chat	<i>a cat</i>
3. un enfant	<i>a child</i>	9. une souris	<i>a mouse</i>
4. un chapeau	<i>a hat</i>	10. un fou	<i>a madman</i>
5. un phénix	<i>a phoenix</i>	11. un bureau	<i>a writing-table</i>
6. un cheval	<i>a horse</i>	12. un drapeau	<i>a flag</i>

EXERCISE VIII.

PARTITIVE ARTICLE. (Rule V. page 6.)

Prefix the proper partitive article to the following French nouns, and the word 'some' to the English ; as :

du thé

some tea

SINGULAR.

Masculine.

a. Beginning with a consonant:

1. thé	<i>tea</i>	7. drap	<i>cloth</i>
2. café	<i>coffee</i>	8. fruit	<i>fruit</i>
3. chocolat	<i>chocolate</i>	9. gâteau	<i>cake</i>
4. fromage	<i>cheese</i>	10. miel	<i>honey</i>
5. lait	<i>milk</i>	11. sel	<i>salt</i>
6. sucre	<i>sugar</i>	12. bois	<i>wood</i>

β. Beginning with an aspirated *h*:

1. hasard	<i>chance</i>	4. homard	<i>lobster</i>
2. houx	<i>holly</i>	5. houblon	<i>hops</i>
3. hareng	<i>herring</i>		

γ. Beginning with a vowel:

1. or	<i>gold</i>	7. esprit	<i>wit</i>
2. argent	<i>silver</i>	8. effroi	<i>fright</i>
3. air	<i>air</i>	9. effet	<i>effect</i>
4. éclat	<i>glitter</i>	10. ombrage	<i>shadow</i>
5. orgueil	<i>pride</i>	11. art	<i>art</i>
6. espoir	<i>hope</i>	12. avantage	<i>advantage</i>

δ. Beginning with an unaspirated *h*:

1. honneur	<i>honour</i>	4. héroïsme	<i>heroism</i>
2. Hébreu	<i>Hebrew</i>	5. hommage	<i>respect</i>
3. herbager	<i>pasture</i>		

SINGULAR.

Feminine.

Now omit the word 'some' before the English, to show that it is not *of necessity* prefixed to English nouns substantive used in a partitive sense.

a. Beginning with a consonant:

1. bière	<i>beer</i>	7. fatigue	<i>fatigue</i>
2. neige	<i>snow</i>	8. dentelle	<i>lace</i>
3. pluie	<i>rain</i>	9. colère	<i>anger</i>
4. lumière	<i>light</i>	10. charité	<i>charity</i>
5. grâce	<i>grace</i>	11. crème	<i>cream</i>
6. jeunesse	<i>youth</i>	12. viande	<i>meat</i>

β. Beginning with an aspirated *h*:

1. hardiesse	<i>boldness</i>	4. hâte	<i>haste</i>
2. honte	<i>shame</i>	5. hauteur	<i>pride</i>
3. haine	<i>hatred</i>		

γ. Beginning with a vowel:

1. amitié	<i>friendship</i>	6. envie	<i>envy</i>
2. avarice	<i>avarice</i>	7. injustice	<i>injustice</i>
3. adresse	<i>skill</i>	8. impatience	<i>impatience</i>
4. écriture	<i>writing</i>	9. infidélité	<i>infidelity</i>
5. éducation	<i>education</i>		

δ. Beginning with an unaspirated *h*:

1. habitude	<i>custom</i>	6. huile	<i>oil</i>
2. hérésie	<i>heresy</i>	7. horreur	<i>horror</i>
3. histoire	<i>history</i>	8. hypocrisie	<i>hypocrisy</i>
4. harmonie	<i>harmony</i>	9. humeur	<i>humour</i>
5. hermine	<i>ermine</i>		

EXERCISE IX.

PLURALS.

Masculine and feminine, beginning with vowel or consonant, aspirated or unaspirated *h*:

Write down the plurals of the following nouns substantive, prefixing the proper partitive article to the French nouns, and the word 'some' to the English:

1. orange	<i>orange</i>	13. fleur	<i>flower</i>
2. pomme	<i>apple</i>	14. arbre	<i>tree</i>
3. poire	<i>pear</i>	15. champ	<i>field</i>
4. noix	<i>nut</i>	16. mouton	<i>sheep</i>
5. fraise	<i>strawberry</i>	17. bœuf	<i>ox</i>
6. framboise	<i>raspberry</i>	18. vache	<i>cow</i>
7. table	<i>table</i>	19. chien	<i>dog</i>
8. chaise	<i>chair</i>	20. éléphant	<i>elephant</i>
9. harpe	<i>harp</i>	21. crocodile	<i>crocodile</i>
10. homme	<i>man</i>	22. héron	<i>heron</i>
11. femme	<i>woman</i>	23. homard	<i>lobster</i>
12. enfant	<i>child</i>	24. hussard	<i>hussar</i>

With the following, omit the word 'some' in writing the English:

1. âne	<i>ass</i>	7. hibou	<i>owl</i>
2. ours	<i>bear</i>	8. hirondelle	<i>swallow</i>
3. chameau	<i>camel</i>	9. rossignol	<i>nightingale</i>
4. cheval	<i>horse</i>	10. serpent	<i>serpent</i>
5. mulet	<i>mule</i>	11. couleuvre	<i>adder</i>
6. souris	<i>mouse</i>	12. vipère	<i>viper</i>

N.B.—The word 'some' *might* equally well have been prefixed to these last twelve examples as to the former twenty-four. This exercise has been so divided simply to show that although

lish you *may* omit the word 'some' in speaking of nouns
ntive in a partitive sense, in French you *may not* omit
rtitive article.

EXERCISE X.

INES OF ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES. (Rule VI. page 8.)

ite down the English and feminines singular of the fol-
g adjectives and participles :

rai	6. favori	11. corrupteur	16. vieux
age	7. cruel	12. gras	17. complet
lanc	8. chrétien	13. coquet	18. secret
ctif	9. bénin	14. jumeau	19. ambigu
ong	10. bon	15. heureux	20. contigu
etit	5. coi	9. parisien	13. absous
imable	6. pareil	10. malin	14. sot
ec	7. éternel	11. menteur	15. beau
if	8. ancien	12. épais	16. doux

EXERCISE XI.

ALS OF ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES. (Rule VII. page 10.)

ite down the English and plural masculine and feminine
e following adjectives and participles :

onnu	8. sage	15. pécheur	22. heureux
général	9. public	16. gras	23. roux
charmant	10. ture	17. gros	24. vieux
in	11. neuf	18. épais	25. amical
ier	12. gentil	19. muet	26. fatal
oint	13. ancien	20. beau	27. frugal
surpris	14. bon	21. nouveau	28. naval

EXERCISE XII.

POSITION OF ADJECTIVES. (Rule VIII. page 11.)

it into French :

Definite Article:

- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. the happy man | 7. the black hat |
| 2. the unhappy woman | 8. the lowing cows |
| 3. the naughty children | 9. the sick animals |
| 4. the feudal castle | 10. the dusty road |
| 5. the green meadow | 11. the furnished house |
| 6. the red dress | 12. the cruel stepmother |

13. the cunning fairy
14. the muddy water
15. the Christian religion
16. the proud queen

17. the destroying army
18. the favourite daughter
19. the thick mud
20. the dumb princess

Indefinite Article.

1. a mad dog
2. a lame horse
3. an English lady
4. a foolish answer
5. a charming boy
6. a proud girl

7. a victorious army
8. a round tower
9. a green veil
10. a furled sail
11. an insolent page (servant)
12. an amusing page (of a book)

Partitive Article.

1. red wine
2. white wine
3. clear water
4. thick oil
5. rapid rivers
6. stagnant waters
7. harmonious words
8. enchanting music
9. roast beef
10. green peas

11. gay songs
12. hard nuts
13. celestial harmony
14. repeated blows
15. savage manners
16. cultivated fields
17. warm water
18. cold water
19. evasive answers
20. tardy measures

EXERCISE XIII.

(Rule β, page 11.)

Put into French :

1. another time
2. a wicked man
3. a fine woman
4. a bad example
5. a good horse
6. a better pen

7. the brave captain
8. a lesser evil
9. the dear child
10. the new master
11. a half-pound
12. the little girl

Use the partitive article :

13. great houses
14. holy personages
15. large pears
16. all the soldiers

17. young robbers
18. old umbrellas
19. pretty flowers
20. true colours

(Rule γ, page 11.)

1. a new book
2. a new coat
3. a new order
4. a mad hope

5. a soft soil (*adj. last*)
6. a soft eiderdown
7. an old castle
8. an old man

9. an old coat
10. a fine horse
11. a fine coat
12. a fine child

EXERCISE XIV.

DEGREES OF COMPARISON. (Rule IX. page 11.)

α. Adjectives preceding the Substantive.

SINGULAR.

a man	a greater man	the greatest man
a house	a finer house	the finest house
a friend	a dearer friend	the dearest friend
an orange	a larger orange	the largest orange
a dress	a prettier dress	the prettiest dress
a woman	a smaller woman	the smallest woman

PLURAL.

the partitive article *de* with the positives and comparatives
 the definite article with the superlatives :

a few soldiers	finer soldiers	the finest soldiers
many men	greater men	the greatest men
many flowers	prettier flowers	the prettiest flowers
many examples	worse examples	the worst examples
many dogs	smaller dogs	the smallest dogs
many expressions	worse expressions	the worst expressions

β. Adjectives following the Substantive.

SINGULAR.

a courageous man	a more courageous man	the most courageous man
a talkative woman	a more talkative woman	the most talkative woman
a burning thirst	a more burning thirst	the most burning thirst
a piercing look	a more piercing look	the most piercing look
a hard bed	a harder bed	the hardest bed

PLURAL.

down the foregoing in the plural number.

EXERCISE XV.

Declension of the Definite Article with Adjectives in the Comparative and Superlative Degrees. (Rule IX. page 12.)

SINGULAR.

- Nom.* the most amiable prince
Gen. of the most amiable prince
Dat. to the most amiable prince

2. *Nom.* the most powerful queen
Gen. of the most powerful queen
Dat. to the most powerful queen
3. *Nom.* the most honest man
Gen. of the most honest man
Dat. to the most honest man

PLURAL.

Write down the foregoing in the plural number, nominative, genitive, and dative cases.

EXERCISE XVI.

On certain Comparatives and Superlatives not formed according to the general Rules. (Rule X. page 12.)

SINGULAR.

- | | | |
|------------------------|-------------------|----------------------|
| 1. a good umbrella | a better umbrella | the best umbrella |
| 2. a good opinion | a better opinion | the best opinion |
| 3. a bad omen | a worse omen | * the worst omen |
| 4. a bad excuse | a worse excuse | * the worst excuse |
| 5. a little noise | a less noise | the least noise |
| 6. a little difficulty | a less difficulty | the least difficulty |

PLURAL.

Write the foregoing in the plural number, using the particle *de* with the positive and comparative, and the definite article with the superlative.

EXERCISE XVII.

CARDINAL NUMBERS. (Rule XI. pages 13, 14.)

Write down in full the following numbers:

1, 11, 21, 31, 41, 51, 61, 71, 81, 91, 101—2, 12, 22, 32, 42, 52, 62, 72, 82, 92, 102—3, 13, 23, 33, 43, 53, 63, 73, 83, 93, 103—4, 14, 24, 34, 44, 54, 64, 74, 84, 94, 104—5, 15, 25, 35, 45, 55, 65, 75, 85, 95, 105.

6, 16, 26, 36, 46, 56, 66, 76, 86, 96, 106—7, 17, 27, 37, 47, 57, 67, 77, 87, 97, 107—8, 18, 28, 38, 48, 58, 68, 78, 88, 98, 108—9, 19, 29, 39, 49, 59, 69, 79, 89, 99, 109—10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70, 80, 90, 100, 1,000,000.

* The form 'le pire' is of such rare occurrence that it will be better to use 'plus mauvais' in these two instances.

Note on page 14.

Write down in full :

80 men, 83 men. 80 women, 84 women. 100 soldiers, 101 soldiers.
200 horses, 203 horses. 300 camels, 310 camels. 1,000 elephants, 3,000
elephants. 5,000 miles. 2,310,422 inhabitants. 32,492 soldiers.

Write down in full the following chronological dates :

1066, 1095, 1199, 1213, 1314, 1415, 1495, 1558,
1666, 1701, 1745, 1793, 1804, 1815, 1851, 1867.

ORDINALS. (Rule XII. page 14.)

The first man. The first woman. The first Christians. The first churches. The second time. The second door on the left (*à gauche*). The third time. The fourth rank. The fifth story. The sixth volume. The seventh regiment of hussars. The eighth (of) dragoons. The tenth part. The twenty-first page. The eighty-first time. The ninety-first man. The hundredth time. The hundred and first cannon-shot.

EXERCISE XVIII.

(Rule XIII. page 15.)

PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

- | | | |
|----------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1. my father | 8. my mother | 15. my children |
| 2. thy brother | 9. thy sister | 16. thy friends |
| 3. his father | 10. his wife | 17. his children |
| 4. her uncle | 11. her aunt | 18. her cousins |
| 5. our servant | 12. our carriage | 19. our horses |
| 6. your friend | 13. your house | 20. your friends |
| 7. their road | 14. their carriage | 21. their manners |

Note 1, page 15.

my opinion
thy imagination
his hour

my idea
thy breath
her ignorance

1. In French, the pronominal adjective is to be repeated before each substantive; as :

my son and daughter
her hands and feet

mon fils et ma fille
ses mains et ses pieds

Put into French :

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. my carriage and horses | 5. our house and garden |
| 2. thy father, mother, and sister | 6. your brother and sisters |
| 3. his coat, waistcoat, and trousers | 7. their king and queen |
| 4. her bonnet, dress, and boots | |

GENERAL EXERCISE ON PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

1. John was speaking (*parlait*) to his father and mother
2. Marie has lost (*a perdu*) her bonnet, her parasol (*ombrelle, f.*) and gloves
3. my father and her uncle are in the garden
4. thy brothers and sisters will come (*viendront*) to-morrow
5. our carriage, horses, and coachman are at your service
6. your town is very fine and your walks (are) charming
7. my brothers have lost (*ont perdu*) their money and their keys

EXERCISE XIX.

(Rule XIV. page 16, and Note.)

DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES.

Put into French :

this horse	this carriage	these trees
that man	that woman	those children
this colour	that orange	that lobster
that victim	those soldiers	those flags

N.B.—Although the demonstrative adjective *ce, cette, ces*, is used indiscriminately for *this, that, these*, or *those*, yet if it is required to distinguish between objects nearer to, or farther from, the person speaking, the particle *ci* (contracted from *ici*, here) is used to express the object which is nearest, and *là* (there) to express that which is farthest, and they are placed immediately after the substantive ; as :

take this book	<i>prenez ce livre-ci</i>
put down that book	<i>posez ce livre-là</i>
these gloves are mine	<i>ces gants-ci sont à moi</i>
those gloves are yours	<i>ces gants-là sont à vous</i>

Put into French :

this man and that woman are husband and wife
 this child and that child are brothers
 these horses are better than those horses
 this tree is taller than that tree

EXERCISE XX.

(Rule XV. page 16.)

1. **Quel** used as a relative and interrogative adjective :

which wine will you have (*voulez-vous*) ?
 of which house do you speak (*parlez-vous*) ?
 at what hour will you come (*viendrez-vous*) ?
 which flowers do you prefer (*préfèrez-vous*) ?

2. **Quel** used to express admiration or astonishment. Note that the English article *a* or *an* is to be omitted in French :

what a noise !	what a beautiful peach !
what an expression !	what a storm ! what soldiers !
what fine horses !	what beautiful colours !

EXERCISE XXI.

(Rule XVI. pages 16–20.)

PERSONAL PRONOUNS CONJUNCTIVE.

1. Write out a full list, English and French, of all the personal pronouns conjunctive, in all cases and genders, in both numbers.

2. Translate (from examples given on pages 18, 19, and 20) the following French sentences :

<i>Nom.</i>	je donne	tu vois	il } parle
	nous donnons	vous voyez	elle }
			ils } parlent
			elles }
<i>Dat.</i>	tu me parles	je te parle	nous lui parlons
	ils nous donnent	je vous donne	je leur parle
	il se parle	elle se parle	ils se parlent
<i>Acc.</i>	il me voit	je te vois	je le verrai
	nous la verrons	ils nous verront	je vous vois
	je les vois	il se verra	elle se verra
	ils se voient		

En AND **Y**.

J'en (<i>sing.</i>) parle	nous en (<i>sing.</i>) parlerons	vous en (<i>pl.</i>) parlerez
J'y vois	nous y verrons	vous y verrez

3. N.B.—In all the following sentences the governed pronoun is to precede the verb.

Put into French :

Nom.	I give we shall see	thou speakest you will speak	he speaks they see
Dat.	he speaks to me I give her I will speak to them	I give thee he speaks to us	I speak to him I will give you
Acc.	he sees me they will see her I see them	I shall see thee he sees us	we shall see him we see you

4. Imperative mood. The governed pronoun to come *af* the verb in the 2nd person sing., 1st and 2nd person pl *affirmative*, in which cases also use the forms **moi** and **te** instead of **me** and **te**.

speak (<i>sing.</i>) to me let him see me let us see him look at (<i>regardez</i>) her let us amuse (<i>amusons</i>) ourselves (<i>nous</i>) amuse yourself (<i>vous</i>) let them see you look at me look at (<i>sing.</i>) thymself (<i>toi</i>) raise (<i>lève</i>) thymself	do not speak (<i>sing.</i>) to me let him not see me let us not see him do not look at her let us not amuse ourselves do not hurt (<i>blessez</i>) yourself do not let them see you do not look at me do not look at thymself (<i>te</i>) do not raise thymself (<i>i. e.</i> do not up) let us not speak of it do not go there let him not see himself let them not amuse themselves
---	--

EXERCISE XXII.

(Rule XVII. page 20.)

The Invariable Pronoun ce, used for he, she, it, or they

Put into French :

it is a ship	it is a frigate	it is an iron-clad
he is a colonel	he is a captain	he is a lancer
she is a queen	she is a flower-girl	she is an Englishwoman
he is my father	she is my sister	it is your house
it is my garden	it is a fine day	it is a shame !

are Frenchmen **they** are soldiers **they** are hussars
 are my children **they** are my cousins **it** is astonishing !
 stupid **it** is very fine **it** was your fault
 magnificent, but **it** is not war ! **it** will soon be my turn
 are your gloves. **they** were friends of mine (*à moi*)
 will be the first strawberries from our garden

EXERCISE XXIII.

(Rule XVIII. pages 21–24.)

tion of two (or more) governed Personal Pronouns in the
 me Sentence. (Study carefully the Table on page 21.)

it into French :

a. Singular.

ers. he gives **it to me**
 he lends (*prête*) **it (f.) to me**
 he trusts (*confie*) **them to me**
 give **it to me** do not give **it me**
 lend **it (f.) to me** do not lend **it me**
 trust **them to me** do not trust **them to me**
 he will carry (*portera*) **me there**
 carry **me there** do not carry **me there**
 he will give **me** (some) **of it**
 he will not give **me** (any) **of it**

pers. I will lend **it to thee**
 I will show (*montrerais*) **them to thee**
 I will carry **thee there**
 walk **there** (*promènes-y-toi*)
 do not walk **there**
 I will give **thee** (some) **of it**

pers. I will give **it to him**
 I will lend **it (f.) to him**
 I will show **them to him**
 I will take (*mènerai*) **him there**
 I will not take **him there**
 I will speak **to him of it**
 I will deprive (*priverai*) **him of it**
 I will deprive **her of it**

β. Plural.

ers. he gives **it to us**
 he trusts (*confie*) **it (f.) to us**
 he will lend **them to us**
 present (*présentez*) **him to us**
 trust **it to us**
 lend **them to us**

do not give **them to us**
 do not present **him to us**
 he will take (*mènera*) **us there**
 he will lend **us** some (*en*)

2nd pers. I will give **it you**
 I will lend **it** (*f.*) **you**
 I will show **them to you**
 I will take **you there**
 betake (*rendez*) **yourselves thither**
 I will lend **you** some (*en*), but I will not give **you** any (*en*)

3rd pers. we will show **it to them**
 you will give **them to them**
 trust (*confiez*) **it to them**
 do not trust **it to them**
 take **them there**
 do not take **them there**
 I will give **them** some (*en*)

γ. Reflective Pronoun *se*.

he gives **it to himself**
 she owns (*avoue*) **it to herself**
 she boasts (*vante*) **herself of it**
 they boast **themselves of it**
 he finds (*trouve*) **himself there** (happens to be there)
 they will transport **themselves thither**

EXERCISE XXIV.

(Rule XIX. pages 24–26.)

PERSONAL PRONOUNS DISJUNCTIVE.

1. What is the meaning of the expression *disjunctive personal pronoun*? (See page 17.)

2. Write out a list of the personal pronouns disjunctive with the English of each.

Put into French:

- | | | | |
|----|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. | it is she | it is he | it was (<i>était</i>) thou |
| | it was we | it was you | it is they (<i>m.</i>) |
| | it was they (<i>f.</i>) | | |
| 2. | who's there (<i>qui est là</i>)? | I | |
| | who did it? | he | she |
| | who said it (<i>qui l'a dit</i>)? | I | you |
| | | | he |
| 3. | I do it! | you speak so! | we do that! * |
| | he! my friend! | no indeed (<i>non, vraiment</i>)! | she will not do that |

* These verbs to be put in the infinitive mood.

he and **she** will come (*viendront*)

thou and **I** will remain (*nous resterons*)

- a. taller than **he** more amiable than **she**
 stronger than **they** more clever than **I**
 better than **we** faster than **you**
 I run (*je cours*) faster than **thou**, but thou jumpest (*sautes*) better than **I**
- β. do as **I** (do) speak as **she** (speaks)
 run (*courez*) as **they** (run) I will not do as **he** (does)
- γ. either **he** or **I** **we** or **they** **I** or **she**
- δ. neither **thou** nor **I** neither **she** nor **you**
 neither **he** nor **we** neither **they** nor **you**
 give **me** that speak **to me**
 look at (*regardez*) **me** help (*aidez*) **me**
 raise (*lève*) **thysself** (*i. e.* get up)
 look at **thysself** amuse **thysself** well
- I trust (*je me fie à*) thee, him, her, you, them (*m. & f.*)
 he trusts (*il se fie à*) me, us
- with **me** without **me** for **thee**
 in spite of **him** between **him** and **her** because of **him**
 against **her** for **us** in spite of **you**
 above **them** below **them** (*f.*)

Sol.

Copy the examples from page 26, with the English.

EXERCISE XXV.

(Rule XX. page 26.)

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

1. Write out a list of all the possessive pronouns, masculine and feminine, in both numbers, with English.
2. Put into French (for possessive adjectives, *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their*, see page 15):

Singular.

- | | | |
|-------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | my garden and thine | thy house and ours |
| | my house and his | his father and yours |
| | my carriage and hers | our garden and theirs |
| <i>Gen.</i> | of his father and of mine | of our carriage and of yours |
| | of my mother and of thine | of their aunt and of ours |
| | of our house and of his | of our uncle and of theirs |
| <i>Dat.</i> | to my father and yours | to their great regret and ours |
| | to your mother and mine | to our garden and to theirs |
| | at your hour and mine | |

Plural.

- | | | |
|----|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 4. | my horses and thine | of her children and ours |
| | of thy horses and mine | to your relations and theirs |
| | of our children and hers | to their relations and yours |

EXERCISE XXVI.

(Rule XXI. pages 27, 28.)

Put into French (for verbs in the following sentences, refer to pages 18, 19) :

1. *Nom.* the man **who** speaks
the woman **who** speaks
the children **who** speak to me
the book **which** is on the table
the carriage **which** is in the courtyard
the books **which** are on the table
the chairs **which** are in the drawing-room

Gen. the man, *or* men, **of whom** I speak
the woman, *or* women, **of whom** I speak
the book, *or* books, **of which** you speak
the table, *or* tables, **of which** you speak

Acc. the man **whom** you see there (*là*)
the woman **that** you will see
the books **which** I give you
the chairs **which** you see
 2. the man **to whom** I was speaking (*je parlais*) is my father
the woman **to whom** I speak is my mother
the person **of whom** I was speaking
the king **for whom** I fight (*je combats*)
the prince **against whom** we fight (*nous combattons*)
- Lequel, laquelle.
3. the book **of which** I was speaking
the house **of which** you see the door
the book **at which** I am working (*je travaille*) is a grammar
the house **to which** you are going (*vous allez*) is mine (p. 26)
the soldiers **of which** you are speaking
the persons **of which** you are speaking
the authors **to which** I give the preference
 4. **which** of these two authors do you prefer (*préférez-vous*)?
of France or England, **which** do you prefer?
which (*pl.*) do you want?

EXERCISE XXVII.

(Rule XXII. page 28.)

que, interrogative :

goes there (*vive*) ?
 is that man ?
 is that woman ?
 are those children ?
 whom are you speaking ?

is it (*ce*) ?
 is that (*cela*) ?
 does he say ?
 is he doing (*fait-il*) ?

of whom (use the *dat.*) are you
 thinking (*pensez-vous*) ?
 to whom were you speaking ?
 whom do you see there ?
 whom do you like the best
 (*aimez-vous le mieux*) ?
 what does he give you ?
 what shall we see there (*là*) ?
 what do I see ?
 what do you want (*voulez-vous*) ?

EXERCISE XXVIII.

(Rule XXIII. pages 28, 29.)

interrogative and relative :

where is he ?
 where is she ?
 where are you running
 (*courez-vous*) ?
 where is my father ?
 where is your mother ?

where are the children ?
 where were you ?
 from whence does she come ?
 which way did you come (*êtes-
 vous venu*) ?

at what place in which we live
 in which he sleeps (*couche*)
 the country from which she comes is America
 the country to which she is going (*va*) is England
 which (*quel*) is the road by which she came (*elle est venue*) ?

EXERCISE XXIX.

(Rule XXIV. pages 29, 30.)

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

Celui, celle; ceux, celles.

into French :

1. he who speaks
 she who speaks
 the one (*m.*) which I have
 the one (*f.*) which thou hast

the one (*m.*) of whom I speak
 the one (*f.*) to whom you were speaking (*tous parliez*)
 those that you have are better than those that I have

Rien with **ne** :

What do you see there? I see **nothing**. **Nothing** is ready. Open that cupboard; there is (*il y a*) **nothing** in it (*dedans*). **No-**thing is more brilliant than the sun. **Nothing** is preferable to friend-I have eaten (*j'ai mangé*) **nothing**. Take **nothing**.

n without **ne**, and **rien** followed by an adjective in the same case :

What news (*quoi de nouveau*)? **Nothing**! Is there **anything** so new? A (mere) **nothing** will suffice (*suffira*). Is there **anything** in that cupboard? **Nothing**.

n followed by an adjective :

Nothing new! **Nothing** true! There is **nothing** new under the sun (*rien de nouveau sous la terre*). There is **nothing** more true than that.

L'un l'autre, one another :

They detest (*ils se détestent*) **one another**. Those two brothers speak ill (*médisent*) of **one another**. They never speak to **one another**. We should (*nous devrions*) help (*aider*) **one another**.

Quiconque, whosoever; **quelqu'un**, some one; **chacun**, each one; **autrui**, other people :

Whoever knows him (*connaît*), likes him. **Whoever** speaks lies is punished. **Some one** told me (*m'a dit*). **Some one** (*f.*) will come (*viendra*) to-morrow morning. **Some** of those soldiers are hussars. **Some** of those flowers are very pretty. **One** (*m.*) will come in (*à*) his turn. **Each one** thinks of himself (*soi*). **Each** of those ladies had a new dress. I spoke (*j'ai parlé*) to **each** (*f.*) in her turn.

Nul, no one; **aucun**, any; **autre**, other; **d'autres**, others; **l'un et l'autre**, both; **l'un ou l'autre**, either; **le même**, the same; **plusieurs**, several; **tout**, all :

One is happier than you. **No one** is come. Of all those books, **one** belongs to me (*m'appartient*). I have not spoken (*je n'ai parlé*) of those ladies. When that king is (*fut.*) dead, **another** will reign (*régnera*) in (*à*) his place. Leave (*laissez*) that chair (alone) and **another**. **Others** will tell you (*diront*) the same thing. **Both** are mine (*à moi*). **Both** (*f.*) are his sisters. That belongs (*appartient*) to **both**. Is that (*est-ce là*) a new horse? No, it is **the same**. Is it a new dress? No, it is **the same**. They are **the same** as **several** (people) have told it me (*me l'ont dit*). Do you know (*ssez-vous*) **all** those gentlemen? I know **several** (of them, *en*).
 11. **Everything** is yours (*à vous*). He has taken (*a pris*) **everything**, the wretch (*le malheureux*)! **Everything** that lives. **Everything** that breathes (*respire*). **All** that you see. **Everything** I wish.

III. Qui, quoi que ce soit, quel que soit.

Whoever it be who said (*a dit*) that. I will not see **anyone whatever**. Give it me, **whatever** it may be. **Whatever** be his object. **Whatever** be his skill. **Whatever** be the means. **Whatever** be the words which you employ (*que vous employiez*), he will not see you.

The Auxiliary Verb AVOIR, to have.

(Rule XXVI. page 33.)

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>
ayant <i>having</i>	eu, eue <i>had</i>

I. INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

- | | |
|------------------------|---|
| 1. I have a horse | 4. we have a carriage |
| 2. thou hast a brother | 5. you have a pencil |
| 3. he has a sister | 6. they (<i>m. & f.</i>) have a house |

Imperfect.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1. I had an uncle | 4. we had a cousin (<i>m.</i>) |
| 2. thou hadst an aunt | 5. you had a cousin (<i>f.</i>) |
| 3. he had a nephew
she had a niece | 6. they (<i>m. & f.</i>) had an uncle |

Perfect.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1. I had this | 4. we had the courage |
| 2. thou hadst that | 5. you had my pencil |
| 3. he had my room
she had thy room | 6. they (<i>m. & f.</i>) had the remainder |

Compound.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. I have had my turn | 4. we have had our dinner |
| 2. thou hast had thy turn | 5. you have had your breakfast |
| 3. he has had his turn
she has had her turn | 6. they (<i>m. & f.</i>) have had their supper |

Future.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. I shall have this room | 4. we shall have this table |
| 2. thou shalt have that room | 5. you shall have those chairs |
| 3. he shall have these things
she shall have those things | 6. they (<i>m. & f.</i>) shall have that room |

Conditional.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| d <i>or</i> would have the prize | 4. we should <i>or</i> would have the fifth |
| ouldst <i>or</i> wouldst have second | 5. you should <i>or</i> would have the sixth |
| uld <i>or</i> would have the | 6. they (<i>m. & f.</i>) should <i>or</i> would have the seventh |
| uld <i>or</i> would have the | |
| h | |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

- | | |
|-----------------------|---|
| ay have a coat | 4. that we may have a house |
| u mayst have a waist- | 5. that you may have a room |
| may have a hat | 6. that they (<i>m. & f.</i>) may have a garden |
| may have a dress | |

Imperfect.

- | | |
|----------------------|--|
| might have a great- | 4. that we might have our coats |
| ou mightest have a | 5. that you might have your trousers (<i>sing.</i>) |
| might have a new hat | 6. that they (<i>m. & f.</i>) might have their boots |
| might have a shawl | |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

- | | |
|-----------|---|
| s | 3. let us have this room |
| have that | 4. have the goodness |
| ave that | 5. let them (<i>m. & f.</i>) have my room |

II. *Negative Form.*

All the foregoing sentences in the negative form VII. page 35), rendering the indefinite article *a* or *an* it occurs, by the French particle *de* ; as :

- | | |
|--------------------|------------------------------|
| I have a horse | <i>j'ai un cheval</i> |
| I have not a horse | <i>je n'ai pas de cheval</i> |

Interrogative Form. (Rule XXVIII. page 35.)

All the foregoing sentences, in the indicative and conditional moods only, in the interrogative form.

IV. *Interrogative Negative.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

n'ai-je pas ? have I not ?

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. have I not dined (<i>dîné</i>) ? | 4. have we not finished (<i>fini</i>) ? |
| 2. hast thou not breakfasted (<i>dé-jeûné</i>) ? | 5. have you not begun (<i>commencé</i>) ? |
| 3. has he not supped (<i>souppé</i>) ?
has she not supped ? | 6. have they (<i>m. & f.</i>) not finished ? |

Imperfect.

n'avais-je pas ? had I not ?

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. had I not the first place ? | 4. had we not our books ? |
| 2. hadst thou not the second place ? | 5. had you not your books ? |
| 3. had he not the third ?
had she not the fourth ? | 6. had they (<i>m. & f.</i>) not found (<i>trouvé</i>) their places ? |

Compound.

n'ai-je pas eu ? have I not had ?

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. have I not had good luck (<i>de la chance</i>) ? | 4. have we not had enough ? |
| 2. hast thou not had thy dinner ? | 5. have you not had a warning ? |
| 3. has he not had his breakfast ?
has she not had her breakfast ? | 6. have they (<i>m. & f.</i>) not had their dismissal ? |

Future.

n'aurai-je pas ? shall I not have ?

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. shall I not have the pleasure of seeing you (<i>de vous voir</i>) ? | 4. shall we not have the pleasure of seeing you this evening ? |
| 2. wilt thou not have the first prize ? | 5. will you not have the goodness to come (<i>de venir</i>) ? |
| 3. will he not have the second ?
will she not have the third ? | 6. will not they (<i>m. & f.</i>) have the best room in (<i>de</i>) the house ? |

V. *Recapitulation of all the Tenses of Avoir.*

N.B.—The *partitive article* (see Rule V. pages 6, 7) to precede all the nouns substantive in the following sentences which are printed in different type from the rest :

- | | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| wine in my cellar | 8. I had friends everywhere |
| st water in thy glass | 9. thou hadst coffee, sugar, and |
| (any) money in his | milk for thy breakfast |
| t? | 10. had he (any) water in his |
| gold in her purse? | wine? |
| friends in the town | 11. we had for our dinner soup, |
| u (any) brothers in | fish, beef, potatoes, lob- |
| school? | ster |
| & f.) have relations | 12. they had the same dinner, and |
| gland | fruit besides (<i>en outre</i>) |

: adverbs signifying *much, more, less, &c.*, the pre-
is to be used.

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| had much trouble | 6. we have had very little fruit in |
| u had much pleasure? | our garden this year |
| had more prizes than | 7. I shall have much trouble with |
| | that child |
| had very little good | 8. we shall have too many chairs |
| (<i>chance</i>) | 9. you will have less trouble than |
| had as many oppor- | your brother |
| es as her sister? | 10. they will have more fruit this |
| | year than the last |

words printed in different type in the following
be preceded by the preposition *de* (see Rule V. β .
No, not any, are rendered by putting the verb into
ve form.

- | | |
|---------------------------|---|
| I have no trouble | 6. let them not have a dictionary |
| ouldst not have (any) | 7. hadst thou no books ? |
| ids there | 8. has he not had any wine ? |
| d have no rest | 9. she has no father |
| he have no books ? | 10. has she never (<i>jamais</i> ; no <i>pas</i> |
| ot have any wine | required) had a brother ? |

sition of the governed personal pronouns *le, him* or
or it; *les, them*. These pronouns are to be placed
ly before the verb; as:

je l'ai	<i>I have it, or I have got it</i>
l'as-tu?	<i>hast thou it, or hast thou got it?</i>
je l'ai eu	<i>I have had it</i>

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------|
| .t | 7. they have had it |
| hem | 8. I shall have it |
| u (got) them ? | 9. thou shalt have them |
| u not (got) them ? | 10. they will have it |
| ad it | 11. we should have them |
| u had it | 12. they would have it |

VII.* Where in English we say *to be hungry, thirsty, sleepy, &c.*, the French say *to have hunger, thirst, &c.* :

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>
to be hungry	avoir faim
„ thirsty	„ soif
„ cold	„ froid
„ warm	„ chaud
„ afraid	„ peur
„ ashamed	„ honte
„ sleepy	„ sommeil
„ right	„ raison
„ wrong	„ tort
„ 10 years old, 20 years, &c.	„ 10 ans, 20 ans, etc.
„ in need of	„ besoin de

N.B.—The partitive article is *not* to be used in the following sentences :

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. art thou hungry? | 11. I am never right, it seems (<i>as me semble</i>) |
| 2. art thou not thirsty? | 12. how sleepy I am (<i>write how I have sleep</i>)! |
| 3. he is cold | 13. he is fifteen years old |
| 4. she is too (<i>trop</i>) warm | 14. she was (<i>compound pret.</i>) 20 years old last week |
| 5. he was (<i>compound pret.</i>) afraid | 15. he will be 30 next year |
| 6. was he not afraid? | 16. do you want me (<i>write have you need of me</i>)? |
| 7. I should be ashamed | |
| 8. should you not be ashamed? | |
| 9. they would be sleepy | |
| 10. you are wrong | |

The Auxiliary Verb ÊTRE, to be.

(Rule XXIX. page 36.)

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>
étant <i>being</i>	été <i>been</i>

For negative and interrogative forms, see the same forms in the verb *avoir*.

* NOTE.—This exercise on an idiomatic peculiarity of the French language belongs more particularly to the Syntax ; but these expressions are of such constant and common occurrence in speaking French, that no exercise on the verb *avoir* however elementary, would be complete without them.

I. INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

- | | |
|-------------------------|--|
| 1. I am happy | 7. is she not ready ? |
| 2. art thou there ? | 8. we are tired (<i>fatigués</i>) |
| 3. am I not unhappy ? | 9. are you his brother ? |
| 4. art thou not ready ? | 10. are you not up (<i>levé</i>) yet ? |
| 5. he is ill | 11. they are brothers |
| 6. she is not ill | 12. are they not sisters ? |

Imperfect.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. I was at home (<i>chez moi</i>) | 8. we were very glad (<i>bien aises</i>)
to (<i>de</i>) see you |
| 2. thou wert not at home | 9. you were quite (<i>tout</i>) pale |
| 3. was he ill ? | 10. where were you ? |
| 4. was she not taller than her
sister ? | 11. they (<i>m.</i>) were in the drawing-
room |
| 5. we were very tired | 12. were they (<i>f.</i>) not in the dining-
room ? |
| 6. were you in (<i>en</i>) England
then ? | |
| 7. no; I was in (<i>à</i>) London | |

Perfect.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. I was wounded at the battle
of Novara (<i>Novare</i>) | 4. were we not very happy ? |
| 2. thou wert very idle | 5. you were punished (<i>puni</i>) |
| 3. Francis the First (<i>François
Premier</i>) was taken (<i>fait</i>)
prisoner at Pavia (<i>Pavie</i>) | 6. the Romans were the conquerors
of the world |

Compound.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. I have been insulted (<i>insulté</i>) | 7. have you ever (<i>jamais</i>) been in
France ? |
| 2. hast thou not been punished ? | 8. yes ; I have been several times to
Paris |
| 3. he has been put (<i>mis</i>) in prison | 9. they (<i>m.</i>) have never been abroad
(<i>à l'étranger</i>) |
| 4. has she not been badly treated
(<i>maltraitée</i>) ? | 10. my sisters have often been
abroad |
| 5. have we not been deceived
(<i>trompés</i>) ? | |
| 6. we have been unfortunate | |

Future.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. I shall be satisfied | 6. you shall be the master, and I
the pupil |
| 2. wilt thou not be ready at six
o'clock ? | 7. shall you be there ? |
| 3. he will be killed (<i>tué</i>) ? | 8. they (<i>m.</i>) will be there |
| 4. will she not be tired (<i>fatiguée</i>) | 9. will they (<i>f.</i>) not be put (<i>mises</i>)
in prison ? |
| 5. we shall be delighted (<i>charmés</i>)
to receive (<i>de recevoir</i>) you | |

Conditional.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. I should be delighted (<i>charmé</i>) | 5. we should be taken (<i>faits</i>) prisoners |
| 2. thou wouldst be punished | |
| 3. he would be rewarded (<i>récompensé</i>) | 6. they would be easily defeated (<i>vaincus</i>) |
| 4. she would be dead before getting there (<i>avant d'y arriver</i>) | |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

NOTE.—*I must, thou must, &c.*, is expressed in French by *il faut* (it is necessary), followed by the subjunctive; as:

I must be ready
we must be ready

il faut que je sois prêt
il faut que nous soyons prêts

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1. I must be there at six o'clock | 6. you must be quiet |
| 2. thou must be ready at five o'clock | 7. they (<i>m.</i>) must be at the station at eight o'clock to-morrow morning |
| 3. he must be punished | |
| 4. she must be rewarded | 8. my sisters must be ready |
| 5. we must be more diligent | |

Imperfect Tense.

NOTE.—*I had to be, or was obliged to be, thou hadst to be, or wert obliged to be, &c.*, are expressed in French by a past tense of the impersonal verb *falloir* ; *il fallait*, or *il fallut*, followed by the imperfect subjunctive:

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. I had to be dressed (<i>habillé</i>) at seven o'clock | 6. you had to be encouraged (<i>encouragés</i>) |
| 2. thou wert obliged to be there | 7. they (<i>m.</i>) were obliged to be very quiet |
| 3. he had to be ready before me | |
| 4. she had to be vaccinated (<i>vaccinée</i>) | 8. they (<i>f.</i>) had to be called (<i>réveillées</i>) |
| 5. we were obliged to be diligent | |

The two foregoing exercises may be turned into the negative form by adding the negative particles *ne — pas* to the impersonal verb *il faut* or *il fallait*; as:

1. I must not be there at six o'clock
il ne faut pas que j'y sois à six heures
2. I was not obliged to be there
il ne fallait pas que je fusse là

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

quiet !	8. let us not be so idle
not be so slow	9. be quicker !
him be punished	10. do not be late (<i>en retard</i>)
her be rewarded	11. let them (<i>m.</i>) be dressed in (<i>à</i>)
your brother be prepared	time
<i>préparé</i>)	12. let them (<i>f.</i>) be placed (<i>placées</i>)
your sister be ready at noon	on the table
us be more diligent	

* In the following sentences the demonstrative pronoun (variable) is to be used for *he, she, it, they, that* :

is my friend	6. he is a captain of lancers
he your friend ?	7. she is a Frenchwoman
is that lady ? she is my	8. what do you hold (<i>tenez-vous</i>) in
another	(<i>à</i>) your (<i>def. art.</i>) hand ?
is the intimate friend of	9. they are my children
my brother	10. it will soon be your turn
is there (<i>qui va là</i>) ? it	11. that would be a pity (<i>dommage</i>)
is I ; it is she	12. it is astonishing, prodigious

III. Time.

a division of a single hour by intervals of five minutes
office to show how *time* is expressed in French :

<i>English.</i>	<i>French.</i>
o'clock	<i>une heure</i>
minutes past one	<i>une heure cinq (minutes)</i>
minutes past one	<i>une heure dix (minutes)</i>
quarter past one	<i>une heure et quart</i>
minutes past one	<i>une heure vingt (minutes)</i>
five minutes past one	<i>une heure vingt-cinq (minutes)</i>
half past one	<i>une heure et demie</i>
five minutes to two	<i>deux heures moins vingt-cinq (minutes)</i>
minutes to two	<i>deux heures moins vingt (minutes)</i>
quarter to two	<i>deux heures moins un (or le) quart</i>
minutes to two	<i>deux heures moins dix (minutes)</i>
minutes to two	<i>deux heures moins cinq (minutes)</i>
o'clock	<i>deux heures</i>
(noon)	<i>midi</i>
(midnight)	<i>minuit</i>

rule for determining when *ce* is to be used in the place of the ordinary pronouns, *il, elle, ils, elles*, will be found in the Syntax.

NOTE.—1. *It is* is invariably expressed by *il est*; *it will be* by *il sera*, for any and all divisions of the hour, whether masculine or feminine, singular or plural.

2. The word *minutes* may be expressed or omitted at will.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. what o'clock (<i>heure</i>) is it? | 8. it will soon be five o'clock |
| 2. it is three o'clock | 9. will it soon be five? |
| 3. it is a quarter to four | 10. it is twenty minutes to three |
| 4. it is half-past five | 11. it will soon be twelve o'clock (midnight) |
| 5. it is twenty-five minutes past two | 12. get up (<i>levez-vous</i>)! it is half-past six |
| 6. it is a quarter to twelve (noon) | |
| 7. is it four o'clock yet? | |

IV. *Position of names of persons, or any other substantive not a personal pronoun, employed as subject of the verb être in interrogative sentences.*

The name or subject to be placed first, before the verb *être*, and the personal pronoun corresponding to such name or subject in gender and number to follow the verb; as:

is that gentleman your father?
will that boy be punished?

ce monsieur est-il votre père?
cet élève sera-t-il puni?

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. is Robert come (<i>venu</i>) yet? | 8. is that gentleman (an) officer? |
| 2. is your sister in the drawing-room? | 9. will the king be beheaded (<i>décapité</i>)? |
| 3. is William downstairs? | 10. was (<i>compound perfect</i>) not the queen decapitated? |
| 4. is Mary upstairs? | 11. have not the soldiers been conquered (<i>vaincus</i>)? |
| 5. are your brothers very tired (<i>fatigués</i>)? | 12. will not the army be victorious? |
| 6. are not your sisters very idle? | |
| 7. are those ladies sisters? | |

EXERCISES ON THE REGULAR VERBS.

EXERCISE XXXI.

(Rule XXX. page 37.)

First Conjugation. DONNER, to give.

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>
donnant <i>giving</i>	donné, donnée <i>given</i>

I. a. Write out the verb *parler*, to speak, in all its moods, tenses, and persons, with the English of each in full.

β. Write out the verb *aimer*, to love, in all its moods, tenses, and persons, without the English.

N.B.—The *e* of *je*, in the first person of each tense, to be elided before the vowel *a*; as, *j'aime*, *j'aimais*, &c.

γ. Write out in full the verb *manger*, to eat, consulting page 52, Remark 1.

δ. The verb *commencer*, to begin, consulting page 52, Remark 2.

ε. The verb *appeler*, to call, consulting page 52, Remark 3.

ζ. The verb *jeter*, to cast, consulting page 52, Remark 4.

η. The verb *achever*, to complete, consulting page 52, Remark 5.

II. INDICATIVE MOOD.

N.B.—Observe carefully the rules for the use of the partitive article, given on pages 6 and 7 of the *Accidence*.

Present Tense.

1. I give you my word of honour
2. thou givest thyself too much trouble
3. he is tracing a plan of attack
4. he is buying books

5. where does he buy his books?
6. where does she live?
7. does she not live in Paris?
8. we walk too slowly
9. you arrive too late
10. we are looking at that beautiful view
11. why do you speak so low?
12. they (*f.*) nurse the sick
13. on (*de*) what instrument do you play?
14. I play (*de*) the flute, but my brothers play (*de*) the violin, and
my sisters the piano
15. why do you draw the curtains?
16. we are passing the Cape of Good Hope
17. do your sisters sing well?
18. why do the soldiers reload their guns?
19. what are they sowing in that field?
20. they are sowing corn

Imperfect.

1. I was eating (page 52) my dinner
2. thou wert not thinking of (*à*) thy lesson
3. he was looking-at his book
4. did he not wear a white hat?
5. why was he shedding tears?
6. they were looking-for us everywhere
7. why were you looking-for them?
8. a capuchin was reciting prayers
9. the Romans surpassed all their enemies
10. why did they look-at us so (*comme cela*)?

NOTE.—To put any verb into the interrogative form, it suffices (as has been already shown on page 35) to place the nominative personal pronoun after the verb; as, *donnez-vous?* do you give? The 1st person singular of a verb of the first conjugation, in such cases, is accentuated on the last syllable; thus:

donné-je?

do I give?

And in the 3rd singular the letter *t* is inserted between the verb and the pronoun, to avoid the hiatus which would be occasioned by the meeting of two vowels; thus:

donne-t-il?

does he give?

In the 3rd singular of the future the same letter is inserted:

donnera-t-elle?

will she give?

Perfect.

1. I asked for wine, and he gave me water
2. thou didst occupy that room then
3. what did he give you?
4. he raised his (*def. art.*) head, and closed his (*def. art.*) eyes
5. we burst-out laughing (*de rire*)
6. why did she speak with (*de*) a trembling voice?
7. she possessed many jewels
8. did you find the road easily?
9. why did you turn-back-again?
10. how much did they give you for it (*en*)?

Compound.

1. I have given them all my money
2. thou hast given me nothing at all
3. did he buy that beautiful watch?
4. has she spoken to you of me?
5. we suspected him
6. have you observed any faults in his exercise?
7. did you not refuse to help him?
8. the dentist has drawn two (of my) teeth (insert *me*, from *me*)
9. they spoke to me (*a*) long time about you
10. why did they not look-at their watches?
11. they (*f.*) often asked me about you (*de vos nouvelles*)
12. have the children breakfasted?

Future.

Observe the rule on page 7, on the use of *de* in negative sentences.

1. I shall dine at six o'clock this evening
2. thou shalt dine with me
3. will she not remain this evening?
4. I will not give thee *any* money
5. he will not wear *a* hat
6. we will eat *no* potatoes, they are not good
7. you will find *no* books in his bureau
8. will your sister sing this evening?
9. who will accompany her? I
10. they will not fail to (*de*) come

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Observe the rule on page 7, with regard to the use of *de* before certain adjectives that precede their substantives.

1. I should prefer to stay at home
2. wouldst thou show me thy books?
3. he would give thee *pretty* presents
4. would she sing me *pretty* songs?

5. she would utter *loud* cries
6. we should eat *good* peaches
7. you would bitterly regret your conduct
8. would your brothers work willingly?
9. they (*m.*) would easily jump over that ditch
10. would they (*f.*) look-at me?

III. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present-Tense (preceded by *il faut*. See page 104).

NOTE.—The interrogative form of *must*, *must I?* *must you?* &c., is rendered in French by *faut-il?* negative, *ne faut-il pas?* for all persons and numbers; as:

must I speak?	<i>faut-il que je parle?</i>
must we not speak?	<i>ne faut-il pas que nous parlions?</i>

1. must I go up that ladder?
2. thou must jump out of (*par*) the window
3. he must not fall
4. must she not sing that song?
5. at what time (*heure*) must we arrive?
6. you must arrive at eight o'clock, so as to return at ten
7. they must leave that house immediately
8. why must we leave the house?
9. you must find your books before this evening
10. they must cultivate their garden

Imperfect (with *il fallait* or *il fallut*. See page 104).

NOTE.—The same rules apply to *il fallait*, or *il fallut*, as to *il faut*.

1. I was obliged to work hard
2. thou wert obliged to return in (*à*) time
3. he had to dine in a hurry
4. we had to give him all our money
5. had you to relate that story again (*de nouveau*)?
6. they were obliged to pay for me
7. you were obliged to sing that song again
8. they were obliged to dine early, to go to the play

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Be careful to place the 'governed personal pronoun' after the verb in the 2nd singular, 1st and 2nd plural *affirmative*, and to use the forms *moi* and *toi* when necessary, as taught by Remark 6, page 25.

1. give (*s.*) it me (page 21)
2. do not give (*s.*) it me
3. look-for (*s.*) thy books
4. walk (*s.*) upright
5. raise (*s.*) thyself
6. embrace (*s.*) me
7. let him speak to me
8. let him not speak to me any-more
9. let her cry as much as she likes (*tant qu'elle veut*), I will not listen-to her
10. let us speak to him
11. let us not speak to her
12. let us buy those beautiful oranges
13. give me your (*def. art.*) hand
14. take this book to my room
15. come up, madam, if you please
16. come nearer, my children
17. don't speak to me of that boy
18. scold me if you like (*voulez*), but do not strike me
19. let them listen-to me
20. let them not listen-to that man

V. EXERCISE ON ALL THE MOODS AND TENSES.

1. I will give you what (*ce que*) you ask-for
2. I have lent him my umbrella
3. I was speaking, but you were not listening
4. he spoke so low, that the meaning of his words escaped us
5. the Romans turned the right flank of the Carthaginians
6. I would strangle him, if I caught (*imperfect*) him
7. must we wake him?
8. must we not turn-back-again?
9. we were obliged (*il fallait*) to speak to him of it (*en*)
10. give me my hat and gloves
11. do not recall her misfortune to her
12. call me to-morrow morning at six o'clock

V. PARTICIPLES.

Present.

donnant

giving

NOTE.—All the present participles in the following sentences to be preceded by the preposition *en*, whether preceded by preposition in *English* or not.

- α. 1. I spent all my money in buying presents
 2. on arriving at Paris, you will ask-for the Hôtel Bristol
 3. whilst listening to the music, I lost (*j'ai perdu*) my purse
 4. he accosted him trembling
 5. he sleeps (*dort*) whilst eating
 6. in thinking of (*à*) one I forgot the other

β. The present participle never changes its form, but remains the same when qualifying a noun masculine or feminine, singular or plural.

1. a statue of Niobe weeping for her children
2. Diana hunting the stag
3. a poor woman begging on the high road was put (*mise*) in prison
4. three horses galloping without riders
5. two little girls crying bitterly
6. the giants heaping Pelion upon Ossa

Past Participle.

donné, donnée ; donnés, données given

NOTE.—In all these sentences the past participle must be made to agree with the substantive, or subject of the sentence.

1. the enchanted cup
2. cracked plates
3. broken glasses
4. he has been arrested
5. she was killed by a fall from her horse
6. they (*m.*) have been crushed
7. the engine was overturned, and many passengers killed or wounded

Second Conjugation. FINIR, to finish.

PARTICIPLES.

Present.

finissant finishing

Past.

fini, finie finished

I. Conjugate in full, like *finir*, the verbs *punir*, to punish, *obéir*, to obey, and *haïr*, to hate. (See page 53.)

II. As no conjugation serves better than the second to illustrate the derivation of other tenses from the *primitives*, the following exercise will precede.

From the model given on page 50, draw out a form of the *primitive* and *derived* tenses of the following verbs:—*bannir*, to banish; *pâlir*, to grow pale; and *établir*, to establish.

III. INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1. I am finishing my work
2. thou warnest me in (*à*) time
3. that light dazzles us
4. we are joining our forces
5. why do you grow-pale?
6. friendship and love unite our two families
7. she is washing our dresses
8. the sun ripens the fruit in our garden
9. why do you not fill your glass?
10. the engineers are building (*établir*) a bridge

Imperfect.

1. that child was getting pale with (*de*) cold
2. the water refreshed us
3. thou didst act honourably
4. that town furnished us with (*des*) provisions
5. the cold numbed our (*def. art.*) hands (*insert to us*)
6. we were warning them
7. I was trembling with (*de*) anger
8. you blushed with (*de*) shame
9. the soldiers were burying their dead
10. why did they bend their (*def. art.*) knees?

Perfect.

1. she delighted all our hearts
2. he enjoyed a good fortune (*gen.*)
3. this news (*s.*) rejoiced us exceedingly
4. we leaped-over the ditch
5. you fulfilled your duties well
6. the cattle (*pl.*) lowed, the trees groaned, and the woods resounded

IV. COMPOUND TENSES.

The note on page 39 explains that, although (to economise space) only one compound tense has been given, there are in reality as many compound tenses as there are tenses in the auxiliary verb; *e.g.*:

α. j'ai fini	<i>I have finished</i>
β. j'avais fini	<i>I had finished</i>
γ. j'eus fini	<i>I had finished</i>
δ. j'aurai fini	<i>I shall have finished</i>
ε. j'aurais fini	<i>I should have finished</i>
ζ. que j'aie fini	<i>that I may have finished</i>
η. que j'eusse fini	<i>that I might have finished</i>

- a. 1. I have filled his cup with (*de*) tea
 2. thou hast grown thin during thy absence
 3. he has finished his lesson
 4. has not your sister grown thin?
 5. we have obeyed your orders (*dat.*)
 6. have you obeyed my orders (*dat.*)?
 7. the troops have invested the town
 8. why did the French invade Russia?

- *β. γ. 1. I had finished speaking (*de parler*)
 2. thou hadst grown-pale visibly
 3. he had filled his glass too full
 4. she had smoothed her hair (*pl.*)
 5. had we punished him too severely?
 6. had you disobeyed his orders (*dat.*)?
 7. had your brothers cherished this hope?
 8. thy sisters had quickly sorted all the colours

- δ. 1. I shall have finished my work (*tâche*) to-morrow
 2. wilt thou have soon finished?
 3. he will have swamped all his fortune
 4. we shall have furnished all the necessary funds
 5. you will have established a good understanding
 6. they will soon have invested the whole town

- ε. 1. I would have soon cured you
 2. thou wouldst not have succeeded without his help
 3. he would have reflected
 4. would she not have amused the children?
 5. we would not have betrayed your secrets
 6. you would have grown-young-again
 7. they would have applauded heartily

ζ. Precede each sentence by *il faut* :

1. I must have grown immensely!
2. you must have stunned him
3. he must have amused those children very much
4. she must have finished her work
5. we must have united our forces
6. you must have grown-thin perceptibly
7. the soldiers must have invested the town
8. they must have set the prisoners at liberty

η. Precede each sentence by *il fallait* :

1. I was obliged to have finished by (*avant*) two o'clock
2. it was necessary that thou shouldst have built thy house
3. he must have reflected much
4. we were obliged to have extended (*agrandir*) our garden
5. you were obliged to have rebuilt your house
6. they were obliged to have furnished the necessary money

* The difference in the meaning of these two tenses is so slight that the two may be done together; as, *j'avais*, or *j'eus fini de parler*, &c.

V. FUTURE TENSE.

1. I shall rebuild my house
2. when wilt thou finish thy work?
3. the sea will swallow-up all their fine vessels
4. the blood will flow from that wound
5. will that child never grow?
6. we will establish a communication between the two parties
7. will you not seize that opportunity?
8. you will fill that bottle with (*de*) pommade
9. they will hate (page 53) you more-and-more
10. will they not choose a new general?

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

1. I should hate (page 53) that man
2. wouldst thou not warn me in (*à*) time?
3. he would cure you in an instant
4. would she warn us?
5. we should smooth all those difficulties
6. you would easily leap-over that obstacle
7. would those horses leap-over the gate?
8. our troops would invade their kingdom

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

1. I must finish this lesson before breakfast
2. must thou not accomplish thy task?
3. he must grow at-least five inches
4. she must supply us (with) tea and sugar
5. we must blacken our (*def. art.*) faces (insert *nous*)
6. you must not round your (*def. art.*) arms in dancing
7. the generals must replenish the treasury of the army
8. must not the soldiers obey their general (*dat.*)?

Imperfect.

1. I was obliged to black my (*def. art.*) hand and face (supply *me, dat.*)
2. he had to furnish all the necessary funds
3. we were obliged to bend the knee before him
4. were you not obliged to obey that tyrant (*dat.*)?
5. the sappers had to enlarge the opening
6. they had to rebuild their house from the cellar to the attics

Imperative.

1. choose (*s.*) the dress that pleases (*plait*) thee (*dat.*) best
2. let him reflect well
3. let her fill all those bottles (*carafes, f.*) with (*de*) fresh water
4. let us seize this opportunity

5. amuse me
6. do not choose me
7. choose him
8. choose her
9. let them not shorten their steps
10. let them act according-to my advice

VI. PARTICIPLES.

Present.

(Consult rules for present participle of verb *donner*, page 111.)

1. In leaping-over the ditch, I broke (*je me suis cassé*) my (*def. art.*) leg
2. on widening the hole, they found a skeleton
3. he died accomplishing his object
4. the soldiers quivering with (*de*) rage
5. the young girl, blushing with (*de*) shame, lowered her veil
6. the moon and stars shining with borrowed light
7. whilst demolishing the old wall, they found a Roman amphora
8. by kneading flour, one makes (*fait*) bread (*def. art.*)

Past.

(Same rule as for past participle of *donner*.)

1. his anger was softened
2. my sister was much weakened by this work
3. my task ended, I shall return home
4. we were quite (*tout*) deafened by the noise
5. these colours are tarnished by age (*def. art.*)
6. they have united their forces
7. why do you stand (*restez*) there quite bewildered?
8. the town was completely invested by the enemy

Third Conjugation. RECEVOIR, to receive.

PARTICIPLES.

Present.

recevant receiving

Past.

reçu, reçue received

I. Like the model *recevoir*, conjugate *apercevoir*, to perceive and *devoir*, to owe.

II. INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1. I owe him money
2. thou owest me a pound
3. he receives a shilling a day (*par jour*)
4. we perceive some men on the top (*au haut*) of that hill
5. do you not perceive something?
6. they collect the taxes

Imperfect.

1. I received him with (*à*) open arms
2. thou wert conceiving a new plan
3. did he perceive them?
4. we were receiving his orders
5. you owed them that reparation
6. they did not perceive us, but we perceived them

Perfect.

1. I received the order to set-out (*partir*) yesterday morning
2. thou didst receive the second prize
3. he perceived us from afar
4. we received each our pay
5. did you not perceive him?
6. they received him with blows (*à coups de bâton*)

Compound Tenses. (See page 113.)

1. I perceived a hole in her cloak
 2. hast thou received any letters this morning?
 3. the emperor received all the 'corps diplomatique' yesterday
 4. we have not received any letters
 5. have you received any (*en*)?
 6. they perceived their danger, and decamped
-
1. I had conceived vast projects
 2. thou hadst received no money
 3. he had conceived a great hatred for the king
 4. we had not perceived anything
 5. you had not yet received your orders
 6. they had perceived the signal
-
1. when I shall have received my pay
 2. thou wilt soon have perceived the door
 3. she would have received him well
 4. we should never have conceived that idea
 5. would you have received me?
 6. they will soon have perceived their fault

III. FUTURE TENSE.

1. I shall receive a pound a day (*par jour*)
2. thou wilt receive twice as much
3. how much will he, she, receive?
4. we shall perceive the tops of the mountains soon
5. you will then owe me twenty pounds
6. they will receive you with open arms (*à bras ouverte*)

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

1. I would not receive him, in (*à*) your place
2. thou wouldst never conceive such a thought
3. he would perceive me if I did not conceal myself
4. we should perceive our error immediately
5. would you not receive him?
6. they would never conceive it

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

1. must I receive him at my house?
2. thou must receive thy uncle and aunt
3. she must perceive nothing
4. must we not receive our letters this morning?
5. you must conceive something better (*de mieux*) than that
6. take care (*prenez garde*), they must not perceive us yet

Imperfect.

1. I had to receive all the officers
2. thou wert obliged to receive them against thy will (*malgré to*)
3. he had to receive twenty lashes

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. receive him well
2. let him not perceive me yet
3. let me conceive something bold (*de hardi*)
4. receive this mark of my esteem (*considération*)
5. let them not receive that man at their house (*chez eux*)

PARTICIPLES.

Present.

1. on receiving this order, he departed (*s'en alla*)
2. the robbers, perceiving our approach, took to flight (*s'enfuirent*)
3. the queen conceiving a great hatred for that man
4. in collecting the taxes of the government, they make (*font*) (fortune)

Past.

1. the sum received was four hundred pounds
2. he saw (*vit*) all his hopes deceived
3. I have received the money which was owed to me
4. the ideas conceived in a hurry become mature (*mûrissent*)
with time (*def. art.*)
5. (on) the fifth day the tops of the mountains were perceived
6. the taxes have not been collected this year

7. Peculiar Signification of the Verb **Devoir**, implying *Duty, Intention, Obligation.*

<i>indic. Present</i>	je dois parler	<i>I am to, I have to, speak</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	je devais parler	<i>I was to, I had to, speak</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	je dus parler	<i>I was obliged to speak</i>
<i>Compound</i>	*j'ai dû parler	<i>I had to speak, I must have spoken</i>
<i>Conditional</i>	je devrais parler	<i>I ought to speak</i>
<i>Compound Cond.</i>	*j'aurais dû parler	<i>I ought to have spoken</i>

a. Indicative Present.

1. I am to preside (over) the assembly
2. art thou not to come with us?
3. he is to be (*se trouver*) there at six o'clock
4. we are to set-off at eight o'clock this evening
5. you are to come-home (*rentrer*) before midnight
6. are not the troops to return (*rentrer*) to-day?

β. Imperfect.

1. I was to accompany her, but I could not (*je n'ai pas pu*)
2. thou wert to go with him
3. she was to accompany us
4. we were to meet them at the door of the theatre
5. you were to dine with your uncle this evening
6. they were to set out immediately after dinner (*def. art.*)

γ. Perfect.

1. I had to be silent (*me taire*)
2. she had to go away (*s'en aller*) directly

δ. Compound Tense (Present).

1. I have been obliged to undress completely
2. you must have suffered much
3. he was obliged to recant
4. Regulus was obliged to return to Carthage
5. we were obliged to burn our books
6. they were obliged to set-off-again without having seen us
(*sans nous avoir vus*)

¹ Note that the past part. of *devoir* employed thus as an auxiliary is invariable, i.e.
² not change in the feminine gender or plural number.

e. CONDITIONAL MOOD.

1. I ought to punish you
2. thou oughtest to be ashamed. (See page 102)
3. he ought to dress better than that
4. ought she not to accompany you?
5. we ought to make haste, if we wish (*nous voulons*) to arrive in (à) time
6. you ought not to speak to that man
7. they ought to get accustomed (*se faire*) to the customs of the country in which they live

ζ. Compound Conditional.

Ought to have, should have (verb to be put in the present infinitive).

1. I ought to have taken him with me
2. thou oughtest not to have eaten it all
3. he ought to have come with us
4. she ought not to have gone out
5. we ought to have known it before (*d'avance*)
6. you ought to have punished him
7. ought they not to have come with you?

Fourth Conjugation. **VENDRE**, to sell.

PARTICIPLES.

Present.	Past.
vendant <i>selling</i>	vendu, vendue <i>sold</i>

I. Conjugate in full : *rendre*, to restore, give-up, give-back; *battre*, to beat; *rompre*, to break; *perdre*, to lose; *mordre*, to bite.

N.B.—These four last verbs, *battre*, *rompre*, *perdre*, and *mordre*, although the terminations of their infinitive moods are not exactly the same as *vendre*, are nevertheless conjugated exactly like that verb. Thus :

From the infinitive, <i>battre</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{is derived, by} \\ \text{changing the} \\ \text{re into s,} \end{array} \right\}$	present, * <i>je bats</i>
" " <i>rompre</i>		" * <i>je romps</i>
" " <i>perdre</i>		" <i>je perds</i>
" " <i>mordre</i>		" <i>je mords</i>

* Note that the three persons singular of the present of *battre* have only one t: *je bats, tu bats, il bat*, as also the 2nd singular imperative, *bats*. The 3rd singular present of *rompre* takes a t: *il rompt*.

interrogative Form of the 1st person singular of Verbs of this Conjugation, and all others when such 1st person ends in two or more consonants.

Instead of writing :

vends-je ?	<i>do I sell ?</i>
prends-je ?	<i>do I take ?</i>
viens-je ?	<i>do I come ?</i>
crains-je ?	<i>do I fear ? &c.</i>

te :

est-ce que je vends ?
est-ce que je prends ?
est-ce que je viens ?
est-ce que je crains ?

II. INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1. I forbid your going out (you to go out)
2. why dost thou not give-him-back his money ?
3. do I sell my property too dear ?
4. he expects me this evening
5. we break the ice
6. you beat him too much
7. they hardly hear your voice at that distance

Imperfect.

1. I was scattering sand on the floor
2. why didst thou not answer thy brother (*dat.*) ?
3. the fish was biting at my hook
4. what did he intend to do ?
5. we were breaking our chains
6. you were setting a trap
7. those labourers were threshing corn

Perfect.

1. I twisted his (*def. art.*) neck (supply *lui*)
2. thou soldest it too dear
3. he held-out a rope to me
4. she sold all her fruit in one day
5. we answered in (a) few words
6. why did you not answer his questions (*dat*) ?
7. you mixed up all my papers
8. the Romans beat down the walls of the town

III. COMPOUND TENSES.

Observe.—Whenever a personal pronoun in the accusative precedes the verb, the past participle is to be made to agree with it in number and gender ; as :

- je l'ai vendue* I have sold her (*vendue* agrees with *l'*, being put for *la*, her, acc. sing. pers. pron. fem.)
je les ai vendus I have sold them (*vendus* agrees with *les*, acc. plur. pers. pron. masc.)

1. that (*celle-là*) was my house, but I have sold *it*
2. to whom hast thou sold *it*?
3. he had a large fortune once, but he has lost *it*
4. she has lost four children
5. how did she lose *them*?
6. she lost *them* by (*en*) different sorts of diseases
7. our troops have bravely fought the enemy
8. we answered him immediately
9. did that dog bite *your* (*def. art.*) hand (supply *vous*)?
10. yes; he bit *it* severely (supply *me*)
11. they have mixed-up all our names
12. why have they mixed *them* up?

Compound Imperfect.

1. I had heard that music before
2. where hadst thou heard *it*?
3. who had spread that news (*sing.*)?
4. my brother had spread *it*
5. we had given-up our (*def. art.*) arms
6. why had you given *them* up?
7. we had forbidden you to go out
8. they had not yet answered our letter (*dat.*)

IV. *Future.*

1. I will answer to-morrow
2. thou wilt easily beat him
3. that bear will break his chain if they dont take care (*si l'on n'y prend pas garde*)
4. we will break down the wall
5. will you wait for me?
6. they will not interrupt us again

Conditional.

1. I would hang him, if I could (*pouvais*) catch him
2. thou wouldst lose thy place
3. he would not wait more than (*de*) one hour
4. we would answer them if we knew (*savions*) their address
5. would you give it back to me?
6. they would lose all their fortune

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

NOTE.—To facilitate the employment of the subjunctive mood, some of the most ordinary locutions which require the subjunctive mood are here introduced.

Present Tense.

<i>pour que</i>	<i>in order that</i>
<i>afin que</i>	<i>so that</i>
<i>bien que</i>	<i>although</i>
<i>quoique</i>	
<i>pourvu que</i>	<i>provided that</i>
<i>sans que</i>	<i>without</i>

1. in order that I may hear him better
2. so that thou mayest not lose thy place
3. so that she may answer me in French
4. provided that we do not lose our way
5. without your getting-down
6. although you do not answer me
7. so that my dog should not bite him
8. without their hearing me

Imperfect.

1. I did not answer, although I heard him distinctly
2. I did (*fis*) that, so that thou shouldst not answer
3. so that he should beat them completely
4. he rang loud (*fort*), so that we might hear from afar
5. the drums beat, so that the crowd should not hear his cries

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. give (*s.*) me back my money
2. let him sell all that he has
3. let her not answer me in (*de*) that manner
4. let us get down
5. let us not mix-up the names
6. break it
7. do not break it
8. answer me in French
9. do not answer me in English
10. let them not lose their time

V. PARTICIPLES.

Present.

1. in biting that cake, I broke (*je me suis cassé*) a tooth
2. by selling your shares, you will gain double
3. whilst waiting for the company, I fell asleep (*je m'endormis*)
4. the children answering in chorus
5. the labourers shearing their flocks
6. the little girl bursting into tears

Past.

1. he has a (*def. art.*) cast-down appearance
2. the circle was broken
3. the interrupted song began-again

4. our troops were beaten, our cause lost
5. you must (*il faut*) wipe up the spilt ink
6. the blood (that has been) shed cries (for) vengeance

SENTIR, to feel (or smell).

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>
sentant <i>feeling (smelling)</i>	senti, sentie <i>felt (smelt)</i>

I. Write out the whole of the present tense, and the 1st persons singular of every other tense, of the following verbs: *servir*, to serve; **partir*, to set-out, go-away; **sortir*, to go-out; *dormir*, to sleep; *mentir*, to lie.

II. INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1. I go-out every morning (*say* all the mornings) at ten o'clock
2. dost thou not set-out to-day?
3. he goes-away to-morrow evening
4. we feel how (*combien*) good he is (*write* he is good)
5. do you not smell the scent on that handkerchief?
6. those children sleep soundly

Imperfect.

1. I was sleeping when you entered
2. thou wert asleep during the whole lesson
3. the lion was coming out of his den
4. we were coming out at the same moment that you entered
5. you were asleep, I am sure (*supply en*)
6. the sofas served us instead-of (*de*) beds

Perfect.

1. I set-off like an arrow
2. thou wentest-out without my permission, and thou shalt be punished
3. why did she go out without asking (*inf.*) permission?
4. we felt (*ressentir*) much sorrow on account of your misfortune
5. did you not foresee (*pressentir*) that that accident would befall (*arriver*) him (*dat.*)?
6. thy brother consented to accompany us

* *Partir* and *sortir* take the verb *être*, not *avoir*, for their auxiliary; the compound tenses are, therefore, *je suis parti*, *je suis sorti*.

Compound Tenses.

1. I never slept better in my life
2. hast thou consented to his demand?
3. he served me for (*pendant*) ten years without giving (*inf.*) me the least cause (occasion) for complaint (*de me plaindre*)
4. we felt all the importance of his words
5. did you sleep well?
6. his speeches always sent me to sleep (*endormir*)

NOTE.—1. The verbs *sortir*, to go-out, and *partir*, to set-out, away, take *être* for their auxiliary, not *avoir*. Thus:

je suis parti	<i>I went away</i> ; not <i>j'ai</i> parti
il était parti	<i>he had gone</i> ; not <i>il avait</i> parti
je suis sorti	<i>I went out</i> ; not <i>j'ai</i> sorti
elle était sortie	<i>she had gone out</i> ; not <i>elle avait</i> sorti

2. The past participle must agree in gender and number with the subject of the sentence.

Compound Present.

1. I went out upon business (*pour affaire*)
2. why art thou not yet gone?
3. she set off at five o'clock this morning
4. we came-away (*partir*) from Paris by the ten o'clock train
5. young ladies (*mesdemoiselles*), why are you not yet gone?
6. they went away without saying (*inf.*) good-bye

Imperfect.

1. I knocked at his door, but he had gone-out
2. if thou hadst gone-away sooner!
3. she had already gone when we arrived
4. I am very sorry that we had gone-out when you came (*êtes venu*)
5. you had gone-away, had you not (*n'est-ce pas*)?
6. my sisters had gone away the day before (*la veille de*) our arrival

III. *Future.*

1. I shall set-out at daybreak
2. wilt thou set-out with me?
3. that child will never sleep if you make (*faites*) so much noise
4. we will soon clear the table
5. will you never consent to (*à*) receive him?
6. they will deny that false report (*bruit*)

Conditional.

1. I would go-out directly if I had leave (supply *en*)
2. thou wouldst feel (*ressentir*) much sorrow for it (*en*)
3. he would never consent to that arrangement

4. we should sleep more comfortably (*mieux*) in that room
5. you would tell-a-lie if you said (*disais*) that
6. those children would not tell-a-lie for all the money (*l'or*) in the world (*gen.*)

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense of Vouloir.

je veux	<i>I wish, or will, will-have</i>
tu veux	<i>thou wishest, or wilt, wilt-have</i>
il veut	<i>he wishes, or will, will-have</i>
nous voulons	<i>we wish, or will, will-have</i>
vous voulez	<i>you wish, or will, will-have</i>
ils veulent	<i>they wish, or will, will-have</i>

require the verb that follows them to be put into the present subjunctive, where in English the infinitive mood is used; as:

je veux qu'il parte	<i>I wish him to go away</i>
voulez-vous que nous partions ?	<i>do you wish us to go away ?</i>

Present Tense.

1. dost thou wish me to set-out alone ?
2. I will have thee leave (*sortir de*) the room this instant
3. I will not have him tell-a-lie
4. he wishes us to serve him faithfully
5. I wish you to set-off at five o'clock punctually
6. we wish them to consent to what (*ce que*) you ask

(The imperfect indicative of *vouloir*, *je voulais*, I wished, and the conditional *je voudrais*, I should wish, or would like, are followed by the imperfect subjunctive.)

Imperfect.

1. he wished me to set out before him
2. I should wish thee to go out every morning (*pl.*)
3. he would not like us to go away without seeing (*inf.*) him
4. we did not wish him to tell-a-lie
5. I should like you to deny that report
6. I should not like them to serve you ill

Imperative.

1. go away (*s.*)
2. do not go away (*s.*) yet
3. let us be off
4. never go out without my permission
5. never tell-a-lie
6. let him consent to what (*ce que*) you propose
7. help me
8. do not help me before your father
9. help me (to) that dish of potatoes
10. let the servants clear the table

PARTICIPLES.

Present.

1. in serving that man you injure (*nuisez*) me (*dat.*)
2. shut the door when you go-out (in going out)
3. setting-out for Syria
4. the soldiers going-out of the town repulsed the enemy
5. he speaks in his sleep (while sleeping)

Past.

1. do not wake that sleeping (*endormi*) child
2. the table was cleared in an instant
3. a grief bitterly (*bien*) felt
4. the Greeks having gone-out of Troy
5. a foreseen misfortune
6. those news (*s.*) were soon refuted (*démentir*)

CONDUIRE, to lead, drive, conduct.

PARTICIPLES.

*Present.*conduisant *conducted**Past.*conduit, conduite *conducted*

I. Write down the 1st persons singular of every tense of the verbs *produire*, to produce; *introduire*, to introduce; *construire*, to construct; *détruire*, to destroy; and *nuire*, to injure.

Draw out a table of the *primitive* and *derived* tenses of the same verbs. (See page 50.)

II. INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1. I am translating the 'Odes' of Horace into (*en*) English
2. thou art leading him (*induire*) into (*en*) error
3. thy brother drives his own horses
4. we are translating the 'Inferno' of Dante into French
5. you are injuring your own interests (*dat.*)
6. those trees produce no fruit; cut them down (*abattre*)

* Almost all the verbs of this class are derived from Latin verbs in *duco*, or *struo*.

From Latin.	English.	From Latin.	English.
conduire	conduco . . . to conduct	induire	induco . . . to induce
produire	produco . . . to produce	réduire	reduco . . . to reduce
introduire . . .	introduco . . . to introduce	déduire	deduco . . . to deduce
construire . . .	construo . . . to construct	nuire, nuisant nui .	noceo . . . to injure
instruire	instruo to instruct	(cf. Angl. nuisance)	
détruire	destruo to destroy	luire, luisant, lui .	luceo . . . to shine

Imperfect.

1. I used to instruct them every morning
2. what wert thou translating?
3. he was driving himself, when his carriage upset (*versa*)
4. we injured no one as much as ourselves (*dat.*)
5. why did you destroy that work?
6. they were constructing a bridge over the river

Perfect.

1. Rome produced many great men
2. why didst thou not inform me of that before (*plus tôt*)?
3. he accompanied (*reconduire*) her as far as the street-door
4. we took (*conduire*) him to (*dans*) his room
5. why did you not see her out (*reconduire*)?
6. the locusts destroyed all their crops in one day

Compound Tenses.

1. my garden has produced more fruit than yours
2. that tree produced last year three hundred apricots
3. his land would have produced three times as-much if it had been well cultivated
4. it would have produced cabbages, peas, beans, potatoes, asparagus, artichokes
5. did you take him to the bank?
6. they have destroyed the old bridge, and they are building a new one (*en*)

III. *Future.*

1. I will instruct you, if you wish (*it*)
2. whither wilt thou lead me?
3. that frost will injure your trees (*dat.*)
4. we will not lead you into (*en*) error
5. you will take him as far as the gate of the town
6. they will inform you if there is any change in their plans

Conditional.

1. I would translate all that in an hour
2. to what wouldst thou reduce him?
3. he would inform me if I did wrong (*mal*)
4. we would introduce them into the town
5. you would translate that better with a little more care
6. they would take you anywhere you like

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1. he wishes me to drive myself
2. I will have thee translate that passage
3. I wish that tree to bear more fruit

4. he wants us to go-with-him (*reconduire*) as far as Paris
5. we wish you to instruct these children in Latin grammar
6. we do not wish them to destroy their books

Imperfect.

1. he wished me to translate the passage for him
2. I should not like him to lead you into error
3. he wished us to rebuild the house at our expense
4. the king wished them to destroy the old bridge

Imperative.

1. translate (*s.*) that
2. let him drive himself
3. let us instruct the poor
4. accompany me as far as the garden-gate
5. do not accompany her, it is too late
6. let them not injure my reputation

PARTICIPLES.

Present.

1. the land grows poor (*s'appauvrit*) in producing
2. I learn something myself in instructing others
3. I saw (*je vis*) some meat cooking in a pot
4. the stars shining in the darkness
5. in destroying the old bridge they discovered (*ils ont découvert*) a treasure

Past.

1. that meat is not done (cooked)
2. I like meat underdone (little cooked)
3. business (*des affaires*) conducted in (*de*) that manner never succeeds
4. that poem translated into English will lose all its charm
5. I have seen all my hopes destroyed

***CRAINdre**, to fear.

PARTICIPLES.

*Present.*craignant *fearing**Past.*craint, crainte *feared*

RE.—Nearly all the verbs of this class are derived from Latin verbs ending in *ere*. The English verbal substantive or adjective derived from these verbs has the termination *ment* as the French past participle; viz. *nt*.

Latin.	French.	Past Participle.	Eng. Subst. or Adj.
plaigno	plaindre	plaint	<i>complaint</i>
joins	joindre	joint	<i>joint</i>
peins	peindre	peint	<i>feint</i>
oigne	oindre	oint	<i>anoint, ointment</i>
peint	peindre	peint	<i>paint</i>

I. Write down the whole of the present tense, and the 1st persons singular of all the other tenses, of the following verbs: *peindre*, to paint; *plaindre*, to pity; *atteindre*, to reach to, attain; *contraindre*, to force, constrain.

Draw out a table (from page 50) of the primitive and derived tenses of these four verbs.

The negatives most in use in French are :

ne — pas	<i>not</i>
ne — point	<i>not at all</i>
ne — plus	<i>no more</i>
ne — jamais	<i>never</i>
ne — rien	<i>nothing</i>
ne — guère	<i>hardly, scarcely</i>
ne — personne	<i>no one, nobody</i>
ne — aucun	<i>no one, none</i>
ne — ni	<i>neither, nor</i>

The verb is placed between the two particles of negation; as :

<i>je ne crains pas</i>	<i>I do not fear</i>
<i>je ne crains personne</i>	<i>I fear nobody</i>

Only is expressed by *ne* before the verb and *que* after it; as: *je ne crains que lui*, I only fear him (literally, I do not fear any one but him).

II. INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1. I do not fear his anger
2. what dost thou fear?
3. he fears nothing
4. we are afraid of the storm which threatens to burst-forth
5. what are you painting there?
6. they are afraid of nobody

Imperfect.

1. I was joining the two planks together
2. whom didst thou fear most (*le plus*)?
3. she was dyeing her hair (*pl.*)
4. we were pretending to (*de*) be asleep
5. what were you painting?
6. they were afraid of disturbing (*inf.*) you

Latin.	French.	Past Participle.	Eng. Subst. or Adj.
<i>extinguo</i>	<i>éteindre</i>	<i>éteint</i>	<i>extinct</i>
—	<i>empreindre</i>	<i>empreint</i>	<i>imprint</i>
<i>atingo</i>	<i>atteindre</i>	<i>atteint</i>	<i>attain</i>
<i>tingo</i>	<i>teindre</i>	<i>teint</i>	<i>taint</i>

Perfect.

1. I put the candle out suddenly
2. thou pretendedst to be angry
3. he rejoined us after (*au bout de*) a few minutes
4. we enjoined them (*dat.*) (to keep) the strictest silence
5. why did you compel him to (*de*) jump-over that ditch ?
6. they infringed the laws of the country

Compound Tenses.

1. I feared to wake the child
2. thou hast painted a very pretty picture
3. William rejoined his father at Amiens
4. we compelled your sisters to come with us
5. we had joined our forces to his
6. why had you put the gas out ?
7. they had pretended not to (*de*) see us
8. they had reached the end of their journey

III. *Peculiar Construction of Craindre followed by ne.*

Craindre requires the verb that follows it to be put in the junctive mood, preceded by *ne* :

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| je crains qu'il ne parle | <i>I fear he will speak</i> |
| je craignais qu'il ne vînt | <i>I was afraid lest he should come</i> |
| (cf. Latin <i>timeo ne veniat</i>) | |

But if *craindre* itself is negatived, the particle *ne* will be omitted before the verb that follows; as :

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| je ne crains pas qu'il parle | <i>I am not afraid of his speaking</i> |
| je ne craignais pas qu'il parlât | <i>I was not afraid of his speaking</i> |

Present Tense.

1. I am afraid that he will (lest he) sell his house
2. he is afraid lest I should receive more than he
3. we are afraid she will finish playing (*de jouer*) before our arrival
4. you are afraid of his growing too much

Negative.

1. I am not afraid of his upsetting us
2. he is not afraid of my speaking to him
3. we are not afraid of his beating (*dépasser*) me in mathematics
4. they are not afraid of our receiving them badly

Imperfect.

1. I was afraid lest he should shut the door
2. wert thou afraid of my selling that property ?
3. he was afraid lest I should arrive before him
4. we were afraid lest the wind should blow down (*abattre*) the house

IV. *Future.*

1. henceforth I shall not fear him any more
2. wilt thou not be afraid of his anger ?
3. he will rejoin us after (*au bout de*) a few seconds
4. we shall no longer pity that wretch ; he does not deserve it
5. you will never compel him to do what he does not like (*ce qu'il ne lui plaît pas*)
6. they will infringe none of the laws

Conditional.

1. I would not paint any more if I were you (*à votre place*)
2. why shouldst thou pretend ?
3. he would easily compel you (to do) it (*y*) if he wished
4. we should never attain (reach-to) that height
5. why should you not attain it ?
6. with a little perseverance they would reach the top

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1. shall I (*voulez-vous que*) paint a flower for you ?
2. I will not have thee pretend to be ill
3. I wish him to rejoin me as soon as possible
4. shall we (*voulez-vous que*) put the candle out ?
5. I will not have you fear that man, he (*ce*) is a coward
6. I will not have them dye their (*def. art.*) hair (*pl.*) (supply *se*)

Imperfect.

1. he wished me to rejoin him before seven o'clock
2. I wished thee to compel him to obey
3. I would not have him infringe the laws
4. he wished us to fear him
5. I wished them to restrain their passions

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. fear (*s.*) nothing !
2. put out (*s.*) the candle
3. rejoin (*s.*) me at six o'clock this evening
4. let him not be afraid of that coward !
5. let us never infringe the laws
6. let us compel her to (*à*) come with us
7. do not compel her (to do so) (*y*) if she does not like it
8. paint that pretty flower for me
9. do not put out the candle till (*avant que*) I open the door
10. let them not pretend to be ill

PARTICIPLES.

Present.

1. in putting out the gas I burnt my (*def. art.*) hand (supply *me*)
2. he amuses himself painting
3. fearing to (*de*) disobey you (*dat.*)
4. joining their (*def. art.*) hands, they swore eternal friendship
5. thy sister went out of the room, pretending to be ill

Past.

1. a pretended sickness
2. the queen anointed (*de*) with the holy oil
3. the two houses joined together
4. this height (being) attained, they sat down (*ils s'assirent*)
5. my sister, compelled to obey, did so (*le fit*) in spite of herself

CONNAÎTRE, *to know, to be acquainted with.*

PARTICIPLES.

Present.

connaissant *knowing, &c.*

Past.

connu, connue *known, &c.*

I. Write out the whole of the present tense, and the 1st persons singular of all other tenses, of the verbs *paraître*, to appear, seem; *croître*, to grow; **naître*, to be born.

Draw out a table of the primitive and derived tenses of these verbs. (Page 50.)

II. INDICATIVE MOOD.

N.B.—Names of countries to be preceded by the definite article.

Present Tense.

1. I know France much better than England
2. dost thou know Russia?
3. he has travelled much; he knows Denmark, Sweden, Norway, Lapland, Russia—all the North, in a word
4. my sister knows Austria, Bohemia, Hungary, and Poland
5. we know Saxony, Bavaria, Wurtemberg, and Prussia, but we do not know Austria
6. do you know Spain and Italy?
7. they know all those countries very well

* *Naître* makes in its perfect tense *je naquis*, past participle *né, née*.

Imperfect.

1. I used to know his father
2. why didst thou not appear at breakfast?
3. she seemed quite (*toute*) dismayed
4. we did not know them
5. why did you disappear all of a sudden?
6. thy flocks were feeding in the meadow

Perfect.

1. I appeared (for) an instant, and then went away (*je m'en allai*)
2. thou didst recognise him at once
3. Napoleon was born at Ajaccio, in Corsica
4. we recognised him by (*à*) his accent
5. you did not appear again (*pl.*)—why?
6. they seemed quite happy and content

Compound Tense.

1. I knew your brothers Robert, Charles, and Alfred at college, but not William or (*ni*) Arthur
2. didst thou recognise my sisters Mary and Helen?
3. John appeared, but George and Frederick did not appear
4. we disappeared in a moment (*en un clin d'œil*)
5. you knew me when I was quite young
6. they have not appeared again (*pl.*)

Naître requires the verb *être* as its auxiliary :

1. I was born in 1840
2. when wert thou born?
3. my sister was born at Paris in 1850
4. we were born (on) the same day
5. were you not born in France?
6. my brothers were born in Italy

Future.

1. I shall easily recognise him
2. thou wilt appear (for) a moment, and then disappear
3. he will appear (*comparaître*) to-morrow before the judge
4. we shall not forget (*méconnaître*) your good services
5. you will know me again, won't you (*n'est-ce pas*)?
6. these plants will grow well in (*à*) the shade

Conditional.

1. I should know you among a thousand others
2. how (*à quoi*) wouldst thou recognise me?
3. he would appear if we wished it
4. those difficulties would spring-up-again (*renaître*) at each

III. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.*

Present Tense.

1. I must appear in uniform
2. I will have thee appear this evening
3. he must not recognise me
4. will you have us appear in white cravats?
5. you must recognise your fault
6. I will have them appear (*comparaître*) before me

Imperfect.

1. he wished me to appear in plain clothes (*habits bourgeois*)
2. he was obliged to recognise me
3. we were obliged to appear satisfied
4. I would have them appear before me

Imperative.

1. recognise (*s.*) him
2. do not recognise (*s.*) me yet
3. let him appear
4. let the prisoner appear (*comparaître*)
5. let us appear satisfied
6. recognise your children
7. let them not neglect (*méconnaître*) their duty

PARTICIPLES.

Present.

1. he died at his birth (in being born)
2. the young ladies appearing one after the other
3. flocks feeding in the meadows
4. knowing your friendship for him, I have invited him to come

Past.

1. it is a thing well known
2. the first volume published (*paraître*)
3. a serpent gorged with food (*repâître*)
4. services ill requited (*méconnaître*)

TENIR, to hold.

PARTICIPLES.

Present.

tenant holding

Past.

tenu, tenue held

Conjugate in full, *retenir*, to retain, and *venir*, to come, including all the persons which are formed irregularly. (See variation 2, page 51).

* For *wish*, *wished*, &c., followed by subjunctive mood, see page 128.

II. NOTE.—In speaking of the days of the week, the preposition *on* employed in English is omitted in French; and when the day is put into the plural number, the definite article is used; as:

je viendrai mardi	<i>I will come on Tuesday</i>
ne venez pas <i>les</i> mercredis	<i>do not come on Wednesdays</i>
venez tous <i>les</i> dimanches	<i>come every Sunday</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1. I come from Paris
2. whence comest thou?
3. he comes to us (*chez nous*) on Tuesdays, Thursdays, and Saturdays
4. she comes every Sunday
5. we own that our party (*soirée*) was very dull
6. when do you return?
7. my brothers return on Monday, but my sisters do not return before Wednesday

Imperfect.

1. I was coming back from the play when I met him
2. thou wert getting (*devenir*) very idle
3. he was warning us of the danger of the passage
4. we did not deny (*disconvenir*) it (*gen.*, see page 18)
5. you were becoming the laughingstock of the village
6. they detained (*retenir*) us in spite of ourselves

NOTE.—To express the day of the month in French, the cardinal number is to be used instead of the ordinal (see page 13), and the preposition *of* to be omitted; as:

the 12th of August	<i>le douze août</i>
the 30th of September	<i>le trente septembre</i>

Perfect.

1. I came back from Rome on the 9th of May
2. didst thou not come back from Dresden on the 14th of January?
3. my brother came to us (*chez nous*) on the 24th of December, and my sister on the 26th
4. we kept (*retenir*) him from the 15th of June till the 12th of July
5. when did you return?
6. they kept-us-talking (*entretenir*) a long time on (*d*) that subject

COMPOUND TENSES.

NOTE.—*Venir* and all its derivatives take *être*, not *avoir*, for their auxiliary verb, and their past participles must agree with the subject in gender and number.

Present.

1. I kept him as long as I could
2. why didst thou maintain the contrary opinion?
3. she returned from the country yesterday evening
4. we have come to wish (*dire*) you good-bye!
5. why did you not come sooner?
6. are your brothers returned from the play yet?

Imperfect.

1. I had managed (*parvenir*) to quiet him
2. why hadst thou returned before thy brothers?
3. he had become quite proud
4. we had restrained (*contenir*) him with great difficulty
5. had you not obtained his permission?
6. they had kept-him-up (*soutenir*) for five or six minutes

III. *Future.*

1. I will warn you in (*à*) time
2. thou wilt never succeed (*parvenir*) in (*à*) convincing (*inf.*) him of that
3. the emperor will return on the 4th of May
4. that house will belong to us next year, on the 1st of January
5. we shall never obtain his permission
6. shall you come back on Friday or Saturday?
7. they will return on Monday, the 30th of September, or on Tuesday, the 1st of October

Conditional.

1. I would check him if I could
2. thou wouldst not reach (*venir à*) his (*def. art.*) shoulder (supply *lui*)
3. he would discourse (*entretenir*) you an hour about his misfortunes
4. we should never reach that dignity
5. you would agree to it (*gen.*, see page 13), would you not (*n'est-ce pas*)?
6. they would support you to the best of their ability (*de leur mieux*)

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1. when must I return ?
2. thou must remember (*retenir*) well what I say to thee
3. he must not become idle
4. must we come to dinner ?
5. you must obtain his permission first (*avant*)
6. at what o'clock must they return ?

Imperfect.

1. I wished him to own (*convenir*) his fault (*gen.*)
2. how would-you-have him become learned all at once !
3. he did not wish us to gain (*parvenir à*) our object
4. I did not wish them to obtain that prize

Imperative.

1. come back (*s.*) at ten o'clock
2. do not come back (*s.*) on Sunday ; come on Monday
3. let him hold the rope tight
4. come (*allons*), let us agree to it (*gen.*, page 13) we were wrong
5. let us detain no one against their will
6. remember (*retenir*) this well
7. come back to-morrow, please (*je vous en prie*)
8. let them obtain the master's permission

PARTICIPLES.

Present.

1. the queen, returning from Scotland, will pass through (*par*) London
2. a house belonging to nobody
3. my brothers, coming from India, will be here to-morrow
4. by warning him in time, you will do (*rendre*) him (a) service

Past.

1. the water contained in that boiler
2. the children, warned in (*à*) time, desisted
3. he showed us his cross, gained (*obtenir*) on the field of battle
4. a position (*place*) gained with much difficulty
5. my sister, (having) arrived at the age of seventeen, left school
6. what ! you are come back again ! (*write*, behold, you returned !)

IV. *Peculiar Meaning of Venir followed by de.*

Venir followed by *de* means to come from doing anything, i.e. to have just done it ; as :

je viens de dîner
je venais de dîner

I have just dined
I had just dined

Present Tense.

1. I have just seen your brother
2. hast thou not just breakfasted?
3. my sister has just gone out
4. we have just come in
5. you have just come in, hav'nt you (*n'est-ce pas*)?
6. they have just gained another (*encore une*) gold medal at the Exhibition of Paris

Imperfect.

1. I had just gone out when you came in
2. had she not just dined?
3. he had just obtained the rank of general
4. we had just forbidden him to go out, when this misfortune happened
5. you had hardly gone out when the roof fell in (*s'éroula*)
6. they had just bid (*dire*) us good-bye!

OUVRIR, to open.**PARTICIPLES.***Present.*

ouvrant *opening*

Past.

ouvert, ouverte *opened*

I. Give the whole of the present tense and the first person singular of all the other tenses of *couvrir*, to cover; *souffrir*, to suffer; and *offrir*, to offer.

II. INDICATIVE MOOD.*Present Tense.*

1. I suffer horribly from tooth-ache
2. dost thou suffer much from thy head-ache?
3. from what does he suffer?
4. we offer you board and lodging gratis
5. I cannot accept what (*ce que*) you offer me
6. they offer (supply *me*) to take me to Paris with them

Imperfect.

1. I offered him fifty francs, and he was not satisfied
2. didst thou not offer him ten francs and a half for it (*en*)?
3. how much did he offer you for it?
4. we offered them two thousand francs, but they demanded two thousand five hundred
5. why did you permit (suffer) such behaviour?
6. they covered us with ridicule

Perfect.

1. I opened it, and found nothing inside
2. why didst thou not open (the door) to me?
3. Minerva covered Achilles with her ægis
4. we suffered much from her insolence
5. when did you discover that?
6. I shut the door, but they opened it again

Compound Tenses.

(See rule for agreement of past participle with preceding personal pronoun, page 121.)

Present.

1. I shut that door; who has opened *it*?
2. they had secrets; but thou hast discovered *them*
3. those are (*voilà*) pretty flowers; who gave (offered) *them* to you?
4. we covered *them* (*m.*) with (*de*) leaves
5. we suffered much during that journey
6. they opened the door all of a sudden

Imperfect.

1. I could not shut the box after (insert *que*) I had opened *it*
2. thou hast offered *them* (*m.*) to me
3. he had offered to accompany me
4. when we had discovered their hiding-place, we gave a signal
5. how had you discovered *it* (*f.*)?
6. they had offered a large sum of money for it (*en*)

III. *Future.*

1. I shall soon discover your secret
2. thou wilt offer him (*dat.*) money
3. he will not put-up-with (suffer) your insolence
4. we will offer them meat and drink (to eat and to drink)
5. what will you offer me?
6. will they never open the doors!

Conditional.

1. I would not allow that in (*à*) your place
2. wouldst thou open (the door) to me, if I knocked?
3. if you were to tell-a-lie, he would discover it directly
4. we would offer it you (*dat.*) willingly
5. how would you discover it?
6. they would never allow (suffer) that

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1. shall I (*voulez-vous que*) open the door to them?
2. I will not have thee open it yet

3. he must not offer them so much at-first
4. we must discover their secret
5. you must not put-up-with (suffer) his impertinence
6. will you have them offer more than they possess (supply *ne*)?

Imperfect.

1. would you have me open it again?
2. he was obliged to open the door, whether he would or not (*bon gré mal gré*)
3. he wished us to offer him all our goods (*s.*)
4. I would not have them suffer any more (*davantage*)

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. open (*s.*) the door
2. do not open (*s.*) it yet
3. open (*s.*) it now!
4. let him suffer for (*de*) his folly
5. let us offer him (*dat.*) to accompany him as far as London
6. cover that child (up), he is cold
7. open that door for me
8. let them cover up (supply *ae*) their (*def. art.*) feet

DIRE, to say, or tell

PARTICIPLES.

*Present.*disant *saying, telling**Past.*dit, dite *said, told*

I. Conjugate in full, *contredire*, to contradict, and *maudire*, curse. (See notes on pages 40, 41.)

II. INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1. I say what (*ce que*) I think
2. thou contradictest me always
3. he always repeats the same thing
4. we slander nobody (*gen.*)
5. what do you say?
6. why do you always repeat the same words?
7. why do you slander the absent (*gen. pl.*)?
8. those people are very rude; they always contradict me

Imperfect.

1. I was saying then
2. what wert thou saying to me?
3. the heathen cursed him by his gods
4. we foretold all that (*ce qui*) has (*être*) happened
5. you said quite (*tout*) the contrary yesterday
6. I spoke to them in English, and they repeated it in French

NOTE.—*Dire*, to tell, followed by an infinitive, requires the preposition *de*.

Perfect.

1. I told him to hold-his-tongue
2. thou didst slander me (*gen.*) last year
3. he told me to follow him
4. we said it and repeated (it) several times
5. why did you slander that poor man (*gen.*)?
6. the almanacs predicted that eclipse

Compound Tenses.

NOTE.—When a relative pronoun *in the accusative case* is followed by a verb in any compound tense, the past participle must agree with the antecedent of such relative pronoun in gender and number; as:

1. the word which I spoke is true
la parole que j'ai dite est vraie

Here *dite* is in the singular feminine, to agree with *la parole* antecedent to *que*.

2. the words which I spoke are true
les paroles que j'ai dites sont vraies

here *dites* is in the plural feminine, to agree with *les paroles* antecedent to *que*.

Present.

1. I said nothing
2. didst thou not tell me to come at twelve o'clock?
3. who was the author of the news (*s.*) which you told me this morning?
4. the report (*nouvelle*) which we contradicted this morning is true after all
5. the misfortunes which you predicted have (*être*) not happened
6. do not believe all the calumnies which they told you

Imperfect.

1. and yet I had foretold it!
2. thou hadst not told me to come
3. he had contradicted me so often, that I would (*voulais*) not speak to him again (*plus*)
4. as for (*quant à*) that calamity, we had foretold it
5. they had told me that the dinner was at (*pour*) six o'clock

II. *Future.*

1. I will never tell you anything more
2. thou wilt tell me, if I do it well
3. he may (he will) say what he likes (*voudra*), I will not believe him
4. we will never contradict you again (*plus*)
5. will you repeat it if I tell it you?
6. they will not slander me (*gen.*) again

Conditional.

1. in (*à*) your place, I would not tell it him
2. thou wouldst repeat it to them, if I told it you
3. he would contradict everything (*tout ce que*) you say
4. you can rely upon it (*y compter*), we would never repeat it
5. you might say the same thing a hundred times without convincing (*inf.*) me

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1. what will you have me say?
2. I will have thee speak the truth
3. I will not have him contradict me in (*de*) that manner
4. shall (*voulez-vous que*) we foretell what (*ce qui*) will happen?
5. you must not curse your bad luck
6. they must repeat it several times

Imperfect.

1. he wished me to tell him everything
2. I did not wish him to tell it to you
3. thou oughtest (*il fallait que*) to have told it me, without my asking (*sans que je le demande*)
4. we were obliged to contradict him

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. tell (*s.*) me what (*ce que*) thou thinkest of it
2. do not tell (*s.*) it me, if thou dost not wish (*veux*)
3. let him tell the truth
4. let her not repeat it
5. let us not contradict him
6. tell me, please (*je vous prie*), your brother's name
7. do not tell him what (*ce que*) I told you this morning
8. do not slander people (*des gens*)
9. do not contradict me when I speak
10. let them foretell the future, if they can (supply it)

FAIRE, to do, or make, compose (verses, &c.), go (of distance).

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i>		<i>Past.</i>	
faisant	doing, making, &c.	fait, faite	done, made, &c.

I. Conjugate in full, *défaire*, to undo, and *contrefaire*, to counterfeit, imitate.

NOTE.—The present participle of *faire*, *faisant*, the 1st plural present, nous *faisons*, the whole of the imperfect tense, je *faisais*, &c., &c., the 1st plural imperative, *faisons*, are pronounced as if written *fesant*, *fesons*, *fesais*, &c.

II. INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1. I am doing my exercise
2. what art thou doing there?
3. the express train from London to Oxford goes (at the rate of) sixty miles an hour (*à l'heure*)
4. if we do our duty, we shall succeed
5. what are you doing all day (all the day)?
6. what are your sisters doing up-stairs?

Imperfect.

1. I was doing-over-again all that (*ce que*) I had done already
2. why didst thou imitate him?
3. my parrot imitated all sorts of languages
4. we were doing what (*ce que*) one had told us to do
5. what did you do in the (*au*) warm weather?
6. the soldiers made their own shoes

NOTE.—*Faire* is followed by another verb in the infinitive, without any preposition; as:

* je le fis sauter	<i>I made him jump</i>
je lui fis croire cela	<i>I made him believe that</i>

Perfect.

1. I imitated him to the best of my ability (*de mon mieux*)
2. why didst thou make him (*dat.*) believe that story?
3. he made him (*acc.*) run as fast as he could (*de toutes ses jambes*)

* The rule when to use the *dat.* and when the *acc.* of the pers. pronoun in such sentences, being too difficult for this part of the book, will be found in the SYNTAX.

4. we made him (*dat.*) swallow that hoax (*canard*)
5. why did you make that boy go-to-bed (*coucher*) so soon?
6. they made us go in first (*les premiers*)

NOTE.—*Faire* followed by *faire* means to cause to be made, have made ; as :

ai fait faire une nouvelle porte *I have had a new door made*

Compound Tenses.

1. I have had a new coat made
2. where didst thou get that waistcoat made ?
3. who had that bridge made over the Seine ?
4. we had them (*dat.*) do-over-again all this work
5. what have you had made ?
6. they have had all that done this winter

III. NOTE.—In speaking to a person of that person's relations, the French (except when speaking familiarly) prefix the *les monsieur, madame, mademoiselle, messieurs, mesdames, mademoiselles* ; as :

1. is your father at home ?
monsieur votre père est-il à la maison ?
2. how is your mother ?
comment se porte madame votre mère ?

Future.

1. I will have this letter taken (*parvenir*) to your father
2. when wilt thou do what (*ce que*) thou hast promised to do ?
3. will your mother do me the pleasure of (*de*) dining (*inf.*) with us this evening ?
4. we will do all in our power (*tout notre possible*) to make you pass the evening pleasantly
5. you will give our compliments to your aunt
6. your sisters will do us much pleasure if they will (*veulent*) accompany you

Conditional.

1. I would not do that if I were you (*à votre place*)
2. thou wouldst do better (*de*) not to come
3. that child would make you believe anything (*n'importe quoi*)
4. we would not make any noise if you would (*vouliez*) take us with you
5. what would you do if I let you go ?
6. they would not do all that in one day.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1. what will you have me do ?
2. I will not have thee mimic thy brothers
3. I wish him to do-over-again what (*ce que*) he has done
4. do you wish us to play (*faire*) the agreeable with a man like him ?
5. you must do what I tell you
6. they must have the gates shut before eight o'clock

Imperfect.

1. I was obliged to do everything for him
2. thou oughtest not (*il ne fallait pas*) to have made so much noise
3. I wished him to do just the contrary
4. he wished us to do his verses for him
5. I should like (*voudrais*) you not to make so much noise
6. they were obliged to do all that he told them to do

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. do (1) this
2. do not do (*s.*) that
3. let him pay (*faire*) attention to what (*ce que*) I say
4. let us do him that pleasure
5. have a new lock made for (*à*) that door
6. do me the pleasure to come to dinner this evening
7. do not keep me waiting
8. let them do what (*ce qui*) is agreeable to them

PRENDRE, to take.

PARTICIPLES.

Present.

prenant *taking*

Past.

pris, prise *taken*

I. Conjugate in full, *apprendre*, to learn, and *comprendre*, to understand.

Give table of primitive and derived tenses of these two verbs (from page 50).

II. INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1. I take coffee every morning (all the mornings) at my breakfast
2. what dost thou take ?
3. my brother takes tea, and my sister chocolate

4. we take what (*ce que*) one gives us
5. don't you understand him when he speaks French to you?
6. it is of no use my talking to them (*j'ai beau leur parler*), they do not understand me

NOTE.—After the verbs *apprendre* and *comprendre*, the definite article must be prefixed to names of languages, which are always in the masculine gender.

Imperfect.

1. I learned French at my last school
2. didst thou not learn Italian and German?
3. he did not understand me when I spoke Spanish to him
4. we were learning Latin and Greek
5. my brothers learned Swedish, and my sisters Russian

Perfect.

1. I took a stick, and threw it into the water
2. why didst thou undertake a task which was beyond (*au-dessus de*) thy strength?
3. he undertook to (*de*) teach me French in six months
4. we took him into our house, and gave him (something) to eat
5. you understood me, did you not (*n'est-ce pas*)?
6. they undertook to (*de*) console the poor child

Some peculiar Idioms of Prendre.

prendre congé	to take one's leave
prendre l'air	to take the air, exercise
prendre fait et cause pour quelqu'un	to take up 'the cudgels' for anyone
prendre le mors aux dents	to run away (of a horse) (lit., to take the bit between its teeth)
prendre son parti	to make up one's mind
prendre le parti de quelqu'un	to take up anyone's defence

COMPOUND TENSES.

Present.

1. I have taken leave of my friends
2. thou hast not taken any exercise to-day; go out for half an hour
3. my brother took up the cudgels for his friend
4. we have made up our minds, and we will stay here another (*encore une*) week
5. have you made up your mind?
6. my horses ran away this morning, and I had much trouble (*bien de la peine*) in (*à*) stopping (*inf.*) them

Imperfect.

1. I had made up my mind, but he induced (*faire*) me to change my plans (*changer d'idée*)

2. since you had taken up your friend's defence, you should have (see *devoir*, compound condit.) persisted in it (*y*)
3. my horse had got the bit between his teeth, and I could not stop him
4. we had not yet made up our minds
5. evidently they had not understood one word of your speech

III. FUTURE.

1. I shall take my umbrella, for I think that it is going (*il va*) to rain
2. at that rate (*de cette façon*), thou wilt unlearn as fast as you learn
3. what (*qu'est-ce que*) will your brother learn at that school?
4. we will only (see rule for negatives and 'only' in exercise on *craindre*) undertake what (*ce que*) we can execute
5. will you never learn to speak correctly?
6. do not take the trouble to speak to them; they will not understand you

Conditional.

1. I should learn German if I were you (*à votre place*) before (*avant de*) going (*inf.*) abroad
2. wouldst thou understand better, if I spoke slowly?
3. he would soon (*bien vite*) correct you if you made a fault
4. it is no use (*ce n'est pas la peine de*) going (*inf.*) there, we should not understand one word
5. with a little perseverance you would learn German in (*au bout de*) a year
6. for whom would they take you?

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1. which shall I (*voulez-vous que*) take?
2. I will have thee learn to (*à*) obey
3. he must not undertake all that alone (*à lui tout seul*)
4. we must take a basket full of provisions
5. you must not take him up (correct sharply, *reprendre*) every time he speaks
6. I will have my children learn two modern languages at least

Imperfect.

1. I had (*il fallait*) to learn all that by heart
2. thou oughtest not to have taken my books
3. how much was she obliged to learn?
4. one wished us to undertake the task quite unaided (*à nous tout seuls*)
5. were you obliged (*fallait-il*) to learn Hebrew also?
6. I wished them to understand what (*ce que*) I said to them

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. if it is fine (*s'il fait beau*), take thy cloak; if it rains, take it if thou wilt
2. learn (*s.*) this once for all (*une fois pour toutes*)
3. let him understand that I will have him (*je veux que*) obey me (*dat.*)
4. let us take this road
5. let us learn German
6. learn that I will be obeyed (*write*, I will that one obey me)
7. never undertake anything beyond (*au-dessus de*) your powers
8. let them understand me distinctly (*bien*), I am not joking

***METTRE**, to put, place, put on (clothes).

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>
mettant putting	mis, mise put

Give the whole of the present tense and the first person g. of all the other tenses of *admettre*, to admit, *commettre*, to commit, *permettre*, to permit, allow.

Draw out a table (page 50) of the primitive and derived tenses of the same verbs.

NOTE.—*Permettre*, *promettre*, and *remettre* govern the dative case of the *person* to whom anything is permitted, promised, brought; the accusative of the *thing* permitted, or promised, brought.

II. INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1. I permit thee to go out at present
2. if thou promisest me to return before six o'clock
3. he never allows us to go out without him
4. we promise you the strictest (*absolu*) secrecy
5. why do you allow your children so many pleasures?
6. they promise us something new (*gen.*) for to-morrow evening

¹ This verb has the same derivatives as the Latin verb *mitto*.

<i>French.</i>	<i>Latin.</i>	<i>French.</i>	<i>Latin.</i>
admettre	admitto	omettre	omitto
commettre	committo	permettre	permitto
démettre	demitto	remettre	remitto
soumettre	emitto	soumettre	submitto

NOTE.—*Mettre*, to put on (clothes) requires no preposition in French; as : *mettre son chapeau*, to put on one's hat.

Imperfect.

1. I was putting on my coat when he came in
2. why didst thou put on that ugly hat?
3. he was putting on his coat wrong side first (*à l'envers*)
4. we never allowed our children to (*de*) go out alone in the streets
5. why did you take so much time (*mettre du temps*) dressing (*à vous habiller*)?
6. they promised us all sorts of things (*monts et merveilles*)

Perfect.

1. I put on my hat, and accompanied him as far as the gate
2. why didst thou commit that stupid fault?
3. he gave (*remettre*) me a parcel from (*de la part de*) your mother
4. we subjected (*soumettre*) them to a very strict (*sévère*) discipline
5. you promised me to (*de*) return before six o'clock, and it is now a quarter to seven
6. they deprived (*démétte*) him of his employment

COMPOUND TENSES.

Present.

N.B.—Consult rule of agreement of pers. pron.* with past part., compound tense of *vendre* (page 121).

1. I have taken (*mettre*) half an hour in (*à*) writing (*inf.*) those two verses
2. why didst thou take so long dressing?
3. that (*ce*) is a great (*grave*) mistake; who committed it?
4. as for (*quant à*) that lady, we never admitted *her* into our society
5. did you allow him to (*de*) take your umbrella?
6. where is the letter *which* my brother gave (*remettre*) you?

Imperfect.

1. where is my stick? I had put *it* on that table
2. thou hadst promised me not to (*de*) do it
3. he had omitted that part of his discourse
4. we had already given (*remettre*) them the letter
5. where are the flowers *which* you had promised us?
6. they had committed a very serious mistake

Future.

1. I shall put on my uniform to go to the ball
2. thou wilt never admit that thou wert in the wrong (see page 102)

* And of the rel. pron. with the past part., compound tense of *dire* (page 142).

3. he will allow me to (*de*) do all that (*ce que*) I wish
4. we will never admit him into our society
5. will you allow me to give you a (*def. art.*) hand?
6. they will not commit that fault again (*plus*)

Conditional.

1. if I were you (*à votre place*) I would not allow those children to (*de*) play there
2. wouldst thou admit him if he came?
3. he would pronounce (*émettre*) a contrary opinion
4. we should put on our old clothes to (*pour*) go there
5. would you promise me to (*de*) return if I let you go?
6. they would promise anything (*tout ce que*) you like

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1. where must I put this book?
2. thou must put-it-back into (*à*) its place
3. I will not have him pronounce (*émettre*) such (*part. art.*) opinions
4. would you have us promise more than we can perform (*tenir*)?
5. you must put on your great-coat, it is cold (*il fait froid*)
6. those children must promise to be good (*sage*)

Imperfect.

1. I was obliged to show him the door (*le mettre à la porte*),
2. thou shouldest not have admitted that man
3. he ought not to have committed all those faults
4. we were obliged to promise to return in (*à*) time
5. I wished you to hand (*remettre*) him that parcel sooner
6. I wished them to submit themselves to my authority

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. put on thy hat
2. promise (*s.*) me to return in (*à*) time
3. let him omit nothing in his speech
4. let us put-back those things in (*à*) their places
5. allow him to come and see me
6. do not allow him to go out
7. let them submit themselves to my will
8. let your brother promise to be good, and I will allow them to (*de*) accompany you

Peculiar Use of the Past Participle of Mettre

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. un homme bien mis | <i>a well-dressed man</i> |
| 2. une dame bien mise | <i>a well-dressed lady</i> |

*ÉCRIRE, to write.

PARTICIPLES.

Present.
 écrivant *writing*

Past.
 écrit, écrite *written*

I. Give the whole of the present tense, and the first persons singular of all the other tenses of *inscrire*, to inscribe, and *souscrire*, to subscribe.

Give a table of the *primitive* and *derived* tenses of the same verbs. (From page 50.)

II. INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1. I am writing to your father.
2. to whom art thou writing?
3. your mother writes to me (to say) that she cannot come this evening
4. we are transcribing the registers
5. if you prescribe me that direction (*ordonnance*) I will execute it
6. do your brothers write to you regularly?

Imperfect.

1. I prescribed to him the rule which he was (see *devoir*, page 119) to follow
2. what wert thou describing to those children?
3. he was describing to us the battle of Marengo
4. we wrote (*inscrire*) our names on his list
5. why did you not write to me oftener?
6. they subscribed to all the town charities

Perfect.

1. I wrote to him to come immediately
2. why didst thou not subscribe to that good work?
3. he transcribed literally everything that (*ce que*) I said
4. we ordered (*prescrire*) him (*dat.*) a very strict diet
5. they inscribed the proper dates upon each monument

Compound.

(See under compound tense of *dire* (page 142), rule for agreement of relative pronoun with past participle.)

1. the letter *which* I have written you is still on my table

*Écrire has the same derivatives as the Latin *scribo*: *décrire*, *describo*; *transcrire*, *transcribo*, &c.

2. why hast thou not observed the rule *which* I prescribed to thee?
3. he has written down (*transcrire*) our orders
4. there is the house *which* we described to you yesterday
5. you gave (*prescrire*) us a rule which is very difficult to (*à*) to follow
6. they have greatly circumscribed the limits of our little territory

III. *Future.*

1. I will write to you to-morrow—the day after to-morrow
2. thou wilt write to me this day fortnight—in a month—this day week
3. that doctor will give (*prescrire*) you a prescription (*ordonnance*) very easy to follow
4. we will describe the plan to you in a few words
5. when shall you write to your aunt?
6. the new-comers will write their names at the bottom (*en bas*) of the list

Conditional.

1. I would write to you oftener if I had the time
2. wouldst thou not subscribe to that charity?
3. he would write our names down one after the other
4. we should prescribe to him quite another (*une toute autre*) line of conduct
5. why should you not describe it to me, since you know it so well?
6. they would narrow (*circonscrire*) our boundaries still more if they had the power (supply *en*)

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1. how many times a (*par*) week must I write?
2. thou must write to me at least every-other-day
3. I will have your brother write to me every Tuesday and Thursday
4. we must write our names down in his book every Monday, Wednesday, and Friday
5. you must write-that-out (*transcrire*) for me word for word
6. I will have them describe the battle from the beginning to the end

Imperfect.

1. I had to write to them every day
2. I wished him to describe the place to me
3. we had to append (*souscrire*) our signature to that act
4. I wished my children to write to me regularly

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. write (*s.*) to me every day
2. do not write (*s.*) to me if it is any trouble (*si cela te gêne*)
3. let him write his name on my list
4. let your sister subscribe to that benevolent society
5. let us write to him
6. let us not write to him
7. write-my-name-(*moi*)-down for ten pounds
8. let them write to me if they have need of anything

COURIR, to run.

PARTICIPLES.

*Present.**Past.*

courant running

couru run

I. Give the whole of the present tense and the first person singular of all the other tenses of *accourir*, to run up, and *secourir*, to succour.

Give a table of primitive and derived tenses of *courir* and *concourir*, showing where there is any divergence from the common rule. (See page 50.)

II. INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1. I run faster than you
2. why dost thou run so fast?
3. he is trying for the mathematical prize
4. we succour the unfortunate when we can (supply *le*)
5. do you go-in-for the French prize this year?
6. they run-to-me when I call them (see page 52 for *appeler*, to call)

Imperfect.

1. I was running, to warm myself
2. why didst thou not run-up, when I called thee?
3. he incurred my displeasure every day (*write* all the days)
4. we were going-over this estate
5. on (*de*) what subject were you discoursing when we entered?
6. they ran-towards (me) as fast as they could (*de toutes leurs jambes*)

Perfect.

1. in 1850 (write the date in full) I stood for the French prize
2. why didst thou not have-recourse to thy friends in thy misfortune?

3. I did so (*le*), but not one (*pas un*) helped me
4. we helped him to the best of our ability (*de notre mieux*), but he was not satisfied
5. you ran so quick that we could not catch you
6. they helped us to the best of their ability

Compound Tense.

1. I ran for (*pendant*) an hour without stopping (*m'arrêter*)
2. why hast thou not helped *them*?
3. he incurred my anger
4. his property (*terre*) is so small, that we went-over-it in two hours
5. you helped me in my need, and I am grateful to you for it (*en*)
6. one gave a prize, but my brothers did not go-in (for it)

III. *Future.*

1. I shall run as long as I can (*fut.*)
2. thou wilt have-recourse to thy brother, if thou wantest (hast need of) money
3. let us see who will run the fastest
4. we will look over your book when we have the time (supply *en*)
5. will you not succour me if my (*def. art.*) strength (*pl.*) fails me?
6. they will soon come (*accourir*) if I call them with this whistle

Conditional.

1. I should go-in for that prize if I had studied a little more
2. why shouldst thou not go in for it (*y*)?
3. he would run much faster if he stretched (*allonger*, see page 52 for verbs ending in *ger*) his legs a little more
4. we should have recourse to your uncle if we wanted (see *avoir*, page 102) money
5. you would incur his displeasure if you acted so
6. they would run all day without tiring (*inf.*) themselves

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1. why must I run?
2. thou must run to catch the train
3. I will have him go in for that prize
4. he wishes us to go in for the French prize, but we have not learnt long enough
5. shall we (*voulez-vous que*) go over all that (*ce que*) you have written?
6. I will not have you incur those silly expenses
7. they must help one another (see page 31)

Imperfect.

1. I was obliged to run fast to catch the train
2. I should have wished thee to help thy brother
3. I should have preferred his not going in for the prize, he was not prepared
4. how would you have us help them? they are richer than we
5. I should have wished you to help them nevertheless
6. they ought (*il fallait*) to have come quickly (*accourir*) when I called them

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. run (*s.*), do! (*donc!*)
2. do not run (*s.*) so fast
3. let him run if he wants to catch me
4. let us not incur his anger
5. let us help him
6. do not help him, he is too idle to (*pour*) work

NOTE.—*Il faut* and all the present tense of *vouloir* (*je veux, voulez-vous, &c.*) require the verb that follows them to be put into the present subjunctive.

Il fallait (I, you, he, we, &c., were obliged to, ought to have), *je voulais, je voudrais*, require the imperfect subjunctive.

*Exercises on all the Moods and Tenses of the eight Verbs
on pages 38 and 39.*

- I.
 1. give me that book which is on my table
 2. I was obliged (*il fallait*) to buy another (*nouveau*) watch
 3. let us finish our lessons (*devoirs*)
 4. I will not have thee speak so quick
 5. I should like (*voudrais*) them to grow a little (more)
 6. I did not wish him to perceive me
 7. give me back the pencil which I lent you
 8. I will help you to the best of my ability (*de mon mieux*)
 9. if I were you (*en votre place*), I should act differently
 10. present me to your father
- II.
 1. must we receive that man in our house?
 2. I had (*il fallait*) to sell my carriage and horses
 3. smell this flower
 4. I spoke (*comp.*) to him a long time without making (*inf.*) slightest impression
 5. our plans will undergo some change
 6. he is so small that I should not perceive him
 7. you must wait for me
 8. he had (*il fallait*) to set out at eight this morning
 9. drive me to the Bois de Boulogne
 10. why did you not speak (*perf.*) to him?
 11. look at that house, my grandfather built (*comp.*) it
page 122)

1. you will receive each your portion
2. I would not wait more than ten minutes if I were you
3. I must go out, it is too hot (see page 178) in this room
4. he had to produce his proofs
5. let us put out all the candles
6. my children were playing at hide-and-seek when I came in
7. she turned-pale (*perf.*) suddenly
8. as for your brothers, I perceived (*comp.*) *them* (page 121) in the street
9. I will wait-for you at the corner of the square
10. I would not go-away without seeing (*inf.*) him
11. shall I (*voulez-vous que*) drive your horses?

1. I wished them to join their efforts to mine (see page 26)
2. disappear all of a sudden!
3. we eat (page 52) all that (*ce que*) one gives us
4. he was building a house on the top (*en haut*) of a hill
5. we received (*perf.*) her in the drawing-room
6. the river broke (*comp.*) (down) the embankment (*la levée*)
7. I shall sleep better to-night (*cette nuit*), at least I hope so (*le*)
8. that land would produce much more if it was better cultivated
9. go (and) take (*inf.*) his candle; I will not have him put it out himself
10. he had (*il fallait*) to appear before the magistrate (*commissaire de police*)
11. how you grow!

1. I could not conceive (*imperf. ind.*) such idleness
2. the dogs bit (*perf.*) him terribly
3. my sister went-out (*comp.*, see page 125) at ten o'clock this morning
4. you will take (introduce) this gentleman into the drawing-room
5. why should you pretend to be ill, when you are not so (*le*)?
6. I will have all those papers disappear
7. it is in vain that we look, we perceive nothing (page 97)
8. he was waiting-for you upstairs
9. I felt something light (*se poser*) on my hand
10. we accompanied (*reconduire*, *comp.*) *them* (see page 121) as far as the garden-gate
11. you will never compel them to do it in (*de*) that manner
12. they would easily recognise you by (*à*) your voice

1. we sell tea, sugar, and coffee
2. I foresaw (*pressentir*, *imperf.*) that misfortune
3. that tree produced (*perf.*) a great quantity of fruit last year
4. is that (*est-ce là*) the flower *which* (p. 142) you painted (*comp.*)?
5. I shall know you again directly
6. they start to-morrow morning by the first train
7. I feared his displeasure more than his anger

8. my compliments to your sister; I knew (*comp.*) her (page 121)
when she was quite (a) little child
9. we pretended (*imperf.*) to be very angry with (*contre*) him
10. I then knew (*perf.*) with what sort of people I was
11. what are you afraid of?
12. do you know that gentleman who is speaking to your mother?
(page 145)

*Exercises on all the Moods and Tenses of the eight Verbs on
pages 40 and 41.*

- I.
 1. I have just (see page 139) seen your father
 2. that box contained all my clothes (*effets*)
 3. does your brother suffer much from headache (see page 145)?
 4. I held-him-back (*perf.*) with (*de*) all my force
 5. we opened our windows every morning
 6. what do you say to (*de*) that?
 7. we have obtained all that (*ce que*) we wished
 8. I opened (*perfect*) the box without the key
 9. he contradicted (*imperf.*) me every minute (*à chaque instant*)
 10. if those children make so much noise, I will turn them out
(*mettre à la porte*)
 11. I will hold this end, you that one (see page 29)
 12. shut that door; who opened (*comp.*) it? (see page 121)
- II.
 1. what did you say (*perf.*) to him?
 2. we were doing no harm (*mal*); why do you scold us?
 3. we learn French, German and Italian
 4. you would easily get (*obtenir*) that place if you wished
 5. they (*on*) will open (*s.*) the doors at a quarter to seven
 6. you told (*comp.*) me to come, and here I am (*me voilà*)
 7. you did (*perf.*) very well to go there, he wished very much to
see you
 8. we were taking our French lesson when he came in
 9. every evening we put-the things-back in (*à*) their place
 10. must I hold it fast (*ferme*)?
 11. we would never allow (*souffrir*) that
 12. go (and) find (*inf.*) your brother, he will tell you what (*ce
que*) you have to do
- III.
 1. what have you done for him?
 2. he took (*perf.*) his hat and stick, and went away (*s'en alla*)
 3. my brother was putting-on his coat when I went-in
 4. why do you not write better?
 5. we were obliged to hold-him-up for half an hour
 6. must I open the door?
 7. tell it him; he would not repeat it
 8. he will do all he can (*tout son possible*) to be agreeable to you

9. I did not take (*comp.*) your stick, but your brother took (*comp.*) it (see page 121)
 10. they promised (*perf.*) me to come back before dark (*la nuit*)
 11. I was writing him a long letter
 12. if you do not run faster, you will not catch him
- V.
1. come this evening, and I will tell you something which will please you (*faire plaisir*)
 2. he ought (*il fallait*) to have offered him a room
 3. shall I (*voulez-vous*) tell you something?
 4. I would not do that if I were you
 5. you will easily learn German, if you take a little trouble
 6. I am looking for my stick; where have you put it? (see page 121)
 7. the doctor gave (*prescrire*) (*perf.*) me this prescription
 8. he was discoursing on (*de*) all sorts of subjects
 9. I should understand you better, if you spoke louder (*plus haut*)
 10. he will promise anything (*tout ce que*) you like, but as to keeping (*infin.*) his promises . . .
 11. he wrote (*comp.*) me a very nice letter from Paris
 12. I ran (*perf.*) after him, and soon caught him
- VI.
1. what must I do?
 2. he ought not (*il ne fallait pas*) to have contradicted me
 3. open the door, it is I (page 25)
 4. I have looked-over (*parcourir*) his exercise (*thème, m.*), and find no faults
 5. when will she write to you?
 6. I would not put on that hat for any consideration (*pour tout l'or du monde*)
 7. you must not take what (*ce que*) does not belong to you
 8. what would you have had (*voudriez-vous*) us do?
 9. tell him to come at six o'clock
 10. he will have-recourse to all his friends, if the slightest thing happens to him
 11. we would write oftener, if we had time (*le temps*)
 12. where shall we (*voulez-vous que*) put it?
- VI.
1. he ought not (*il ne fallait pas*) to have taken so much wine
 2. do what (*ce que*) I tell you
 3. he might run (*cond.*) as fast as he liked (*de toutes ses jambes*), he would not catch me (*qu'il ne m'attrapperait pas*)
 4. shall I (*voulez-vous que*) write before coming (*inf.*)?
 5. I did not wish her to put on that old dress
 6. take my arm
 7. must I run to catch the train?
 8. put your hat (on)
 9. don't put on those old gloves
 10. write to me once a week
 11. do not write to me in English, but in French
 12. let us run a little; we shall be late (*en retard*)

THE PASSIVE VOICE.

I. FRENCH verbs do not, as Latin and Greek verbs, change their form in the passive.

The passive voice is formed, as in English, by the auxiliary verb *être*, to be, and the past participle of any *transitive* verb; as :

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Active.</i>	<i>Passive.</i>
<i>tromper</i> to deceive	<i>être trompé</i> to be deceived

and the different moods and tenses are, as in English, formed by means of the same moods and tenses of the verb *être*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present</i>	<i>je suis trompé</i>	<i>I am deceived</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>j'étais trompé</i>	<i>I was deceived</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>je fus trompé</i>	<i>I was deceived</i>
<i>Comp.</i>	<i>j'ai été trompé</i>	<i>I have been deceived</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>je serai trompé</i>	<i>I shall be deceived</i>
<i>Cond.</i>	<i>je serais trompé</i>	<i>I should be deceived</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Present</i>	<i>que je sois trompé</i>	<i>that I may be deceived</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>que je fusse trompé</i>	<i>that I might be deceived</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>sois trompé</i>	<i>be deceived</i>
--------------------	--------------------

II. The passive voice is not of frequent occurrence in French.* A sentence in which the verb would be put into the passive voice in English is rendered in French by the use of the indefinite pronoun *on*, or the reflective form of the verb; as :

* The rule when to employ the passive voice, and when to employ either of the two other forms here given, will be found in the Syntax.

English.

is found in Australia

French.

1. *on trouve* de l'or en Australie ;
(literally) one finds *gold* in
Australia

2. l'or *se trouve* en Australie ; (literally) *gold* finds itself in *Australia*

doors are opened at six o'clock

1. *on ouvre* les portes à six heures

2. les portes *s'ouvrent* à six heures

EXERCISES ON THE REFLECTIVE VERBS.

(Rule XXXI. page 42.)

I. CONJUGATE in full: *s'amuser*, to amuse oneself; *se réjouir*, to rejoice;* *s'apercevoir*, to perceive;* and *se rendre*, to be-take oneself, or surrender.

NOTE.—Reflective verbs take *être* for their auxiliary.

In the compound tenses the past participle is to be made to agree in gender and number with the subject *only* when the governed pronoun is in the *accusative* case; thus:

ma sœur s'est brûlée

my sister has burnt herself

Here *brûlée* is put in the feminine singular, to agree with *se*, herself, which is accusative; but in

ma sœur s'est brûlé les doigts *my sister has burnt her fingers*

brûlé is not made to agree with *ma sœur*, because *se* is dative, not accusative.

The French pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, *vous*, *se*, being exactly similar in the dative and accusative, they cannot be distinguished except by analysing the sentence. In the following exercises on the four first verbs, the sign *dat.* will be given, to assist the pupil in all instances where the governed pronoun is in the dative case, and where the past participle is *not* to be made to agree with the subject of the sentence.

II. FIRST CONJUGATION.

(Pages 42—46.)

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1. I amuse myself very much in the holidays
2. your sister dresses with much taste
3. we put-ourselves-to-inconvenience to (*pour*) do you a service
4. they meet three times a (*par*) day

* Observe that a reflective verb in French is not necessarily rendered by a *reflective verb* in English.

Imperfect.

1. I thought (*s'imaginer*) that you were brothers
2. he was getting ready (*se disposer*) to (*à*) accompany us
3. we were dressing when the bell rang for dinner
4. they were amusing themselves by (*à*) throwing stones into my garden

Perfect.

1. I got up directly and followed him
2. he was married in that church
3. we did not meddle with (*de*) that business, it did not concern us
4. they persisted (*s'obstiner*) in (*à*) keeping (*inf.*) me at their house

COMPOUND TENSES.

Present.

1. I opposed that marriage with all my power
2. she cut all her (*def. art.*) hair (off) yesterday (*dat.*)
3. she warmed herself by (*auprès de*) my fire

Imperfect.

1. I had got up too soon this morning
2. we had washed our (*def. art.*) hands (*dat.*)
3. the three regiments had embarked during the night

Future.

1. I shall be much better in the country
2. my mother will be offended if you do not come
3. we will walk a little in the garden
4. when will your sisters get up?

Conditional.

1. I should fatigue myself too much if I were to do all that in one day
2. do not speak loud, he would awake
3. we should be very much astonished to (*de*) see him walk in
4. those children would get tipsy if they drank all that wine

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

1. I must get up every morning at six
2. I will have your brother go to bed at nine
3. shall we (*voulez-vous que*) take a little walk before dinner?
4. they must make haste, or they will arrive too late (*en retard*)

Imperfect.

1. I had to go to bed at ten
2. I wished him to dress for dinner
3. we were obliged to go away (*s'éloigner*) for fear of meeting him
4. I did not wish your sisters to put themselves to inconvenience me

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. get up! (*s.*)
2. do not get up (*s.*) yet
3. let us go on board before dark
4. let them not go away, I wish to speak to them

III. SECOND CONJUGATION.

(Pages 46—47.)

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1. I rejoice at (*de*) your success
2. why does your brother settle in Paris?
3. we are very glad to (*de*) hear that you are better (*se porter*)
4. these gloves shrink every time they are washed (*write t* washes them)

Imperfect.

1. I was getting rich when this misfortune happened to me
2. my brother used to amuse himself with (*à*) playing (*inf.*)
3. we did not amuse ourselves very much there
4. all the members of the family used to assemble once a year

Perfect.

1. I made-bold to (*à*) answer him
2. the poor girl (*enfant*) fainted away on (*en*) hearing this
3. we took-up-our-position (*s'établir*) at the foot of the hill
4. the Prussians joined (*se réunir à*) the English at six o'clock the evening

COMPOUND TENSES.

Present.

1. I hid myself under the rubbish, and waited
2. didst thou not get rich in that country?
3. she fainted away without uttering (*proférer, inf.*) a word
4. our troops enriched themselves with (*de*) the spoils of the

Imperfect.

had got bold enough (*au point*) to (*de*) look him (straight) in the face (*en face*)
 he had taken-up-his-abode (*s'établir*) in an out-of-the-way (*éloigné*) quarter of the town
 he had rejoiced greatly at (*de*) your success
 their troops had joined (*se réunir à*) ours (page 26) at nightfall

Future.

will never settle in a town where there is (*il y a*) not a plentiful supply of water
 will he not rejoice at (*de*) that news?
 the archbishop will put on (*se revêtir de*) his robe of ceremony
 you must not wash those trousers (*s.*), they will shrink

Conditional.

would soon get rich if I had his place
 he would faint away merely on (*rien qu'à*) seeing it
 if you gained that prize, we should be very glad
 you would long feel-the-effects-of (*se ressentir de*) his illwill

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

provided that (*pourvu que*) I only get rich, that is all that I desire
 do not think that thou wilt get rich in (*de*) that way
 he wishes us to settle near him (*gen.*)
 the two corps d'armée must join

Imperfect.

did not wish him to put on (*se revêtir de*) those old clothes
 he was obliged (*il fallait*), however, to put-them- (*gen.* see page 18)-on
 if you wished us to rejoice at your success, you ought to have told us of it (*il fallait nous l'annoncer*)
 they ought not to have enriched themselves at the expense of others

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

rejoice (*s.*)
 do not rejoice at (*de*) the misfortunes of others (*d'autrui*)
 let him settle in a good position
 let us join them (*dat.*, see page 25)
 let them amuse themselves as much as they like, it is no business of mine (*ce n'est pas mon affaire*)

IV. THIRD CONJUGATION.

(Pages 47—48.)

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Observe that *s'apercevoir*, to perceive, governs the genitive case of the object perceived.

1. I perceive my mistake, and I will correct it
2. he owes himself to his friends and country
3. if he is angry, we do not perceive it
4. men do not (readily) perceive their own faults

Imperfect.

1. I perceived a slight change in his behaviour
2. didst thou perceive it also?
3. we perceived his intentions
4. did you perceive them?
5. they did not perceive our change of dress

COMPOUND TENSES.

Present.

1. I perceived his presence amongst us immediately
2. how is it (*comment se fait-il*) that thou didst not perceive it?
3. we did not perceive him (*past part.* to agree with subject) in the crowd
4. did you perceive him?
5. he looked very ill. How (is it that) you did not perceive it?

Imperfect.

1. I had noticed his absence
2. since thou hadst noticed it, why didst thou not tell me?
3. he was there, but my mother had not noticed him (*past part.* to agree with subject)
4. they had noticed something, but did not speak about it

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

1. how would you have me (*voulez-vous que*) perceive his intentions when he conceals them so carefully?
2. he will be there this evening, but we must not notice it
3. people (*les gens*) must perceive their faults, or they will never correct them

V. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

(Pages 48—49.)

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

1. I expect to see him arrive every minute (*d'un moment à l'autre*)
2. he expects it (*dat.*)
3. we surrender with a good grace, because we cannot do otherwise
4. our soldiers are accustoming themselves (*se rompre*) to fatigue
5. the guard dies, but does not surrender

Imperfect.

1. I never allowed myself more than (*de*) three glasses of wine after dinner
2. he was going (*se rendre*) into Italy when this news reached him
3. we got on (*s'entendre*) capitally together
4. they did not expect to see me so soon

Perfect.

1. I lost myself once in that wood, and I will never go into it again
2. he saw that he was completely hemmed in, and surrendered on parole

COMPOUND TENSES.

Present.

1. I came to an understanding (*s'entendre*) with your father to arrange matters
2. my brother fought for half-an-hour with a boy of twice his size
3. my sister never understood those sort of things
4. the traitor sold himself to the enemy
5. we expected a surprise (*dat.*) of some sort
6. the troops surrendered immediately

Imperfect.

1. this news did not surprise me; I had expected it (*dat.*) for a long time
2. I had gone (*se rendre*) to his house as he had desired
3. our soldiers had fought for (*pendant*) three hours
4. they had come to an understanding to (*pour*) deceive us
5. we had completely lost ourselves when, fortunately, we heard the guide's voice
6. the cavalry had already surrendered

*Future**and Conditional.*

1. I feel that I shall never be a judge of (*s'entendre en*) music
2. that rope will break if you do not take care
3. they would soon come to an understanding if they could only meet
4. you would lose your way (*se perdre*) if I were to let you go without (a) guide
5. the guard would never surrender, even to a force much (*de beaucoup*) superior
6. he (*ce*) is a spy, who would sell himself to the enemy

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present and Imperfect.

1. I must go (*se rendre*) to that meeting
2. I had to go to the court (*Palais*) three times a week
3. I did not think that your brother would ever come to an understanding with that man
4. we must break ourselves in (*se rompre*) to the habit of walking (*faire*) eight or ten miles a day
5. I did not think that that house would be sold (*se vendre*) so dear
6. they were obliged to surrender; they were surrounded on all sides

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. hang thyself, (my) brave Crillon!
2. let him surrender at discretion, we will see afterwards what is to be done (*à faire*)
3. surrender! (*pl.*)
4. it is a trap that he is setting (for) you, do not go (*se rendre*) there!
5. do not let us lose ourselves
6. let us expect something surprising (*gen.*)
7. come (*voyons*), let us understand (each other)
8. it is not my business, let your brothers settle it between themselves [come to an understanding about it (*là dessus*)]

VI.

I. Write out the first persons singular and plural of every tense, and the whole of the imperative mood of—

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. s'endormir | to go to sleep |
| 2. se conduire | to behave oneself |
| 3. se plaindre | to complain |
| 4. se reconnaître | to recognise one another |

II. *Present, Imperfect, and Perfect Tenses.*

1. I go to sleep every day after dinner
2. why dost thou use my books?
3. he repents his crimes (*gen.*)
4. we never use that room
5. why do you not use it? (page 18)
6. the child went-to-sleep-again directly
7. if you behave in (*de*) that manner you will be certainly punished
8. of what was your mother complaining?
9. we complained of his bad conduct to (*envers*) us
10. we gain knowledge (*s'instruire*) in teaching others
11. they felt the effects (*se ressentir de*) of that illness for (*pendant*) a long time
12. we disobeyed your orders (*dat.*), and we are sorry (*se repentir*) for it (*gen.*)

III. *Compound Tenses.*

N.B.—The past participle in all these sentences is to be de to agree with the subject of the sentence.

1. the poor child went-to-sleep crying (*en pleurant*)
2. my brothers have made-use-of my books without my permission
3. my sister has bitterly repented her fault
4. all your masters have complained of your idleness
5. she had gone-to-sleep-again, when your noise awoke her
6. the thieves owned themselves (*se reconnaître*) guilty
7. if we had found your carriage, we should have made-use-of-it
8. I should have behaved quite differently if I had known who you were
9. they recognised each other a mile off (*à un mille de distance*)
10. our troops behaved like heroes
11. we had already repented of our kindness to (*envers*) him
12. on opening her eyes she knew-where-she-was (*se reconnaître*) directly

IV. *Future and Conditional.*

1. do not make a noise, and he will go to sleep directly
2. I would use his carriage if I could find it
3. wilt thou behave better for the future (*à l'avenir*)?
4. do not do that, he will complain of it to your father
5. we shall easily find our way (*se reconnaître*)
6. if you were to do that, I should complain to your father
7. do it if you like, but you will surely repent it (*gen.*) (page 18)
8. they would not behave so if I were there
9. the doctor says that we shall long feel the effects of that fever
10. he will never go to sleep again if you stay there

V. Subjunctive (Present and Imperfect) and Imperative Mood.

1. you must make use of my horse if yours is lame
2. how will you have him (*voulez-vous que*) learn (anything) (*s'instruire*) if he does not work?
3. I will not have you behave in (*de*) that manner
4. do you think he will complain of such a trifle?
5. I do not think they will know-each-other-again
6. I should have liked (*j'aurais voulu*) him to behave (*subj. perf.*) differently
7. he ought not (*il ne fallait pas que*) to have used my books without my permission
8. use my carriage if you like
9. do not use my books
10. do not complain so much
11. behave better for the future (*à l'avenir*)
12. let them repent sincerely if they wish me to forgive them

VI.

I. Write down the first person singular and plural of every tense, and the whole of the imperative of—

- | | |
|----------------|---|
| 1. se souvenir | to remember |
| 2. se couvrir | to cover oneself (<i>put on one's hat</i>) |
| 3. se dire | to call oneself |
| 4. se faire | to make oneself (<i>to turn, become, to accuse oneself</i>) |

II. Present, Imperfect, and Perfect Tenses.

1. I remember that journey (*gen.*) perfectly
2. dost thou not remember it (*gen.*)?
3. evidently he does not remember having (*d'avoir*) seen me year in Paris
4. we do not yet consider (*se tenir pour*) ourselves defeated
5. about (*de*) what subject are you conversing (*s'entretenir*)?
6. why do they keep themselves concealed in (*de*) that manner
7. why do you contradict yourself so often?
8. you need not (*ce n'est pas nécessaire que*) come so soon, doors do not open till (*avant*) half-past six
9. we offer ourselves to (*pour*) accompany her, but she says can go alone
10. why do you return (*s'en revenir*) so soon?
11. we get rid of our servants when they do not satisfy us
12. the grandees (*grands*) of Spain put their hats on in the presence of their monarch

III. *Compound Tenses.*

I did not remember that circumstance (*gen.*)
 why didst thou not remember it (*gen.*)?
 she abstained from speaking (*inf.*) to me on that subject
 the king conversed for a long time with his ministers
 we came back quite tired
 our soldiers covered themselves with (*de*) glory in that affair
 the door opened all of a sudden
 the doors opened at eight o'clock punctually
 if I had not restrained myself, I should have given him a sound thrashing
 we had not remembered that (*gen.*)
 you had got rid of that bad habit, why have you taken-it-up-again?
 if you had only kept quiet, he would not have seen you
 we never see our brother since he has become a soldier
 my father had lost the greater part of his fortune, but he has recovered himself since
 I had offered myself as a guide, but they would not (have) me (*gen.*)
 I have had (my) hair cut (*se faire couper*)
 he has had a coat made just like mine
 you would not know him again now that he has had his beard and mustachios shaved off

Future and Conditional.

I shall long remember it
 wilt thou never abstain from that bad habit?
 he says that he will turn soldier
 he will never get accustomed (*se faire*) to their manner of living
 if I were you (*à votre place*), I would have a complete suit of clothes made by that tailor
 at what time will the doors open?

Subjunctive Present and Imperfect.

how would you have me (*voulez-vous que*) remember a man that I have hardly ever seen?
 thou must have thy hands washed and hair well brushed
 thou must hold thyself straight
 he ought not (*il ne fallait pas que*) to have contradicted himself so often
 I don't think that the doors will open before the emperor arrives
 they ought not to have put their hats on (*se couvrir*) in the king's presence

Imperative.

1. remember (*s.*) my words (*gen.*)
 2. put on thy hat
 3. turn (*s.*) soldier
 4. get (*s.*) shaved
 5. let us put our hats on
 6. remember what (*de ce que*) I told you
 7. do not contradict yourself so often
 8. abstain from drinking (*inf.*) so much coffee
 9. let them keep quiet if they wish to hear what I say
 10. let them get new clothes made
-

Exercises on the Peculiarities that occur in the Orthography of certain Verbs of the First Conjugation, and Recevoir, &c. of the Third Conjugation. (Rule XXXIII. page 52.)

I. Verbs ending in ger.

1. we eat (*pres.*) meat twice a (*par*) day
2. those poor people rarely eat meat
3. seeing that I disturbed (*imperf.*) him, I went away
4. do not make that noise, you disturb me
5. I must change (*my*) coat (*gen.*)
6. I was obliged (*il fallait que*, followed by *imperf. subj.*) to change (*my*) shoes (*gen.*)
7. she always succoured the unfortunate when she found the opportunity (of doing so) (*en*)
8. he came in whilst we were arranging the room

II. Verbs ending in cer.

1. at what time do you begin?
2. we begin at eight o'clock precisely
3. the storm threatened to burst forth
4. the king placed him on (*à*) his right (hand)
5. why have you displaced all my things (*affaires*)?
6. (*recevoir, apercevoir, concevoir*) I receive letters daily (every day)
7. we cannot conceive such conduct
8. I have not yet received all the money which is owed me
9. I received (*perf.*) him (with) open arms
10. I did not think that she would perceive (*s'apercevoir, imperf. subj.*) it (*gen.*) so soon

III. Verbs ending in *ler, ner, ter, ver*.

-) 1. why do you not come when I call ?
- 2. as soon as he calls (*fut.*) you, I advise you to go to him (*accourir*)
- 3. I will call you back if I want you
- 4. I have not yet renewed my subscription, but I must renew it before next month

With the following verbs, *celer*, to conceal; *déceler*, to disclose; *geler*, to freeze; *dégeler*, to thaw; *peler*, to peel, do double the *l* before an *e* mute, but put the grave accent on the preceding *e*.

-) 1. I will conceal nothing (from) you
- 2. she discloses nothing of what (*de ce qui*) is confided to her
- 3. it is freezing very hard
- 4. it has been freezing all the morning, but I think it will thaw before the evening
- 5. you do not know how to set to work (*vous y prendre*) to peel an orange; see how I peel it

-) 1. where are you taking me to ?
- 2. they take us everywhere with them
- 3. if you have never been there, I will take you with me the next time I go (*fut.*)
- 4. we often walk in (*de*) that direction
- 5. the prisoners walk three times a day in the yard

-) 1. that lamp throws-out a great deal of light
- 2. there is a very amusing play (*pièce*) to be seen (*act. voice*), 'A Woman who throws herself out of Window'
- 3. the Seine throws itself into the sea near Havre
- 4. that company is buying up all the land (*plur.*) near the railway
- 5. my father is planning (*projeter*) to go into Italy next winter
- 6. I would not buy that house if I were you (*à votre place*)
- 7. if you are going into the town, buy me three dozen postage-stamps
- 8. his ideas are constantly wandering (*se promener*) from one subject to another

- 1.) 1. get up, or you will be late
- 2. I shall not get up before I hear (*inf.*) the bell ring
- 3. he must not lift those heavy weights, he will hurt himself
- 4. that lace sets off (*relever*) your dress very well
- 5. wait a little while I finish my correspondence
- 6. they will never finish the new opera-house

IV. *Verbs ending in yer.*

1. it is true that he knows (*entendre*) nothing about (*à*) those sorts of things, but he pays them well
2. I will support (*appuyer*) you with all my power
3. he is terribly bored (*s'ennuyer*) in that little town
4. he spends (*employer*) all his fortune in (*à*) relieving the wants of the poor
5. have you swept the room well?
6. nothing cleans the streets like a good shower

V. *Haïr to hate* (page 53).

1. I hate formal people
2. why dost thou hate that man?
3. we must not hate our fellow-creatures (*semblables*) without cause
4. those two women hate each other cordially
5. if you do not wish me to hate him, do not bring him with you again
6. the fact is that we hate compliments and ceremonies

Exercises on the Principal Irregular and Defective Verbs
(Rule XXXIV. pages 54 to 63).

I.

1. I will pardon you this time if you promise not to do it again (*recommencer*)
2. the penitent (*f.*) was completely absolved
3. he acquires new strength (*pl.*) every day
4. our troops gained (*s'acquérir*) much glory in that affair
5. I shall acquire that property at my uncle's death
6. we do not wish them to acquire so many rights over us
7. I am going to the play this evening; will you come with me?
8. where are they going all alone?
9. I will not go unless you come with me
10. where must we go?
11. I will not (have) those children go into the town
12. go (*s.*) (and) see (*inf.*) if thy brother is ready
13. I drink to your health
14. why do you drink so much wine? it is not good for you
15. would you have me never drink anything but water?
16. you have not drunk your coffee; don't you like it (find it good)?
17. let them drink a glass of wine each, and then go (let them go)
18. the water boils; shall I make the tea? (*write will you that I make?*)

19. what a funny noise those animals make! they bray like asses
20. I conclude from that (*en*) that you do not intend to come with us
21. she made preserves of (*confire*) all the fruit in (*de*) the garden
22. I am very fond of cherries preserved in (*à*) brandy
23. she is sewing all day (long)
24. the doctor sewed up his wounds
25. you must undo (*découdre*) all that, you have sewn it so badly

II.

1. he believes everything that one tells him
2. I would never have believed it
3. I thought (*perf.*) that he wished to speak to me
4. his illness is increasing every day
5. the population of that country has increased immensely
6. if you wish those plants to grow, you must water them
7. why do you gather my flowers without my permission?
8. I was gathering flowers to make a bouquet of them
9. I shall gather those apples as soon as they are (*fut.*) ripe
10. he has fallen (*déchoir*) very much in public estimation
11. water dissolves sugar and salt
12. the assembly was immediately dissolved
13. at what date does that bill of exchange fall due?
14. it will fall due on the 10th of April
15. if he bothers me again, I will send him about his business (*envoyer promener*)
16. if I were you (*à votre place*), I would send that coat back to the tailor
17. I have sent to enquire how he is going on
18. his bad manners would exclude him from all good society
19. I shall be obliged (*il va falloir que*) to go to London very soon
20. I did not think that it was necessary (*imperf. subj.*) to put on a white cravat
21. I was very near (*faillir*) missing the train
22. he has failed on several occasions
23. what are you (*s.*) doing? you (*s.*) are frying those eggs instead of boiling (*infin.*) them
24. he is so very disagreeable, that we avoid (*fuir*) him every time we see him approach
25. I will not (have) him escape us in that manner

III.

1. what are you reading there?
2. have you read the history of Charles XII.?
3. no; I have not read it
4. the sun shines for everybody
5. why do you curse your destiny? it is your own fault
6. what are you grinding in that machine?

7. I am grinding the coffee for breakfast
8. our soldiers die like flies in that terrible climate
9. he won't die of it, you may rest assured
10. Charles V. (*Charles-Quint*) died on the 21st September, 1558, in the convent of St. Just
11. that spring sets-in-motion (*mouvoir*) the whole machine
12. empires come-into-existence (*naître*), extend themselves, and disappear
13. Napoleon Buonaparte was born (*pret. def.*) at Ajaccio, in Corsica, in the year 1769
14. my mother was born (*comp.*) in France
15. you may trust (*refl.*) that man, he will not injure you in any way
16. that business injured his reputation (*dat.*) considerably
17. the cows and sheep feed in that meadow
18. your brother spent some days with us, and pleased us much (*comp. tense*)
19. I am ready to go when it shall please you to set out
20. it has rained all night, the grass is quite wet
21. I think it is going to rain, you had better take an umbrella
22. that kind man provides for (*à*) all our necessities
23. the king invested (*pourvoir*, *comp. tense*) him with this office
24. a good general will provide the town (*la place*) with (*de*) provisions
25. I cannot read your writing; you must write better
26. they do not walk as fast as we (*do*), they cannot overtake us
27. I have done all I could (*comp. tense*)
28. I shall not be able to see him to-morrow; he never comes to town on Tuesdays
29. do you think he can (*pres. subj.*) reach the handle of the door?
30. I did not think that the queen could (*imperf. subj.*) be back so soon

IV.

1. might often prevails over right
2. your enemies will take advantage (*se prévaloir*) of your weakness
3. wise men foresee events a long time before
4. I foresaw (*perf.*) exactly what must happen
5. why did you send him away (*comp. tense*)? I wanted him
6. as soon as the marshal arrived at the town, he sent back his escort
7. that coat does not fit (*aller*) you; I should send it back to the tailor if I were you
8. at what hour do you set out again?
9. take these men and distribute (*répartir*) them about in the different houses
10. fire reduces wood or coal to (*en*) ashes
11. the council have resolved-on war
12. the water has changed (*refl.*) into steam
13. he comes in at six and goes out again at seven
14. my lawsuit came under the jurisdiction of the civil court

15. why do you laugh?
16. I laughed heartily on hearing her description of the accident
17. I explained the matter to him, and he laughed at it
18. (he) will laugh well who laughs last
19. do you know what his name is?
20. I never knew (how) to swim
21. does he go away to-day?—not that I know (*subj.*)
22. let me learn my part for an hour or so, and I shall know it by heart
23. he ought to have (*il fallait que*) known the whole play, so as to prompt the others
24. know (*imperat. s.*) that I do not like to be laughed at (*qu'on se moque de moi*)

V.

1. his property is situated (*seoir*) in the county of York
2. I advise you not to wear that bonnet; it does not suit you at all
3. she is wrong to dress in (*de*) that manner; bright (*voyantes*) colours do not suit her
4. it ill became (*imperf.*) him to answer a man of that age so roughly
5. that is enough, you need not say any more
6. 500*l.* a year will never suffice for (*pour*) his style of living
7. I follow up the course of the river, but I am not sure of my road
8. the gendarmes have been on the track of (*suivre*) those robbers for the last fortnight
9. do you go on in front, I will follow you
10. the consequence is (*il s'ensuit*) that you will lose your place
11. what a noise that boy is making! make him be quiet (*taire*)
12. he would not listen to reason, so I held my tongue (*se taire*)
13. hold your tongue (*se taire*)
14. our servant milks the cows every morning
15. that child is very nervous, she starts with fear at the slightest sound
16. the courageous man overcomes (*vaincre*) all the obstacles which he meets with
17. the Romans conquered all the nations of the world
18. Alexander conquered (*comp.*) Darius in several battles
19. how much is that property worth?
20. those pictures are not worth the trouble of looking at them
21. that property will be worth twice as much next year as at present
22. I did not think that that diamond was worth (*imperf. subj.*) so much as that
23. he dressed like a beggar
24. you have dressed (*se vêtir*) too lightly for the season
25. I am sure I do not know on what he lives
26. she lived (*comp. tense*) the time that (*ce que*) roses live, the duration of a morning!

27. shall you see your mother this evening?—give (*faire*) her my compliments
28. they must not see us here
29. tell your brother to come to me; I wish to speak to him
30. she would (*comp.*) never come to our house; I do not know why
31. I should like to know why they never speak (*se parler*)
32. be so good as to do us the pleasure of dining with us this evening

EXERCISES ON THE IMPERSONAL VERBS.

(Rule XXXV. page 64.)

1. **Arriver.** It sometimes happens that . . . What has (*être*) happened to you?
2. **Y avoir.** There is a gentleman asking for you. There was a gendarme on each side of the prisoner. I do not think that there is (*subj.*) a bolt to that door.
3. **Aller.** I am sure that it is going to rain. Seeing that it was going to snow (*tomber de la neige*), I stayed at home.
4. **S'agir.** The question is (how) to arrange a party (*une soirée*) where everyone shall agree. We had to prevent their meeting (*de se rencontrer*). What is the matter?
5. **Convenir.** It suits me very well to stay where I am. I do not think it would suit you (*pres. subj.*) to accompany him.
6. **En coûter.** I am sorry (*il m'en coûte*) to be obliged (*devoir*) to reproach you. It would have cost him his head.
7. **S'ensuivre.** The consequence will be that you will be ill. I did not think that the result would be (*imperf. subj.*) so much misfortune.
8. **Entrer.** How (on earth) did (*être*) it ever enter into your head to do that? There will not be three people go in there in (the course of) the whole evening.
9. **Être.** It is not to be feared that he will come. There are (some) colonels who would not allow their officers to answer them in that manner.
10. **En être (to result).** It will not be as you foretold. It has been quite otherwise.
11. **En être de (comparison).** It is just the same with (*de*) poets as with other writers. It will be the same with (*de*) the son as with the father. It is just the same with (*de*) the French army.
12. **Faire chaud, froid, &c.** How cold it is! How cold it was yesterday! It will be fine weather to-morrow, I hope. It has been very fine these last (*passés*) three days. What (sort of) weather is it? It is fine; but there is a good deal of wind. It rained (*faire de la pluie*) all the month of June last year. Do you think it will be (*subj. pres.*) fine to-morrow? It is chilly (*frais*). It is getting dark. It is daylight (*jour*).
13. **Se faire tard.** It will be late before we get (*que nous n'arrivons*) home.
14. **Se faire (to be made).** There followed a moment of silence. There was an earthquake in that island last year.

15. **Falloir** (*to be necessary*). a. *Followed by the Infinitive*:—(We) must speak to him about that. (One) must set out in (*à*) time if one wishes to arrive in time. We must obey our parents. b. *Followed by the subjunctive*:—You must not take so much sugar. He ought not to have spoken so loud (*haut*). You would have (*il faudrait que*) to come (*imperf. subj.*) every day at twelve. I shall be obliged (*il va falloir que*) to show him the road.

16. **Falloir** (*to be wanting*; requires *dat.* of persons). What do you want? What do they want? Your brother requires an entirely new suit of clothes (*habillement*). We want all manner of (*trente-six*, familiar) things.

17. **S'en falloir**. He is very far from being able to compete with you. My horse was within very little (*peu s'en est fallu que*) of putting his foot in that hole.

18. **Geler, dégeler, neiger, pleuvoir, &c.** I should not have thought that it had (*imperf. subj.*) rained so hard. If it freezes to-night again, we can skate to-morrow. Do you think that it thaws? It thundered very loud (*fort*) in the night. There will be a fall of snow or hail.

19. **Importer**. It is of great importance that I should go to London this evening. What matters!

20. **Manquer**. What do they want? They want many things (*bien des choses*). Your book wants a cover.

21. **Paraître**. It seems that she does not like our company. Is he not coming? It would seem not (*que non*). Somebody is going to appear that you and I know very well.

22. **Pouvoir**. It may happen that he will not present himself. You might have a surprise (*vous arriver une surprise*) one of these fine mornings.

23. **Se pouvoir**. It is possible that I have seen him somewhere, but I do not recollect it. I might (*il se pourrait que*) come in and see you some time this evening.

24. **Rester**. What does there still remain to be done? There will soon be not a single book left in my library if everyone borrows them. Take seven from eleven four remain. There remained (compound with *être*) to him four bottles (supply *en*) in his cellar.

25. **Revenir**. I remember now that I lent him some money last year. You will derive (there will accrue to you) a very good income (*rente*) from that property, if you manage it well. We got 2,000*l.* from it last year (use compound tense of *revenir* with *être*).

26. **Se souvenir**. Dost thou remember it? Do you remember that person we met last year in Switzerland? We shall long remember your kindness.

27. **Seoir**. (*Il sied.*) It does not become young people (*gens*) to behave in that manner. Does it become you to answer your father so?

28. **Sembler**. I thought I saw (*infin.*) some one in the garden. You may think what you like about it (*trans.* let it seem to you as you like), I shall continue to act as I have done hitherto.

29. **Suffire**. Would it satisfy you that I should speak to him about it (*en*)? Two hours were quite sufficient for me to convince him. That's enough! let us speak no more about it.

30. **Tarder.** I long to see him again! Don't you wish we were at our journey's end (*d'être arrivés à notre destination*)?

31. **Tenir à.** It only depends on yourself to succeed. If it depends on me, it (*œ*) shall be done. What prevented his coming (*write upon what did it depend that he should not come? imperf. subj.*)

32. **Tomber de la pluie, &c.** I am afraid it will rain (*subj. with ne*). I think that it is going to snow. More rain fell this month than last.

33. **Valoir mieux.** We had better stay where we are. It would be much better to take (*mener*) him with you than to leave him at home. Do you think it would be better (*subj. pres.*) to wait-for brother?

34. **Venir.** It has (*être*) occurred to my mind that . . . Do you think such an idea will ever occur (*subj. pres.*) to him?

VOCABULARY

CONTAINING THE

PRINCIPAL WORDS EMPLOYED IN THE PRECEDING EXERCISES.

Not of the first conjugation have a number or letter affixed, which refers to the corresponding number or letter of the model verbs conjugated on pages 38, 41 of the Accidence. For all irregular verbs, see pages 54 to 63.

An *h* at the beginning of a word printed in Clarendon type indicates that it is aspirated, i.e. a vowel preceding it is not to be elided; as: *la honte, le*

valeté, f., *talent*, m. To the
one's —, *de son mieux*
dessus (de)
étranger
absence, f.
sent
soudre (v. irr.)
om), *s'abstenir (de)* (a)
ent, m.
accident, m. [*duire* (6)]
, accompagner, recon-
, accomplir (2)
(to), selon
order
, provenir, revenir (a)
(oneself), s'accoutumer
hardship, &c.) se rom-
pt
chille, m.
quérir
gir. s. *acte*, m.
presse, f.
mettre (f)
, m.
seiller, engager
, f.
m —, de loin
, après
itre
mir (a); *être d'accord*
agréable. To play the
l'agréable
ccio, m.

Allow, v. a. & n. *permettre*; *se per-*
mettre (f)
Alone, *seul*
Already, *déjà*
America, *Amérique*, f.
Amiable, *aimable*
Among, *entre*
Amphora, *amphore*, f.
Amuse, v. a. & n. *amuser*, *divertir*
(2); *s'amuser, se divertir*
Amusing, *amusant*
Anger, *colère*, *rage*, f.
Angry, *fâché*, *en colère*
Anoint, *oindre* (7)
Answer, v. a. *répondre (à)* (4). s.
réponse, f.
Appear, *paraître*; *apparaître* (8).
To — again, *reparaître*
Applaud, *applaudir* (2)
Apple, *pomme*, f.
Approach, v. a. & n. *approcher*;
s'approcher. s. *approche*, f.
Apricot, *abricot*, m.
Archbishop, *archevêque*, m.
Arm, *bras*, m. With open —s, *à*
bras ouverts
Arms, (weapons) *armes*, f. pl.
Army, *armée*, f.
Arrange, *arranger*
Arrangement, *arrangement*, m.
Arrest, v. a. *arrêter*
Arrival, *arrivée*, f.
Arrive, *arriver*
Arrow, *flèche*, f.
Artichoke, *artichaut*, m.

Ashamed (to be), *avoir honte*
 Ashes, *cendres*, f. pl.
 Ask (for), *demande*
 Asparagus, *asperges*, f. pl.
 Ass, *âne*, m.
 Assemble, *se réunir* (2)
 Assembly, *assemblée*, *réunion*, f.
 Astonish, v. a. *étonner*. To be —ed
 (at), *s'étonner* (de)
 Astonishing, *étonnant*
 Attain, *atteindre* (à) (7)
 Attic, *mansarde*, *attique*, f.
 Aunt, *tante*, f.
 Austria, *Autriche*, f.
 Author, *auteur*, m.
 Avoid *éviter*, *fuir* (v. irr.)
 Awake, adj. *éveillé*. v. a. & n. *éveil-*
ler, *réveiller*; *s'éveiller*, *se réveiller*
 Bad, *mauvais*, *méchant*
 Badly, *mal*
 Ball, *bal*, m.; (to play with) *balle*,
 f. Cannon —, *boulet*, m.
 Bank, *banque* f.; (of a river) *rive*, f.
 Basket, *panier*, m.
 Basketful, *un panier plein*
 Battle, *bataille*, f.
 Bavaria, *Bavière*, f.
 Be (of health), *se porter*. To —
 better, *se porter mieux*
 Bean, *fève*, f.
 Bear (fruit), *porter*. s. ours, m.
 Beard, *barbe*, f.
 Beat, *battre* (4); (to surpass) *dé-*
passer. To — a drum, *battre un*
tambour. To — down, *abattre*
 Beautiful, *beau*
 Because, *parce que*; (— of) *à*
cause de
 Become, *devenir* (a); *se faire* (d)
 Bed, *lit*, m.
 Beef, *boeuf*, m. Roast —, *rosbif*, m.
 Before, prep. (in time) *avant*; (in
 place) *devant*. adv. *auparavant*
 Beg, *mendier*
 Beggar, *mendiant*, m.
 Begin, *commencer*. To — again,
recommencer
 Beginning, *commencement*, m.
 Behave (oneself), *se conduire* (6)
 Behaviour, *conduite*, f.

Behold, *décapiter*
 Bell, *cloche*, f.
 Below, *au dessous* (de)
 Belong, *appartenir* (a); *être à...*
 Bend, *courber*; (the knee) *flair*
 (2)
 Betake (oneself), *se rendre* (4)
 Betray, *trahir* (2)
 Between, *entre*
 Bewilder, *étourdir* (2)
 Bill of exchange, *lettre de change*
 Bit, *pièce*, f., *morceau*, m.; (of a
 bridle) *mors*, m.
 Bite, *mordre* (4)
 Bitterly, *amèrement*
 Black, *noir*
 Blacken, *noircir* (2)
 Blood, *sang*, m.
 Blow, *coup*, m.
 Blush, *rougir* (2)
 Board, (on board of) *à bord de*
 To go on —, see Go
 Board and lodging, *table et loge-*
ment
 Boast, *vanter*; *se vanter* (ant)
 Bohemia, *Bohême*, f.
 Boil, *bouillir* (v. irr.)
 Boiler, *chaudière*, f.
 Bold, *hardi*. To make —, *se*
hardir (2)
 Bolt, *verrou*, m.
 Bonnet, *chapeau*, m.
 Book, *livre*, m.
 Boot, *botte*, f.
 Born, *né*. To be —, *naitre* (8)
 Borrow, *emprunter*
 Bother, *ennuyer*
 Bottle, *bouteille*, *carafe*, f.
 Boundary, *limite*, f.
 Box, *boîte*, f.
 Boy, *garçon*, m.
 Brandy, *eau de vie*, f.
 Brave, *brave*
 Bravely, *bravement*, *vaillamment*
 Bray, *braire* (v. irr.)
 Bread, *pain*, m.
 Break, *casser*, *rompre* (4). To —
 down, *abattre* (4)
 Breakfast, v. n. & a. *déjeuner*, m.
 Breath, *haleine*, f.
 Breathe, *respirer*
 Bridge, *pont*, m.

- rillant*
isé, rompu
ère, m.
iser
 - (2)
"
rillant, ardent
h), éclater. To — out
; éclater de rire. To —
u, fondre en larmes
velir (2)
 Nothing —, *rien que*
er. To — up, accaparer

hou, m.
zu, m.
calamité, f.
ler. To — back, rappé-
wake, réveiller
calomnie, f.
meau, m.
andelle, f. [canon, m.
mon, m. — shot, coup de
m. — of Good Hope, le
Bonne Espérance
très-bien
apitaine, m.
capucin, m.
, m. To take —, pren-
le (a)
avec soin
voiture, f.; carrosse, m.
ter
ian, Carthaginois
, abattu
lieau, m.
raper; (overtake) attein-

ail, m.; bestiaux, pl.
iss, occasion, f.
avalerie, f.
éléste
ve, f.
zine, f.
ties, f.
. a. & n. changer. To —
réboudre (en) (v. irr.). a.
ment, m.
harité, f.
harne, m.
, charmant

Check, retenir (a)
Cherish, chérir (2)
Cherry, cerise, f.
Child, enfant, m. f.
Chocolate, chocolat, m.
Choose, choisir (2); élire. See lire,
v. irr.
Chorus, chœur, m. In —, de concert
Christian, s. & adj. chrétien, m.
Church, église, f.
Circle, cercle, m.
Circumscribe, circonscrire (g)
Circumstance, circonstance, f.
Clean, adj. propre
Clean, v. a. nettoyer
Clear, adj. clair. To — the table,
desse-vir (5)
Clever, habile
Climinate, climat, m.
Cloak, manteau, m.
Close, fermer
Clothes, habits, effets, m. pl. Suit
of —, habillement complet, m.
Cloud, nuage, m.
Cochman, cocher, m.
Coal, charbon, m.
Coat, habit, m.
Coffee, café, m.
Cold, froid
Collect (taxes), percevoir (3)
College, collège, m.
Colonel, colonel, m.
Colour, couleur, f.
Come, venir (a). To — back, re-
venir. To — in, entrer. To —
out, sortir (5). To — up, monter.
To — nearer, approcher
Comfortable, confortable, commode
Commence, commencer
Commit, commettre (f)
Communication, communication, f.
Company, compaignie, f.; monde, m.
Compel, forcer, obliger, contraindre
(7)
Compete, concourir (h)
Complain, se plaindre (de) (7)
Completely, tout à fait
Compliment, compliment, m.
Conceal, v. a. & n. cacher; se cacher
Conceive, concevoir (8)
Concern, regarder

- Conclude, *conclure* (v. irr.)
 Conduct, *conduite*, f.
 Conquer, *conquérir* ; *vaincre* (v. irr.)
 Conqueror, *conquérant*, m.
 Consent, *consentir* (5)
 Console, *consoler*
 Construct, *construire* (6)
 Content, *content*
 Contradict, v. a. & n. *contredire* (c) ;
dédire ; *se dédire*
 Contrary, *contraire*. On the —, *au contraire*
 Convent, *couvent*, m.
 Converse (with), *s'entretenir* (a)
(avec)
 Convince, *convaincre* (v. irr.)
 Cook, *cuire* (v. irr.)
 Cord, *corde*, f.
 Cordially, *cordialement*
 Corn, *blé*, m.
 Corner, *coin*, m.
 Correct, *corriger, reprendre* (e)
 Correctly, *correctement*
 Correspondence, *correspondance*, f.
 Corsica, *Corse*, f.
 Council, *conseil*, m.
 Country, *campagne*, f. ; *pays*, m.
 County, *comté*, m.
 Courageous, *courageux*
 Course (of a river) *cours*, m.
 Court, *cour*, f.
 Courtyard, *cour*, f.
 Cousin, *cousin*, m.
 Cover, *couvrir* (b). s. *couverture*, f.
 Cow, *vache*, f.
 Coward, *poltron*, m.
 Cracked, *fêlé*
 Cravat, *cravate*, f.
 Crime, *crime*, m.
 Crop, *récolte*, f.
 Cross, *croix*, f.
 Crowd, *foule*, f. In —s, *en foule*
 Cruel, *cruel*
 Crush, *écraser*
 Cry, v. n. *crier*. s. *cri*, m.
 Cultivate, (land) *labourer* ; (a garden) *cultiver*
 Cunning, *fin, rusé*
 Cup, *tasse* ; *coupe*, f.
 Cupboard, *armoire*, f. ; (for food)
buffet, m.
 Cure, *guérir* (2)
 Curse, *maudire* (c)
 Curtain, *rideau*, m.
 Customs, *coutumes*, f. pl. [rare]
 Cut (one's hair), *se couper les cheveux*
 Dance, *danser*
 Danger, *danger*, m.
 Dark, *obscur*. To get —, *se faire nuit*
 Darkness, *obscurité*, f. ; *ténacité*, f.
 Date, *date*, f.
 Daughter, *fille*, f.
 Day, *jour*, m. All — long, *toute la journée*. Every —, *tous les jours*. Every other —, *tous les deux jours*. This — week, *aujourd'hui en huit*
 Daybreak, *point du jour*, m. ; *aurore*, f.
 Daylight, *jour*, m. [rare, f.]
 Dazzle, *éblouir* (2)
 Dead, *mort*
 Deafen, *assourdir* (2), *abasourdir* (2)
 Dear, *cher*
 Decamp, *décamper*
 Deceive, *tromper* ; *décevoir* (3)
 December, *décembre*, m.
 Defeat, *vaincre* (v. irr.)
 Delight, *réjouir* ; *se réjouir* (2)
 Demand, v. a. *demander*. s. *demande*, f.
 Demolish, *démolir* (2) [rare, f.]
 Den, (of wild beasts) *antre*, m.
 Denmark, *Danemark*, m.
 Dentist, *dentiste*, m.
 Deny, *nier*. To — a false report, *démentir* (5)
 Deprive (of), *priver* (de)
 Description, *description*, f.
 Deserve, *mériter*
 Design, *dessein, projet*, m.
 Desist, *se désister*
 Destiny, *destinée*, f. ; *destin*, m.
 Destroy, *détruire* (6)
 Destroying, *destructeur*
 Detain, *retenir* (a)
 Detest, *détester*
 Diamond, *diamant*, m.
 Diana, *Diane*, f.
 Dictionary, *dictionnaire*, m.
 Diet, *diète*, f.
 Different, adj. *différent, autre*

<i>difficulté, f.</i>	Early, <i>de bonne heure</i>
<i>ignité, f.</i>	Earlier, <i>de meilleure heure</i>
<i>illegent</i>	Earthquake, <i>tremblement de terre, m.</i>
<i>r</i>	Easily, <i>aisément, facilement</i>
<i>m, salle à manger, f.;</i>	Eat, <i>manger</i>
<i>ols, &c.) réfectoire, m.</i>	Eclipse, <i>éclipse, f.</i>
<i>iner, m.</i>	Effect, <i>effet, m.</i>
<i>(of place) côté, m.</i>	Effort, <i>effort, m.</i>
<i>immédiatement</i>	Egg, <i>œuf, m.</i>
<i>ble, désagréable</i>	Eider-down, <i>édredon, m.</i>
<i>, disparaître (8)</i>	Elephant, <i>éléphant, m.</i>
<i>v. n. discourir (h). s.</i>	Embark, <i>s'embarquer</i>
<i>, m.</i>	Embrace, <i>embrasser</i>
<i>découvrir (b)</i>	Emperor, <i>empereur, m.</i>
<i>, discrétion, f.</i>	Empire, <i>empire, m.</i>
<i>maladie, f.</i>	Employment, <i>emploi, m.</i>
<i>. m.</i>	Enchant, <i>enchanter</i>
<i>effrayé</i>	Enchanting, <i>enchanteur</i>
<i>démision, f.</i>	End, <i>bout, m.; fin, f.</i>
<i>l'asobér (à) (2)</i>	Enemy, <i>ennemi, m.</i>
<i>déplacer</i>	Engine, <i>machine, f.</i>
<i>re, déplaisir, m.</i>	Engineer, <i>ingénieur, m.</i>
<i>liaoudre (v. irr.)</i>	England, <i>Angleterre, f.</i>
<i>distance, f.</i>	English, <i>anglais</i>
<i>, distinctement</i>	Englishman, <i>Anglais, m.</i>
<i>étranger</i>	Enjoin, <i>enjoindre (7)</i>
<i>st, m.</i>	Enjoy, <i>jouir (de) (2)</i>
<i>To — over again, refaire</i>	Enlarge, <i>agrandir (2)</i>
<i>édecin, m. [(d)]</i>	Enough, <i>assez. That is —, cela suffit</i>
<i>t, m.</i>	Enquire, <i>demandar; s'informer (de);</i>
<i>e, f. — handle, bouton, m.</i>	<i>s'enquérir (de) (v. irr.)</i>
<i>double, m.</i>	Enter, <i>entrer</i>
<i>n, en bas</i>	Error, <i>erreur, faute, f.</i>
<i>usaine, f.</i>	Escape, <i>échapper; s'échapper</i>
<i>dragon, m.</i>	Escort, <i>escorte, f.</i>
<i>rtains, &c.) tirer; (sketch)</i>	Establish, <i>établir (2)</i>
<i>.</i>	Estate, <i>bien, m.; terre, f.</i>
<i>dessin, m.</i>	Estateem, <i>v. a. estimer. s. estime,</i>
<i>room, salon, m.</i>	<i>considération, f.</i>
<i>Dressé</i>	Estimation, <i>estime, f.</i>
<i>n, s'habiller. s. robe, f.</i>	Eternal, <i>éternel</i>
<i>iduire (6)</i>	Evade, <i>éviter, éluder</i>
<i>ndour, m.</i>	Evasive, <i>évasif</i>
<i>myeux</i>	Evening, <i>soir, m. [les...]</i>
<i>net</i>	Every, <i>chaque; tous les..., or toutes</i>
<i>durée, f.</i>	Everybody, <i>tout le monde</i>
<i>endant</i>	Everything, <i>tout; toute chose</i>
<i>ndreux</i>	Everywhere, <i>partout</i>
<i>oir, m.</i>	Evil, <i>mal, m.</i>
<i>dre (7)</i>	Example, <i>exemple, m.</i>

- Exceedingly, *excessivement*
 Exclude, *exclure* (v. irr.)
 Excuse, s. *excuse*, f.
 Execute, *accomplir* (2)
 Exercise, *thème*, m.
 Exhibition, *exposition*, f.
 Expect, v. a. & n. *attendre*; *s'attendre* (à) (4)
 Expense, *dépense*, f.; *frais*, m. Silly —s, *folles dépenses*, f. pl. At the — of, *aux dépens de*
 Explain, *expliquer*
 Expression, *expression*, f.
 Extend, v. a. & n. *étendre*; *s'étendre*
 Eye, *œil*, m.; pl. *yeux* [(4)]
- Face, *visage*, m.
 Fact, *fait*, m.
 Fail, *manquer*
 Faint (away), *s'évanouir* (2)
 Fairy, *fée*, f.
 Faithfully, *fidèlement*
 Fall, v. n. *tomber*. s. *chute*, f.; (of rain, snow, &c.) *quantité tombée*. To — due, *échoir* (v. irr.)
 False, *faux*
 Family, *famille*, f.
 Fast, *vite*
 Father, *père*, m.
 Fatigue, v. n. *se fatiguer*. s. *fatigue*, f.
 Fault, *faute*, f.
 Favourite, *favori*
 Fear, *craindre* (7). For — of, *de*
 Feudal, *féodal* [peur de
 Fever, *fièvre*, f.
 Few, *peu de*. A — persons, *quelques personnes*
 Field, *champ*, m.
 Fight, *combattre*; *se battre* (4)
 Fill, *remplir* (2)
 Find, *trouver*
 Fine, *beau*, m.; *belle*, f.
 Finish, *finir* (2), *achever*
 Fire, *feu*, m.
 First, *premier*. At —, *d'abord*
 Fish, *poisson*, m.
 Flag, *drapeau*, *pavillon*, m.
 Flank, *flanc*, m.
 Flock, *troupeau*, m.
 Floor, *plancher*, m.
- Flour, *farine*, f.
 Flow (from), *sortir* (as) (5); j
 Flower, *fleur*, f.
 Flower-girl, *marchande de fleurs*
 Flute, *flûte*, f.
 Fly, *mouche*, f.
 Follow, *suivre* (v. irr.)
 Folly, *folie*, f.
 Foolish, *fou*, m.; *folle*, f.
 Foot, *pied*, m.
 For, *pour*
 Forbid, *défendre* (4)
 Force, v. a. *contraindre* (7) (strength) *force*, f.
 Foresee, *prévoir* (v. irr.); *pres*
 Forget, *oublier*
 Forgive, *pardonner*
 Formal, *formel*
 Fortnight, *quinze jours*, m. pl. *quinzaine*, f. This day —, *aujourd'hui en quinze*; (pay a *quinze jours*
 Fortunately, *heureusement*, *par* *heur*
 Fortune, *fortune*, f.
 Frederick, *Frédéric*, m.
 Frenchman, *Français*, m.
 Fresh, adj. *nouveau*
 Friday, *vendredi*, m.
 Friend, *ami*, m.
 Friendship, *amitié*, f.
 Frigate, *frégate*, f.
 From, prep. *de*; (time) *depuis*,
 Front, *devant*; *au devant*
 Frost, *gelée*, f.
 Fruit, *fruit*, m.
 Fry, *frire* (v. irr.)
 Fulfil, *remplir* (2)
 Full, adj. *plein*
 Funds, *fonds*, m. pl.
 Funny, *drôle*, *comique*
 Furl, *ployer*
 Furnish, *meubler*, *fournir* (2); *nir* (2). A —ed house, *une maison garnie*
 Future, *avenir*, m.
- Gain, *gagner*
 Gallop, *galoper*
 Garden, *jardin*, m.

barrière, f.
lir (v. irr.)

éral, m.
monsieur, m.
& s. Allemand
descendre (4). To —
léfaire (de) (d). To —
ade, faire faire
, m.

r. To — back, up,

m.
f.
m.
s'en aller. To — on
mbarquer. To — over,
(h). To — to bed, se
To — to sleep again, se
r (5). To — up, monter.
ay, partir (5)

bon, bonne; (well-
sage
n, m.
idieu
onté, f.
s, m. pl.
âtre (8)
t, gouvernement, m.
e, f. With a good —,
grâce
grammaire, f.
r, grandpère, m.
e, f., gazon, m.
econnaissant
tis
id, gros
par-dessus, paletot, m.
& s. Grec, m.
eur, f.
âtre (v. irr.)
vir (2)
tre (8), grandir (2). To —
gain, rajeunir (2). To
maigrir (2)
a. garder. s. (mil.)

Guide, guide, m.
Guilty, coupable
Gun, fusil, m.

Habit, habitude, f.
Hair, les cheveux, m. pl.
Hand, main, f.
Handkerchief, mouchoir, m.
Handle, (of a door) bouton, m.
Hang, v. a. & n. pendre; se pendre
Happen, arriver [(4)
Happy, heureux
Hard, dur
Hardly, à peine
Harmonious, harmonieux
Harmony, harmonie, f.
Hat, chapeau, m.
Hate, haïr (2)
Hatred, haine, f.
Have, avoir. To — anything done
or made, faire faire
Havre, le Hâvre, m.
Head-ache, mal de tête, m.
Health, santé, f.
Heap, v. a. entasser, amonceler
Hear, entendre (4)
Heart, cœur, m.
Heartily, de bon cœur
Heathen, adj. & s. païen, m.
Heavy, lourd, pesant
Hebrew, adj. & s. Hébreu, m.
Height, hauteur, f.
Helen, Hélène, f.
Help, v. a. aider, secourir (h); (to
food) servir (5). s. aide, assist-
ance, f.
Hem (in), enfermer, renfermer
Henceforth, désormais
Hero, héros, m.
Hide, cacher. To — oneself, se
tenir caché, s'ensevelir (2)
Hide-and-seek, cache-cache, m.
Hiding-place, cache, cachette, f.
Hill, colline, f.
Hold, tenir (a). To — back, retenir.
To — one's tongue, se taire
(v. irr.). To — out, tendre (4).
To — up, soutenir
Hole, trou, m.
Holidays, vacances, f. pl.
Holy, saint

Home, (a. one's house) *chez soi*
 Honest, *honnête*
 Honourably, *honorablement*
 Hook, (for fishing) *hameçon*, m.
 Hope, v. n. *espérer*. a. *espérer*, m.;
espérance, f.
 Horribly, *horriblement*
 Horse, *cheval*, m.
 Hotel, *hôtel*, m.
 Hour, *heure*, f.
 House, *maison*, f.
 How, inter. *comment?* excl. *comme!*
 Hungary, *Hongrie*, f.
 Hunt, *chasser*
 Hurry, *précipiter*. In a —, *avec*
précipitation; à la *hâte*
 Hurt, v. a. & n. *blesser*; *se blesser*
 Husband, *mari*, m.
 Hussar, *hussard*, m.
 Hypocrite, *hypocrite*, m. f.

Ice, *glace*, f.
 Idea, *idée*, f.
 Idle, *paresseux*
 Idleness, *paresse*, f.
 Ignorance, *ignorance*, f.
 Ill, *malade*
 Ill-will, *malveillance*, f.
 Imagination, *imagination*, f.
 Imitate, *imiter*; *contrefaire* (d)
 Immediately, *sur-le-champ*
 Immensely, *immensément*
 Importance, *importance*, f.
 Impression, *impression*, f.
 Inch, *pouce*, m.
 Inconvenience (oneself), *s'incom-*
moder, *se déranger*
 Increase, *accroître*, *s'accroître* (8)
 Incur, *encourir* (h)
 India, *les Indes*, f. pl.
 Inform, v. a. & n. *informer*; *s'in-*
former, *s'instruire* (8)
 Infringe, *enfreindre* (7)
 Inhabitant, *habitant*, m.
 Injure, *nuire* (à) (8)
 Ink, *encre*, f.
 Inside, *dedans*; là *dedans*
 Insolence, *insolence*, f.
 Insolent, *insolent*
 Instant, *instant*, m.
 Instead (of), *au lieu de*

Instruct, *instruire* (6)
 Insult, *insulter*
 Intend, *avoir l'intention* (d), a
proposer (de); *entendre* (4)
 Intention, *intention*, f.
 Interests, *intérêts*, m. pl.
 Interrupt, *interrompre* (4)
 Intimate, *intime*
 Invade, *envahir* (2)
 Invest (a town), *investir* (2)
 Invite, *inviter*
 Iron-clad (vessel), *navire cuirassé*, m.
 Island, *île*, f.
 Italian, adj. & n. *Italien*, m.
 Italy, *Italie*, f.

January, *janvier*, m.
 Jewel, *bijou*, m.
 John, *Jean*, m.
 Join, *unir* (2); *joindre* (8); *se réunir*,
Joke, *badiner* [se joindre]
 Journey, *voyage*, m.
 Judge, v. a. *juger*. a. *juge*, m.
 July, *juillet*, m.
 Jump, *sauter*; (over, across) *franchir* (2)
 June, *juin*, m.
 Jurisdiction, *juridiction*, f.

Keep, *garder*; *tenir*, *retenir* (a)
 Key, *claf*, f.
 Kill, *tuer*
 Kindness, *bonté*, f.
 King, *roi*, m.
 Kingdom, *royaume*; *pays*, m.
 Knead, *pétrir* (2)
 Knee, *genou*, m.
 Knock, *frapper*
 Know, *connaître* (8). To — *with*
 other again, *se reconnaître*

Labourer, *laboureur*, m.
 Lace, *dentelle*, f.
 Ladder, *échelle*, f.
 Lady, *dame*, f.
 Lane, *estropié*, *boiteux*
 Lamp, *lampe*, f.
 Lancer, *lancier*, m.
 Land, *terre*, f.

re, *langue*, f.
 L. *Laponie*, f.
 ros
 up de *fouet*, m.
 rnier
 rd
 dj. & s. *Latia*, m.
 rre. To burst out —ing,
 r de *rire*. To — heartily,
 's bon *cœur*
 ig-stock, *risole*, f.; *jouet*, m.
 ' f.
 , *procès*, m.
 uille, f.
 uler. To — over, *franchir*
 pprendre (e) [(2)
 l, *sage*
 ious. At —, *au moins*
 . a. & n. *quitter*; *laisser*. s.
 anon, f.
 ade, f.
 rêter
 uns
 moindre
 leçon, f.
 etre, f.
 liberté, f. To set at —,
 chir (2)
 bibliothèque, f.
 . mentir (2). s. *meneonge*, m.
 ; f. In my —, *de ma vie*
 umière, f.
 légèrement
 mer
 'amie, f.
 n, m.
 'e, f.
 écouter. To — to reason,
 ire *raison*
 of size) *petit*; (quantity)
 le)
 meurer
 nomard, m.
 rrure, f.
 sauterelle, f.
 Londres
 r), *chercher*; (at) *regarder*
 'dre (4); (one's way) *se perdre*
 (j. *haut*. (Used also as adv.)
 . a. *aimer*. s. *amour*, m.
 n. *augir* (2)

Low, adj. & adv. *bas*
 Lower, v. a. *baisser*
 Luck, *chances*, f.
 Machine, *machine*, f.
 Mad, (of animals) *enragé*; (of men)
 fou
 Magnificent, *magnifique*
 Maintain, *maintenir* (a)
 Make, *faire* (d). To — haste, *se dé-*
 pêcher
 Man, *homme*, m.
 Manner, *manière*, *sorte*, f. In that
 —, *de la sorte*
 Manners, *mœurs*, *manières*, f. pl.
 Mark (of esteem, &c.), *gage*, *témoi-*
 gnage, m.
 Marriage, *mariage*, m.
 Marry, v. n. *se marier*; v. trans.
 épouser
 Marshal, *maréchal*, m.
 Mary, *Marie*, f.
 Master, *maître*, m.
 Mathematics, *mathématiques*, f. pl.
 May, *mai*, m.
 Meadow, *pré*, m.
 Meaning, *sens*, m.; *signification*,
 f.
 Means, *moyens*, m. pl.
 Measure, *mesure*, f.
 Meat, *viande*, f. — and drink, *à*
 manger et à boire
 Medal, *médaille*, f.
 Meddle (with), *se mêler* (de)
 Meet, *rencontrer*
 Meeting, *assemblée*, *réunion*, f.
 Midnight, *minuit*, m.
 Might, *force*, f.
 Mile, *mille*, m.
 Milk, *traire* (v. irr.). s. *lait*, m.
 Minerva, *Minerve*, f.
 Minister, *ministre*, m.
 Miserable, *misérable*
 Misfortune, *malheur*, m.
 Miss, *manquer*, *perdre* (4)
 Mistake, *faute*, *erreur*, f.
 Mix, *mêler*; (put in confusion) *con-*
 fondre (4)
 Modern, *moderne*
 Moment, *moment*, m.

Monarch, *monarque*, m.
 Monday, *lundi*, m.
 Money, *argent*, m.
 Month, *mois*, m.
 Moon, *lune*, f.
 More, *plus*. — and —, *de plus en plus*
 Morning, *matin*, m. [plus
 Morrow (the), *le lendemain*
 Mother, *mère*, f.
 Mountain, *montagne*, f.
 Much, *beaucoup*. How —? *com-
bien?* Too —, *trop*. Twice as
 —, *deux fois autant*
 Mud, *boue*, f.
 Muddy, *boueux, bourbeux*
 Music, *musique*, f.
 Mustachio, *moustache*, f.

 Name, *nom*, m.
 Naughty, *méchant*
 Near, *près, proche* [—, *il faut*
 Necessary, adj. *nécessaire*. It is
 Necessity, *nécessité*, f.; *besoin*, m.
 Neck, *cou*, m.
 Need, *besoin*, m.
 Nephew, *neveu*, m.
 Nervous, (fearful) *timide*
 Never, *jamais*
 Nevertheless, *néanmoins*
 New, *nouveau, neuf*
 New-comer, *nouveau-venant*, m.
 News, *nouvelles*, f. pl.
 Niece, *nièce*, f.
 Nightfall, *tombée de la nuit*, f.
 Nobody, *personne*
 Noise, *bruit*, m.
 Noon, *midi*, m.
 North, *nord*. The Northern coun-
 tries, *les pays du Nord*
 Norway, *Norwège*, f.
 Nothing, *rien*
 Notice, v. a. & n. *apercevoir* (3);
s'apercevoir (de)
 Numb, *engourdir, transir* (2)
 Nurse (the sick), *soigner les malades*
 Nut, *noix*, f.

Obey, *obéir* (à) (2)
 Object, *but*, m.

Oblige, *obliger*
 Observe, *remarquer*
 Obstacle, *obstacle*, m.
 Obtain, *obtenir* (a)
 Occasion, *occasion*, f.
 Occupy, *occuper*
 Offend, *offenser*. To be —ed, *se
fâcher*
 Offer, *offrir* (b)
 Office, *charge*, f., *fonctions*, f. pl.;
emploi, m.
 Officer, *officier*, m.
 Often, *souvent*
 Oil, *huile*, f.
 Old, *vieux*
 Omen, *présage*, m.
 Omit, *omettre* (f.)
 On, prep. *sur*. — board, *à bord de*
 Once, *une fois*; (formerly) *autrefois*
 Open, *ouvrir*. To — again, *re-
ouvrir* (b)
 Opening, *ouverture*, f.
 Opera-house, *opéra*, m.
 Opinion, *opinion*, f.
 Opportunity, *occasion, opportunité*,
 Oppose, *s'opposer* (à) [f
 Orange, *orange*, f.
 Order, *ordre*, m. In — that, *afin
que* (subj.)
 Others, *les autres*; *autrui*
 Otherwise, *autrement*
 Overtake, *atteindre* (7)
 Overturn, *verser*; *bouleverser*
 Owe, *devoir* (3)
 Own, *avouer*

 Page, (servant) *page*, m.; (of a
 book) *page*, f.
 Paint, *peindre* (7)
 Pale, *pâle*. To grow —, *pâlir* (2)
 Paper, *papier*, m.
 Parcel, *paquet*, m.
 Parents, *parents*, m. pl.
 Parrot, *perroquet*, m.
 Part, (portion) *partie*, f.; (theatrical
 performances, &c.) *rôle*, m.
 Party, (political faction) *parti*, m.
 Pass, *passer*. To — through, *pas-
ser par*
 Passage, *passage*, m.

r, *voyageur*, m.
passion, f.
 . *payer*. s. *paye*, *solde*, f.
 s, m. Green — s, *pois*
petits pois
riche, f.
re, f.
ne, f.
rayon, m.
pénitent, m.
tens, m. if adj. follows; f.
precedes
apercevoir; *s'apercevoir* (3)
oly, *sensiblement*
on, *permission*, f.
permettre (4); *souffrir* (b)
ince, *persévérance*, f.
persister
personne, f.
pe, personnage, m.
cano, m.
peinture, f.; *tableau*, m.
perçant, *pénétrent*
indre (7)
ice, f.; *lieu*, m.; *endroit*, m.
n, m.; *idée*, f.; (of attack)
l'attaque, m. To change
 —s, *changer d'idée*
anche, f.; *ais*, m.
inte, f.
iette, f.
 1. *jouer*
u, m.; (theat.) *spectacle*, m.,
 ; m. An acted —, *pièce*, f.
y, adv. *agréablement*
ptaisir, m.
abondant
xche, f.
ime, m.
te, m.
ologne, f.
, pommade, f.
vre. The —, *les pauvres*
n, *population*, f.
art, f.
posséder
tamp, *timbre-poste*, m.
m., *marmite*, f.
omme de terre, f.
re, f. Half —, *demi-livre*,

Powerful, *puissant*
 Prayer, *prière*, f.
 Predict, *prédire* (c)
 Prefer, *préférer*; *aimer mieux*
 Preference, *préférence*, f.
 Prepare, *préparer*
 Prescribe, *prescrire* (g)
 Prescription, *ordonnance*, f.
 Presence, *présence*, f.
 Present, v. a. *présenter*. s. *cadeau*,
 m. adj. *présent*
 Preside (over), *présider*
 Pretend, *prétendre* (4); *feindre* (7)
 Pretty, *joli*
 Prevail, *prévaloir* (v. irr.)
 Prevent, *empêcher*, *prévenir* (de) (a)
 Prince, *prince*, m.
 Princess, *princesse*, f.
 Prison, *prison*, f. To put in —,
mettre en prison
 Prisoner, *prisonnier*, m. To take
 —, *faire prisonnier*
 Prize, *prix*, m.
 Prodigious, *prodigieux*
 Produce, *produire* (6)
 Project, *projet*, m.
 Promise, *promettre* (f)
 Prompt (a speaker), *souffler*
 Proof, *épreuve*, f.
 Property, *bien*, m.
 Propose, v. a. & n. *proposer*; *se*
proposer
 Proud, *fier*
 Provisions, *vivres*, m. pl.
 Prussia, *Prusse*, f.
 Punctually, *ponctuellement*; *précis*
 Punish, *punir* (2)
 Pupil, *élève*, m. f.
 Purse, *bourse*, f.
 Put, *mettre* (f). To — back, *remettre*.
 To — on, *mettre*. To — out (ex-
 tinguish), *éteindre* (7)
 Quarter, *quart*, m.; (part of a town)
quartier, m.
 Queen, *reine*, f.
 Question, *question*, f.
 Quick, *vite*. To be —, *se dépêcher*
 Quiet, v. a. & n. *calmer*, *tranquilliser*;
se tenir tranquille. adj. *tranquille*

Quite, *tout, tout à fait*

Quiver, *trembler*; *tressaillir* (v. irr.)

Railway, *chemin de fer*, m.

Rain, *pleuvoir* (v. irr.). s. *pluie*, f.

Raise, v. a. & n. *lever*; *se lever*

Rank, *rang*, m.

Rapid, *rapide*

Rarely, *rarement*

Rate (speed). At the — of, *à la vitesse de*

Reach, *atteindre* (7), *parvenir* (à) (a)

Ready, *prêt*

Reason, *raison*, f.

Rebuild, *rebâtir* (2)

Recall, *rappeler*

Recant, *rétracter*

Recite, *réciter*

Recognise, *reconnaître* (8)

Recourse, *recours*, m. To have — to, *avoir recours* (à)

Recover (oneself), *se remettre* (f); *se retirer*

Red, *rouge*

Reduce, *réduire* (6)

Reflect, *réfléchir* (2)

Refresh, *rafraîchir* (2)

Refuse, *refuser*

Regiment, *régiment*, m.

Register, *registre*, m.

Regret, v. a. *regretter*. s. *regret*, m.

Regularly, *régulièrement*

Regulus, *Régulus*, m.

Rejoin, *rejoindre* (7)

Rejoice, *se réjouir* (2)

Relate, *raconter*

Relation, *parent*, m.

Relieve, *soulager*. To — the wants of the poor, *subvenir aux besoins des pauvres*

Reload, *recharger*

Remain, *rester*

Remainder, *reste*, m.

Remember, *se souvenir* (de) (a)

Renew, *renouveler*

Reparation, *réparation, satisfaction*, f.

Repeat, *répéter, redire* (c)

Repent, *se repentir* (5)

Replenish, *remplir* (2)

Report, *bruit*, m.

Reproach, *reprocher*

Repulse, *repousser*

Reputation, *réputation*, f.

Resound, *retentir* (2)

Rest, v. n. *se reposer*. s. *repos*, m.

Restrain, v. a. & n. *restreindre* (7); *contenir*; *se tenir* (a)

Result, *résultat*, m.

Return, v. n. *rentrer, retourner*; *venir* (a). s. *retour*, m.

Reward, v. a. *récompenser*. s. *récompense*, f.

Rich, *riche*. To grow —, *s'enrichir* (2)

Rid (oneself of), *se débarrasser* (de)

Rider, *cavalier*, m.

Ridicule, *ridicule*, m.

Right, *droit*, m.; *justice*, f.

Ring, *sonner*

Ripen, *mûrir* (2)

Rise, *se lever*

River, *rivière*, f.

Road, *chemin*, m. High —, *grand chemin*, m.; *grande route*, f.

Robber, *voleur*, m.

Roof, *toit*, m.

Room, *chambre*, f.

Rope, *corde*, f.

Rose, *rose*, f.

Roughly, *rudement, grossièrement*

Round, v. a. *arrondir* (2). adj. *ronde*

Rubbish, *décombres*, m. pl.

Rude, *rude, grossier*

Rule, *règle, f.*

Run, *courir*. To — to, *accourir* (h)

Russia, *Russie*, f.

Russian, adj. *russe*. s. *Russe*, m.

Sacred, *sacré, saint*

Sail, *voile*, f.

Salt, *sel*, m.

Same, *même*

Sand, *sable*, m.

Sapper, *sapeur*, m.

Satisfied, *content*

Satisfy, *satisfaire* (d)

Saturday, *samedi*, m.

Savage, *sauvage*

are, f.
 pandre (4)
 fum, m.
 le, f.
 nder
 Écosse, f.
 vison, f.
 of time) seconde, f.
 cret, m.
 ret
 v. irr.)
 bler; paraître (8)
 ir (2); se saisir (de)
 re (4)
 yer. To — back, renvoyer
 erpent, m.
 omestique, m.; servante, f.
 vir (5). To — ill, mal-
 traiter mal
 rvice, m.
 ; mettre. To — at liberty,
 ir (2). To — off, out,
 5). To — off, out again,
 . To — a trap, tendre
 e
 ablier (2)
 lusieurs
 sévèrement
 re (v. irr.)
 bre, f.
 onte, f. It is a —, cela
 nte
 ser. To — oneself, se raser,
 e la barbe. To — off, se
 i commerce) action, f.
 âle, m.
 ndre (4)
 rs), verser, répandre (4)
 ebis, f.
 schelling, m.
 splendir (2), luire (6)
 ire, vaisseau, m.
 mise, f.
 lier, m.
 raccourcir, accourir (2)
 épaule, f.
 ntrer
 ndée, f.
 rétrécir (2)
 ade

Side, côté, m. To surround on all
 —s, environner de tous côtés
 Signal, signal, m.
 Signature, signature, f.
 Silence, silence, m.
 Since, depuis
 Sing, chanter
 Sister, sœur, f.
 Size, grandeur, taille, f.
 Skate, patiner
 Skeleton, squelette, m.
 Skill, habileté, f., talent, m.
 Slander, médire (de) (c)
 Sleep, dormir (5); (pass the night)
 coucher. To send to —, endormir
 (5)
 Slightest, le (la) moindre
 Slow, lent, tardif
 Slowly, lentement
 Small, petit
 Smell, sentir (5)
 Smooth, aplanir (2); (of hair)
 aplatir
 So, ainsi. — as to, de manière à,
 afin de. — that, afin que (gov.
 [subj.)
 Sofa, sofa, canapé, m.
 Soft, mou, m.; molle, f.
 Soften, adoucir (2)
 Soil, terrain, m.
 Soldier, soldat, m.
 Somebody, quelqu'un
 Something, quelque chose
 Sometimes, quelquefois
 Somewhere, quelque part
 Song, chanson, f.
 Soon, bientôt, tôt. As — as, aus-
 sitôt que, dès que
 Sooner, plus tôt
 Sorrow, douleur, f.
 Sort, v. a. assortir (2). s. sorte,
 espèce, f.
 Soundly, profondément
 Soup, soupe, f.; potage, m.
 Sow, semer
 Spain, Espagne, f.
 Spanish, adj. & s. Espagnol, m.
 Speak, parler. To — ill of, médire (c)
 Speech, discours, m.
 Spend, (time) passer; (money) dé-
 penser
 Spill, verser, répandre (4)

- Spite, *dépit*, m. In — of, *en dépit de*; *malgré*
 Spoils, *dépouilles*, f. pl.; *pillage*, m.
 Spread, v. a. & n. *répandre* (4); *se répandre*
 Spring, (of a lock, &c.) *ressort*, m.
 Spy, *espion*, m.
 Square, s. *place*, f.
 Stag, *cerf*, m.
 Stagnant, *stagnant*, *dormant*
 Staircase, *escalier*, m.
 Stand. To — for a prize, *concourir*
 Star, *étoile*, f. [(h)
 Start (with fear), *tressaillir* (v. irr.)
 Station (railway), *gare*, *station*, f.
 Stay, *rester*, *demeurer*, *attendre* (4)
 Steam, *vapeur*, f.
 Step, *pas*, m.
 Stepmother, *marâtre*, f.
 Stick, *bâton*, m.; *canne*, f.
 Stop, v. a. & n. *arrêter*; *s'arrêter*
 Stone, *pièce*, f.
 Storm, *orage*, m., *tempête*, f.
 Story, (tale) *conte*, m., *histoire*, f.;
 (of a house) *étage*, m.
 Straight, *droit*. To stand — (up-
 right), *se tenir droit*
 Strangle, *étrangler*
 Strawberry, *fraise*, f.
 Street, *rue*, f. — door, *porte de*
 Strength, *force*, f. [*devant*, f.
 Stretch, v. a. & n. *étendre*; *s'étendre*
 (4)
 Strict, *stricte*
 Strike, *frapper*
 Strong, *fort*
 Stun, *étourdir*, *abasourdir* (2)
 Stupid, *stupide*, *sot*
 Style (of living), *manière de vivre*, f.
 Subject, *sujet*, m.; (business) *affaire*, f.
 Submit, *se soumettre* (à) (f)
 Subscribe, *souscrire* (à) (g); *s'abonner* (à)
 Subscription, *abonnement*, m.
 Succeed, *réussir* (2)
 Success, *succès*, m.
 Succour, *soulager*, *secourir* (h)
 Suddenly, *subitement*, *soudainement*.
 All of a sudden, *tout d'un coup*
 Suffer, *souffrir* (b)
 Suffice, *suffire* (v. irr.)
 Sufficient, *assez*
 Sugar, *sucré*, m.
 Suit (of clothes), *habillement*, m.
 Sum, *somme*, f.
 Sun, *soleil*, m.
 Sup, *souper*.
 Superior, *supérieur*
 Supper, *souper*, m.
 Supply, v. a. *fournir* (de) (2). *provision*, f.
 Support, v. a. *soutenir* (a)
 Sure, *sûr*
 Surely, *assurément*
 Surpass, *surpasser*; *l'emporter sur*
 Surprise, *surprise*, f.
 Surprising, *surprenant*
 Surrender, *se rendre* (4)
 Suspect, *soupçonner*
 Swallow, v. a. *avalé*. To — up, *avaler*
gloutir (2). s. (bird) *hirondelle*, f.
 Swamp, (squander) *engloutir* (2)
 Swear, *jurer*
 Sweden, *Suède*, f.
 Swedish, adj. & s. *Suédois*, m.
 Sweep, *balayer*
 Swim, *nager*
 Switzerland, *Suisse*, f.
 Syria, *Syrie*, f.
 Table, *table*, f.
 Tailor, *tailleur*, m.
 Take, *prendre* (e). To — (i.e. lead
 persons) *mener*, *conduire* (6).
 To — up again, *reprandre*. To
 — the trouble, *se donner la peine*
 Talkative, *causeur*
 Tall, *grand*
 Tardy, *tardif*
 Tarnish, *ternir* (2)
 Task, *tâche*, f.
 Taste, *goût*, m.
 Tax, *impôt*, m.; *contribution*, f.
 Tea, *thé*, m.
 Teach, *instruire* (6)
 Tear, *larme*, f. To burst into —
fondre en larmes. To shed —
verser des larmes
 Tell, *raconter*. To — a lie, *mentir*
 Tennis, *jeu de paume*, m. [(2)

<i>terriblement</i>	Tremble, <i>trembler</i> , <i>tressaillir</i> (v. irr.)
<i>territoire</i> , m.	Trifle, <i>bagatelle</i> , f.
	Troop, <i>troupe</i> , f.
<i>théâtre</i> , m.	Trouble, <i>peine</i> , f.
<i>là</i>	Trousers, <i>pantalon</i> , m.
<i>is</i>	Troy, <i>Troie</i> , f.
<i>ur</i> , m.	True, <i> vrai</i>
<i>ire</i> . To grow —, <i>maï-</i>	Trust, v. a. & n. <i>confier</i> (à); <i>se fier</i> (à)
<i>se</i> , f. [grir (2)]	Truth, <i>vérité</i> , f.
<i>ser</i>	Try, (compete, go in for) <i>concourir</i>
<i>f</i> , f.	(h)
<i>pensée</i> , <i>idée</i> , f.	Turn, v. a. & n. <i>tourner</i> ; (become)
<i>mille</i> ; (in dates) <i>mil</i>	<i>devenir</i> (a), <i>se faire</i> . To — back,
<i>, roulée</i> , f.	<i>retourner</i> ; <i>revenir</i> . s. <i>tour</i> , m.
<i>menacer</i>	Twice, <i>deux fois</i>
<i>rn</i>), <i>battre</i> (4)	Twist, <i>tordre</i>
a. & n. <i>jeter</i> ; <i>se jeter</i>	Tyrant, <i>tyran</i> , m.
<i>jeudi</i> , m.	
<i>ferme</i> , <i>serré</i> . adv. <i>ferme</i>	Ugly, <i>vilain</i>
<i>ps</i> , m.; <i>fois</i> , f. In —,	Umbrella, <i>parapluie</i> , m.
For a long —, <i>depuis</i>	Uncle, <i>oncle</i> , m.
<i>ps</i> . Several —s, <i>plu-</i>	Underdone, <i>peu cuit</i>
<i>ris</i>	Undergo, <i>subir</i> (2)
<i>, enivré</i> . To get —, <i>s'eni-</i>	Understand, <i>comprendre</i> (e). To —
<i>elf</i>), <i>se fatiguer</i>	one another, <i>se comprendre</i>
<i>ennuyeux</i>	Understanding, <i>entendement</i> , <i>ac-</i>
<i>aujourd'hui</i>	<i>cord</i> , m.
<i>ensemble</i>	Undertake, <i>entreprendre</i> (e)
<i>r</i> , <i>demain</i> . The day after	Undress (oneself), <i>se déshabiller</i>
<i>s demain</i>	Unhappy, <i>malheureux</i>
<i>it</i> , f.	Uniform, <i>uniforme</i> , m.
<i>e</i> , <i>mal de dents</i> , m.	Unite, <i>unir</i> (2); <i>joindre</i> (7)
<i>, m.</i> ; (summit) <i>cime</i> , f.	Unlearn, <i>désapprendre</i> (e)
<i>ur</i> , f.	Unless, <i>à moins que</i>
<i>e</i> , f.	Upright, <i>droit</i> , <i>debout</i>
<i>cer</i>	Upset, <i>verser</i>
<i>ce</i> , f.	Upstairs, <i>en haut</i>
<i>in</i> , <i>convoi</i> , m. Express	Use, <i>se servir</i> (de) (5)
<i>n express</i>	Utter (cries), <i>pousser</i> , <i>jeter</i>
<i>thâtre</i> , m.	
<i>e</i> , <i>transcrire</i> (g)	Veil, <i>voile</i> , m.
<i>traduire</i> (6)	Vengeance, <i>vengéance</i> , f.
<i>, v. a. & n. transporter</i> ;	Verse, <i>vers</i> , m.
<i>porter</i>	Very, <i>très</i>
<i>e</i> , m. To set a —, <i>tendre</i>	Vessel, <i>vaisseau</i> , m.
<i>, n. voyager</i>	Victim, <i>victime</i> , f.
<i>trésor</i> , m.	Victorious, <i>victorieux</i>
<i>trésor</i> , m.	View, <i>vue</i> , f.
<i>e</i> , m.	Village, <i>village</i> , m.
	Violin, <i>violon</i> , m.

- Voice, *voix*, f.
 Volume, *volume*, m.

 Waistcoat, *veste*, f.; *gilet*, m.
 Wait, *attendre* (4). To keep —ing, *faire attendre*
 Wake, *éveiller*
 Walk, v. n. *marcher*; *se promener*.
 s. *promenade*, f.
 Wall, *mur*, m.
 Want, *avoir besoin de*
 War, *guerre*, f.
 Warm, adj. *chaud*. To — oneself, *se chauffer*
 Warn, *avertir* (2); *prévenir* (a)
 Wash, (linen, &c.) *blanchir* (2). To — oneself, *se laver*
 Watch, *montre*, f.
 Water, v. a. *arroser*. s. *eau*, f.
 Way, (road) *chemin*, m. To lose one's —, *se perdre* (4)
 Way, (manner) *sorte*, *manière*, *façon*, f. In that —, *de la sorte*
 Weaken, *affaiblir* (2)
 Weakness, *faiblesse*, f.
 Wear, *porter*
 Weather, *temps*, m.
 Week, *semaine*, f. Once a —, *une fois par semaine*. This day —, *aujourd'hui en huit*. Three times a —, *trois fois par semaine*
 Weight, *poids*, m.
 Well, *bien*
 Whilst, *pendant que*
 Whistle, *sifflet*, m.
 White, *blanc*
 Why, (inter.) *pourquoi*
 Wicked, *méchant*
 Widen, *élargir*, *agrandir* (2)
- Wife, *femme*, f.
 Will, *volonté*, f.
 William, *Guillaume*
 Willingly, *volontiers*; *de bon cœur*
 Wind, *vent*, m.
 Window, *fenêtre*, f.
 Wine, *vin*, m.
 Winter, *hiver*, m.
 Wipe (up), *essuyer*
 Wish, *vouloir*
 Without, *sans*
 Woman, *femme*, f.
 Wood, *bois*, m.
 Word, *mot*, m.; *parole*, f. — d' honour, *parole d'honneur*. — for —, *mot pour mot*
 Work, v. n. *travailler*. To — hard *travailler fort*. s. *ouvrage*, *travail*, m.; *tâche*, f.
 Worth, *valeur*, f. To be —, *valoir* (v. irr.). To be — the trouble, *valoir la peine*
 Wound, v. a. & n. *blessar*; *se blesser*. s. *blessure*, f.
 Wretch, *malheureux*, m.
 Write, *écrire* (g). To — down, *écrire*
 Wurtemberg, *Wurtemberg*, m.

 Yard, (uncovered place) *cour*, f.
 Year, *an*, m.; *année*, f. Last —, *l'année passée*. Next —, *l'année prochaine*
 Yesterday, *hier*. The day before —, *avant hier*
 Yet, *encore*
 Young, *jeune*. To grow — again, *rajeunir* (?)

SUPPLEMENT TO THE VOCABULARY.



1. For all personal pronouns, see page 17
2. For all possessive pronominal adjectives (*my, thy, &c.*), see page 15.
3. For all possessive pronouns (*mine, thine, his, hers, ours, theirs*), see page 26.
4. For all numerals, see pages 13, 14.
5. The months :—*Janvier*, January ; *février*, February ; *mars*, March ; *avril*, April ; *mai*, May ; *juin*, June ; *juillet*, July ; *août*, August ; *septembre*, September ; *octobre*, October ; *novembre*, November ; *décembre*, December.
6. The days of the week :—*Dimanche*, Sunday ; *lundi*, Monday ; *mardi*, Tuesday ; *mercredi*, Wednesday ; *jeudi*, Thursday ; *vendredi*, Friday ; *samedi*, Saturday.
7. *Time*, for division of a day into hours and minutes, see page 105.
8. To be cold, hot, hungry, &c., see page 102.
9. *Days*. Idiomatic expression of time in French :

The day before yesterday	<i>avant hier</i>
The day after to-morrow	<i>après demain</i>
Every other day	<i>tous les deux jours</i>
This day week, fortnight	<i>aujourd'hui en huit, en quinze</i>
Three, four days ago	<i>il y a trois, quatre jours.</i>

about, *environ* ; (with verbs) *de*
 accept, *accepter* (1)
 account (on — of), *à cause de*
 afraid (to be), *avoir peur (de)*
 after, *après*
 again, *de nouveau*
 allow, *souffrir* (b)
 almanack, *almanach*, m.
 always, *toujours*
 animal, *animal*, m.
 another, *encore un, une*

Anywhere, *quelque part*
 Appearance, *apparence*, f. ; *air*, m.
 Arrive, *parvenir* (à)
 As, *comme*
 As far as, *aussi loin que ; jusqu'à*
 As for, *quant à*
 Asleep (to be), *dormir*
 As much as, *autant que*
 At, *à*
 Attack (sub.), *attaque*, f. ; *attaquer*
 (1)

Benevolent society, *société de bienveillance*, f.

Better, adj. *meilleur*

Better, adv. *mieux*

Better (to be), *se porter mieux*

Beyond, *au-delà de*

Break down, v. *Abattre* (4)

Business, *affaire*, f.

But, *mais*

By, *par*; (before present participles) *en*

Contain, *contenir* (a)

Could, imperf. or condit. of *Pouvoir*

Decapitate, *décapiter* (1)

Die, *mourir* (v. irr.)

Differently, *autrement*

Difficult, *difficile*

Each, *chaque*, adj.; *chacun*, pron.

Each other, *se*, or *l'un l'autre*

Encourage, *encourager* (1)

Evidently, *évidemment*

Far, *loin*

Feed, *paître* (8)

Few, *peu*. A —, *quelques*

Folly, *sottise*, f.

France, *la France*

French (language), *le français*

From (on account of), *à cause de*

Gain, *obtenir* (a)

Glad (to be), *se réjouir* (2)

Go out (to), *sortir* (5)

High, *haut*

Hold out, *tendre* (4)

Honour, *honneur*, m.; *honorer* (1)

How (to what extent), *comme*; (in what manner), *comment*

If, *si*

Impertinence, *impertinence*, f.

In, *en*, *dans*

Into, *dans*

Just, *exactement*. To have —, see page 139

Keep (to — waiting), *faire attendre*

Know (to be acquainted with), *connaître* (8). To — (generally), *savoir* (v. irr.)

Last (week, year), *passé*

Lead, *conduire* (6)

Lest (after verbs of fearing), *que-ne* (subj. mood)

Let (to), *laisser* (followed by infinitive)

Like, adv. *comme*

Line, *ligne*, f.

Live, *vivre* (v. irr.)

Long, *longtemps*

Longer, *plus longtemps*

Look (to — ill, well), *avoir l'air*

Loud, adv. *haut*

Many, *beaucoup de*, *plusieurs*

Matter, *affaire*, f.

Mimic, *contrefaire* (d)

Monument, *monument*, m.

More (not any —), *ne — plus*

Most, adv. *le plus* (sign of superlative)

Necessary, *nécessaire*

NEGATIVES, see page 130

Next, *prochain*

Ode, *ode*, f.

Over, prep, *pardessus*

Permission, *permission*, f.

Pity, *compassion*, f. It is a — *c'est dommage*

ire (v. irr.)	Understand, <i>s'entendre à</i>
e, f.	Unfortunate, <i>malheureux</i>
préférable	Upon, <i>sur</i>
omessse, f.	Used (often the sign of the imperfect tenses)
venable	
te	Vaccinate, <i>vacciner</i> (1)
	Vast, <i>vaste</i>
e, f.	Very, <i>très</i>
cevoir (3)	Visibly, <i>à vue d'œil</i>
eligion, f.	
ire, f.	Warning, <i>avertissement</i> , m.
ndre (4)	Weep, <i>pleurer</i>
er (1)	What (exclam.), <i>quoi !</i> (rel. pron.)
maladie, f.	<i>ce que</i>
(be), avoir sommeil	When, <i>quand</i>
tant (de)	Whence, <i>d'où</i>
tant (de)	Where, <i>où</i>
lque, (or part. art.)	Which, interr. <i>lequel ?</i> (rel. pron.)
lus tôt	<i>que</i>
er, attendre (4)	Whilst, <i>pendant que</i>
re	Whither, <i>où</i>
idier	Who, <i>qui</i>
pareil. — a man, un tel	Whole, <i>tout le</i>
	Whom, <i>que</i>
	Whose, <i>dont ;</i> (in questions) <i>à qui ?</i>
	With, <i>avec ;</i> (after a verb) <i>de</i>
	Wrong (to be), see page 102
se, these, this, see page 16	
ru'à	Yet, <i>encore</i>
much, trop	



APPENDIX.

ENDERS OF FRENCH NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

THERE are two genders in French, masculine and feminine. The genders of most nouns may be determined either by their **meaning** or **termination**. The exceptions, however, form a very numerous class.

The subject will be treated under four heads :—

- I. Nouns of which the *sex* is evident (names of men and animals).
- II. Nouns that represent *classes*, such as *metals*, *seasons*, *colours*, &c.
- III. Nouns the gender of which is determined by the *final letter*.
- IV. Nouns ending in *E* or *E*, which cannot be classified under either of the foregoing rules.

I. *Nouns of which the SEX is evident.*

(a.) All nouns designating any *male human creature* are naturally masculine; as :

<i>un homme</i>	a man
<i>un soldat</i>	a soldier
<i>un page</i>	a page
<i>un garçon, &c.</i>	a boy, &c.

Exceptions.

<i>une sentinelle</i>	a sentry
<i>une vedette</i>	an outpost
<i>une bête</i>	a fool
<i>une dupe</i>	a dupe
<i>une personne</i>	a person
<i>une victime</i>	a victim
<i>une partie</i>	an adversary (plaintiff or defendant)

The foregoing nouns are always feminine, whether employed to designate a man or a woman.

(3.) Most names of animals have two forms, one masculine and the other feminine, to designate the males and the females; as :

<i>un âne</i>	an ass	<i>une ânesse</i>	a she-ass
<i>un bélier</i>	a ram	<i>une brebis</i>	a ewe
<i>un bouc</i>	a goat	<i>une chèvre</i>	a she-goat
<i>un canard</i>	a drake	<i>une cane</i>	a duck
<i>un cerf</i>	a stag	<i>une biche</i>	a hind
<i>un chat</i>	a cat	<i>une chatte</i>	
<i>un cheval</i>	a horse	<i>une jument</i>	a mare
<i>un chevreuil</i>	a roe-buck	<i>une chevrette</i>	
<i>un chien</i>	a dog	<i>une chienne</i>	a bitch
<i>un cochon</i>	a pig	<i>une truie</i>	a sow
<i>un coq</i>	a cock	<i>une poule</i>	a hen
<i>un daim</i>	a fallow-buck	<i>une daine</i>	a doe
<i>un étalon</i>	a stallion	<i>une cavale</i>	a mare
<i>un faisan</i>	a cock-pheasant	<i>une faisanne</i>	a hen-bird
<i>un faon</i>	a fawn	<i>une faone</i>	
<i>un jars</i>	a gander	<i>une oie</i>	a goose
<i>un lapin</i>	a rabbit	<i>une lapine</i>	a doe-rabbit
<i>un lièvre</i>	a hare	<i>une hase</i>	
<i>un lion</i>	a lion	<i>une lionne</i>	a lioness
<i>un loup</i>	a wolf	<i>une louve</i>	a she-wolf
<i>un mouton</i>	a sheep	<i>une brebis</i>	a ewe
<i>un mulet</i>	a mule	<i>une mule</i>	
<i>un ours</i>	a bear	<i>une ourse</i>	a she-bear
<i>un paon</i>	a peacock	<i>une paonne</i>	a pea-hen
<i>un poulain</i>	a colt	<i>une pouliche</i>	a filly
<i>un renard</i>	a fox	<i>une renarde</i>	a vixen
<i>un sanglier</i>	a wild boar	<i>une laie</i>	a wild sow
<i>un serin</i>	a cock-canary	<i>une serine</i>	a hen-canary
<i>un singe</i>	a monkey	<i>une guenon</i>	a she-monkey
<i>un taureau</i>	a bull	<i>une vache</i>	a cow
<i>un tigre</i>	a tiger	<i>une tigresse</i>	a tigress
<i>un verat</i>	a boar	<i>une truie</i>	a sow

(γ.) *Epicenes*.—Many nouns designating animals have only one form, masculine or feminine, to express both the males and females of the species; such are :

<i>Masculine.</i>		<i>Feminine.</i>	
<i>un buffle</i>	a buffalo	<i>une alouette</i>	a lark
<i>un castor</i>	a beaver	<i>une anguille</i>	an eel
<i>un chameau</i>	a camel	<i>une araignée</i>	a spider
<i>un cigne</i>	a swan	<i>une autruche</i>	an ostrich
<i>un corbeau</i>	a raven	<i>une balaine</i>	a whale
<i>un crapaud</i>	a toad	<i>une bécasse</i>	a woodcock

<i>Masculine.</i>		<i>Feminine.</i>	
<i>dile</i>	a crocodile	<i>une bécassine</i>	a snipe
<i>nil</i>	a squirrel	<i>une cigogne</i>	a stork
<i>ant</i>	an elephant	<i>une corneille</i>	a crow
<i>ier</i>	a sparrow-hawk	<i>une fouine</i>	a pole-cat
<i>eton</i>	a cockchafer	<i>une girafe</i>	a giraffe
<i>ig</i>	a herring	<i>une grenouille</i>	a frog
<i>son</i>	a hedgehog	<i>une hirondelle</i>	a swallow
<i>i</i>	an owl	<i>une hyène</i>	a hyena
<i>rd</i>	a leopard	<i>une martre</i>	a martin
<i>d</i>	a lizard	<i>une mésange</i>	a tom-tit
<i>ereau</i>	a mackerel	<i>une moule</i>	a mussel
<i>?</i>	a blackbird	<i>une panthère</i>	a panther
<i>lon</i>	a butterfly	<i>une perdrix</i>	an old partridge
<i>in</i>	a pelican	<i>une pie</i>	a magpie
<i>reau</i>	a young partridge	<i>une souris</i>	a mouse
<i>n</i>	a pigeon	<i>une taupe</i>	a mole
<i>;</i>	a reindeer		
<i>n</i>	a shark		
<i>céros</i>	a rhinoceros		
<i>ue</i>	an opossum		
<i>on</i>	a salmon		
	a gad-fly		
<i>t</i>	a turbot		
<i>ur</i>	a vulture		

—To express the *female* of one of the above *masculine* s, one says *un castor femelle*, or *la femelle du castor*, *ess* the *male* of the *feminine epicene*, one says *une taupe* *r le mâle de la taupe*.

Nouns that represent CLASSES, such as METALS, SEASONS, COLOURS, &c., are masculine.

The names of the days of the week : *dimanche, lundi, mercredi, jeudi, vendredi, samedi*.

The months : *janvier, février, mars, avril, mai, juin, août, septembre, octobre, novembre, décembre*.

—Where the diminutive *mi* (contracted from *demi*, half) is pre-e word becomes feminine ; as : *la mi-juin*, the middle of June, *la ie*, mid-Lent, &c.

The seasons : *le printemps, l'été, l'automne, l'hiver*.

—The word *automne* is feminine when it precedes the adjective ; say, *une automne froide*, a cold autumn ; *l'automne passée*, *umn*.

(δ.) The names of *metals* and *minerals*; as: *l'or, le fer, l'airain, le charbon, l'acier, &c.*

(ε.) The names of *colours*; as: *le blanc, le noir, le vert, &c.*

(ζ.) *Trees* and *shrubs*; as: *le peuplier, le chêne, le hêtre, l'if, un orme.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*Aubépine*, hawthorn; *une épine*, a thorn; *une ronce*, a brier; *une vigne*, a vine; *une yeuse*, a holm-oak, are feminine.

(η.) *Languages*; as: *le Français, l'Italien, l'Allemand, le Grec, &c.*

(θ.) *Verbs, prepositions, and adjectives* used substantively; as: *le parler*, the gift or manner of speaking; *le toucher* (music), the touch; *le boire et le manger*; *le pour et le contre*; *le bon et le mauvais.*

(ι.) The *points of the compass*, and *names of winds*; as: *le nord, le sud, l'est, l'ouest; l'aquilon, le mistral*; but *la bise* and *la tramontane* are feminine.

(κ.) The names of *mountains*; as: *le Vésuve, l'Etna, le Mont Blanc.* But when in the plural they are generally feminine; as: *les Cordillères, les Alpes, les Pyrénées, les Vosges.* However, *les Apennins* and *les Carpathes* are masculine.

(λ.) The names of *towns* not ending in *E* mute; as: *Londres, Paris, Lyon.*

The following ending in *E* are also masculine: *Brême, le Caire, le Havre.*

(μ.) The names of *countries* not ending in *E* mute; as: *le Portugal, le Canada, le Sénégal.*

The following, though ending in *E* mute, are also masculine: *le Bengale, le Caucase, le Hanovre, le Péloponnèse, le Mexique.*

(ν.) *Fractional and proportional numbers*; such as *un quart, un tiers, un demi, un cinquième, un dixième, le double, le triple, le quadruple, le quintuple, le centuple, un million, un milliard.*

Collectives ending in *aine* are feminine; as: *une douzaine, une quinzaine, une vingtaine, &c.*

weights and measures, some are masculine and some
ne.

	<i>Masculine.</i>		<i>Feminine.</i>
	a quart	<i>une pinte</i>	a pint
<i>l</i>	a hogshead		
<i>e</i>	a yard	<i>une aune</i>	an ell
<i>mètre</i>	the 100th part of a yard		
<i>ce</i>	an inch		
	100 square yards		
<i>are</i>	100 ares		
<i>s</i>	measure for wood		
<i>i</i>	a cubic yard		
<i>me</i>		<i>une livre</i>	a pound
<i>gramme, &c.</i>		<i>une once</i>	an ounce

*Nouns, the gender of which is determined by the FINAL
LETTER.*

ns terminating in

nasculine ; except *camarilla, sépia, véranda, villa*.

„ without exception.

„ „ „

„ „ „

next Rule)

nasculine ; except *une clef*, a key (Lat. *clavis*) ; *la nef*, the nave of
a church (Lat. *navis*) ; *soif*, thirst (Lat. *sitis*)

„ without exception.

„ „ „

„ ; except *après-midi, foi* (Lat. *fides*), *fourmi* (Lat. *for-
mica*), *loi* (Lat. *lex*), *paroi* (Lat. *paries*).

„ without exception.

„ „ „

„ ; except *faim* (Lat. *fames*).

„ ; except *laideron, façon, leçon, rançon, main* (Lat.
manus), *fin* (Lat. *finis*), and most words ending in
ion or *son* (from Latin words ending in *io*).*

„ ; except *virago*.

„ without exception.

„ „ „

„ ; except *chair*, flesh (Lat. *caro*) ; *cuiller*, spoon ; *mer*, sea ;
tour, tower (Lat. *turris*) ; *la cour*, the court, and
abstract words in *eur*, from Latin *or*. See note.†

tion, champion, croupion, lampion, million, scorpion, blason, écusson, hérisson,
n, oison, peson, poison, poisson, tison, are masculine.

stract nouns in *eur*, derived from Latin words in *or*, are feminine. although
in words are masculine ; as : *une clameur* (Lat. *clamor*), *la peur* (Lat. *avor*),

Nouns terminating in

1. *ais* : except *fois*, a time (Lat. *viass*); *sovis*, a house (Lat. *voris*); *vis*, a screw.
2. *ais* : except *fois*, a time; *forêt*, a forest; *gent*, a race; *sovis*, a house; *sois*, night (Lat. *nox*); *part*, part (Lat. *part*); *part*, *part*; *mort*, death (Lat. *mors*).
3. *ais* : except *sois*, water; *sois*, daughter-in-law; *sois*, bird; *sois*, skin (Lat. *pellis*); *tribus*, a tribe; *sois*, *sois* (Lat. *sois*).
4. *ais* : except *sois*, line (Lat. *calx*); *croix*, a cross (Lat. *crux*); *sois*, a scythe (Lat. *falx*); *sois*, a nut (Lat. *nox*); *sois*, peace (Lat. *par*); *sois*, a partridge (Lat. *pernis*); *sois*, pitch (Lat. *pis*); *sois*, a cough (Lat. *sois*); *sois*, a voice (Lat. *vox*).
5. *ais* : without exception.
6. *ais* : " " " "

IV. Nouns ending in *É* or *E*.

Nouns ending in *É* are masculine; as : *un marché*, a market, *un congé*, a furlough, &c., with the exception of such words in *é* as are mostly derived from feminine Latin words in *tas*, *tatis*. Such are :

<i>brièreté</i>	brevity	(Lat. <i>brevitas</i>)
<i>aspérité</i>	asperity	(Lat. <i>asperitas</i>)
<i>célebrité</i>	celebrity	(Lat. <i>celebritas</i>)
<i>beauté</i>	beauty, &c.	

Exceptions

to the rule that words in *é* are feminine :—

<i>un arrêté</i>	a decree
<i>un comité</i>	a committee
<i>un comté</i>	a country
<i>un côté</i>	a side
<i>l'été</i>	the summer
<i>un pâté</i>	a pie
<i>du thé</i>	tea
<i>un traité</i>	a treaty

The above are masculine.

to the rule that words ending in *é* are masculine :—

<i>amitié</i>	friendship	(Lat. <i>amicitia</i>)
<i>inimitié</i>	enmity	(Lat. <i>inimicitia</i>)
<i>moitié</i>	half	(Lat. <i>medietas</i> ?)
<i>pitié</i>	pity	

The above are feminine.

une horreur (Lat. *horror*), &c.; but *labeur* and *honneur* are masculine in French also. The words *équateur*, *secteur*, *cœur*, and in arithmetic *dénominateur*, *numérateur*, *facteur*, &c., are masculine, all derived from Latin words in *or*, but they are not abstract terms.

NOUNS ENDING IN *E*.

Nouns ending in *e*, the gender may *generally* be determined by the Latin or Greek noun from which they are derived, but this is by no means without exception; and as many nouns have no Latin or Greek origin to which they may be traced, many others are derived from verbs and adjectives, and from Low Latin or modern Italian, and other languages, a complete list as possible is here given of *all* French nouns ending in *e* which do not come under any of the foregoing rules, and the original word from which they are derived is only given where such word furnishes a reason for the gender, this chapter being one of *genders*, and not of etymology. It will be remarked :

That many words which are feminine in French are derived from the plurals of Latin or Greek neuter words, the termination *a* having been mistaken for a feminine form.

Where words are derived from Latin and Greek adjectives, such words as *τι, aliquod*, to account for masculine forms, *έχνη, oratio*, to account for feminine forms, must be understood.

Words derived from Latin verbs, or compounded of a verb and substantive, are generally masculine.

The abbreviation L.L. means Low Latin ; It. Italian ; Span. Spanish.

BE.

Masculine.		Feminine.		
crab	<i>carabus</i>	syllabe	syllable	<i>syllaba</i>
Erebus	<i>Erebus</i>	bribe	remnant	
lobe	<i>λοβός</i>	diatribe	diatribe	<i>διατριβή</i>
globe	<i>globus</i>	tombe	tomb	
cube	<i>cubus</i>	hécatombe	hecatomb	<i>έκατόμβη</i>
tube	<i>tubus</i>	bulbe	bulb	<i>βύλβα</i>
carob		jambe	leg	<i>gamba</i> (It.), <i>καμπή</i>
iambic	<i>iambus</i>	trombe	waterspout	
border	<i>limbus</i>	courbe	curve	<i>curva</i> (linea?)
orb	<i>orbis</i>	tourbe	peat	
verb	<i>verbum</i>	barbe	beard	<i>barba</i>
adverb	<i>adverbium</i>	herbe	herb	<i>herba</i>
sort of turbot	<i>rhombus</i>	gerbe	sheaf	
		bourbe	mud	

CE.

	<i>Masculine.</i>			<i>Feminine.</i>	
espace	space	<i>spatium</i>	audace	audacity	<i>audacia</i>
			and all words in <i>ace</i>		
calice	chalice	<i>calix</i>	avarice	avarice	<i>avaritia</i>
bénéfice	benefice, church living	<i>beneficium</i>	malice	malice	<i>malitia</i>
service	service	<i>servitium</i>	lice	lists, tourna- ment	
déllice	delight	<i>delicium</i>	délices	delight	<i>delicia</i>
caprice	caprice	<i>capriccio</i> (It.)	varice	varicose vein	<i>varica</i> (ven.)
cilice	hair-shirt	<i>cilicium</i>	immondices	filth	<i>munditia</i>
indice	proof	<i>indictum</i>	prémices	first fruits	<i>primitia</i>
hospice	alms-house, place of en- tertainment	<i>hospitium</i>	hélice	screw	ἑλῖξ
orifice	orifice	<i>orificium</i>			
auspice	auspice	<i>auspicium</i>	office	pantry	<i>officina</i>
office	duty	<i>officium</i>	astuce	sharpness	<i>astutia</i>
solstice	solstice	<i>solstitium</i>	justice	justice	<i>justitia</i>
	and all words in <i>stice</i> ; except :		force		<i>fortia</i> (L.L.)
négoce	business	<i>negotium</i>	and all others in <i>nce</i>		
sacerdoce	priesthood	<i>sacerdotium</i>			
commerce	commerce	<i>commercium</i>			
divorce	divorce	<i>divortium</i>			
quinconce		<i>quincunx</i>			
silence	silence	<i>silentium</i>			

all other words in *nce* are feminine

DE.

grade	grade	<i>gradus</i>	sérénade	serenade	<i>serenata</i> (L.L.)
stade	measure	στάδιον	aubade	morning song	<i>albata</i> (L.L.)
remède	remedy	<i>remedium</i>	brigade	brigade	
			and all others in <i>ade</i>		
quadrupède	quadruped	<i>quadrupes</i>	ides	the Ides	<i>Idus</i>
acide	acid	<i>acidus</i>	cantharide	Spanish fly	καρθάρης
subsidi	subsidy	<i>subsidium</i>	bride	bridle	
aide	helper	<i>adjutus</i>	aide	help	
iode	iodine	ιώδης	chrysalide	chrysalis	χρυσάλλης
			égide	ægis	αἰγίς
			ride	wrinkle	
			bastide	country house (S. of France)	
			pyramide	pyramid	πυραμῖς
mode	mood	<i>modus</i>	mode	fashion	
guide	a guide	<i>guida</i> (It.)	guide	a rein	
antipode		<i>antipodes</i>	abside	apse	ἄψις
code	code	<i>codex</i>	ode		ὀδὴ
exode	exodus	ἔξοδος	méthode	method	μέθοδος

<i>Masculine.</i>			<i>Feminine.</i>		
3	synod	σύνοδος	habitude	custom	habitude
	elbow	cubitus	and all others in <i>ude</i>		
	oxide		calendes	calends	calendas
			and all others in <i>ende</i>		
nde	dividend		amande	almond	amygdala
			and all others in <i>ande</i>		
e	world	mundus	onde	wave	unda
			and all others in <i>onde</i>		
	a guard		garde	guard (mil.),	guarda (It.)
				keeping	
e	exordium		concorde	concord	concordia
			and all others in <i>orde</i>		

ÉE.

e	apogee	ἀπόγειον	panacée	panacea	πανάκεια
e	perigee	περίγειον	bouchée	mouthful	
rée	empyrean		trouée	hole	
	elysium	ἡλύσιον	mêlée	medley	
e	coliseum		bouée	buoy	
blée	mausoleum		trainée	train	
e	war hatchet	framesa	journée	duration of a	
				day	
			matinée	duration of a	
				morning	
			soirée	duration of an	
				evening	
			tranchée	cutting	
			corvée	forced labour	
			onglée	pain in fingers	
				(cold)	
			pipée	bird-catching	
				(with calls)	
			and all others in <i>ée</i>		

FE.

3	signature	παράγραφος	agrafe	brooch, clasp	
	place for	graphium	gaffe	gaff, boat-	gafa (Sp.)
	keeping law			hook	
	papers, &c.		coiffe	cap	cuffa (Sp.)
	gulf	κόλπος	étouffe	stuff	stoffa (It.)
			touffe	cluster	τύφη
			truffe	truffle	tubera

GE.

<i>Masculine.</i>			<i>Feminine.</i>		
courage	courage	<i>coraggio</i> (It.)	cage	cage	<i>cavea</i>
			rage	rage	<i>rabies</i>
			image	image	<i>imago</i>
	and all others in <i>age</i> ; except :		page	page (of book)	<i>pagina</i>
			plage	sea-shore	
piége	trap		nage	swimming	<i>natatio</i>
	and all others in <i>ége</i> ; except :		allége	a lighter (boat)	
prestige	prestige		tige	stem	<i>tibia</i>
litige	litigation	<i>litigium</i>	voltige	vaulting	<i>volla</i> (It.)
vertige	giddiness				
quadrige	ancient chariot	<i>quadriga</i>			
éloge	praise	<i>elogium</i>	toge	gown	<i>toga</i>
bouge	hovel	<i>bugio</i> (It.)	loge	lodge	<i>loggia</i> (It.)
grabuge	row, confusion		auge	trough	
déluge	deluge	<i>diluvium</i>	sauge	sage (bot.)	<i>salvia</i>
change	change		fange	mire	
échange	exchange		frange	fringe	<i>ambria</i>
langes	swaddling clothes	<i>lanus</i>	grange	barn	<i>grana</i>
			louange	praise	<i>laudatio</i> (?)
linge	linen	<i>linum</i>	vidange	act of emptying	
singe	ape	<i>simia</i>			
songe	dream	<i>somnium</i>	vendange	vintage	
cierge	taper	<i>cereus</i>	éponge	sponge	<i>spongia</i>
			longe	thong, or loin	
			allonge	lengthening	
			charge	load	<i>carica</i>
			marge	margin	<i>margo</i>
			targe	target	
			verge	bank	
			auberge	inn	
			orge	barley	<i>hordeum</i> (pl.)
			forge	forge	<i>fabrica</i>
			gorge	throat	<i>gurgis</i>
			courge	gourd	<i>cucurbitis</i>

HE.

relâche	cessation	hache	axe
			and all other words in <i>ache</i>
prêche	Protestant service, sermon	bêche	spade
			and all other words in <i>êche</i>
pastiche	imitation of any work of art	bourriche	wicker basket
			and all other words in <i>iche</i>

<i>Masculine.</i>			<i>Feminine.</i>		
	barge, public conveyance		cloche	bell	
ie	reproach		and all other words in <i>oche</i>		
			buche	log of wood	
			ruche	hive	
			avalanche	avalanche	
	a handle		manche	a sleeve	<i>manica</i>
			and all others in <i>nche</i>		
			arche	ark	<i>arca</i>
			and all others in <i>rche</i>		
iphe	steam-boat	πυρόσκαφος	orthographe	orthography	
phe	telegraph		apostrophe		ἀποστροφή
iphe	autograph		catastrophe		καταστροφή
he	cenotaph	κενοτάφιον			
ie	catarrh		myrrhe	myrrh	μύρρα
			arrhes	payment in advance	<i>arrha</i>
the	labyrinth	λαβύρινθος	aérolithe	aerolite	
	ulcer (in mouth)		hyacinthe	hyacinth	
	myth, fable	μῦθος	menthe	mint	<i>menta</i>
			plynthe	plinth (arch.)	

IE.

e	fire	<i>incendium</i>	all others in <i>ie</i>	
ie	umbrella			
	liver	<i>jecur</i>		

KE.

coke

LE.

ale	shawl		cabale	cabal	
	imitation of gold		timbale	kettle-drum	
	labyrinth	<i>dædalus</i>	écale	scale	<i>scala</i>
	sun-burnt colour		pédale	pedal	
	death-rattle		sandale	sandal	σάνδαλα (?)
le	knuckle-bone (arch.)	ἀστράγαλος	opale	opal	
	petal	πέταλον	spirale	spiral	
e	scandal	σκάνδαλον			
le	erysipelas	ἐρυσιπέλας			
	model	<i>modus</i>			
	zeal	ζήλος	clientèle	custom	
	stove, pall		poêle	frying-pan	

<i>Masculine.</i>			<i>Feminine.</i>		
aigle	eagle		aigle	standard (<i>les aigles romaines</i>)	
parallèle	comparison	παράλληλος	parallèle	term of fortification	
"	parallel of latitude or longitude		"	parallel line	
asile	asylum	asylum	aile	wing	ala
concile	council	concilium	bile	bile	
			pile	pile	pila
			argile	clay	argilla
voile	veil	velum	voile	a sail	vela (pl.)
			huile	oil	olea
			tuile	tile	
symbole	symbol	symbolum	obole	obol	
protocole	protocol	πρωτος κόλλα	parabole	parable	παραβολή
pôle	pole	polus	bricole	halter	briccola (It.)
rôle	part in a play, orig. roll of paper	rotulus	caracole	caracol	
contrôle	control	contre-rôle	rigole	little stream	
pétrole	petroleum		espingole	blunderbuss	
capitole	capitol	capitolium	gêole	jail	gabbuola (It.)
			auréole	halo	aureola (sub corona)
			coupôle	cupola	cupa (It.)
			console	side-table	
			camisole	under-waist-coat	camicia (It.)
préambule	preamble		yôle	yawl	
			mandibule	mandible	mandibulum (pl.)
*globule	globule	dim. of <i>globus</i>	animalcule	animalcule	
*monticule	monticule	dim. of <i>mons</i>	*vésicule	small bladder	dim. of <i>vesica</i>
crépuscule	twilight	crepusculum	*pellicule	thin portion of skin	dim. of <i>pellis</i>
*opuscule	little work	opusculum	*clavicule	shoulder-bone	clavicula
			Canicule	Dog Star	Canicula
			fécule	fecula (bot.)	fœcula
			mule	mule	mula
			cellule	little cell	cella
			rotule	knee-cap	
			spatule	flat knife (surg.)	spatula
			meule	millstone, grindstone, haycock	mola
moule	mould	modulus	moule	mussel	
			ampoule	blister	ampulla
			foule	crowd	folla (It.)

* These diminutives are masc. or fem., according as they are derived from masc. or fem. roots.

*Masculine.**Feminine.*

			boule	ball	<i>bulia</i>
			poule	hen	
			houle	swell of the sea	
	stile	<i>στῦλος</i>	sémoule	fine flour	<i>simila</i>
	back & loins (of a hare)	<i>ratabulum</i>	fable	fable	<i>fabula</i>
	sand	<i>sabulum</i>	table	table	<i>tabula</i>
	cable	<i>cabulum</i>	étable	stable	pl. <i>stabulum</i>
	sieve				
	piece of furniture	<i>mobile</i>	bible	bible	pl. <i>βιβλίον</i> (?)
	Russian coin				
	amble	<i>ambulare</i>	cible	target	
e	assemblage	<i>insieme</i>	chasuble	chasuble	<i>casibula</i> (L.L.)
	disturbance, confusion		trouble	hoop-net	
		<i>miraculum</i>	débâcle	break-up	
cle		<i>tabernaculum</i>	bésicles	spectacles	
	guest-chamber	<i>cœnaculum</i>	boucle	buckle	<i>buccula</i> (L.L., dim. of <i>bocca</i>)
		<i>obstaculum</i>			
	century	<i>sæculum</i>			
	cycle	<i>κύκλος</i>			
	pedestal				
	double eye- glass	<i>oculus</i>			
	circle	<i>circulus</i>			
le	cover	<i>cooperculum</i>			
	muscle	<i>musculus</i>			
	trefoil	<i>trifolium</i>	nèfle	medlar	<i>nespola</i> (It.)
	muzzle		girofle	clove	<i>caryophyllum</i> (pl.)
					<i>pantofola</i> (It.)
	breath		pantoufle	slipper	
	eagle	<i>aquila</i>	aigle	standard	
	rye	<i>secale</i>	sangle	strap	<i>cingula</i>
	nail	<i>unguis</i>	épingle	pin	<i>spinula</i>
	angle	<i>angulus</i>	tringle	curtain-rod	
le	interval	<i>intervallum</i>			
lle	vermicelli	<i>vermicelli</i> (It.)			
,	codicil	<i>codicillus</i>			
e					
			all other words in <i>lle</i>		
	swinging, set- ting in motion				
anle	wooden or stone window- setting				

All geometrical figures derived from Lat. and Gr. masculines are masculine.

	<i>Masculine.</i>	
quadruple	quadruple	
centuple	hundredfold,	
	&c.	
peuple	people	<i>populus</i>
merle	blackbird	

	<i>Feminine.</i>
perle	pearl

ME.

blâme	censure	<i>blasimo</i> (It.)
drame	drama	<i>drâma</i>
blasphème	blasphemy	<i>βλάσφημος</i>

âme	soul	<i>anima</i>
lame	blade	<i>lamina</i>
réclame	announce- ment, puff	
rame	oar, ream of paper	<i>rama</i> (It.)

and all in *ème* ; except :

crime	crime	<i>crimen</i>
-------	-------	---------------

{ brème	bream	<i>bresmia</i> (L.L.)
{ crème	cream	
{ trirème	trireme	<i>triremis</i>
escrime	fencing	<i>esgrina</i>

abîme	abyss	
-------	-------	--

estime	esteem	<i>stima</i> (It.)
cime	summit	<i>cyma</i> (Gr. <i>κῦμα</i> , young shoot)

centime		<i>centesimus</i>
décime	penny	<i>decimus</i>
idiome	idiom	<i>ιδίωμα</i>
atome	atom	<i>ἄτομος</i>
dôme		<i>δῶμα</i>

dîme	tithe	<i>decima</i> (<i>pars</i>)
prime	premium	<i>prima</i> (<i>pars</i>)

and all others in *ome*

légume	vegetable	<i>λέχανον</i>
volume	volume	<i>volumen</i>
rhume	cold	<i>ῥεῦμα</i>
costume	costume	<i>consuetumen</i> (L.L.)

brume	mist	<i>bruma</i>
coutume	custom	<i>consuetudo</i>
écume	foam	<i>σπuma</i>
enclume	anvil	<i>incus</i>

bitume	bitumen	
chaume	stubble	<i>calamus</i>
baume	balm	<i>βάλσαμον</i>
psaume	psalm	<i>ψαλμός</i>
royaume	kingdom	<i>regnum</i>
apophthègme		

plume	pen, feather	<i>pluma</i>
-------	--------------	--------------

dogme	dogma	<i>δόγμα</i>
calme	calm	
gramme		<i>γράμμα</i>

énigme	enigma	<i>αἰνigma</i>
--------	--------	----------------

and its compounds

somme	nap	<i>somnus</i>
charme	charm	<i>carmen</i>
germe	germ	<i>germen</i>
épiderme	epiderm	<i>ἐπιδερμῖς</i>

palme	palm	<i>palma</i>
gomme	gum	<i>goma</i> (It.)

somme	sum	<i>summa</i>
alarme	alarm	<i>allarme</i> (It.)
ferme	farm	<i>ferma</i> (L.L.)
réforme	reform	<i>forma</i>

<i>Masculine.</i>		<i>Feminine.</i>		
term	<i>terminus</i>	chiourme	gang of convicts	
		gourme	glanders	
me	chloroform	forme	form	<i>forma</i>
e	uniform			
	isthmus			
	asthma			
	<i>ισθμός</i>			
	<i>ἄσθμα</i>			
all words in <i>asme</i> , or <i>isme</i> , from r. and Latin words in <i>ισμα</i> , <i>ασμα</i>				

NE.

ass	<i>asinus</i>	banane	banana	
skull	<i>cranium</i>	barbacane	barbican	
filigree	<i>filum</i> and <i>granum</i>	cabane	hut	<i>capanna</i> (It.)
organ	<i>ὄργανον</i>	caravane	caravan	
		chicane	chicanery	
		colophane	resin	<i>ἡ κολοφωνία</i> (sc. <i>ῥητίνη</i>), found at Colophon <i>membrana</i>
		membrane		
bolt		sarbacane	pea-shooter	
oak	(L.L.) <i>carnus</i> , from <i>quercinus</i>	arène	arena	<i>arena</i>
		cantilène	song	<i>cantilena</i>
ash	<i>fraxinus</i>	cène	the Lord's Supper	<i>cæna</i>
oxygen		ébène	ebony	<i>ἔβενος</i>
		gangrène	gangreen	<i>γάγγραινα</i>
		gène	constraint, difficulty	<i>γένενα</i>
		patène	patten	<i>patina</i>
		phalène	moth	
		rène	rein	<i>redina</i> (It.)
		Sirène	Siren	
		scène	scene	<i>scena</i>
		origine	origin	<i>origo</i>
ni-	two fives (dice)	and all others in <i>ine</i> or <i>aine</i>		
	bogy (fam.)			
	throne	<i>θρόνος</i>	aumône	alms
	sermon	<i>præconium</i>	anémone	anemone
	cone	<i>κῶνος</i>	none	none
carbon	<i>carbo</i>	zone	zone	<i>zona</i>
polygon		dune	down	<i>duna</i> (It.)
		rancune	spite	
		and all others ending in <i>une</i>		
alder-tree	<i>alnus</i>	aune	ell, yard	

<i>Masculine.</i>			<i>Feminine.</i>		
bagne	the galleys	<i>balneum</i>	campagne	country	<i>campagna</i> (It.)
Champagne	the wine and country pro- ducing it		montagne	mountain	<i>montagna</i> (It.)
règne	reign	<i>regnum</i>	enseigne	sign	<i>insignia</i>
peigne	comb	<i>pecten</i>	ligne	line	<i>linea</i>
insigne	insignia		vigne	vine	<i>vitis</i>
signe	sign	<i>signum</i>	teigne	moth	<i>tinea</i>
			consigne	pass-word, orders	
			besogne	work	<i>bisogna</i> (It.)
			charogne	carrion	<i>carogna</i> (It.)
			trogne	red face	
			vergogne	shame	<i>verecundia</i> , <i>vergogna</i> (It.)
			canne	cane	<i>canna</i> (It.)
			*manne	manna	<i>μάινα</i>
			baliverne	idle tale	
			caverne	cavern	<i>caverna</i>
			caserne	barrack	<i>casa</i>
			taverne	tavern	<i>taberna</i>
terne	trey, three consecutive numbers (lot- tery)				
morne	hill (colonial word)	<i>morro</i>	borne	boundary	<i>bodina</i> (L.L.)
cothurne	buskin	<i>cothurnus</i>	corne	horn	<i>cornua</i> (?)
			retourne	trump card	
			urne	urn	<i>urna</i>

PE.

pape	pope	<i>papa</i>	agape	love-feast	<i>ἀγάπη</i>
satrape	satrap		attrape	trick	<i>trappe</i>
			cape	cape	<i>capa</i> (L.L.)
			chape	cope	
			étape	a stage	<i>stapula</i> (L.L.)
			râpe	grape husks and stalks	
			sape	sap	<i>zappa</i> (It.)
crêpe	crape	<i>crispus</i>	crêpe	pancake	<i>crespella</i>
			guêpe	wasp	<i>vespa</i>
participe	participle	<i>participium</i>	pipe	pipe	<i>pippa</i> (It.)
principe	principle	<i>principium</i>	tripe	tripe	<i>trippa</i> (It.)
† héliotrope			syncope		<i>συνκοπή</i>
† kaléidoscope			hyssope	hyssop	<i>ὑσσωπός</i>
† horoscope			apocope		<i>ἀποκοπή</i>

* This also means a large chest.

† All these are masculine, being formed from Gr. words and the verb σκέπτω.

<i>Masculine.</i>		<i>Feminine.</i>	
cope		métope	μετόπη
pe		varlope	a sort of plane
		jupe	skirt <i>giuppa</i> (It.)
		croupe	back (of an animal) <i>groppa</i> (It.)
		chaloupe	boat <i>scialuppa</i> (It.)
		poulpe	pulp
		crampe	cramp
		hampe	stick, handle, staff
		estampe	print <i>stampa</i> (It.)
		rampe	rail <i>rampa</i> (It.)
		tempe	temple <i>tempia</i> (It.)
		trempe	temper (of metal)
		détrempe	distemper (painting)
Olympus	<i>Olympus</i>	guimpe	tucker
		pompe	pomp <i>pompa</i>
		trompe	trumpet <i>tromba</i> (It.)
			(elephant's trunk)
		estompe	stump (drawing)
		grappe	bunch of grapes or other berries <i>grappa</i> (It.)
			and all others in <i>ppe</i>
		carpe	carp <i>carpa</i>
			and all others in <i>rpe</i>

RE.

200 metres		gare	railway terminus	
square				
cigar	<i>cigarro</i> (Sp.)	gabare	transport vessel	<i>gabara</i> (It.)
100 ares		fanfare	flourish of trumpets	
lighthouse	Φάρος, the island	guitare	guitar	<i>cithara</i>
re	hot-air stove <i>calor-fero</i>	mare	pond	<i>maria</i> (?)
		tare	tare	
re	character <i>χαρακτήρ</i>	bière	beer	<i>birra</i> (It.)
re	cemetery <i>κοιμητήριον</i>	artère	artery	<i>ἀρτηρία</i>
,	cautery	atmosphère		<i>ἀτμός σφαῖρα</i>
adère	landing-place	vipère	viper	<i>vipera</i>
adère	starting-place	chimère	chimera	<i>χίμαιρα</i>
		colère	anger	<i>collera</i> (It.)

All these are masculine, being formed from Gr. words and the verb *σκέπτειν*.

<i>Masculine.</i>			<i>Feminine.</i>		
hémisphère	hemisphere	ἡμισφαίριον	ère	era	œra
hère	poor wretch	ἄερος (?)	fougère	fern	filicaria, filez
ministère	ministry	ministerium	galère	galley	galera (It.)
mystère	mystery	μυστήριον	matière	matter	materies
monastère	monastery	monasterium	manière	manner	maniera (It.)
presbytère	parsonage		misère	misery	miseria
reverbère	street lamp		panthère	panther	panthera
stère	measure of wood		patère	round flat peg	patera
ulcère	ulcer	ulcus	primevère	primrose	primavera (It.)
viscère	bowel	viscera (?)	tabatière	snuff-box	
repère	tally (carpen-try or surveying)	reperio	sphère	sphere	σφαῖρα
coffre	chest		cire	wax	cera
cachemire	cashmere (shawl)		Hégire	Hegira	
délire	delirium		satire	satire	satyra
empire	empire	imperium	tirelire	money-box	
navire	ship	navirium (L.L.)			
sourire	smile		aurore		aurora
vampire	vampire		amphore		amphora
ellebore	hellebore	elleborum	mandragore		mandragoras
madrepore	madrepore	πῶρος, stone	métaphore	metaphor	μεταφορά
météore	meteor	μετέωρος			
pores	pores (of skin, &c.)		mûre	blackberry	pl. of μύρος
pylore	pylorus		cure	cure (church living)	cura
phosphore	phosphorus		capture	capture	captura
sémaphore	semaphore	σῆμα φέρω	bure	frieze	buza (L.L.)
sycomore	sycamore-tree		blessure	wound	
store	blind		gageure	wager	
parjure	perjury	perjurium	hure	boar's head	
augure	augury	augurium	filature	spinning	filatura (It.)
			and all words in ture		
Calvaire	Calvary	Calvaria	saumure	brine	
capillaire	adiantum (bot.)		injure	insult	injuria
exemplaire	copy	exemplare	piqûre	sting	
			usure	usury	usura
			affaire	affair	
			haire	hair shirt, (penitential)	
			molaires	grinders (sub. dents)	

<i>Masculine.</i>			<i>Feminine.</i>		
e	inventory	<i>inventarium</i>	aire	area, thresh- ing-floor	
	repair (of thieves, beasts)		paire	pair	
aire	go-between				
	shroud				
	receptacle for consecrated host	<i>ciborium</i>	armoire	cupboard	<i>armarium</i> (pl.)
	disappoint- ment		bassinoire	warming-pan	
	ivory	<i>ebur</i>	écumoire	skimming- ladle	
aire	promontory				
re	prætor's hall	<i>prætorium</i>	gloire	glory	<i>gloria</i>
	assembly of cardinals		histoire	history	<i>historia</i>
			mâchoire	jaw	<i>maxilla</i>
			moire	shine given to silk	
			nageoire	fin	<i>nataatoria</i> (?)
			poire	pear	<i>pyrus</i>
			victoire	victory	<i>victoria</i>
			écritoire	inkstand	
			algèbre	algebra	
re	amber		chambre	chamber	<i>camera</i> (It.)
	tree		fibre	fibre	<i>fibra</i>
	bore	<i>calibro</i> (It.)	ombre	shade	<i>umbra</i>
		<i>candelabrum</i>	ténèbres	darkness	<i>tenebras</i>
	marble	<i>marmor</i>			
	number	<i>numerus</i>			
	sabre				
	tone (voice or instr.)	<i>tympanum</i>	vertèbre	vertebra	
	reproach	<i>opprobrium</i>			
re	cucumber	<i>cucumis</i>			
as	ruins	} <i>cumulus</i>			
a	incumbrance				
	crab	<i>cancer</i>	ancre	anchor	<i>anchora</i>
a	appearance	<i>simulacrum</i>	encre	ink	pl. of <i>encaus- tum</i> (?)
	sepulchre	<i>sepulcrum</i>	nacre	mother-of- pearl	<i>naccera</i> (It.)
	sugar	<i>saccharum</i>	ocre	ochre	<i>ὠχρά</i>
	frame	<i>quadrum</i>	oendre	ash	<i>cinis</i>
	cylinder	<i>κύλινδρος</i>	hydre		<i>hydra</i>
a	scandalous report		poudre	powder, dust	<i>pulvis</i>
	son-in-law	<i>gener</i>			
	order	<i>ordo</i>			
i	geomet. fig.				

<i>Masculine.</i>			<i>Feminine.</i>		
scaphandre	boat		balafre	scar	
sifre	file		gauffre	crimping-iron	
coffre	chest	κόφινος			
gouffre	gulf	gurges			
chiffre	cypher				
souffre	sulphur	sulfur			
ogre	ogre	orcus (?)	câpre	caper	κάπρι
pingre	miser				
tigre	tiger	tigris			
beurre	butter	butyrum	barre	bar	barra
simeterre	scimitar		bourre	wadding	burra
leurre	lure		équerre	square (carpenter's)	
parterre	pit (of theatre)		guerre	war	guerra
tonnerre	thunder	tonitru	serre	glass house	
verre	glass	vitrum	aimarre	magistrate's robe	
			terre	earth	terra
albâtre	alabaster	ἀλάβαστρον			
âtre	hearth	atrium (?)			
plâtre	plaster	emplastrum			
mètre	yard	μέτρον			
centimètre		comp. of μέτρον			
chronomètre	chronometer				
salpêtre	saltpetre				
être	being (verb)		fenêtre	window	fenestra
hêtre	beech-tree				
chapitre	chapter	capitulum			
litre	quart measure				
nitre	nitre	νίτρον	épitre	letter	epistola
pitre	clown		mitre	mitre	mitra
pupitre	desk	pulpitum			
titre	title	titulus			
cloître	cloister	claustrum			
goître	tumour in throat	gurges			
apôtre	apostle	ἀπόστολος			
antre	cave	antrum			
balustre	balustrade	βάλαυστρον			
bistre	bistre				
cadastre	census of property	capistratum			
centre	centre	κέντρον			
cintre	circular arch (arch.)				
désastre	disaster	disastro (It.)			
feutre	felt	feltrum (L., L.)	poutre	a beam	

Masculine.

lustre, chan- delier	<i>lustrare</i>
love-charm	<i>φίλτρον</i>
sceptre	<i>σκέπτρον</i>
spectre	<i>spectrum</i>
mound	
theatre	<i>theatrum</i>
cymbal	<i>σίστρον</i>
space of six months	
three months	
sequestration	
corpse	<i>cadaver</i>
copper	<i>cuprum</i>
hoar frost	
book	<i>liber</i>
hare	<i>lepus</i>
e workman	
work, see p. 224	
pepper	<i>piper</i>
eye-salve	<i>collyrium</i>
martyrdom	<i>martyrium</i>

Feminine.

martre	a sable	
	marten	
piastre	piastre	<i>piastre</i> (It.)
chèvre	she-goat	<i>caprea</i>
coulèvre	adder	<i>colubra</i>
livre	pound	<i>libra</i>
fièvre	fever	<i>febris</i>
manceuvre	manceuvre	
œuvre, see p. 224		
lèvre	lip	pl. of <i>labrum</i>
pieuvre	sea-devil	

SE.

vase, vessel	<i>vas</i>	vase	mud	
gymnasium		base	basis	<i>βάσις</i>
Russian Im- perial edict		case	cottage	<i>casa</i>
		emphase	emphasis	<i>ἐμφασις</i>
		phase	phase	<i>φάσις</i>
		extase	ecstasy	<i>ἔκστασις</i>
		thèse	thesis	<i>θεσις</i>
diocese		exégèse	setting forth of a text	<i>ἐξήγησις</i>
		parenthèse	parenthesis	<i>παρένθεσις</i>
		bise	North wind	
			and all others in <i>ise</i>	
		rose	rose	<i>rosa</i>
			and all others in <i>oss</i>	
		muse	muse	<i>musa</i>
			and all others in <i>use</i>	
		analyse	analysis	<i>ἀνάλυσις</i>
		aise	ease	
		chaise	chair	
			and all others in <i>aise</i>	
		toise	fathom	
		ardoise	slate, found in Ardennes	<i>ardesia</i> (L.L.)
		cause	cause	<i>causa</i>

Masculine.			Feminine.	
scaphandre	boat		balafre	scar
fibre	life		gauffre	cr.
coffre	chest	κόφινος		
gouffre	gulf	gurgés		
chiffre	cypher			
souffre	sulphur	sulfur		
ogre	ogre	orcus (?)	câpre	
pingre	miser			
tigre	tiger	tigris		
beurre	butter	butyrum		
scimeterre	scimitar			
leurre	lure			
parterre	pit (of theatre)			
tonnerre	thunder	tonitru		
verre	glass	vitrum		
albâtre	alabaster	ἀλάβας		
âtre	hearth	αἶψα		
plâtre	plaster	εἶς		
mètre	yard	μετρη		
centimètre				
chronomètre	chronometer		annate	agate
salpêtre	saltpetre			yearly fine
être	being (w			paid to the
hêtre	beech- ^{tr}		casemate	Pope
chapitre	chapter	μα	omoplate	casemate
litre	quar ^{ter}			shoulder-
	sur ^{face}			blade
nitre	nit ^{rate}	ἀθλητής	rate	milt
pitre	c ^{ow}	(comp. of	tomate	tomato
pupitre	saw ^{ker}	verb)	bête	beast
titre			comète	comet
cloître	(arch.)			and all others in ète
goître	top of build- ^{ing}	fastigium	limite	limit
apôtre	ing, summit			and all others in ite, ai
antre	resting-place	gistum (L.L.)		
baln		satelles		
bis		situs		
on		ἀντίδοτος	anecdote	

• Formerly fem., from *carrozza*.

<i>Masculine.</i>			<i>Feminine.</i>		
			blouse	bag or loose frock	
			ventouse	cupping machine	
			pelouse	lawn	
			anse	handle, creek	ανασ
			réponse	answer	pl. of <i>responsum</i>
			and all others in <i>ase</i>		
gypse	plaster	γύψος	éclipse	eclipse	ἐκλειψις
torse	back and loins	τόρσο (It.)	ellipse	ellipse	ἐλλειψις
thyrsé	thyrsus	θύρσος	bourse	purse	βύρσα
			course	course, chase	
inverse	the contrary	in-verse	herse	harrow, port-cullis	
			and all others in <i>ese</i>		
*carrosse	carriage		messe	mass	μισσα
mousse	a cabin-boy		mousse	moss, foam	μυσσος
			and all others in <i>ese</i>		

TE.

automate	automaton	αὐτόματος	agate	agate	ἀχάτης
citrate	citrate		annate	yearly fine paid to the Pope	ἀννάτα (L.L.)
phosphate	phosphate		casemate	casemate	casamatta (It.)
stigmaté	scar, impress	στίγμα	omoplate	shoulder-blade	ὀμοπλάτη
			rate	milt	
athlète	athlete	ἀθλητής	tomate	tomato	
casse-tête	tomahawk	(comp. of verb)	bête	beast	bestia
			comète	comet	
composite	(arch.)		and all others in <i>ète</i>		
			limite	limit	
			and all others in <i>ite, aite, oite, or uite</i>		
faîte	top of building, summit	fastigium			
gîte	resting-place	gistum (L.L.)			
satellite		satelles			
site		situs			
antidote		ἀντίδοτος	anecdote		pl. of ἀνέκδοτος, something not yet given out, and so new

* Formerly fem., from *carrozza*.

<i>Masculine.</i>			<i>Feminine.</i>		
ecôte	fillet (meat)		capote	great coat	<i>capa</i>
	host	<i>hospes</i>	compote	preserve (of fruit)	
3	printer's foreman	<i>πρῶτος</i>	côte	coast, rib	<i>costa</i>
chute	vote	<i>voluntum</i> from verb <i>parer</i> , to ward off, and <i>chute</i> , fall	note	note, mark	<i>nota</i>
			dispute	dispute	<i>disputa</i> (It.)
			voûte	vault	<i>volta</i>
			and all others in <i>ute</i> and <i>oute</i>		
acte	act, deed	<i>actus</i>	cataracte	cataract	<i>καταράκτης</i>
	space between the acts		épacte	epact	
cte	dialect	<i>διάλεκτος</i>	collecte	collect	<i>collecta</i>
)	agreement	<i>pactum</i>	secte	sect	
	worship	<i>cultus</i>	catapulte	catapult	<i>catapulta</i>
lte	tumult	<i>tumultus</i>	halte	halt	
			volte	term of riding-school	<i>volta</i> (It.)
			récolte	harvest	
			révolte	revolt	
			fente	slit	
			pente	slope	
			and all others in <i>nte</i>		
nte	reckoning		crypte	crypt	<i>κρύπτη</i>
pte	precept	<i>præceptum</i>			
e	myrtle	<i>μύρτος</i>	carte	map	<i>charta</i>
			and all others in <i>rite</i>		
ste	shrub	<i>arbuscum</i>	améthyste	amethyst	<i>ἀμέθυστος</i>
	bust	<i>busto</i> (It.)	baliste	catapult	<i>balista</i>
aste	contrast	<i>contrasto</i> (It.)	batiste	cambric	
	pride	<i>fastus</i>	caste	distinctive rank in India	
	action	<i>gestum</i>	piste	trail	
			peste	plague	<i>pestis</i>
auste	holocaust	<i>ὁλόκαυστος</i>	sieste	siesta	<i>siesta</i> (It.)
	post, guard-house, position	<i>position</i>	poste	post-office	
	text		lutte	struggle	<i>lucta</i>
ste	pretext		and all others in <i>te</i>		

UE.

<i>Masculine.</i>			<i>Feminine.</i>		
apologue		ἀπόλογος	algue	sea-weed	<i>alga</i>
catalogue		κατάλογος	brigue	canvas (for votes)	<i>briga</i> (L.L.)
décalogue		δεκάλογος	bague	ring	<i>bacca</i> (?)
bésigue	game of cards		digue	breakwater	<i>diga</i> (It.)
			églogue	eclogue	<i>ecloga</i>
vague	adj. used as a subst.		vague	wave	
			vogue	fashion	
			fugue	term of music	<i>fuga</i>
			fougue	impetuosity	
			langue	tongue	<i>lingua</i>
			pirogue	canoe	
			seringue	syringe	
			schlague	instrument of punishment (Aust. and Russ.)	
			vergue	yard (of a ship)	
			ciguë	hemlock	<i>cicuta</i>
			berlue	dizziness	
			mue	moulting	<i>muda</i> (It.)
			moue	grimace	
			boue	mud	
			roue	wheel	<i>rota</i>
			rue	street	<i>ruga</i>
			grue	crane	<i>grus</i>
			ammoniaque	ammoniac	
cloaque	cloaca, drain		baraque	hut	<i>baracca</i> (It.)
laque	lacker		flaque	puddle	
			laque	gum	
			patraque	old worn-out machine	
			plaque	thin plate of metal	
chèque	check (banker's)		shabraque	shabrack	
physique	physiognomy		pastèque	water-melon	
cantique	hymn	<i>cantus, cantium</i>	hypothèque	mortgage	<i>hypotheca</i>
			physique	physical science	
cosmétique	cosmetic	κοσμητικός	acoustique	acoustics	ἀκουστικός
émétique	emetic	ἐμετικός	basilique	basilica	βασιλική
portique	porch		boutique	shop	<i>bottega</i> (It.)
tique	tick (on animals)		brique	brick	
toxique	poison		colique	colic	
			crique	creek	

<i>Masculine.</i>		<i>Feminine.</i>	
one who writes criticisms	κριτικός	critique	criticism κριτική
conversation	colloquium	chronique	chronicle <i>chronica</i>
seal		pique	pike <i>picca</i> (It.)
		rubrique	rubric
		statistique	statistics
		coque	shell (of egg) <i>concha</i>
		défroque	cast-off clothes
		époque	epoch <i>ἐποχή</i>
		équivoque	doubtful term <i>æquivoca</i> (<i>oratio</i>)
		loque	rag, shred
		toque	cap <i>tocca</i> (It.)
		nuque	back of neck <i>nuca</i> (It.)
		perruque	wig
		foulque	coot <i>fulica</i>
		banque	bank
		barque	bark <i>barca</i> (It.)
		marque	mark <i>marca</i> (It.)
		remorque	towing ship pl. of <i>remulcum</i> , a tow-rope
		blaque	soup strained through a colander
		basque	coat-tail
traced drawing	<i>calcare</i>		
falling	<i>manus</i>		
circus	<i>circus</i>		
helmet	<i>casco</i> (skull)		
disk	<i>δίσκος</i>		
lentisk	<i>lentiscus</i>		
mask			
animal without vertebræ			
summer-house			
risk	<i>risco</i> (It.)		

VE.

conclave	<i>conclave</i>	rive	shore	<i>ripe</i>
mountain-stream		and all others in ve		
slave	<i>schiavo</i> (It.)			
effluvium				
river	<i>fluvius</i>			

ZE.

gymnastic bar	<i>γυμνασίου</i>
---------------	------------------

YE.

pay	<i>paga</i> (It.)
abbey	<i>abbadia</i> (It.)

A LIST OF WORDS OF TWO GENDERS, THE SIGNIFICATION WHICH VARIES ACCORDING AS THEY ARE MASCULINE OR FEMININE.

Noun.	Masculine.	Feminine.
aide	<i>an assistant (aide-de-camp)</i>	<i>assistance</i>
aigle	<i>an eagle</i>	<i>Imperial banner</i>
ange	<i>angel</i>	<i>sort of fish</i>
aune	<i>alder-trees</i>	<i>ell, yard</i>
barbe	<i>African Arab horse</i>	<i>beard</i>
barde	<i>bard</i>	<i>thin slice of bacon</i>
câpre	<i>privateer (ship)</i>	<i>caper</i>
coche	<i>barge, coach</i>	<i>a notch</i>
couple	<i>a couple or pair : un couple heureux</i>	<i>two : une couple d'épées, &c.</i>
cornette, and so trompette, etc.	<i>a cornet (of cavalry)</i>	<i>standard</i>
crêpe	<i>crape</i>	<i>pancake</i>
critique	<i>one who writes criticisms</i>	<i>criticism</i>
écho	<i>echo (the sound produced)</i>	<i>a nymph</i>
enfant	<i>a boy</i>	<i>girl</i>
fourbe	<i>a cheat</i>	<i>trick</i>
finale	<i>a finale (music)</i>	<i>a last syllable</i>
garde	<i>one who guards</i>	<i>the guard</i>
greffe	<i>registry-office</i>	<i>graft (botany)</i>
guide	<i>a guide</i>	<i>a rein</i>
hymne	<i>hymn, song</i>	<i>church hymn</i>
livre	<i>book (liber)</i>	<i>pound (libra)</i>
laque	<i>lacquer</i>	<i>lake (colour)</i>
manche	<i>handle : un manche à balai</i>	<i>sleeve ; one game out of a r set</i>
manœuvre	<i>a workman</i>	<i>manœuvre</i>
mode	<i>mood (of verbs)</i>	<i>fashion</i>
moule	<i>mould</i>	<i>mussel</i>
mousse	<i>cabin-boy</i>	<i>moss, foam</i>
œuvre	<i>(see next list)</i>	
office	<i>office, duty (officium)</i>	<i>larder, pantry (officina)</i>
page	<i>attendant</i>	<i>page of book (pagina)</i>
parallèle	<i>comparison</i>	<i>parallel (degree of latitude)</i>
paillasse	<i>merry Andrew</i>	<i>straw mattress</i>
pantomime	<i>actor</i>	<i>pantomime</i>
pendule	<i>pendulum</i>	<i>clock</i>
période	<i>the highest pitch attainable</i>	<i>period</i>
personne	<i>nobody</i>	<i>person</i>
poêle	<i>stove</i>	<i>frying-pan</i>
poste	<i>post, position, guardhouse</i>	<i>post-office, letter or travelling</i>
pourpre	<i>the colour purple</i>	<i>anything dyed purple</i>
relâche	<i>rest</i>	<i>anchorage</i>

Masculine.	Feminine.
<i>a hired carriage</i>	<i>remittance, coach-house</i>
<i>satyr</i>	<i>satire</i>
<i>balance of accounts</i>	<i>pay</i>
<i>nap, slumber (somnus)</i>	<i>sum (summa)</i>
<i>smile</i>	<i>mouse</i>
<i>a statuary</i>	<i>the art of making statues</i>
<i>turn, trick, turner's lathe</i>	<i>tower (turris)</i>
<i>anything vague</i>	<i>wave</i>
<i>vessel, vase</i>	<i>mud</i>
<i>veil</i>	<i>sail</i>

OF NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE THE SIGNIFICATION OF WHICH
S ACCORDING AS THEY ARE EMPLOYED IN THE SINGULAR
URAL NUMBERS, MASCULINE OR FEMININE GENDERS.

ir. Generally masculine in the singular, though *some-*
nine in poetry :

amour sans seconde.—MOLIERE.

nd of both genders in the plural, but more often femi-
poetry :

mes premiers amours et mes premiers serments.—VOLTAIRE.

amours de Pénélope et d'Ulysses sont pures.—CHATEAUBRIAND.

e. Masculine in the singular, but feminine in the

un vrai délice que de l'entendre chanter.

trois foulent à leurs pieds les molles délices.—FÉNELON.

re, meaning lightning, is feminine :

foudre brûle et détruit les corps.

figuratively, or in high-flown style, it is masculine :

foudre vengeur.

foudres impuissants qu'en leur main vous peignez.

Isocrate était un foudre d'éloquence.

Masculine when the adjective follows it; as :

gens guerriers.

ine when the adjective precedes; as :

vieilles gens.

re are two adjectives, the one that precedes is put in
nine, the one that follows in the masculine; as :

vieilles gens sont soupçonneux.

If two adjectives precede *gens*, one of which is an adjective ending in *e* mute, the first remains masculine; as :

Tous les honnêtes gens.

Gens coupled with another substantive, and so forming one idea, is always masculine; as :

Tous les gens d'affaire.

Les anciens gens de lettres, gens de robe, etc.

Œuvre is generally feminine; as :

L'œuvre de la création fut achevée en six jours.

Les œuvres de Molière reliées en maroquin.

Œuvre, in high-flown style, is sometimes masculine :

Un œuvre de génie.

Le grand œuvre (viz. the philosopher's stone).

Also when it expresses the entire works of a painter or composer; as :

Tout l'œuvre de Callot, de Beethoven, etc.

Orge is feminine, except in the expressions :

De l'orge mondé } *barley cleared of the husks, pearl barley.*
De l'orge perlé }

Orgue. Masculine in the singular, and feminine in the plural; as :

L'orgue de cette église est excellent.

Il y a de belles orgues à Freibourg.

But one writes :

C'est un des plus beaux orgues de l'Europe.

Pâques. Masculine; except :

Pâques fleuries, *Palm Sunday*.

Quelque chose, meaning *something*, is masculine; as :

C'est quelque chose que j'ai trouvé chez vous.

When it means *whatever thing* it is feminine; as :

Quelque chose qu'il ait faite, il sera pardonné.

EXERCISES ON THE GENDERS OF NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

I. (Page 197.)

197.) In what gender may the genders of most nouns substantive be determined?

198.) What are the exceptions to the rule that all words ending in *males* are masculine?

198.) Give the English and French equivalents of the following nouns: *un bouc, un cheval, un daim, un mulet, un sanglier, un*

castor the French for *a beaver, a woodcock, an owl, a swallow, a mouse.*

199.) How do you express the female of *a buffalo*, and the male of *an ostrich, a stork, a giraffe, a panther, a mole*?

II. (Page 199.)

199.) What gender are the words expressing the days of the week and the months?

200.) Translate into French:

1. Sunday. 2. Next Monday. 3. Every Wednesday (all the weeks). 4. The middle of January. 5. Our holidays end about the middle of September. 6. The spring was very cold this year. 7. Summer was scorching. 8. The autumn will be probably rainy. 9. I hope (for) a fine autumn. 10. The winter is passed.

201.) Translate into French (p. 200):

1. This diamond is precious. 2. These buckles are made of polished steel. 3. The color changes from blue to pink. 4. Black does not suit (*aller*) me. 5. What is that? Is it an oak or an elm? 6. The poplar is the straightest

of all trees. 7. Those wretched (*ennuyeux*) briers have torn my coat. 8. The vine is not yet in flower.

γ. 1. Italian is very pretty, but I prefer speaking German. 2. He writes in very good French; where did he learn it (*pret. indef.*)? 3. He has a very free manner of speaking. 4. It is quite sensible to the touch. 5. Let me hear the pros and cons of that affair. 6. His character is a mixture of good and bad. 7. We met a ship going south, whilst we were sailing (*filer*) rapidly northwards. 8. We shall spend the winter in the south (*midi*). 9. The mistral at Marseilles and the bise at Geneva are the scourges of those two places.

δ. 1. Shall you go by Mont Cenis or the Cornice? 2. Mont Blanc is always covered with (*de*) snow. 3. I went up Vesuvius last year. 4. The Pyrenees are not so high as the Alps. 5. The Vosges are very pretty and well wooded. 6. Paris is not nearly (*à beaucoup près*) so large as London, but London is not nearly so gay. 7. Venice is charming, Florence too is very well situated, and Rome very interesting. 8. Were you ever at Cairo? 9. I am just returned from Havre.

ε. 1. On my return (*en revenant*) from Portugal, I have some idea of visiting Canada. 2. If I were you (*à votre place*), I should go to Labrador, and then to Brazil and Peru. 3. There is a kind of rose to which the French have given the name of Bengal rose, and a sort of firework which they call Bengal fire. 4. After Switzerland you should visit the Caucasus. 5. Hanover has been completely upset (*bouleversé*) by the war between Prussia and Austria.

ζ. 1. Of all that property there remains but one quarter to be divided amongst all the children. 2. I thought he had saved a third of it. 3. He must give a fifth (*part*) to each of his sisters. 4. Anyhow, he is worth double what he was before.

η. 1. It takes two pints to make one quart. 2. A centimètre is the 100th part of a mètre, a hectomètre is a measure equal to 100 mètres. 3. A millimètre is the 1,000th part of a mètre, a kilomètre is 1,000 mètres. 4. The French inch is rather longer than the English. 5. The English measure land by acres; the hectare is more usual (*usité*) in France. 6. The kilogramme is rather more than two English pounds.

III. (Page 201.)

α. Write down the English and the genders, with the Latin derivatives (if known), of the following words:

Agenda, alinéa, alpaga, sofa, sépia, villa; plomb, radoub, club; tabac, hamac, cric, jonc, arc, ture; différend, rond, bond, fond; if, esquif, clef, soif; hareng, poing.

β. Varech, almanach; cri, midi, après-midi; loi, émoi; étui, balai, paroi; carrick, arack; bal, appel, baril, bol, calcul; essaim, intérim, rhum, faim; turban, hymen, pollen, crin, fin, étain, main, poinçon, leçon, lampion, nation, aversion, inscription, blason, poison, toison, maison, tison, poisson, boisson, paon.

γ. Kangaroo, rocco, zéro, virago; jalap, cap, cep, sirop, loup, coup, rump; coq; air, loir, chair, espoir; cuiller, mer, dîner, horreur (note, 201), clameur, fureur, pâleur, peur, valeur, honneur, labeur; bois, vis, mais, souris; fracas, as, vis, marais.

δ. Serment, dent, vent, gent; prêt, forêt; art, sort, mort, part; bruit, lit; étau, eau, peau, oripeau, corbeau; écu, vertu, hibou, clou; faix, six, choix, croix, crucifix, perdrix; houx, taux, toux, faux; gaz, riz.

IV. (Page 202.)

Write down the English and genders, with the Latin derivatives (where known), of *marché, dé, tracé, cétacé, congé, duché, insomné, traité, vérité, comité, probité, comté, vicomté, côté, été, sauté, thé, amitié, pitié*.

EXERCISES ON WORDS OF DOUBLE GENDER AND SIGNIFICATION.

V. (Pages 222, 223.)

I.—1. We shall use his assistance if it is offered to us. 2. He rode a splendid Barb. 3. Capers are very abundant in our garden. 4. You must fit that arrow into the notch. 5. The newly married (people) made a very pretty couple. 6. Three or four cornets were killed in that noble regiment. 7. The Roman eagles were feared everywhere. 8. He had a long grey beard. 9. They were a couple of friends quite inseparable.

II.—1. Did you ever see Sheridan's 'Critic' played? 2. She was a very pretty child. 3. Call the guard! 4. Those papers are stowed away in the registry-office. 5. That guide is a very trustworthy fellow. What book are you reading there? 7. That criticism is hardly fair. He's a regular cheat. 9. All these roses come from the same graft. 10. I cannot hold the reins, they are so slippery.

III.—1. The handle of this knife is very dirty. 2. What a curious anecdote! 3. You must use the subjunctive mood. 4. Those two ballets never came out of the same mould. 5. Your pantry must be well swept out every morning. 6. A little black cabin-boy was singing on the mast. 7. How many games have you won? 8. We have each won one, and this is the deciding game (*la belle*). 9. That fashion began last year. 10. They keep a butler and a page. 11. I always sleep on a straw mattress. 12. Go and see what time it is by (à) the clock in the drawing-room.

IV.—1. The first chapter sets forth (*établir*) a comparison between Cæsar and Napoleon. 2. He attained the highest pitch of his glory in that year. 3. No one has come yet. 4. Little fish, you will go into the frying-pan! 5. A soldier must never leave the post which has been assigned to him. 6. At the death of Titus, Domitian assumed the purple immediately. 7. Go and call a carriage! Will you have a cab from the stand (*station*), or a remise? 8. The army has not yet received its pay. 9. He (*ce*) is a very amiable person. 10. Come and warm yourself near the stove.

V.—1. I cannot recollect in which satire of Boileau that verse is found (*se trouve*). 2. I generally take a nap after dinner. 3. That sum will be due to me on the 3rd of January. 4. Her smile becomes (*sied*) her marvellously. 5. It is my turn now, it will be yours to-morrow. 6. Did you ever visit the Tower of London? 7. His thoughts are always wandering (in the vague). 8. A terrible wave swallowed up the ship. 9. We did 100 miles that day, half sailing, half steaming. 10. She wore a veil of English lace (*point*).

VI. (Pages 223, 224.)

Form French sentences similar to the examples given on pages 223, 224, to illustrate the different meanings (according to the gender and number employed) of

1. **Amour**, sing. and plur.
2. **Délice**, masc. and fem.
3. **Foudre**, masc. or fem.
4. **Gens**, with adjective preceding it.
 - „ with adjective following it.
 - „ with two adjectives, one preceding, the other following.
 - „ with two adjectives, one ending in *e*.
 - „ coupled with another substantive.
5. **Orgue**, sing. and plur.
6. **Pâques**.
7. **Quelque chose**, used as one expression or as two distinct words.

OTHER ORTHOGRAPHICAL SIGNS.

—I. *Accents.* II. *Apostrophe.*
 .. *Tréma.* V. *Cedilla.*

y and simply orthographical signs
 wels, either for the purpose of showing
 e to be pronounced, or to distinguish two
 but of different meanings.

of three kinds :—

- 1. The acute, *l'accent aigu* (').
- 2. The grave, *l'accent grave* (`).
- 3. The circumflex, *l'accent circonflexe* (^).

A. 1. The *acute accent* is placed over the vowel *e* only, and gives it a sound somewhat similar to that of *ay* in the English word *day*.

An *e* thus accented is called in French *un é fermé*.

2. This accent may occur in any syllable of a word, being as much a part of such syllable as the letter *h* in English, and as materially altering the sound, and in most instances the signification, of such syllables, as may be seen by contrasting such words as *le mérite*, a noun substantive meaning 'merit,' with *mérité*, the past part. of *mériter*, to deserve; *un charme*, a charm, with *charmé*, charmed, &c.

3. This accent is most frequent on the last syllable of French nouns substantive derived from Latin words in *tas*.

vérité
calamité

truth
calamity

Lat.
veritas
calamitas, &c.

And in the past part. of verbs of the first conjugation, as *donné, donnée; charmé, charmée, &c.*; but, as has been said before, it may occur in any part of a word, as *régénération, réitéré, répondre, aubépine, espérance, &c.*

4. In the first person sing. pres. tense of a verb of the first conjugation used interrogatively, the final *e* receives the acute

IV.—1. The first chapter sets forth (*établir*) a comparison between Cæsar and Napoleon. 2. He attained the highest pitch of his glory in that year. 3. No one has come yet. 4. Little fish, you will go into the frying-pan! 5. A soldier must never leave the post which has been assigned to him. 6. At the death of Titus, Domitian assumed the purple immediately. 7. Go and call a carriage! Will you have a cab from the stand (*station*), or a remise? 8. The army has not yet received its pay. 9. He (*ce*) is a very amiable person. 10. Come and warm yourself near the stove.

V.—1. I cannot recollect in which satire of Boileau that verse is found (*se trouve*). 2. I generally take a nap after dinner. 3. That sum will be due to me on the 3rd of January. 4. Her smile becomes (*sied*) her marvellously. 5. It is my turn now, it will be yours to-morrow. 6. Did you ever visit the Tower of London? 7. His thoughts are always wandering (in the vague). 8. A terrible wave swallowed up the ship. 9. We did 100 miles that day, half sailing, half steaming. 10. She wore a veil of English lace (*point*).

VI. (Pages 223, 224.)

Form French sentences similar to the examples given on pages 223, 224, to illustrate the different meanings (according to the gender and number employed) of

1. **Amour**, sing. and plur.
2. **Délice**, masc. and fem.
3. **Foudre**, masc. or fem.
4. **Gens**, with adjective preceding it.
 „ with adjective following it.
 „ with two adjectives, one preceding, the other following.
 „ with two adjectives, one ending in *a*.
 „ coupled with another substantive.
5. **Orgue**, sing. and plur.
6. **Pâques**.
7. **Quelque chose**, used as one expression or as two distinct words.

ACCENTS AND OTHER ORTHOGRAPHICAL SIGNS.

To be treated under five heads:—I. *Accents.* II. *Apostrophe.*
III. *Hyphen.* IV. *Tréma.* V. *Cedilla.*

I. *Accents* are purely and simply orthographical signs placed over certain vowels, either for the purpose of showing how these vowels are to be pronounced, or to distinguish two words spelt alike but of different meanings.

They are of three kinds:—

- α. The acute, *l'accent aigu* (´).
- β. The grave, *l'accent grave* (`).
- γ. The circumflex, *l'accent circonflexe* (^).

A. 1. The *acute accent* is placed over the vowel *e* only, and gives it a sound somewhat similar to that of *ay* in the English word *day*.

An *e* thus accented is called in French *un é fermé*.

2. This accent may occur in any syllable of a word, being as much a part of such syllable as the letter *h* in English, and as materially altering the sound, and in most instances the signification, of such syllables, as may be seen by contrasting such words as *le mérite*, a noun substantive meaning ‘merit,’ with *mérité*, the past part. of *mériter*, to deserve; *un charme*, charm, with *charmé*, charmed, &c.

3. This accent is most frequent on the last syllable of French nouns substantive derived from Latin words in *tas*.

vérité
calamité

truth
calamity

Lat.
veritas
calamitas, &c.

And in the past part. of verbs of the first conjugation, as *donné, donnée; charmé, charmée, &c.*; but, as has been said before, it may occur in any part of a word, as *régénération, réitéré, répondre, aubépine, espérance, &c.*

4. In the first person sing. pres. tense of a verb of the first conjugation used interrogatively, the final *e* receives the acute

accent, to avoid the awkwardness which would arise from pronouncing two *mute e's* (i.e. unaccented *e's*) consecutively; as:

donné-je?	<i>do I give?</i>	not donne-je?
aimé-je?	<i>do I love?</i>	not aime-je?*

This rule is also applied to the first person sing. imperf. subj. of *devoir* used as an exclamation: *dussé-je . . . !* even were I to . . . ! and to the first person sing. pres. subj. of *pouvoir* used to express a wish: *puissé-je !* oh that I might be able!

B. 1. The *grave accent* placed over the letter *è* gives that vowel a broad or open sound, somewhat similar to the *ay* in the English word *mayor*. (Compare *père, mère, remède, &c.*)

2. With the exception of a few words ending in *s*, such as *dès* (from the time), to distinguish from *des*, genitive plur. of article; *très*, very; *près*, near; *après*, after; *congrès*, congress; *procès*, trial, &c., the letter *è* with a grave accent† almost invariably precedes a consonant (or combination of letters equal to a consonant, as *ch, qu*), which consonant is followed by an *e* mute; as:—

une grèbe	<i>a grebe</i>
une pièce	<i>a piece</i>
un remède	<i>a remedy</i>
un modèle	<i>a model</i>
un trirème	<i>a trireme</i>
l'arène	<i>the arena</i>
une artère	<i>an artery</i>
une parenthèse	<i>a parenthesis</i>
une arbalète	<i>a crossbow</i>
une sèche	<i>a cuttlefish</i>
une pastèque	<i>a water-melon</i>

See page 52 for employment of grave accent in modifying certain verbs of the first conjugation.

3. The grave accent is placed over the letter *a* in

là, adv., there, to distinguish it from *la*, the feminine of the definite article.

à, prep., meaning at or to, to distinguish it from the third person sing. present of the verb *avoir*.

ça, as in the expression *ça et là*, hither and thither, to distinguish it from *ça*, contracted form of *cela*.

* See page 108.

† Note that in words ending in *ège*, such as *piège, collège, &c., &c.*, the acute, not the grave accent is used, as also in the words *événement, avènement*.

en deçà	<i>on this side</i>
au delà	<i>beyond</i>
déjà	<i>already</i>
holà	<i>hallo</i>
voilà	<i>behold</i>

à, adv., where, to distinguish it from *ou*, conj., or.

Γ. The *circumflex accent* (^) placed over a vowel, as it generally implies the suppression of some other vowel, or a contraction from a more lengthened form of word, gives to such a vowel a broad and open sound; as:

		Lat.
la grâce	<i>grace</i>	—
l'âge	<i>age</i>	—
un rôle	<i>a part, character</i>	rotulus
un môle	<i>a mole, jetty</i>	—
l'âme	<i>the soul</i>	anima
un âne	<i>an ass</i>	asinus
une guêpe	<i>a wasp</i>	vespis
la côte	<i>the rib, or coast</i>	costa
une épître	<i>an epistle</i>	epistola
nous aimâmes	<i>we loved</i>	amavimus
vous aimâtes	<i>you loved</i>	amavistis
vous reçûtes	<i>you received</i>	recepistis

And all first and second persons plural of the perfect tenses of verbs.

	Old Form.
qu'il donnât	qu'il donnast
qu'il finît	qu'il finist
qu'il reçût	qu'il reçust
qu'il vendît	qu'il vendist

And all other third persons singular of imperf. subjunctive.

This accent is also employed in

mûr, ripe (Lat. *maturus*), to distinguish it from *un mur*, a wall.

sûr, sure, certain (Lat. *securus*), to distinguish it from the preposition *sur*, upon.

lû, past part. of *devoir*, to distinguish it from *du*, gen. of article.

crû, past part. of *croître*, to grow, to distinguish it from *cru*, past part. of *croire*, to believe.

le nôtre, ours, *le vôtre*, yours, possessive pronouns, to distinguish them from *notre*, our, *votre*, your, possessive adjectives.

The circumflex accent is also employed in—

paraître	to appear	Lat. pareasco
naître	to be born	nascor
croître	to grow	cresco
connaître	to know	cognosco
paître	to feed	pascor

N.B.—In *almost every instance*, when the circumflex accent occurs in French, it will be found that the letter *s* previously existed in the Latin word from which the French is derived, and in many instances the *s* is retained in the English word; thus :

French.	Lat.	Eng.
apôtre	apostolus	<i>apostle</i>
tempête	tempestas	<i>tempest</i>

II. The *apostrophe* (') marks the suppression of one of the vowels *a*, *e*, or *i*, before another word beginning with a vowel or mute (i.e. unaspirated) *h*.

1. The letter *a* can be suppressed *only* in the feminine of the definite article ; as, *l'orange* (for *la orange*), and the acc. sing. of the fem. pronoun of the third person, *la* ; as :

je l'aime, I love her (for je la aime).

In no other words can the letter *a* be elided.

2. The letter *e* is suppressed (*a*) in the words *je, me, te, se, de, que, ce, le* (art. and pron.), and *ne*, before another vowel or mute *h* ; as :

j'aime le soleil	il s'en vante
il m'estime	roi d'Italie
je t'en prie	qu'avez-vous ?
c'est moi	il l'a mangé
je n'en ai pas	

β. In the words *puisque, lorsque, quoique, only* when they precede the words *il, ils, elle, elles, on, un, or une* ; as :

puisqu'il le dit
quoiqu'on dise, etc.

γ. *Jusque*, when it precedes *à, au, aux, ici, où, or en* ; as :

jusqu'à Rome
jusqu'aux portes de la ville

δ. In *entre*, or *presque*, when joined inseparably to another word forming one with it ; as :

entr'acte entr'aider presque

ε. In *quelque* only before *un* or *une* ; as :

quelqu'un quelqu'une

ζ. In *grande* before *mère* (meaning grandmother), always, which is written *grand'mère*, and often before *chambre*, *messe*, *rose*, *merci*, *peine*, which are found written *la grand'messe*, *n'est pas grand'chose*, &c.

N.B.—The *a* and *e* in *la* or *le* are not suppressed after an imperative ; as :

menez-la à Paris
mettez-le ici

A and *e* are not elided before the numbers

huit	<i>eight</i>	le huit janvier
onze	<i>eleven</i>	la onzième fois
	<i>or</i>	
oui	<i>yes</i>	le oui et le non
ouate	<i>cotton-wool</i>	de la ouate

3. The letter *i* is suppressed *only* in the word *si*, and only when that word precedes *il* or *ils* ; as : *s'il vous plaît*, *ils viennent*.

4. The diphthongs *moi* and *toi*, coming after an imperative, are elided before *en*, never before *y* ; as :

Donnez-m'en	<i>give me some of it</i>
(for donnez-moi-en)	
va-t'en	<i>go away</i>
(for va-toi-en)	

Instead of *menez-m'y*, take me there, one writes *menez-y-moi*.

III. The *hyphen* (French *tiret*) (-) is placed :

α. In composite words, such as *chef-d'œuvre*, *arc-en-ciel*, *vis-à-vis*, &c.

β. Between the personal pronoun and the word *même* ; as *ti-même*, *nous-mêmes*.

γ. After a verb followed by one or more pronouns, whether they be the subjects or complements of the verb ; as :

irai-je ?	viendras-tu ?
puisses-tu réussir !	que dit-on ?
rendez-le-lui	viendra-t-elle ? *

But remark, that if the pronoun which follows the verb is itself followed by another verb governing it, there is no hyphen ; as :

venez me parler	<i>come and speak to me</i>
va te promener !	<i>be off !</i>

δ. *Ci* and *là* are connected with other substantives or pronouns by the hyphen ; as :

celui-ci, ceux-là, celle-là ;
cet homme-ci, cette femme-là ;
là-haut, là-bas, etc.

ε. All words preceded by *très* are joined to it by a hyphen ; as : *très-bien, très-fort*, etc.

The rule for the insertion of the *t euphonique* between the third sing. of a verb ending in *a* or *e* and the pronouns *il, elle, or on*, has been given in the note on page 35 :

m'aime-t-il ?
viendra-t-elle ?
que dira-t-on ?

Care must be taken, when the letter *t* is placed before a vowel in the place of the pronouns *te* or *toi*, not to separate it from the following verb by a hyphen, but by an apostrophe ; as :

je t'en parlerai
va-t'en

NOTE.—The imperative *va*, followed by *y*, takes an *s* for the sake of euphony ; as :

vas y ;

but if the *y* be followed by another verb in the infinitive, the *s* is suppressed ; as :

va y porter ces livres

* See following paragraph for the *t euphonique*.

Va followed by *en* (pronoun, *not* preposition) also takes an *s*; as:

vas en savoir des nouvelles

IV. The *tréma* is a sign composed of two dots (*¨*) placed over one vowel, followed by another, to show that that vowel is to be pronounced separately, and not forming a diphthong with the preceding one.

Examples of the Tréma.

1. On the letter *i*:

Haïr, to hate, takes it in all its persons except the three persons sing. of the present and the second person sing. of the imperative; *héroïque*, *naïf*, *laïque*, &c.

2. On the letter *e*, as in *poëme*, *poëte*; not to be pronounced as *poêle*.

3. On the letter *u* following a *g*:

La ciguë, *ambiguë*, *exiguë*, *contiguë*, *aiguë*, to prevent these words being pronounced as *intrigue*, *brigue*, &c.

V. The *cedilla* is a sign like an inverted *c* placed under the letter *c* when it precedes the vowels *a*, *o*, or *u*, and when the said letter *c* is to be pronounced soft, like an *s*, and not hard, like a *k*; as:

menaçant, *menaçons*, *reçu*

Note that the letter *c* is naturally hard or soft before the same vowels in English as in French. The proper name Cicero (Fr. *Cicéron*) contains the only vowels before which the *c* is pronounced like an *s* in both languages.

5. Put into French :

1. Go (*sing.*) there directly. 2. Go there (and) say (*inf.*) that I am not coming. 3. Is the train come in yet? Go (and) get some information (*savoir des nouvelles*) about it.

THE TRÉMA. (Page 235.)

1. Write out the present tense of the verb *haïr*, to hate.
2. Give the feminines of *ambigu*, *contigu*, *exigu*, and *aigu*, and show the difference of pronunciation of the words *digue* and *ciguë*.

THE CEDILLA.

1. What is the cedilla? Under what letter, and before what vowels, is it placed? What effect has it on the sound of that letter?

2. Write down the French for

1. The wine of Macon is excellent.
2. He is an excellent mason.
3. Paris is the capital of France.
4. He threatened me with blows.
5. I have received no letter from him.
6. I am curious to know what has become of him.

SYNTAX.



THE same order will be (as nearly as possible) observed as in I. of this Grammar; i.e. the *Syntax* of the *Article* will be treated of, then *Nouns Substantive, Adjectives, Numerals, Pronouns*, and, lastly, *Verbs*.]

I. THE ARTICLE.

1. The Article is of three kinds, *Definite, Indefinite*, and

2. The Definite Article is thus declined :

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	le	la	les
<i>Gen.*</i>	du	de la	des*
<i>Dat.*</i>	au	à la	aux*

The definite article is employed in French before nouns which designate a genus or species; as :

Les animaux sont mortels *animals (i.e. all animals) are mortal*
 L'homme est un animal *man is an animal ;*

3. Any individual noun which one requires to specify requires the definite article; as :

La ville de Paris *the town of Paris ;*

4. Before titles and dignities; as :

Le Roi Charles XII *King Charles XII.*
 Le Général Kléber *General Kléber*
 Le Docteur Grégoire *Doctor Gregory.*

As has been explained in Part I. page 1, that these forms *du, au, des, aux*, are contracted from *de le, à le, de les, à les*. The following rule cannot be impressed upon the mind of the learner, viz. that these contracted forms are only to be used; that the forms *de le, à le, de les, à les*, do not even exist. When a noun substantive, or the name of a place to which the definite article is attached, and of which it seems to form a part, as *le Havre, les Antilles*, the rule is not observed, and the inflected forms will be : *du Havre, au Havre, des Antilles, &c.*

4 The definite article must be repeated before *all* the substantives or adjectives in a sentence ; as :

la danse, l' escrime et le dessin sont	<i>dancing, fencing, and drawing are</i>
des agréments bien utiles	<i>very useful accomplishments</i>
le premier et le second étage	<i>the first and second stories</i>
le bon et le mauvais vin	<i>good and bad wine.</i>

The exceptions to this rule are :

α. In the case of several substantives strung together without the article to give emphasis ; as :

prières, commandements, remon-	<i>prayers, commands, remonstrances,</i>
trances, tout est inutile	<i>all are to no purpose.</i>

β. In the case of one or more adjectives being employed to qualify a substantive, when such adjectives do not imply opposite qualities ; as :

les simples et bonnes gens	<i>good, easy-going people</i>
le jeune et beau Dunois	<i>the young and handsome Dunois</i>
le grand et puissant empereur	<i>the great and powerful emperor.</i>

Place of the Definite Article in a Sentence.

5 The definite article is to be placed *before* the substantive and if there is an adjective, before that also ; as :

l' homme	<i>the man</i>
le grand homme	<i>the great man.</i>

There are a few exceptions to this rule.

With the words *Monsieur, Madame, Monseigneur, tout, and feu* * the article is placed between these words and the accompanying noun ; as :

† Monsieur le président	<i>the President</i>
† Madame la duchesse	<i>the Duchess</i>
† Messieurs les sénateurs !	<i>senators !</i>
† Monseigneur l'archevêque	<i>his Grace the Archbishop</i>
tout le monde	<i>everyone</i>
toute l'armée	<i>the whole army</i>
tous les soldats	<i>all the soldiers</i>
toutes les fois	<i>every time</i>
feu le roi	<i>the late king</i>
feu la reine	<i>the late queen.</i>

* See Rule 76, page 264, for *feu* preceded by the article.

†	For abbreviation, Monsieur	is written	M.
	„	Madame	„ Mme.
	„	Mademoiselle	„ Mdle.
	„	Messieurs	„ MM.
	„	Monseigneur	„ Mgr.

The definite article is omitted :

6* After adverbs of quantity, such as *combien*, *autant*, *peu*, *beaucoup*, &c., and collective substantives, such as *nombre*, *sorte*, *espèce*, *foule* ; as :

combien de soldats ?
plus de courage
moins de vertu
autant de vin !
que de voitures !
 une **sorte d'**épidémie
 une **foule de** mendiants

how many soldiers ?
more courage
less virtue
so much wine !
what a quantity of carriages !
a sort of epidemic
a crowd of beggars.

7 NOTE.—However, *bien*, meaning *much*, *many*, and *la plupart*, require the definite article after them ; as :

bien des poètes disent
bien du bonheur !
la plupart des Anglais voyagent

many poets say
(I wish you) much happiness !
most Englishmen travel.

However, one writes :

bien d'autres

many others.

8* Before words expressing the material of which any object is made (when taken conjointly with such object) or the use to which it is applied ; as :

une montre **d'**argent
 un sabre **de** bois
 une machine **à** vapeur
 une boîte **à** gants

a silver watch
a wooden sword
a steam-engine
a glove-box.

9* After the prepositions *sans*, *avec*, and *entre*, and the negative *ni* ; as :

sans argent vous n'irez pas loin
 le voulez-vous **avec** ou **sans** sucre ?

entre amis on ne doit pas se gêner

vous n'avez **ni** courage **ni** prudence

without money you will not go far
 will you take it **with** or **without** sugar ?

among friends one need not stand upon ceremony

you have **neither** courage **nor** prudence.

* When a substantive, preceded by any of the above adverbs of quantity or collectives, is used in a *definite* and *determined* sense, the definite article must be used ; as :

a. combien vous reste-t-il **du** vin de l'année dernière ?

β. il m'a fait un lit **du** bois du Royal George

γ. sans l'argent que vous m'avez donné je serais mort de faim

δ. j'ai rencontré une quantité **des** blessés de 1870

*how much have you got left of **the** wine of last year ?*

he made me a bedstead of wood from the Royal George

*but for **the** money you gave me I should have died of hunger*

*I met a quantity of **the** wounded of 1870.*

10 In certain proverbial expressions; as :

<i>tout fait nombre !</i>	<i>everything counts !</i>
<i>nécessité n'a pas de loi</i>	<i>necessity knows no law</i>
<i>patience et longueur de tems font</i>	<i>patience and length of time do more</i>
<i>plus que force ni que rage (La</i>	<i>than violence and anger.</i>
<i>Fontaine)</i>	

11 With the adverbs *plus* and *moins* contrasted ; as :

<i>plus vous grondez cet enfant,</i>	<i>the more you scold that child,</i>
<i>moins il fait</i>	<i>less he does.</i>

Sometimes the second of these adverbs is preceded by the copula *et* ; as :

<i>plus il apprend et moins il sait</i>	<i>the more he learns the less he knows.</i>
---	--

12 Before *cardinal* numbers used (in the place of *ordinals* in *English*) to express the order of succession in sovereigns, the *page* or chapter of a book, dates, &c. ; as :

<i>Charles douze</i>	<i>Charles the Twelfth</i>
<i>Édouard trois</i>	<i>Edward the Third</i>
<i>chapitre quatre</i>	<i>chapter the fourth</i>
<i>livre huit</i>	<i>book the eighth</i>
<i>page cent vingt</i>	<i>page one hundred and twenty.</i>

13 Before nouns placed in apposition to, and in explanation of, other nouns ; as :

<i>Ulysse, roi d'Ithaque</i>	<i>Ulysses, the King of Ithaca</i>
<i>Napoléon III, empereur des Français</i>	<i>Napoleon III., the Emperor of the French</i>
<i>Paris, capitale de la France</i>	<i>Paris, the capital of France.</i>

14 The definite article is also omitted in the following expressions, where a noun substantive is joined to a verb, together with which it forms, so to speak, one idea ; as :

<i>avoir chaud</i>	<i>to be warm</i>	<i>avoir envie</i>	<i>to desire</i>
<i>„ froid</i>	<i>„ cold</i>	<i>„ part</i>	<i>to have a share</i>
<i>„ faim</i>	<i>„ hungry</i>		<i>in</i>
<i>„ soif</i>	<i>„ thirsty</i>	<i>„ raison</i>	<i>to be right</i>
<i>„ mal</i>	<i>„ in pain</i>	<i>„ tort</i>	<i>„ wrong</i>
<i>„ honte</i>	<i>„ ashamed</i>	<i>chercher querelle</i>	<i>to pick a quarrel</i>
<i>„ lieu</i>	<i>to take place</i>	<i>courir risque</i>	<i>to run the risk</i>
<i>„ égard</i>	<i>to have regard for</i>	<i>crier vengeance</i>	<i>to cry for vengeance</i>

demander avis	<i>to ask for an opinion</i>	demander justice	<i>to ask for justice</i>
„ compte	„ <i>an account</i>	„ pardon	„ <i>pardon</i>
„ conseil	„ <i>advice</i>	„ satis-	„ <i>satisfac-</i>
„ grâce	„ <i>pardon</i>	„ faction	„ <i>tion</i>

dire vrai	<i>to speak the truth</i>	faire grâce	<i>to pardon</i>
donner avis	<i>to give advice</i>	„ honneur	<i>to do honour</i>
„ caution	„ <i>warning</i>	„ honte	<i>to make ashamed</i>
„ envie	<i>to make desirous</i>	„ injure	<i>to injure</i>
„ exemple	<i>to give an example</i>	„ justice	<i>to do justice</i>
„ lieu	„ <i>cause</i>	„ bon marché	<i>to hold cheap</i>
„ occasion	„ <i>occasion</i>	„ naufrage	<i>to be shipwrecked</i>
„ ordre	„ <i>orders</i>	„ pitié	<i>to excite compas-</i>
„ permission	„ <i>permission</i>	„ plaisir	<i>sion</i>
„ quittance	„ <i>a receipt</i>	„ réflexion	<i>to do pleasure</i>
entendre raison	<i>to listen to reason</i>	„ tort	<i>to reflect</i>
„ raillerie	<i>to understand a joke</i>	„ tort	<i>to do harm</i>
faire attention	<i>to pay attention</i>	„ usage	<i>to make use</i>
„ cas	<i>to value</i>	„ voile	<i>to set sail</i>

lâcher prise	<i>to let go</i>	prendre congé	<i>to take leave</i>
mettre fin	<i>to put an end to</i>	„ feu	„ <i>fire</i>
„ ordre	<i>to set in order</i>	„ fin	<i>to come to an end</i>
parler Français*	<i>to speak the French language</i>	„ part	<i>to take a part</i>
perdre courage	<i>to lose courage</i>	„ garde	„ <i>care</i>
„ patience	„ <i>patience</i>	„ goût	„ <i>a liking</i>
plier bagage	<i>to pack up one's traps</i>	„ patience	<i>to have patience</i>
porter honneur	<i>to treat with honour</i>	„ plaisir	<i>to take pleasure</i>
porter respect	„ <i>respect</i>	„ possession	„ <i>possession</i>
		„ soin	„ <i>care</i>

prêter serment	<i>to swear allegiance</i>	rendre visite	<i>to pay a visit</i>
porter rancune	<i>to bear malice</i>	savoir gré	<i>to be grateful</i>
rendre compte	<i>to give an account</i>	„ mauvais	<i>to bear a grudge</i>
„ grâce	<i>to thank</i>	„ gré	<i>against</i>
„ hommage	<i>to do homage</i>	tenir parole	<i>to keep one's promise</i>
„ justice	<i>to do justice</i>	„ tête	<i>to hold one's own</i>
„ raison	<i>to right a person</i>	„	<i>against</i>
„ service	<i>to do service</i>	tirer avantage	<i>to draw advantage or profit</i> †
„ témoin-	<i>to bear witness</i>	„ profit	
„ gnage			

* Or any other language.

† The above list has been taken almost *literatim* from Delille's French Grammar.

The Article with Names of Countries.

15 As a general rule, the definite article is prefixed to the names of countries, mountains, rivers, provinces, &c. ; as :

l'Angleterre, **la** Seine, **la** Bretagne, **la** Corse, **les** Alpes, &c.;

but if these names of countries, &c., are coupled by the preposition *de* with another noun, the article is generally suppressed ; as :

Élisabeth, reine d'Angleterre

c'est de l'eau de Tamise

donnez-moi du fromage de Hollande

Anne de Bretagne

Elizabeth, Queen of England

it is Thames water

give me some Dutch cheese

Anne of Brittany.

16 But the suppression of the article only takes place when the second substantive is used simply as a complement of the first. A comparison of the following examples will show when it should, or should not, be retained or omitted :

1. lisez l'histoire d'Angleterre

read your English history

2. lisez l'histoire de l'Angleterre
de cette époque-là

*read the history of the England
of those days*

1. buvez de l'eau de Seine

drink Seine water

2. on y fait monter de l'eau de la
Seine

*they have water raised from the
Seine there*

1. je préfère les vins de France
aux vins d'Espagne

*I prefer French wines to Spanish
wines*

2. les vins de la France ont man-
qué cette année

*the wines of France have failed
this year.*

17 A few names of countries and towns are always preceded by the definite article ; such are :

le Canada, **le** Portugal, **le** Japon, **la** Chine, **le** Pérou, **le** Havre, **la** Haye.

So one says :

le climat **du** Canada

la porcelaine **de la** Chine

le port **du** Havre.

18 Verbs, adjectives, adverbs, or prepositions, used as substantives, are always preceded by the masculine definite article ; as :

le manger

le beau

le pour

le oui

le boire

le vrai

le contre

le non

le parler

l'utile

le pourquoi

le qu'en dira-t-on.

19 THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
un	une	<i>a or an</i>
un homme		<i>a man</i>
une femme		<i>a woman.</i>

20 The Indefinite Article is often suppressed in French where it is expressed in English. It is suppressed:

Before substantives determining a *trade, profession, or nationality*; as:

- | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. je suis Anglais | <i>I am an Englishman</i> |
| 2. il est médecin | <i>he is a doctor</i> |
| 3. elle est bouquetière | <i>she is a flower-girl</i> |
| 4. ils sont Français | <i>they are Frenchmen.</i> |

21 N.B.—Important exception to the foregoing rule. If the pronoun *ce* is used to express *he, she, or they*—and it may be so used in all sentences with the verb *être*, where there is a noun substantive either expressed or understood in the predicate (see Part I. page 20, Rule XVII.)—then the indefinite article is retained in French:

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. c'est un marchand de vin | <i>he is a wine-merchant</i> |
| 2. c'est une Espagnole | <i>she is a Spanish woman</i> |
| 3. ce sont des Prussiens* | <i>they are Prussians</i> |
| 4. ce sont de bons soldats | <i>they are good soldiers.</i> |

22 There is one very common exception to the foregoing exception in the expression:

c'est dommage *it is **a** pity.*

23 The indefinite article is omitted in some proverbial expressions, such as:

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. nécessité n'a pas de loi | <i>necessity knows no law</i> |
| 2. souvent femme varie; bien fou
qui s'y fie | <i>woman is a changeable creature; a
man must be mad to trust her</i> |
| 3. bon chien chasse de race | <i>a good dog takes after its sire</i> |
| 4. à bon chat bon rat | <i>there's a Roland for your Oliver
(fam.)</i> |

24 In exclamations, and with the words *sort, kind, and the adjectives maint, many, tel, pareil*, such:

- | | |
|------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. quel bruit! | <i>what a noise!</i> |
| 2. quel malheur! | <i>what a misfortune!</i> |

* Note the use of the plural of the partitive article (§ 3), employed in French as plural of the indefinite.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 3. quelle espèce d'homme est-ce ? | <i>what sort of a man is he?</i> |
| 4. quel genre d'habit voulez-vous ? | <i>what sort of a coat do you require?</i> |
| 5. mainte fois je l'ai vu | <i>many a time have I seen him</i> |
| 6. avez-vous jamais entendu pareil
bruit ? | <i>did you ever hear such a noise?</i> |

25 When one substantive is placed in apposition to (and describing) another ; as :

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Scipion, fameux général romain | <i>Scipio, a famous general of the Romans</i> |
| 2. Vathek, conte oriental | <i>Vathek, an Eastern tale</i> |
| 3. Pierre supprima les Strélitz,
milice très-formidable | <i>Peter suppressed the Strelitz, a very formidable armed body.</i> |

26 Sometimes after the words *comme* and *en* ; as :

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. nous estimons Brutus comme
patriote, mais comme père
nous le condamnons | <i>we esteem Brutus as a patriot, but
condemn him as a father</i> |
| 2. vous avez agi en homme de cœur | <i>you have acted as a man of courage.</i> |

27 After the words *devenir* and *se faire* :

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Protée devenait ours, lion, che-
val, etc., à volonté | <i>Proteus became a bear, a lion, a
horse, &c., at will</i> |
| 2. je me ferai soldat | <i>I shall become a soldier.</i> |

28 Before the words *hundred* and *thousand* ; as :

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| cent soldats | <i>a hundred soldiers</i> |
| mille pardons ! | <i>a thousand pardons !</i> |

though it would be incorrect to leave it out before *douzaine*, *quinzaine*, *million*, &c. ; so one writes :

- | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| une douzaine de coups | <i>a dozen blows</i> |
| un million de faits | <i>a million facts.</i> |

29 In negative sentences ; as :

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. n'avez-vous pas de chapeau ? | <i>have you not got a hat?</i> |
| 2. je n'ai jamais vu de tigre | <i>I never saw a tiger ;</i> |

but if the substantive is qualified by some other expression, it is usual to retain the indefinite article ; as :

- | | |
|--|---|
| 30 1. l'Angleterre n'a pas, comme
la Prusse, une armée de
800,000 hommes | <i>England has not, like Prussia, an
army of 800,000 men</i> |
| 2. nos voisins n'ont pas une
<i>voiture fermée</i> comme la nôtre | <i>our neighbours have not got a close
carriage like ours ;</i> |

and in negative questions where an affirmative answer is expected; as:

- 31** 1. les Rothschild n'ont-ils pas *un* revenu énorme? *have not the Rothschilds got an enormous income?*
 2. n'a-t-il pas *une* maison de campagne en Normandie? *has he not a country house in Normandy?*

Compare above rule with Rule 39.

32 The indefinite article used in English before nouns signifying *weights, measures, and division of time*, is sometimes expressed in French by the definite article, sometimes by the preposition *par*, but NEVER by the indefinite article; as:

1. vingt sous la livre *twenty sous a pound*
 2. trois schellings le mètre *three shillings a yard*
 3. cinquante francs la douzaine *fifty francs a dozen*
 4. vingt fois par jour *twenty times a day*
 5. trois cents livres par an, combien cela fait-il par mois? *three hundred pounds a year is how much a month?*
 6. nous payons dix francs par personne *we are paying ten francs a head.*

33 The indefinite article with *peu*.

a. The indefinite article is expressed with the word *peu*, little, when used as a substantive; as:

1. prenez-en *un* peu *take a little of it*
 2. *un* peu de vin ne vous fera pas de mal *a little wine will not do you any harm.*

β. When *peu* is qualified by any other adverb, the indefinite article is suppressed in French; as:

1. très-peu suffira *a very little will suffice*
 2. si peu de pain pour tant de vin! *such a little bread for so much wine!*

γ. *Peu* used absolutely takes no article; as:

1. il faut se contenter de peu *one must be satisfied with a little*
 2. peu de personnes le croient *few people believe him.*

Position of the Indefinite Article.

34 The indefinite article invariably precedes both adjectives and substantives, with the single exception of the word *tout*; as:

1. tout *un* mois se passa ainsi *a whole month was passed in this manner*
 2. j'ai rencontré toute *une* bande de voleurs *I met a whole band of robbers.*

35. Peculiar Use of the Indefinite Article.

1. Monsieur **un** tel *Mr. So-and-So*
2. Madame **une** telle *Mrs. So-and-So*
3. **un** chacun (*old style*) doit mourir *everyone must die*
4. il parlait à **un** sien ami (*un-usual*) *he was speaking to a friend of his.*

THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE.

For the ordinary rules for the employment of the *Partitive Article* see Part I. of this Grammar, page 6 and following.

36 The *Partitive Article* is suppressed, and its place supplied by the preposition *de* :

a. When the substantive is preceded by its adjective. So one writes :

de célèbres auteurs ont dit *celebrated authors have said.*

β. When there is a negative in the sentence ; as :

je ne bois pas **de** vin *I do not drink wine.*

37 The exceptions to the above rule are :

a. With regard to an adjective preceding its substantive.

When such adjectives are so closely joined to and coupled with their substantives as to form, so to speak, but one word ; as : *beau-père*, father-in-law ; *jeunes gens*, young people ; *petits-mâîtres*, dandies ; *bons-mots*, jokes ; *Petites-Maisons*, madhouse (17th century) ; *beau temps*, fine weather, &c., the adjective and substantive are to be treated as one word, and the partitive article to precede them in all cases where it would precede an ordinary substantive ; as :

1. il y a **des** jeunes gens qui aiment à gaspiller leur revenu *there are young people who like to squander their property*
2. je n'y ai trouvé que **des** petits-mâîtres *I found nothing but a set of dandies there*
3. il dit **des** bons-mots à chaque instant *he is always cutting jokes.*

38 The partitive article is not necessarily suppressed in a *negative sentence* if the substantive which it should precede is

used in a very definite sense, or qualified by some other expression ; as :

1. je ne vous ferai pas **des** reproches frivoles (*Racine*)
2. on ne soulage point **des** douleurs qu'on méprise (*Marmontel*)
3. je n'ai pas encore bu **du** vin que vous m'avez envoyé
I have not yet drunk any of the wine which you sent me
4. il ne faut pas boire **de** l'eau de cette fontaine
you must not drink water from that fountain.

39 In negative questions the partitive article is retained wherever an answer in the affirmative is expected or supposed ; though it is correct to write :

- a.* n'avez-vous pas **d'**argent, pas **d'**amis ? *have you no money, no friends ?*

where the questioner supposes the person questioned to be without money or friends.

It is also correct to write :

- β.* n'avez-vous pas **de** l'argent, **des** amis ? *surely you have money, friends ?*

40 The partitive article, although in substance the same as the genitive of the definite article, is *not* a genitive case, but forms, as it were, part of the word to which it is attached, and may be preceded by any other preposition ; as :

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. avec de l'argent on fait tout | <i>with money one can do everything</i> |
| 2. il a eu recours à des amis de son père | <i>he had recourse to some friends of his father</i> |
| 3. parmi de vieux manuscrits j'ai trouvé ceci | <i>amongst some old manuscripts. I found this</i> |
| 4. il s'est trouvé dans de mauvais draps | <i>he found himself in a scrape</i> |
| 5. il nous a répondu par des grossièretés | <i>he answered us with insults.</i> |

II. NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

Nouns are divided into two classes :—1. *Common nouns* (noms communs); and 2. *Proper nouns* (noms propres), to distinguish individuals, towns, countries, &c.

Common nouns may again be divided into *collectives*, *general*, and *partial* (noms collectifs, généraux et partitifs).

COMMON NOUNS.

41 Two nouns substantive are not often found joined together in French* as in English (as *wind-mill*, *letter-box*, *dinner-table*, &c.) to express one idea, except they are coupled together by means of a preposition, such as *de* or *à*, to express the relation in which they stand to one another.

42 In order to determine which of these two prepositions should be employed, it is necessary to ascertain whether the second of the two substantives describes the *material* of which the first is composed, in which case the preposition *de* must be employed; as:

une montre **d'**or
des bas **de** soie

a gold watch (because made of gold)
silk stockings (because made of silk);

whereas, if the second substantive explains the *use* or *object* of the first, the preposition *à* must be employed; as:

la boîte **aux** lettres

the letter-box (or box for putting letters in)

un moulin **à** vent

a wind-mill (because the mill is set in motion by the wind).

43 From the above rule it will easily be seen that the same substantives may be found sometimes coupled by the preposition *de*, and at others by the preposition *à*; as:

* There are a few instances of two French nouns joined together without a preposition. Such are:

chou-fleur
chien-loup
loup-garou
loup-cervier
Hôtel-Dieu
bain-Marie
malle-poste

cauliflower
a large sort of mastiff
a hobgoblin
a lynx
a hospital
a culinary utensil
mail.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| 1. une bouteille d' encre | <i>a bottle full of ink</i> |
| 2. une bouteille à encre | <i>a bottle for the purpose of holding ink</i> |
| 1. un pot au lait | <i>a milk-can</i> |
| 2. un pot de lait | <i>a can of milk.</i> |

44 There are several double nouns in which the two ideas are so closely connected as to form but one idea, and which are joined together by the preposition *de*, although the second may not necessarily express the *material* of which the first is composed. Such are :

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. des boucles d'oreilles | <i>ear-rings</i> |
| 2. une voiture de poste | <i>a post-carriage</i> |
| 3. du vin de Champagne | <i>Champagne (wine)</i> |
| 4. un paletot d'été | <i>a summer coat</i> |
| 5. un bonnet de nuit | <i>a nightcap</i> |
| 6. un coup de tonnerre | <i>a clap of thunder</i> |
| 7. un coup de fusil | <i>a gun-shot</i> |
| 8. l'Hôtel de Ville | <i>the Town Hall.</i> |

GENDERS OF COMMON NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

The ordinary rules for determining the genders of common nouns will be found in the Appendix of Part I. of this Grammar, pages 197 to 224.

45 The gender of the word *gens* offers such peculiarities that it must be treated separately.

a. *Gens* (people) is masculine if the adjective follows it, feminine if the adjective precedes it; as :

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. des gens ennuyeux | <i>troublesome people</i> |
| 2. de bonnes gens | <i>good sort of people.</i> |

β. If there are two adjectives, the one preceding, the other following *gens*, the first is feminine, the second masculine; as :

les **vieilles** gens sont soupçonneux *old folks are apt to be suspicious.*

γ. If any pronoun or adjective occur later on in a sentence in which the word *gens* has been used, and they refer to that word, they are put in the masculine; as :

Connaissez-vous ces **bonnes** gens-là? **Ils** se sont établis dans notre ville

Do you know those good people? They have settled in our town.

δ. If *gens* is preceded by *tout* alone, or by *tout* and an adjective which has but one termination for both masculine and feminine genders, the word *tout* is put in the masculine; as :

1. **tous** les gens sensés vous diront cela *all sensible people will tell you that*
2. **tous** les honnêtes gens *all honest folk*
3. de **tous** ces braves gens je ne connais personne *of all those good people I don't know a soul.*

ε. *Gens* coupled with another substantive, with which it forms but one idea, such as *gens de robe*, lawyers; *gens de lettres*, literary people; *gens de mer*, seafaring people; and *jeunes gens*, young people, are invariably masculine; as :

1. **certain**s gens de lettres *certain men of letters*
2. ce sont de **vrais** gens de bien *they are really good people.*

46 In Part I., Appendix, page 1, it has been shown that a few common nouns retain their *feminine* form even when employed to designate a male. Such are *sentinelle*, *vedette*, *bête*, *dupe*, *personne*, *victime*, *partie*.

47 In the same manner the following masculine nouns do not change their form when employed to designate a person of the opposite sex: *auteur*, *écrivain*, *orateur*, *poète*, *témoin*.

1. il y a parmi les femmes plusieurs **auteurs**, plusieurs **écrivains** d'un mérite distingué *there are amongst women several authoresses, several writers of distinguished merit*
2. venez, mesdames, venez être **témoins** du triomphe de la philosophie *come, ladies, come and be witnesses of the triumph of philosophy*
3. Madame Dacier, **traducteur** érudit d'Horace *Madame Dacier, a learned translator of Horace.*

48 Several substantives, such as *créateur*, *dominateur*, *spoliateur*, *désolateur*, though they properly have no feminine form, adopt one if employed as adjectives. So one writes :

1. une industrie **créatrice** de jouissances *an industry productive of enjoyments*
2. les passions sombres, **dominatrices** du cœur humain *the dark passions, tyrants of the human heart.*

PLURALS OF COMMON NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

The ordinary rules for the formation of the plurals of nouns substantive are to be found in the First Part of this Grammar, pages 4, 5, 6.

49 Most words derived from a foreign language have no distinct plural form. Such are :

des auto-da-fé	<i>burning of heretics by the Inquisition</i>
des exeat	<i>permissions of absence</i>
des ex-voto	<i>pictures or tablets commemorative of mercies received</i>
des fac-simile	<i>facsimiles</i>
des in-octavo	<i>octavo volumes</i>
des in-folio	<i>folios</i>
des in-quarto	<i>quartos</i>
des imbroglio	<i>perplexing matters</i>
des maximum	—
des minimum	—
des post-scriptum	<i>postscripts</i>

50 And all such religious terms as are for the most part the first word or words of old Latin hymns or forms of prayer. Such are :

alleluia, amen, ave, benedicite, confiteor, credo, Kyrie, magnificat, pater, requiem, stabat, Te Deum.

For instance, one would write :

l'empereur a fait chanter **des Te-Deum** dans toutes les églises
il faut réciter douze **Ave** et vingt **Pater**.

51 No numbers, with the exception of *vingt* (*quatre-vingts*, *quinze-vingts*), and *cent*, when not followed by another number, take an *s* in the plural. One writes :

cet enfant ne sait pas faire ses	<i>that child does not make his</i>
huit	<i>rights well</i>
il est sorti de l'urne plusieurs	<i>several</i>
douze et onze	<i>twelves and elevens came out of the ballot-box.</i>

52 The following words, having from common usage become as it were incorporated into the French language, *do* adopt the plural form when necessary :

des accessits	factotums	placets
des agendas	impromptus	quiproquos

des albums	macaronis	quatuor (<i>doubtful</i>)
des bravos	mémentos	récépissés
des débits	museums	sopranos
des déficits	numéros	solos
des duplicatas	opéras	spécimens
des examens	panoramas	sénatus-consultes
des échos	pensums	ultimatums
des factums	pianos	vivats.

53 French grammarians are not all agreed about the following, which may take the plural form or not, *ad lib.* :

alibi	à parte	sextuor
alinea	duo	trio
alto	quatuor	zéro.

54 Italian words generally take their Italian plural form when used in the plural in French. Such are :

carbonari *dilettanti* *lazzaroni*.

55 Words invariable by their nature, employed as substantives, do not change in the plural. Such are :

les **pourquoi**, les **oui**, les **non**, les **car**, les **on dit**,

thus differing from such familiar English expressions as :

the **whys** and the **wherefores**, &c.

THE FORMATION OF THE PLURAL OF COMPOSITE NOUNS.

Composite nouns substantive (*noms composés*) are those composed of—

1. Two nouns substantive, or a noun joined to an adjective.
2. Two nouns substantive joined by a preposition.
3. A noun substantive coupled to a verb, preposition, or adverb.
4. Two or more words joined together without any substantive.

56 When nouns are composed of two nouns substantive, or a noun and an adjective, both take the plural form ; as :

<i>Singular</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Plural</i>
un chou-fleur	<i>a cauliflower</i>	des choux-fleurs
un cerf-volant	<i>a kite</i>	des cerfs-volants
un chef-lieu	<i>a capital (of province or department)</i>	des chefs-lieux

<i>Singular</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Plural</i>
un coffre-fort	<i>a strong box</i>	des coffres-forts
une plate-bande	<i>a flower-border</i>	des plates-bandes
un feu-follet	<i>a Will o' the wisp</i>	des feux-follets
le plain-chant	<i>plain song</i>	des plains-chants
un oiseau-mouche	<i>a humming-bird</i>	des oiseaux-mouches
une basse-taille	<i>a bass (voice)</i>	des basses-tailles

Exceptions to the above Rule.

<i>Singular</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Plural</i>
un blanc-seing	<i>a blank form for signature</i>	des blanc-seings,

because the signature is *left in white*, en blanc ;

un terre-plein	<i>a bank or mound</i>	des terre-pleins,
----------------	------------------------	-------------------

because it means *des lieux pleins de terre* ;

un porc-épic	<i>a porcupine</i>	des porc-épics (reason inexplicable)
un cheveu-léger	<i>a light-cavalry soldier</i>	des cheveu-légers
un appui-main	<i>a painter's maul-stick</i>	des appuis-main,

because they are *des appuis pour la main* ;

un Hôtel-Dieu	<i>a hospital</i>	des Hôtels-Dieu,
---------------	-------------------	------------------

because the real meaning is an *Hôtel de Dieu*.

57 When two nouns substantive are joined by a preposition, the first of the two only takes the sign of the plural ; as :

<i>Singular</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Plural</i>
un arc-en-ciel	<i>a rainbow</i>	des arcs-en-ciel
une brosse à barbe	<i>a shaving-brush</i>	des brosses à barbe
un chef-d'œuvre	<i>a masterpiece</i>	des chefs-d'œuvre
un carton à chapeau	<i>a hat-box</i>	des cartons à chapeau
un dé à coudre	<i>a thimble</i>	des dés à coudre
un sac de nuit	<i>a carpet-bag</i>	des sacs de nuit
un ver à soie	<i>a silk-worm</i>	des vers à soie.

Exceptions to Rule 57.

<i>Singular</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Plural</i>
un coq-à-l'âne	<i>disjointed conversation (cock and bull story)</i>	des coq-à-l'âne

because one passes lightly from one subject to another, *du coq à l'âne* ;

<i>Singular</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Plural</i>
un pied-à-terre	<i>a lodging where one puts up occasionally (où l'on met pied à terre)</i>	des pied-à-terre
un tête-à-tête	<i>a conversation between two people only, who speak de tête à tête</i>	des tête-à-tête
un haut-le-corps	<i>a brusque movement of the body or shoulders</i>	des haut-le-corp
un fier-à-bras	<i>a fire-eater, ready to rain blows ; one who flirts, i.e. strikes (Lat. ferit) à tour de bras, or name of a giant who fought against Olivier. Some give as deriv. qui ferrea brachia habet</i>	des fier-à-bras.

58 When a noun substantive is joined to a verb, preposition, or adverb, (such words being by their nature incapable of adopting a plural form), the substantive sometimes takes the plural form, sometimes not ; as :

<i>Singular</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>a.</i> un avant-coureur	<i>a forerunner</i>	des avant-coureurs
un contre-amiral	<i>a rear-admiral</i>	des contre-amiraux
un contre-coup	<i>a counter-stroke</i>	des contre-coups
une contre-marque	<i>a ticket of re-admission</i>	des contre-marques
un contre-ordre	<i>a counter-order</i>	des contre-ordres
une arrière-saison	<i>a late season</i>	des arrière-saisons.
<hr/>		
<i>β.</i> un contre-poison	<i>an antidote to poison</i>	des contre-poison (des remèdes contre le poison)
un réveille-matin	<i>an alarum</i>	des réveille-matin (des horloges pour vous réveiller le matin)
un essuie-main or mains	<i>a towel</i>	des essuie-mains (linges pour s'essuyer les mains)
un perce-neige	<i>a snowdrop</i>	des perce-neige (flowers which 'percent à travers la neige')
un cure-dent or dents	<i>a toothpick</i>	des cure-dents
un tire-bouchon	<i>a corkscrew</i>	des tire-bouchon (outils pour tirer le bouchon)

<i>Singular</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Plural</i>
un couvre-pieds	<i>a coverlet</i>	des couvre-pieds (pour couvrir les pieds)
un becfigue	<i>a beccafico</i>	des becfigues (des oiseaux qui becquètent les figues).

59 Nouns substantive composed of two or more words that do not vary in the plural, themselves make no change in the plural; as :

<i>Singular</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Plural</i>
un ouï-dire	<i>a hearsay</i>	des ouï-dire
un passe-partout	<i>a pass-key</i>	des passe-partout
un pour-boire	<i>a fee given to waiters, coachmen, &c.</i>	des pour-boire
le qu'en dira-t-on	<i>what will people say (common report)</i>	des qu'en dira-t-on
un sauve-qui-peut	<i>a general rout, stampedo</i>	des sauve-qui-peut, etc.

ON THE PLURAL OF PROPER NAMES (*Noms propres*).

60 As a general rule, proper names in French do *not* take an *s* in the plural; as :

les deux De Witt furent massacrés en 1672	<i>the two De Witts were massacred in 1672</i>
les deux Cornelle sont nés à Rouen	<i>the two Corneilles were born at Rouen</i>
les deux Cromwell , père et fils, ne se ressemblaient guère	<i>the two Cromwells, father and son were very unlike each other.</i>

61 Sometimes proper names in French, when employed to designate one individual (of note), are preceded by the plural article *les*, though they do not themselves take the plural form; as :

les Racine, les Molière, les Voltaire ont illustré la scène française	<i>Racine, Molière, and Voltaire gave lustre to the French stage</i>
les Aristote en Grèce et les Locke en Angleterre ont chacun fondé une école de philosophie	<i>Aristotle in Greece and Locke in England, each founded a school of philosophy.</i>

Exceptions.

62 Proper names *do* take the plural forms if used to designate individuals resembling them in character or otherwise; as :

un Auguste aisément peut faire des
Virgiles

les **Marlboroughs**, les **Tu-
rennes**, les **Wellingtons** sont
bien rares

les **Attilas** et les **Alarics** ne sont
plus de mode

* *an Augustus can easily create
Virgils (i.e. poets like Virgil)*

† *generals like Marlborough, Tu-
renne, Wellington, are rarely met
with*

*conquerors like Attila and Alaric
are out of fashion now-a-days*

63 Some names of great and well-known families take the mark of the plural ; such as :

les **Horaces** et les **Curiaces**

the Horatii and Curiatii

les **Guises**, les **Condés**, les
Stuarts

the Guises, Condés, and Stuarts

les **Guelfes** et les **Gibelins**

the Guelphs and the Ghibellines ;

the reason being that such proper names are employed to designate certain classes of men taken collectively, rather than individual members of such classes.

COLLECTIVE NOUNS.

Collective nouns (*noms collectifs*) are such nouns as, while they are singular in their form, present the idea of several persons or individuals of the same species considered collectively.

They are of two kinds :—*α*. General collectives (*collectifs généraux*), expressing some class or body considered in its entirety ; as : *l'armée, la multitude, la flotte, l'escadre, le peuple* ; and

β. Partial collectives (*collectifs partitifs*), which are nouns of quantity, used in a more restrictive sense ; as : *plupart, quantité, moitié, tiers* ; and they are generally preceded by an article, definite or indefinite, and followed by the preposition *de* and another substantive ; as :

la **plupart** des soldats
une **quantité** d'enfants
la **moitié** des revenus, etc.

64 General collectives † (*collectifs généraux*) require the verb that follows them to be in the singular number ; as :

* Cf. Lat. *Sint Mæcenates non deerunt Marones.*

† Cf. Angl. (familiar), Your *Marlboroughs, Turennes, and Wellingtons* are rare.

Note that in all the above cases the sentence might have been turned by 'People like so and so.'

‡ This subject is often treated in the 'syntax of the verb,' but it seems to concern the substantive quite as much as the verb.

la foule applaudit	<i>the crowd applauded</i>
ma famille revient demain	<i>my family comes back to-morrow</i>
l'armée plia bagage et se sauva	<i>the army packed up its traps and fled.</i>

65 With partial collectives, before determining whether to put the verb in the singular or plural number, it is necessary to consider to which of the two substantives (the collective or the one that follows it) the attention is principally to be directed, as, for instance :

un grand nombre d'oiseaux chantaient dans ce bois	<i>a great number of birds were singing in that wood.</i>
--	---

Here *chantaient* is put in the plural, because the predominant idea is that of the *birds* singing, and not of their *number*. So :

une nuée de traits obscurcit l'air	<i>a cloud of darts darkened the air,</i>
---	---

because the darkening was produced more by the number than by the nature of the darts.

le tiers des vignes est gelé	<i>one third of the vines are killed by the frost.</i>
-------------------------------------	--

Here *gelé* is in the singular, because our attention is chiefly called to the proportionate number of vines that have suffered.

66 In the following instances the verb will be placed in the plural, for obvious reasons :

une infinité de jeunes gens se perdent	<i>a great many young people are lost</i>
quantité de gens ont dit cela	<i>many people have said that</i>
une foule de citoyens ruinés remplissaient les rues de Stockholm (<i>Voltaire</i>)	<i>a crowd of ruined citizens filled the streets of Stockholm.</i>

III. THE ADJECTIVE.

The ordinary rules for the formation of the plurals and feminines of adjectives, together with the principal exceptions * to the rules, will be found in Part I. pages 8–11.

The syntax of the adjective will be considered under three heads :

1. *Agreement* with the substantive or pronoun (*l'accord de l'adjectif*).
2. *Place*, with regard to the substantive (*place de l'adjectif*).
3. *Government* of any verb or substantive by the adjective and a preposition (*régime de l'adjectif*).

§ 1 AGREEMENT (*Accord*).

67 The adjective agrees in gender and number with the substantive, or pronoun † :

le cheval est beau	il est entêté
la mer est belle	elle est heureuse
les tigres sont cruels	nous sommes contents
les femmes sont industrielles	ils sont malades .

68 When there are two or more substantives of the same gender in a sentence, the adjective will naturally be in the plural number, and of the same gender as the substantives :

le roi et le berger sont **égaux** après la mort
ma mère et ma femme sont **parties**. ‡

* The following observations were omitted in Part I. :—

1. Orthography of some words ending in *é* in the masculine and *ée* in the feminine. *Momentané, instantané, simultané, spontané* should be written with one *é* in the masculine and two *ée* in the feminine.

2. Peculiar form of the feminine plural of *royal* in some obsolete legal terms. In technical legal language the feminine plural of *royal* is *royaux* when joined to the words *lettres* and *ordonnances* :

*j'obtiens lettres **royaux***.—RACINE (*Les Plaideurs*, act i. sc. 7).

The reason for this is that in old French one termination sufficed for the masculine and feminine of such words as were derived from Latin adjectives having but one termination for both genders, as, *regalis*.

† *Nous, vous*, used to designate single individuals. The first personal plural pronoun *nous*, used in official documents speaking of one individual, is followed by the adjective (or substantive placed in apposition) in the singular number ; as :

nous soussigné, maire de Dijon, chevalier de plusieurs ordres, etc.

vous (as in English *you*), applied to a single individual, requires the adjective to be put in the singular number ; as :

mon ami, **vous** n'êtes pas **prudent**

ma mère, **vous** serez **contente** de moi.

‡ *Note that the same rules are applicable to participles as to adjectives.*

69 If two or more substantives occur of different genders, the adjective will be put in the *masculine* gender ; as :

votre frère et votre sœur sont peu **instruits**
la beauté et le vice se trouvent souvent **réunis** dans le même individu.

It is better in such cases to place the masculine substantive second in order, so as to avoid the incongruity of a *feminine substantive* and a *masculine adjective* being placed in immediate proximity :

Ex. It is better to write :

il a montré une prudence et **un courage** étonnants
than
un courage et une prudence étonnants.

Exceptions to the foregoing rules :—

70 When two or more substantives to be qualified have *very nearly the same signification*, it is usual to place the adjective in the *singular* number, and to make it agree with the *last-mentioned* substantive ; as :

toute sa vie n'a été qu'un travail.	<i>his whole life has been one of con-</i>
qu'une occupation continue	<i>tinued labour and occupation.</i>
(MASSILLON)	
cet acteur joue avec un goût et	<i>that actor plays with consummate</i>
une noblesse charmante	<i>taste and distinction</i>

The reason being that, as the two substantives present *nearly one and the same idea*, the adjective is made to agree with the last-mentioned, as being rather an amplification of the first, and the one to which the attention is more especially directed.*

71 When two or more substantives are separated by the conjunction *ou*, or :

Qui voit-on là-bas ? Est-ce un	<i>What is that we see ? Is it a line-of-</i>
vaisseau ou une frégate pa-	<i>battle-ship or a frigate with all</i>
voisée ?	<i>her flags flying ?</i>
Pourquoi est-il puni ? Pour avoir	<i>Why is he punished ? For having</i>
écrit un poëme ou des stances	<i>written a poem or some stanzas</i>
injurieuses pour le roi	<i>insulting the king.</i>

* Some authors adopt this rule even when the substantives do *not* present the same idea ; as :

il avait la bouche et les yeux **ouverts**
il avait les yeux et la bouche **ouverte**.—TH. CORNEILLE
il trouva les étangs et les rivières **glacées**.—*ibid.*
c'était temps et peine **perdue**. (LA FONTAINE.)

However, RACINE (*Athalie*, act ii. sc. 4) has :

un horrible mélange d'os et de chair **meurtris et traînés** dans la fange.

In the two foregoing instances, the force of the conjunction *ou* being applied to exclude the first-mentioned object, the attention is concentrated on the latter, and the adjective made to agree with it accordingly.

72 Two or more adjectives taken in conjunction with one substantive.

It is not unusual in such cases to find the substantive in the *plural* number, and the adjective in the *singular*; as:

les **histoires** ancienne et moderne *ancient and modern history.*

Such a construction, however, is *faulty*, as it is a grammatical axiom that *the substantive should give the law to the adjective*, and not *vice versâ*. Consequently we should write:

l' histoire ancienne et la moderne;	and not les histoires ancienne
or, l' histoire ancienne et l' histoire moderne	et moderne
la littérature française et la littérature anglaise	and not les littératures française et anglaise
Corneille a réformé la scène comique et la scène tragique	and not les scènes comique et tragique.
(VOLTAIRE)	

73 So also with ordinal numeral adjectives (*premier, second, troisième, &c.*), and the words *l'un et l'autre*, we should write:

le premier et le second étage	and not les premier et second
<i>the first and second stories</i>	étages
le seizième et le dix-septième siècle furent marqués par de grandes découvertes	and not les seizième et dix-septième siècles, etc.
<i>the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries were marked by great discoveries</i>	

l'un et l'autre métal sert à la construction de plusieurs machines	and not l'un et l'autre métaux .
<i>both metals are used in the construction of several machines.</i>	

74 When two substantives of different gender and number occur as *subject* of a sentence, the one dependent on the other, as, *une foule d'hommes, un troupeau de chèvres*, it is often difficult to ascertain with which of the two the adjective should agree.*

* This difficulty is owing to the French construction of placing the adjective *after* the substantive. In English, when the adjective immediately precedes the substantive which it is intended to qualify, there can be no ambiguity; as: *a large herd of goats, a herd of wild goats.*

The rule is to **examine which of the two substantives** the adjective is intended to qualify, and to make it agree with that one. Thus :

une masse de nuages **énorme**
an enormous mass of clouds
 une croix de marbre **sculptée**
a sculptured marble cross
 une armée de barbares **rassemblée**
 de différents pays
an army of barbarians got together
from different countries

une masse de nuages **menaçants**
a mass of threatening clouds
 une croix de marbre **blanc**
a white marble cross
 une armée de barbares **adonnés**
 au pillage
an army of barbarians given over
to pillage.

75 Avoir l'air, to look, seem, to have the appearance.

If the adjective qualifying *air* is more directly applicable to the *appearance* which it is intended to express than to the *person* to whom the expression is applied, it will be made to agree with the word *air* ; as :

je n'aime pas cette fille, elle a l'air
méchant
 cette demoiselle a l'air **bon**

I do not like that young lady, she
has a bad expression
that young lady has a good-natured
expression

j'aime les personnes qui ont l'air
content

I like people who have a contented
look.

But we should write :

Qu'a donc madame votre mère?
 Elle a l'air bien **mécontente** ce
 matin
 votre sœur a l'air toute **troublée**

What is the matter with your
mother? She looks very much
put out this morning
your sister looks quite dismayed,
bewildered.

And if the adjective be followed by a complement of its own, it must *always* agree with the subject, and not with *air* :

ces messieurs ont l'air bien **fâchés**
 de ce que je leur ai dit
 elle n'a pas l'air **contente** de ce
 qui s'est passé

those gentlemen look quite vexed at
what I told them
she does not look pleased with what
has taken place.

When speaking of *things*, not *persons*, it is usual to alter the construction :

ce fruit n'a pas l'air **d'être mûr**
this fruit does not look ripe.

and not ce fruit n'a pas l'air mûr.

76 Several adjectives (and participles), when *preceding* the substantive, remain *invariable* in form, but change their gender and number when placed *after* the substantive. Such are:

Adjectives.

demi
franc
feu
mi
semi

Participles.

attendu
compris
excepté
ci-inclus
ci-joint
passé
supposé
vu.

Preceding the Substantive, invariable.

une **demi**-heure
une **demi**-livre
deux **demi**-tasses de café
Allons! Pas de **demi**-mesures.

Following the Substantive, variable.

une heure et **demie** *
une livre et **demie**.

Feu.†

feu la reine (*the late queen*)
feu ma grand'mère
feu les princes de la maison de Bourbon.

Feu cannot be placed *after* the substantive, but if preceded by the definite article or possessive adjective it is made to agree with the substantive; as:
la **feue** reine, ma **feue** grand'mère, les **feus** princes.

Franc may be used adverbially; as:
je vous envoie une bourriche (*a basket of game, fish, &c.*) **franc** de port (*carriage paid*).

If employed as an adjective, it must be made to agree with its substantive; as:
une lettre **franche** de port.

Mi.

une robe **mi**-partie de blanc et de noir
avoir de l'eau à **mi**-jambes.

Mi and **semi** cannot be employed as adjectives after the substantive.

Semi.

une fleur **semi**-double.

* It stands to reason that the substantive *demie* (half-hour on a clock or watch) follows the ordinary rules of substantives:

Quelle heure est-il? Ce n'est pas encore la *demie* *What o'clock is it? It is not yet the half-hour*
cette horloge sonne les demies et les quarts *that clock strikes the half-hours and quarters.*

† The etymology of *feu* is supposed by some grammarians to be the Latin *fuit*. Cf. 'fuit Ilium et ingens gloria Teucrorum,' *Troy was, i.e. is no more*. The more correct etymology would seem to be *functus*, *défunt* (Ang. *defunct*), Lat. *functus vid.* (*LITTRE*.)

Preceding the Substantive, invariable.

Nu.

il allait **nu-tête, nu-pieds**
c'est un **va-nu-pieds** (*a ragamuffin*).

Attendu.

il fut exempté de cette charge,
attendu (*considering*) son infirmité.

Compris.

elle a cent mille francs de rente,
non **compris** sa dot
she has 4,000l. a year, not including her dowry.

Excepté.

tout l'équipage a péri **excepté**
cinq ou six personnes
the whole crew perished with the exception of five or six persons.

Ci-joint, ci-inclus.

vous trouverez **ci-joint** (**ci-inclus**) une copie de ma lettre
you will find enclosed a copy of my letter.

Passé.

passé six heures personne ne sera plus admis
after six o'clock no one will be admitted.

Supposé.

supposé telle ou telle circonstance, que feriez-vous ?

Vu.

vu la difficulté de résister, la récompense devait être plus grande
considering the difficulty of resisting, his reward should have been greater

vu ses services

considering his services;

and in legal technicology:

vu les raisons et allégations de part et d'autre

the reasons and affirmations on both sides being taken into consideration.

Following the Substantive, variable.

il allait la tête **nue**, les pieds **nus**
Also with the word *propriété*; as:
la *nue propriété* (Angl. bare property).

des honneurs longtemps **attendus**
(*waited for, expected*).

sa dot non **comprise**.

cinq ou six personnes **exceptées**.

une copie de ma lettre **ci-jointe, ci-incluse**.

ils sont arrivés à six heures **passées**.

telle ou telle circonstance **supposée**.

toutes choses **vues** et considérées.

ADJECTIVES EMPLOYED ADVERBIALY.

77 All *adjectives* that can be employed as *adverbs* are, as such, invariable. They are :

bas	droit	vite
bon	fort	témoin
cher	haut	à témoin.
court	net	

These two last are, properly speaking, *substantives*, but may be employed as adjectives. Examples :

les ennemis ont mis les armes **bas** (*have surrendered*)
 ces fleurs ne sentent pas **bon**
 ces étoffes coûtent **cher**
 la cavalerie s'est arrêtée **court** (*stopped short*)
 elle va **droit** à son but
 cette demoiselle chante **haut** et **fort**, mais elle ne prononce pas **net**
 (*distinctly*)
 les lièvres courent **vite**.

Témoin, placed at the beginning of a sentence, or preceded by *à*, is invariable :

témoin les victoires qu'il a remportées
 je prends le ciel et les hommes **à témoin** (*to witness*).

But with *pour* the case is different, and *témoin* would be made to agree with the subject :

messieurs, je vous prends pour **témoins** (*as witnesses*).

ADJECTIVES COMPOUNDED OF TWO WORDS (*Adjectifs composés*).

78 When an adjective is made up of two *adjectives*, both are variable. Such are :

aveugle-né	ivre-mort
premier-né	sourd-muet.
mort-né	

Examples :

des enfants **morts-nés**
 des hommes **ivres-morts** (*dead drunk*)
 des femmes **sourdes-muettes** (*deaf and dumb*).

79 When the first of the two component adjectives is used *adverbially*, as in—

aigre-doux	<i>put for</i>	aigrement doux
clair-semé	„	clairement semé (<i>thinly scattered</i>)
court-vêtu }	„	courtement { vêtu jointé
court-jointé }	„	
nouveau-né	„	nouvellement né,

latter adjective alone is variable :

des oranges **aigre-douces**
des fleurs **clair-semées**
une fille **nouveau-née**
des femmes **court-vêtues**.

Except *frais-cueilli* (*fresh-picked*) and *tout-puissant*, in which both words are variable :

des fleurs **fraîches-cueillies**
des femmes **toutes-puissantes**.

The former of these for the sake of euphony ; the latter by rule of the adverb *tout* taking the feminine form before a sonant or aspirated *h*. (See remark on *tout*, page 289.)

Two adjectives, the *former* of which is qualified by the *color*, remain *both invariable* in gender and number :

cheveux **châtain-clair** (i.e. *d'un châtain clair*, of a bright chestnut color)
teintes **rose-tendre** (i.e. *d'un rose tendre*, of a delicate pink).

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES EMPLOYED IN REFERENCE TO BODILY AILMENTS OR AFFECTIONS OF ANY KIND.

It is usual to substitute the *definite article* for the *possessive adjective* in such cases, whenever there can be no doubt as to the *person* (subject of the sentence) of whom any bodily ailment or affection is predicted.

For instance, one writes :

j'ai mal à **la** tête (*not à ma tête*)
il me tourna **le** dos (*not son dos*),

because it is very evident that *I* cannot feel a pain in *anyone's* head.

And so :

mal aux dents ?	<i>not à tes dents</i>
le s'est cassé la jambe	<i>not sa jambe</i>

la foule a applaudi **des** mains et *not* de **leurs** mains et de **leurs**
des pieds *pieds*
 vous êtes-vous fait mal **au** bras? *not* à **votre** bras.

83 When there is any doubt as to the *person* concerned, the possessive adjective should be used in order to remove all ambiguity; as:

je vois que **ma** jambe enfle (*not* **la** jambe),

because it is quite possible that I might notice the swelling in *another person's leg*:

Pierre a perdu **son** argent (*not* l'argent).

84 The *possessive adjective* is used in such cases as the following, where allusion is made to a state of body or mind which is so apt to recur so frequently as to have become almost a habit:

sa migraine l'a repris	<i>he has got (one of) his sick headaches again</i>
sa goutte le tourmente	<i>he is tormented by his (old enemy) the gout</i>
sa mauvaise humeur l'a quitté	<i>he has recovered from his fit of ill-humour.</i>

85 *Usage* also authorises the employment of the possessive adjective in the following instances:

je me suis tenu sur mes jambes	<i>I was on my legs the whole time</i>
tout le temps	
je l'ai vu de mes propres yeux	<i>I saw it with my own eyes</i>
je l'ai entendu de mes propres oreilles	<i>I heard it with my own ears.</i>

Son, sa, ses, leur, leurs, APPLIED TO THINGS, NOT PERSONS.

86 When the *possessor* (substantive or pronoun) is the subject of the sentence, the possessive adjectives *son, sa, ses, leur, leurs* are to be employed. Examples:

chaque flèche a son but	<i>every arrow has its goal</i>
chaque livre a sa place	<i>each book has its place</i>
la nuit a ses agréments	<i>night has its pleasures</i>
ces vers ont leur charme	<i>these verses have a charm of their own</i>
il faut étudier les langues mortes;	<i>one must study the dead languages;</i>
elles ont bien leurs beautés	<i>they undoubtedly have their beauties.</i>

87 But when the *possessor* is *not* the subject of the sentence, and reference only is made to it, the pronoun *en* must be substituted for the possessive adjective; as for instance :

j'admire ce tableau; la beauté **en** *not sa* beauté est incontestable
est incontestable

I admire this picture; its beauty is unquestionable

ces vers ne me plaisent pas, bien **not leur** charme
que j'**en** reconnaisse le charme

these verses do not please me, although I admit their charm

j'étudie les langues mortes, parce **not leurs** beautés.
que j'en admire **les** beautés

I study the dead languages, because I admire their beauties.

88 If the *object possessed* is itself immediately governed by a preposition, the possessive adjective must be used; as :

l'Amérique est un pays bien in- *America is a very interesting coun-*
téressant; les étrangers admirent *try; foreigners marvel at the pro-*
la quantité prodigieuse de **ses** *digious quantity of its resources.*
ressources

A simple rule for determining when to use the *possessive adjective* and when the pronoun *en* is as follows :—

Use the pronoun *en* whenever the construction of the sentence will allow of your doing so. An analysis of the foregoing examples in §§ 2 and 3 will easily show when this is the case.

REPETITION OF THE POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE BEFORE SEVERAL SUBSTANTIVES REFERRING TO THE SAME POSSESSOR.

89 The possessive adjective should be repeated before each and every substantive in a sentence; as :

mon père et **ma** mère sont venus * *my father and mother are come*
mes frères et **mes** sœurs sont *my brothers and sisters are absent*
absents

il a vendu **sa** voiture et **ses** che- *he has sold his carriage and horses*
vaux

nous aimons **nos** lois et **nos** in- *we love our laws and institutions.*
stitutions

* *Usage*, however, authorises the employment of *one* possessive adjective with the words *père et mère*, considering them as representing one single idea, that of *parents*; as :

il faut aimer **ses** père et mère

one should love one's father and mother.

90 And before two or more adjectives of different or entirely opposite signification applied to the same substantive; as :

Londres a **ses** beaux et **ses** vilains quartiers *London has its fine and its ugly quarters.*

91 If the adjectives are synonymous, or similar in meaning, one possessive adjective will suffice :

mon bon et généreux maître *my good, generous master*
ses grands et magnifiques appartements *its grand and magnificent apartments.*

92 The same rule applies also to the demonstrative adjective **ce**, which should be repeated before every substantive ; as :

ce cheval et **ce** cavalier *this horse and rider*
ces officiers et **ces** soldats *these officers and soldiers ;*

(93) also before two adjectives of different signification :

ces grandes et **ces** petites maisons *these large and small houses*
 donnez-moi **ces** plumes d'oie et **ces** plumes de fer *give me those quill and steel pens.*

94 But if the adjective express nearly the same idea, one demonstrative adjective will be sufficient ; as :

ces grands et beaux chevaux *those great fine horses*
ces belles et bonnes actions méritent une récompense *these noble, good deeds deserve a reward.*

DEGREES OF COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

The ordinary rules for expressing such degrees are to be found in Part I. page 12. The following peculiarity, however, as belonging more properly to *Syntax* than to *Accidence*, is not there treated.

95 The definite article prefixed to the superlative degree of adjectives varies according to the gender of the subject *only when a comparison with some other object is instituted*; as :

cette mère est **la** plus heureuse des mères *that mother is the happiest of mothers ;*

because she is compared to *other* mothers.

de toutes les planètes la lune est *of all the planets the moon is the*
la plus rapprochée de la terre *nearest to our earth ;*

because she is compared to *other* planets.

les toilettes **les** plus à la mode *the most fashionable toilets (of all)*
 les arbres **les** plus hauts sont **les** *the tallest trees are the most exposed*
 plus exposés aux coups de la *(of all trees) to the fury of the*
 tempête *tempest.*

96 But if there is no comparison instituted with any other object, or only with the same object *under different circumstances*, the definite article remains invariable ; as :

c'est après leur mort que les grands *it is not till after death that great*
 hommes sont **le** plus considérés *men are most honoured (in com-*
parison with the honour they
have received in life)

les opérations **le** plus sagement *the most wisely combined operations*
 combinées échouent souvent *often fail*

c'est auprès de ses enfants que ma *my mother is happiest when with*
 mère est **le** plus heureuse *her children (implying that, how-*
ever happy she may be at other
times, it is then that she is
happiest)

la lune est encore bien loin même *the moon is a long way off even*
 quand elle est **le** plus rapprochée *when she is nearest the earth (as*
 de la terre *compared with her position at*
other times).

One example of the same adjective in the superlative degree applied to one and the same subject will serve to show this distinction more clearly :

la lune est la plus rapprochée de *the moon is the nearest (to our*
 toutes les planètes, mais c'est en *earth) of all the planets, but she*
 périgée qu'elle en est **le** plus *is nearest to us when in perigee*
 rapprochée *(than at all other times).*

97 With the adverbs of comparison *plus, mieux, moins*, taken absolutely and *not* in conjunction with an adjective, the article is always put in the singular number and masculine gender ; as :

cette couleur me plaît **le** mieux *this colour pleases me best*
 les gens qui apprennent **le** moins *people who learn least are not likely*
 ne sont pas ceux qui savent **le** *to be those who know most*
 plus
 c'est la personne que j'aime **le** *he (or she) is the person I like least.*
 moins

POSITION OF THE ADJECTIVE WITH REGARD TO THE NOUN (*Place de l'Adjectif*).

It has already been stated, in Part I. page 11, that adjectives are generally placed *after* the nouns which they qualify, and a list is there given of such adjectives as are generally placed *before* their nouns. Such are :

autre	grand	mauvais	pire
beau	gros	meilleur	saint
bon	jeune	moindre	tout
bravo	joli	nouveau	vieux
cher	méchant	petit	vrai.
demi			

98 But, as many adjectives not included in the foregoing list are frequently found *preceding* their nouns, either because the *taste* of the author so directs him or for the purpose of imparting a *peculiar signification* to the adjective, it is here purposed to give as complete a list as possible of such adjectives as are (subject to certain exceptions, which will be stated) almost invariably placed *after* their substantives. Such are :

Verbal adjectives, i.e. adjectives formed from the present and past participles of verbs ; as :

une femme charmante	<i>a charming woman</i>
une sentence embrouillée	<i>an obscure sentence</i>
du champagne frappé	<i>iced champagne</i>
un discours surprenant	<i>a marvellous speech</i>
une personne reconnaissante	<i>a grateful person</i>
une perle contrefaite	<i>a counterfeit pearl</i>
du vin cuit	<i>mellow wine</i>
une douleur cuisante	<i>a sharp pang (of grief).</i>

This rule is almost without exception for adjectives derived from the past participles of verbs, though the following past participles are found *preceding* their nouns with a certain signification :

un juré menteur	<i>a regular liar</i>
un sacré fripon	<i>an unmitigated rascal.</i>

The exceptions to the rule that the present participle should follow the noun are very common, especially in poetry.

99 Adjectives expressing any *physical* external accident, such as *colour, shape, &c.* ; as :

une table **ronde**
une chemise **blanche**
du vin **rouge**

des yeux **noirs**
un sentier **étroit**.

100 Adjectives expressing the *country, locality, or nationality* of the subject ; as :

la langue **anglaise**
l'empire **britannique**
le style **corinthien**
le peuple **danois**
la côte **orientale**

la Porte **ottomane**
l'histoire **romaine**
l'océan **Atlantique**
la philosophie **Épicurienne**
la religion **Chrétienne**.

101 The single pronominal adjective *quelconque* :

donnez-nous une raison **quelconque**.

102 Adjectives expressing a quality not absolutely *essential** to the subject, but only *accidentally present*, and which *might* be absent from it. Such are :

coutume **abusive**
gomme **arabique**
lettre **anonyme**
régime **absolu**
terme **abstrait**
herbe **aromatique**
verbe **actif**
action **basse**
diable **boîteux**
contrat **clandestin**
vue **courte**
style **concis**
cas **directe**
île **déserte**
ligne **droite**
oraison **dominicale**
raison **décisive**
ton **dur**
état **ecclésiastique**
mot **expressif**
science **exacte**
étoile **fixe**
eau **fraîche**

oraison **funèbre**
terminaison **féminine**
urne **fatale**
voix **harmonieuse**
air **indolent**
esprit **invisible**
lieu **inaccessible**
état **inférieur**
action **imprudente**
peine **inutile**
air **modeste**
péché **mortel**
ton **moqueur**
mal **nécessaire**
cas **oblique**
terme **obscur**
qualité **occulte**
tableau **original**
beauté **parfaite**
mains **propres**
trait **piquant**
terreur **panique**
chemin **raboteux**

* If the quality is so essentially inherent in the subject as to be an *habitual state*, *inseparable* from it, the adjective expressing such quality then becomes an *epithet*, and may be placed before the verb ; as :

les **vertes** prairies
la **blanche** aubépine
les **vaines** alarmes

les **noirs** soucis
la **sombre** demeure de Pluton, etc.

résidence **royale**
 nom **substantif**
 qualité **sensible**
 raisin **sec**
 homme **supérieur**
 viande **tendre**

regard **terne**
 zone **torride**
 coup **violent**
 femme **vaniteuse**
 point **visible**.

The above does not profess to be a *complete* list of all the adjectives (not included under the previous rules) that must be placed *after* their substantives, but a consideration of any one of them will show that they do not express any quality *inseparable* from the substantives which they qualify.

103 There are several adjectives of which the sense is completely different, according as they are placed *before* or *after* the substantive. Examples:

un **bon** homme
a good-natured, simple, easy-going
sort of man (a term rather of
contempt)

un homme **bon**
a good man

un **brave** homme
an honest man

un homme **brave**
a brave man

un **cruel** enfant
a troublesome child

un enfant **cruel**
a child fond of inflicting pain

d'une **commune** voix
with one voice, unanimously

une voix **commune**
an ordinary, vulgar tone of voice

la **dernière** année du règne de
 Louis XIV
the last year of Louis XIV.'s reign

l'année **dernière**
last year (i.e. the year that is past)

un **faux** accord
a wrong chord (not necessarily un-
melodious in itself)

un accord **faux**
an inharmonious chord

une **fausse** corde
the string of a piano, violin, harp
(out of tune—qui n'est pas
montée au ton juste)

une corde **fausse**
a string that cannot ever harmonise
with another

ce tableau est dans un **faux** jour
this picture is in a bad light

un jour **faux** dans un tableau
an ill-arranged light introduced
into the painting of a picture

une **fausse** clef
a false key (used for fraudulent
purposes)

une clef **fausse**
a wrong key (i.e. one not fitting the
lock)

une **furieuse** tempête
a terrible storm

un lion **furieux**
a raging lion

un **grand** homme
a great man (statesman, warrior,
&c.)

un homme **grand**
a tall man

une **grosse** femme
a fat woman

un **galant** homme
*an accomplished, gentlemanly man,
a fine fellow*

le **haut** ton
*an arrogant, bold manner of speak-
ing*

un **honnête** homme
*an honest man, of good morals and
behaviour*

un **mauvais** air
*an awkward, disagreeable, repulsive
exterior (not necessarily indica-
tive of evil intention)*

du **mort** bois
worthless wood

ily a vingt **mortelles** lieues d'ici là
it is twenty long leagues from here

le **malin** esprit
the spirit of evil

un **nouvel** habit
*another coat, different from the one
last worn*

le **nouveau** vin
*the wine you have just bottled or
laid in*

un **pauvre** auteur, homme
*a wretched author, an insignificant
man*

un **petit** homme
a short, small man

un **plaisant** homme, personnage
a singular, ridiculous person

un **plaisant** conte
*an improbable tale, one without
meaning*

les **propres** termes
the very (same) terms

mes **propres** mains
my own hands

un **seul** homme peut soulever ce
fardeau
*only one man (that I know of) is
able to lift that burden*

une femme **grosse**
a pregnant woman

un homme **galant**
*a gallant man (assiduous in his at-
tentions to the ladies)*

le ton **haut**
a high pitch of voice

un homme **honnête**
a man of pleasing manners

cet homme a l'air **mauvais**
*that man looks mischievous, capable
of doing harm*

du bois **mort**
dead wood (on a living tree)

une maladie **mortelle**
a fatal disease

un homme **malin**
a crafty, cunning fellow

un habit **nouveau**
a coat of new fashion and out

un habit **neuf**
a new coat fresh from the tailor's

le vin **nouveau**
this year's vintage

un auteur, homme **pauvre**
poor (in pocket)

un homme **petit**
a contemptible man

un homme **plaisant**
*a merry, jovial sort of fellow. one
addicted to saying good things*

un conte **plaisant**
an amusing tale

les termes **propres**
proper, suitable terms

des mains **propres**
clean hands

un homme **seul** ne saurait le faire
*one single man (i.e. without the
help of others) could not do it*

une **sage**-femme
a midwife

un **vilain** homme
an ugly, ill-looking fellow (physically)

un **unique** tableau
one single picture

une femme **sage**
a prudent, well-conducted woman

un homme **vilain**
a sordid, stingy, mean man

un tableau **unique**
a picture unique of its kind.

ADJECTIVES FOLLOWED BY A PREPOSITION GOVERNING A VERB OR SUBSTANTIVE (*Régime de l'Adjectif*).

104 In many instances the adjective in French is followed by the same preposition as in English :

digne d'éloge

worthy of praise

nuisible à la santé

injurious to health

un passeport valable **pour** un an

a passport good for one year.

105 But there is such a large proportion of adjectives in French with which this is *not* the case, that we subjoin as complete a list as possible of such adjectives as are followed by the preposition *de* and of those that require *à*.

Adjectives requiring the Preposition DE after them.

absent	contrit	honteux	las
avide	digne	indigne	mécontent
ambitieux	différent	impatient	oublieux
aise (rarely used without <i>bien</i> : <i>bien aise</i>)	envieux	impossible (see next §)	plein
aisé (see next §)	exempt	incapable	soigneux
capable	fou	ivre	soucieux
content	fier	jaloux	sûr
curieux	furieux	libre (see § β)	tributaire
	glorieux		vide.

Adjectives requiring the Preposition à after them.

accessible	comparable	horrible (see next §)	pareil
adroit	dispos	ingénieux	prêt
agréable (see next §)	dur	inexorable	prompt
agile	désagréable (see next §)	inutile (see next §)	propre
alerte	doux (see next §)	impénétrable	postérieur
attentif	enclin	importun	préférable
antérieur	exact	inférieur	redoutable
âpre	facile (see next §)	invisible	risible
bon (see next §)	favorable	invulnérable	sujet
beau (see next §)	funeste	lourd	semblable
contraire	formidable	lent	sensible
conform ³	habile	laid	supérieur
cher		nuisible	utile (see next §)
			visible

106 Many of the foregoing adjectives require *de* when the subject of the sentence is *il*, and the following verb used in an active sense, and *à* when the subject of the sentence is *ce* and the verb employed in a passive sense.

Such are: *aisé, impossible, libre, agréable, bon, beau, doux, facile, horrible, inutile, utile.*

il est horrible de penser, de voir, etc. <i>it is horrible to think, to see, &c.</i>	c'est horrible à penser, à voir <i>it is a horrible thing to think of, to see</i>
il est beau de mourir pour la patrie <i>it is a fine thing to die for one's country</i>	c'est beau à considérer <i>it is fine to look at</i>
il est bon de savoir que, etc. <i>it is a good thing to know that, &c.</i>	c'est bon à savoir <i>that is worth knowing</i>
il est impossible de concevoir, etc. <i>it is impossible to conceive, &c.</i>	c'est impossible à concevoir <i>it is inconceivable.</i>

107 Some adjectives take *de* before a verb and *à* before a pronoun or substantive; as:

il est doux de voir ces deux amis ensemble <i>it is pleasant to see those two friends together</i>	cette étoffe est douce à la main <i>that material is soft to the touch</i>
vous êtes libre de partir <i>you are free to go away</i>	libre à vous de partir quand vous voudrez <i>you can go away when you will</i>
il est agréable de jouir d'une bonne santé <i>it is a pleasant thing to enjoy good health</i>	ce tableau est agréable à l'œil <i>this picture is pleasing to the eye</i>
inutile de rien ajouter de plus! <i>it is no use saying any more!</i>	il est inutile à sa famille <i>he is useless to his family.</i>

108 When two adjectives govern *the same* preposition, they may be followed by one single complement; as:

il est utile et cher **à** sa famille
il est aimé et chéri **de** ses sujets;

but if the adjectives govern different prepositions the construction must be altered; as:

not **il** est utile et chéri **de** sa famille,
but **il** est utile **à** sa famille et **il en** est chéri.

Aucun, Autre, Certain, Chaque, Maint, Même, Nul, Plusieurs, Quel, Quelque, Quelconque, Tel, Tout.

Many of the above are sometimes employed as *pronouns*, sometimes as *adverbs*; but, as they are essentially *adjectives*, and more often so used than as pronouns or adverbs, this seems to be the proper place to treat of some peculiarities in their inflections.

AUCUN (*aliquis unus*, or *aliquis homo* (DIEZ)), *not any*.

109 *Aucun* is both adjective and pronoun, and is nearly always followed by a negative particle or the preposition *sans*.

Adjective.

aucune raison **ne** peut justifier le mensonge

no reason can justify falsehood

. . . **sans** violence **aucune**,
j'aurais vu Nicanor épouser Rodogune (CORNEILLE)

I would have seen Nicanor espouse Rodogune without any violence (being done to my feelings)

Pronoun.

aucun de nos grands écrivains n'a travaillé dans le genre de l'épopée (VOLTAIRE)

none of our great writers have laboured in the epic style

je **ne** connais **aucune** de ces dames

I do not know a single one of those ladies.

a. In *interrogative* sentences, or when *doubt* is expressed, *aucun* is often employed without a negative particle.

de tous ces auteurs y a-t-il **aucun** qui vous plaise mieux que W. Scott? *of all those authors, is there any one that you prefer to Walter Scott?*

je doute qu'il y ait **aucun** auteur sans défaut *I do not think there exists any faultless author.*

β. As an adjective *aucun* is rarely employed in the plural number, though Racine has :

aucuns monstres par moi domptés (*Phédre*),

and Corneille :

je ne me satisfais d'**aucunes** conjectures,

and the 'Dictionary of the Academy' gives the following example :

il ne m'a rendu **aucuns** soins ;

but the rule seems to be that *aucun* should only adopt the *plural form*—

1. With such words as have no singular, as *ancêtres, funérailles, pleurs*; or,

2. With such as have a different meaning in the plural, as *troupes, gages*.

a. aucunes funérailles ne furent plus magnifiques *no funeral obsequies were more magnificent*

β. aucunes troupes ne sont mieux disciplinées *no troops are better disciplined.*

γ. Aucuns and *d'aucuns* (some people) are found used *pronominally*:

ce fait raconté par *aucuns* *this fact related by some people*
d'aucuns croiront que j'en suis amoureux *some people will suppose that I am in love with her*

il y en a *d'aucunes* qui prennent des maris seulement pour se tirer de la contrainte de leurs parents—*MOLIERE (Mal. imag.)* *there are some women who take husbands only to get free of the constraint of their parents.*

110 AUTRE is both pronoun and adjective.

It is a *pronoun* when *not* joined to a substantive; as:

arrivez, vous *autres*! *come here, you fellows!*
un *autre* que moi vous en aurait dit autant *anyone else but myself would have told you the same*
d'autres vous diront *others will tell you.*

It is an *adjective*:

a. When joined to a substantive; as:

autre temps, *autres* mœurs *other times, other fashions.*

β. When preceded by the pronoun *en* substituted for some substantive before expressed; as:

laissez cette orange, je vous *en* donnerai *une autre* *leave that orange, I will give you another (viz. orange).*

γ. When it refers *evidently* to a preceding noun; as:

Voulez-vous ce livre-ci? Merci, *l'autre*, s'il vous plaît *Will you have this book? No, thank you, the other, please.*

δ. With the adverb *tout*, and when it means *different*; as:

vous êtes *tout autre* que vous n'étiez *you are quite changed from what you were.*

En voici bien d'un autre, or *d'une autre*, is an idiomatic phrase equivalent to the English (familiar) expressions, *There you go again! What next, I wonder!*

111 CERTAIN (*certain, some*) is never used except as an adjective :

certains hommes
certaines femmes.

112 CHAQUE (*each, every*) is essentially adjective, is always used with a singular substantive, has no plural number, and must never be confounded with the pronoun CHACUN.

1. *Chaque* is invariably followed by a substantive.

2. *Chacun* never ; as :

1. **chaque** soldat portait pour *each soldier carried three days' provisions*
trois jours de vivres
2. ils portaient, **chacun**, pour *they carried, each man, three days' provisions.*
trois jours de vivres

113 MAINT (*many; Angl. many a*) is used indifferently in the singular or plural :

j'ai lu dans maint auteur	<i>I have read in many an author</i>
mainte fois, or maintes fois	<i>many a time and oft</i>
sans parler de mainte caresse	<i>to say nothing of oft-repeated</i>
(LA FONTAINE)	<i>caresses.</i>

MÊME is either a pronoun, an adverb, or an adjective.

MÊME Pronoun.

114 As a pronoun it is easily distinguished by being invariably preceded by the definite article and not followed by a substantive ; as :

Quel temps fait-il aujourd'hui ?	<i>What sort of weather is it to-day ?</i>
Le même qu'hier	<i>The same as yesterday</i>
Sont-ce là d'autres bottes que vous portez ?	<i>Are those other boots you have on ?</i>
Non, ce sont les mêmes	<i>No, they are the same.</i>

The distinction between *même* adjective and *même* adverb is not so evident.

MÊME Adjective.

115 *Même* is an adjective, and as such variable in gender and number, when it precedes the substantive and has the meaning of (α) 'identically the same,' or (β) 'similar,' or (γ) when it is joined to (and follows) a pronoun to add intensity to it ; as :

- α . c'est **le même** soleil qui éclaire toutes les nations de la terre *it is (identically) the same sun which shines upon all the nations of the earth*
- β . vous retombez dans **les mêmes** alarmes (RACINE) *you are relapsing into the same (i.e. exactly similar) fears*
- il n'y a pas deux hommes sur la terre, ayant **même** visage, **mêmes** traits *there are not two men in the whole earth having exactly similar faces and features.*

- γ. les grands ne semblent être nés *great people seem to be born to*
 que pour **eux-mêmes** *benefit no one else but themselves*
 nous le ferons aisément **nous-** *we will easily do it ourselves.*
mêmes*

116 Rule for distinguishing between *même* adjective and *même* adverb when attached to and immediately following a substantive in the *plural number*.

MÊME Adjective.

With only *one substantive*, *même* is to be considered as an adjective, and made to agree in gender and number :

- α. aux yeux d'un cœur bilieux, les *to a malevolent eye the very virtues*
 vertus **mêmes** sont des vices *are vices*
 β. ces murs **mêmes**, seigneur, *these very walls, my lord, may have*
 peuvent avoir des yeux (RACINE) *eyes*
 γ. les dieux **mêmes** deviennent *even the gods become jealous of the*
 jaloux des bergers *shepherds.*

MÊME Adverb.

117 If there are two or more substantives, *même* is to be considered as an *adverb*, and invariable in gender and number :

- α. les animaux, les plantes **même**, *animals, and even plants, were*
 étaient au nombre des divinités égyptiennes *reckoned among the Egyptian divinities*
 β. j'enlèverais ma femme à ce *I would carry my wife off from this*
 temple, à vos bras, aux dieux *temple, from your arms, ay, even*
même ! *from the gods!*
 γ. les libertins, les impies **même**, *libertines, and even impious men,*
 tremblent à la vue de la mort *tremble at the sight of death.*

118 *Même* attached to, and intensifying, a verb is always an *adverb* and invariable :

- vous ne m'attraperiez pas, **même** *you would not overtake me, even*
 en courant *running.*

119 CEUX MÊME. CEUX MÊMES.

The opinions of grammarians are divided as to whether, joined to *ceux*, *même* should be written with or without an *s*; as many instances can be adduced from the best authors of one as of the other form. It seems, however, more in accordance with the foregoing rule to consider *même* when joined

* Note that with the plural pronoun *vous* used in speaking to one individual, and so considered as *singular*, the word *même* will be written without an *s* :

faites-le vous-même, mon ami *do it yourself, my friend.*

to the demonstrative pronoun *celui, celle, ceux*, as much an *adjective* as when coupled with the personal pronoun, and consequently variable in gender and number.

Racine, in his preface to the *Plaideurs*, has written :

ceux mêmes qui s'y étaient le plus divertis ont eu peur de n'avoir pas ri dans les règles.

Position of MÊME.

120 *MÊME adjective*, meaning *the same*, is placed *before* the substantive :

le même roi	<i>the same king</i>
la même maison	<i>the same house</i>
les mêmes lois	<i>the same laws.</i>

121 *MÊME adjective*, meaning *self*, or *adverb*, meaning *even, also*, follows the substantive or pronoun :

les dieux mêmes	<i>the gods themselves</i>
elle viendra elle- même	<i>she will come herself</i>
les animaux, les plantes même , etc.	<i>animals, ay, even plants, &c.</i>

There are one or two remarkable instances in classical poetry of the transposition of this order; one of the most famous is from Corneille (*Cid*, act ii. sc. 2) :

sais-tu que ce vieillard fut la	<i>do you know that that old man was</i>
même Vertu ?	<i>Virtue itself?</i>

NUL (*no one, no, not any, null and void*) is both pronoun and adjective.

122 *NUL pronoun* is invariably of the masculine gender and singular number, is synonymous with *personne* (meaning *no one*), and is followed by the negative particle *ne* :

a. nul n'est content de sa destinée	<i>no one is satisfied with his lot</i>
β. nul n'est prophète en son pays (LA FONTAINE)	<i>no one is a prophet in his own country.</i>

123 *NUL adjective* agrees with its substantive in gender and number :

a. nul homme vivant	<i>no man living</i>
β. l'homme ne trouve nette part son bonheur sur la terre	<i>man nowhere finds true happiness on earth.</i>

124 *NUL* is rarely employed in the plural, except—

a. *Like aucun* (see page 278), with words essentially plural,

or having a distinct signification in the plural, different from the singular :

a. nullo troupes ne sont mieux *no troops are better disciplined ;*
disciplinées

or (β) when it is the predicate of a sentence with the meaning of *null, void, of no value* :

B. ces effets sont nuls *these bills (commercial) are mere waste-paper*
toutes ces procédures sont *all these transactions are null and*
nullo *void.*

125 PLUSIEURS (*several, many*) is either *pronoun* or *adjective* ; in either case it is invariably *plural*, and has but one form for the masculine and feminine genders.

Pronoun :

plusieurs l'ont dit *many people have said so*
Connaissez-vous ces dames ? J'en *Do you know those ladies ? I know*
connais *plusieurs* *several of them.*

Adjective :

plusieurs auteurs se sont servis *several authors have used that ex-*
de cette expression *pression*
il est venu *plusieurs* fois nous *he came several times to see us*
voir
la France a subi *plusieurs* révo- *France has undergone several revo-*
lutions *lutions.*

QUELQUE.

126 *Quelque* is both adjective and adverb. As an adjective, meaning *some*, it agrees with its substantive :

a. quelque diable aussi me pous- *some evil spirit, too, urging me on*
sant (LA FONTAINE)
B. quelques auteurs l'ont affirmé *some authors have affirmed it.*

[Note that with the word *fois* (*times*), *quelque* does *not* take the plural *s*, *quelquefois* (*sometimes*) being considered as one word.]

127 *Quelque* adjective, meaning *whatever*, agrees with its substantive whether that substantive be qualified by another adjective or not : *

* Some grammarians are of opinion that *quelque* immediately preceding an adjective should *not* take the *s* of the plural; but Noël and Chapsal, Delille, and Du Vivier (*Grammaire des Grammaires*) are of opinion that it should be written with an *s*, and the majority of the best-known authors confirm this opinion.

- α. **quelques** raisons que vous me puissiez dire (RACINE) *whatever reasons you may be able to give me.*
 β. **quelques** vains lauriers que promette la guerre (BOILEAU) *whatever vain glories war may promise.*

128 *Quelque* (however, to what a degree) qualifying either an adjective or participle alone (i.e. without a substantive immediately attached to it), or joined to another adverb, is an *adverb*, and as such invariable in form :

- α. **quelque** grands que soient leurs travaux *however great their labours may be*
 β. **quelque** corrompues que soient nos mœurs *however corrupt our morals may be*
 γ. **quelque** adroitement qu'ils s'y prennent *however adroitly they may set about it.*

[Observe that the verb after **quelque** (however) is invariably in the subjunctive mood.]

129 *Quelque* followed by a numeral and meaning *about, some*, is an *adverb* and invariable :

- α. il y a **quelque** cinq cents ans de cela *it is some five hundred years since then*
 β. *Chicaneau.* Et quel âge avez-vous ? Vous avez bon visage. *Ch. And what age are you ? You look well.*
La comtesse. Hé, **quelque** soixante ans (RACINE, *Plaideurs*, act i. sc. 7) *The Countess. Well, some sixty years or so.*

130 The final *e* of *quelque* can only suffer elision before *un* or *une* :

quelqu'un, quelqu'une.

Before all other vowels it remains unchanged :

quelque amour, **quelque** espoir, **quelque** impression, **quelque** obstacle, **quelque** uniforme.

131 QUELQUE CHOSE (*something*).

Quelque chose employed as one single word, and considered as a *pronoun*, is *masculine* :

- quand je vous demande **quelque chose**, vous devriez me le donner *when I ask you for something, you ought to give it me*
 on m'a raconté **quelque chose** qui est très-plaisant *some one told me something very funny.*

132 *Quelque chose* employed with an adjective takes the *preposition de* :

quelque chose de bon	<i>something good</i>
quelque chose de mauvais	<i>something bad</i>

(cf. Lat. *aliquid boni.*)

133 QUEL adjective or pronoun (as stated in Part I. page 16) agrees in gender and number with its substantive :

Adjective :

a. quelle ville qu'Athènes! quel- les lois! quelle police! quelle valeur! (LA BRUYÈRE)	<i>what a town Athens was! what laws! what government! what valour!</i>
β. quelle réponse t'a-t-on faite?	<i>what answer did they give you?</i>

Pronoun :

voyez quelle je suis et quelle je veux être! (CORNEILLE)	<i>see what a one I am, and what I intend to be!</i>
---	--

134 QUEL QUE (*whatever, of what sort soever*) is written in two words, and *quel* is always immediately followed by the auxiliary verb *être* or *pouvoir*, or by a pronoun and one of those verbs, and is made to agree with the subject of the verb in gender and number (with the verb invariably in the subjunctive mood) :

quel que soit le motif qui vous pousse	<i>whatever be the motive that urges you</i>
quelle que soit votre intention	<i>whatever be your intention</i>
quels que soient vos desseins	<i>whatever be your designs</i>
quelles que puissent être ses vues là-dessus	<i>whatever may be his views on that subject</i>
donnez-moi un titre quel qu'il soit	<i>give me whatever title you like</i>
les mortels, quels qu'ils soient,	<i>all men, of whatever rank they may</i>
sont égaux devant la loi	<i>be, are equal in the eyes of the law</i>
donnez-moi une chaise quelle qu'elle soit	<i>give me a chair, no matter which.</i>

135 QUANTES is only used with the word *fois* and in such expressions as the following :

je vous le dirai toutes et quantes fois qu'il vous plaira	<i>I will tell it you as often as you like</i>
je ferai cela toutes fois et quantés	<i>I will do that as many times as I choose, as you wish.</i>

136 QUELCONQUE (*of some sort or description*) invariably follows the substantive, and is made to agree with it :

donnez-moi un livre quelconque	<i>give me some book or other (no matter which)</i>
deux points quelconques étant donnés	<i>any two points being given.</i>

With a negative it means *none whatever* (and requires to be followed by the subjunctive mood):

il n'y a force **quelconque** qui *there is no power on earth could*
 puisse m'y obliger *force me to do that,*

137 TEL (*such, so great, such an one*) is either (a) *adjective* or (β) *pronoun*:

a. As *adjective* it is placed *between* the indefinite article and the substantive (as distinct from the English fashion, *such a man, such a thing*):

un tel homme	<i>such a man</i>
une telle femme	<i>such a woman</i>
je n'ai jamais vu de telles prétentions	<i>I never saw such pretensions.</i>

β. As *pronoun* it is either *relative*:

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. une conduite telle que la vôtre est impardonnable | <i>conduct such as yours is unpardonable</i> |
| 2. des moyens tels que vous en employez, ne réussiront jamais | <i>means such as you employ will never succeed;</i> |

or *absolute* (and idiomatic):

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. un tel m'a dit | <i>So-and-so told me</i> |
| 2. Madame une telle | <i>Mrs. So-and-so</i> |
| 3. tel qui rit vendredi, dimanche pleurera (RACINE, <i>Plaideurs</i> , act i. sc. 1) | <i>a man who is merry on Friday may have cause to weep on Sunday (don't laugh till you are out of the wood).</i> |

138 TEL QUEL (*such as it is, so so*):

un prédicateur tel quel	<i>some preacher or other (depreciatory style)</i>
on me donna du vin tel quel	<i>they gave me wine, such as it was</i>
des étoffes telles quelles	<i>some sort of materials or other.</i>

Tout is either *pronoun*, or *adjective*, or *adverb*.

139 Tout *pronoun* is only found in the singular number and masculine gender, and has the signification of *everything*:

tout vient à point à qui sait attendre (prov.)	<i>everything succeeds with those who wait patiently</i>
un véritable chrétien doit être prêt à tout	<i>a true Christian should be prepared for everything</i>
tout est perdu fors l'honneur!	<i>all is lost save honour!</i>

140 Tout *adjective* has two significations: (a) *all, the whole*,

(β) *each, every*, and must agree with its substantive in gender and number.

α. **TOUT** (*all, the whole, every*) :

tout le monde, toute la terre	<i>the whole world, the whole earth</i>
tous les serpents ne sont pas vénimeux	<i>all serpents are not poisonous</i>
toutes les maisons furent détruites	<i>all the houses were destroyed</i>
tous les jours	<i>every day</i>
tous les deux, trois jours, etc.	<i>every other day, every third day, &c.</i>

β. **TOUT**, meaning *each, every*, when it is employed in the singular number, is not followed by the definite article :

tout citoyen doit servir son pays	<i>every citizen must serve his country</i>
toute vérité n'est pas bonne à dire (prov.)	<i>it is not always expedient to divulge the truth</i>
toute bonne action mérite une récompense	<i>every good action deserves a reward.</i>

141 Position of **TOUT** (Adjective).

α. **TOUT** *precedes* the article (definite or indefinite) :

tout le temps	<i>the whole time</i>
nous avons attendu toute une heure	<i>we waited a whole hour.</i>

β. Or the possessive adjectives *mon, ton, son, &c.* :

il a employé tout son pouvoir	<i>he has employed his whole power</i>
nous avons perdu tous nos vaisseaux	<i>we have lost all our ships.</i>

γ. Or the demonstrative pronouns *ce, celui, &c.* :

Jupiter dit un jour, Que tout ce qui respire s'en vienne comparaître aux pieds de ma grandeur (LA FONTAINE)	<i>Jupiter said one day, Let everything that has breath come and appear at the feet of my majesty</i>
tous ceux qui viendront après moi en feront autant	<i>all those who come after me will do the same.</i>

But **TOUT** (*plural*) follows the pronouns *nous, vous, eux* :

nous tous * approuvons sa conduite	<i>we all approve of his conduct</i>
je parle à vous tous	<i>I am speaking to all of you</i>
eux tous nous accompagneront	<i>they will all accompany us.</i>

* It is more usual to place the word *tous* after the verb, with the plural pronouns :

nous sommes **tous** amis de votre père
vous viendrez **tous**, n'est-ce pas ?

142 *Tout*, *adjective*, joined to the name of a town, remains invariable, even though the name of the town may be feminine; as:

tout Rome le sait

all Rome knows it

tout Florence en a entendu parler

all Florence has heard speak of it.

143 *A tout moment, à tous moments, de toute sorte, de toutes sortes, de tout côté, de tous côtés.*

There is great discrepancy of opinion among the grammarians as to the difference of signification of these expressions, according as they are used in the *singular* or *plural* number. Some would maintain that in the singular number they mean *each* or *either*, as, *de tout côté*, on either side, and in the plural number *all*, as, *de tous côtés*, on all sides; but the distinction does not seem to be carried out by the examples adduced, and indeed most writers employ either number indiscriminately.

TOUTEFOIS. TOUTES LES FOIS.

144 Care must be taken to distinguish between these two expressions, the former, *toutefois*, being an adverb meaning *anyhow* or *and yet*; as:

toutefois, je vous engage à ne pas y aller

anyhow, I recommend you not to go there;

the latter; *toutes les fois*, compounded of an adjective, *tout*, the definite article, and the substantive *fois*, and meaning *every time*:

venez me voir **toutes les fois** que vous allez à Londres

come and see me every time you go to London.

145 *Tout*, *adverb*, meaning *quite*, *entirely*, *altogether*, &c., can be employed to qualify (α) an adjective or participle; (β) a substantive; (γ) a preposition; (δ) another adverb; (ε) an adjective used adverbially, and (*with one single exception to be found under α*) is invariable.

α. *Tout* with Adjective or Participle.

il est **tout** pâle de colère

he is quite pale with rage

elle est **tout** épuisée de fatigue

she is quite worn out with fatigue

nous sommes **tout** étonnés de l'ap-prendre

we are quite astonished to hear it.

IMPORTANT EXCEPTION.

If the adjective or participle be in the *feminine* gender singular or plural number, and begin with a *consonant* or aspirated *h*, *tout* is then made to agree with it in gender and number :

j'ai bu de l'eau de vie toute pure	<i>I drank some brandy quite neat</i>
mes sœurs sont toutes rêveuses	<i>my sisters are in a very thoughtful mood</i>
elles sont rentrées toutes haletantes de frayeur	<i>they ran in panting with terror.</i>

β. *TOUT with a Substantive signifying 'entirely,' 'all,' 'altogether.'*

les Français sont tout feu	<i>the French are altogether a fiery (excitable) nation</i>
cette femme est tout yeux, tout oreilles	<i>that woman is all eyes and ears (observant).</i>

γ. *TOUT with a Preposition.*

je suis tout à vous	<i>I am quite at your service</i>
ma sœur était tout en larmes	<i>my sister was bathed in tears</i>
mes chevaux sont revenus tout en sueur	<i>my horses came in all of a sweat</i>
tout en admirant votre conduite,	<i>while admiring your conduct, we</i>
nous devons encore vous gronder	<i>must still blame you</i>
ma maison est tout près de la vôtre	<i>my house is quite close to yours.</i>

δ. *TOUT with another Adverb.*

ma robe est tout aussi fraîche que l'année dernière	<i>my dress is just as fresh as (it was) last year</i>
la rivière coule tout doucement	<i>the river flows quite gently.</i>
tout autrement	<i>in a very different manner, much more</i>
ils sont tout autrement aimables que leurs voisins	<i>they are much more amiable than their neighbours.</i>

ε. *With Adjectives used adverbially.*

tout beau !	<i>gently! not so fast!</i>
tout bas	<i>in a very low tone</i>
tout haut	<i>quite loud</i>
elle est tombée tout de son long sur le parquet	<i>she fell her whole length on the floor</i>
tout-de-suite	<i>immediately</i>
tout-à-fait	<i>quite</i>

tout-à-coup*all of a sudden***tout d'un coup***all at once, at one and the same time.*

Example to illustrate the Distinction of the foregoing seemingly similar Expressions.

tout-à-coup le prisonnier saisit
la coupe et l'avalait **tout d'un**
coup

*all of a sudden the prisoner seized
the cup and emptied it at one
draught.*

146 *Tout* adverb, followed by an adjective or participle and the conjunction *que*, requires the verb to be put in the *indicative* mood :

mon frère, **tout** instruit qu'il **est**,
se trompe quelquefois

*my brother, learned as he is, is
sometimes mistaken*

tout admirable qu'**est** la Vertu,
elle trouve moins d'admiration
que le Vice

*all admirable as Virtue is, she finds
fewer admirers than Vice*

cette eau, **toute** pure qu'elle **est**,
ne me plaît pas

*this water, pure as it is, does not
please me.*

[Note that *bien que*, *quoique*, with almost similar signification, require the *subjunctive* mood :

bien qu'il soit instruit, **quoiqu'elle soit** admirable, etc.,

because they express some doubt; whereas tout . . . que affirms positively the existence of a fact.]

TOUT AUTRE.

147 *Tout* followed immediately by *autre* and a substantive is both (α) adjective and variable, or (β) adverb and invariable.

α. It is an adjective when *not* preceded by the indefinite article and whenever the sense allows of the word *autre* being transposed, and placed *after* the substantive :

toute autre place qu'un trône
aurait été indigne d'elle (BOS-
SUET)

*any other place than a throne would
have been unworthy of her.*

Here the order of the sentence might well be transposed thus :

toute place **autre** qu'un trône, *any place other than a throne, &c.*
etc.

β. *Tout* followed by *autre* is an adverb (and invariable) when preceded by the *indefinite article*, and whenever the sense would *not* allow of transposition :

donnez-moi **une tout autre** oc- *give me a very different task.*
cupation

IV. NUMERALS.

(Nombres, Numéros, Chiffres.)

A complete list of the *cardinal*, and rules for forming the *ordinal* numbers, will be found in Part I. pages 13-14.

PECULIARITIES IN THE ORTHOGRAPHY AND PRONUNCIATION OF
SOME OF THE CARDINAL NUMBERS.

148 DEUX.—The *x* is not pronounced except before vowels and an unaspirated *h*, when it is pronounced like a *z*.

deux amis	pronounce	deux x -amis
deux hommes	„	deux x -hommes.

149 TROIS.—The *s* is mute except before vowels and an unaspirated *h*.

150 QUATRE * (pronounced *katre*).

In pronouncing the familiar expression *entre quatre yeux* (to one's face), it is usual to insert *z* between *quatre* and *yeux*:

je le lui dirai entre quatre-(~~x~~)-yeux
I will tell it him to his face.

151 CINQ.—The *q* is pronounced like a *k* before a vowel or unaspirated *h*; as:

cinq-hommes
cinq-oranges;

mute before consonants or an aspirated *h*; as:

cin(q) soldats
cin(q) homards.

* In derivations of *quatre*, if spelt with a *d*, the *ua* is pronounced *oua*; if with a *t*, the *qua* is pronounced *ua*.

Examples:
quadrupède pronounce kouadripède
quadrilatère, etc. „ kouadrilatère.

Except:
un quadrille „ kadrille
une quadrillion „ kadrillion.

un quaterne (a series of four numbers in a lottery)
un quatrain pronounce ketrain.

But:
quattrocentiste (i.e. belonging to the fifteenth century) pronounce kouattrocentiste.

The Latin words *quater*, four times, *quatuor*, a piece of music played or sung by four persons, and the Italian word *quarto* (in the fourth place), are pronounced *kouater*, *kouatuor*, and *kouarto*.

152 SIX.—The *x* is pronounced as *ss* when enouncing the number alone, and somewhat softened before a vowel or mute *h*; as:

six—oranges
 six—hommes;

mute before a consonant or aspirated *h*; as:

si(*x*) personnes
 si(*x*) héros.

153 SEPT.—In enouncing the number *alone*, omit the *p* and pronounce the *t*:

set.

Before a vowel or mute *h*, pronounce the *t*:

sept—oranges
 sept—hommes.

Before a consonant or aspirated *h*, pronounce neither the *p* nor *t*:

les se(pt) péchés capitaux
 se(pt) hiboux.

154 HUIT.—Pronounce the *t* except under the same circumstances as the preceding.

155 NEUF.—In enouncing the number *alone*, pronounce the *f*, but suppress it altogether before consonants or an aspirated *h*:

neu(f) soldats
 neu(f) hiboux.

Pronounce the *f* as *v* before vowels and an unaspirated *h*:

neuf hommes = neuv-hommes
 neuf oranges = neuv-oranges.

156 DIX.—In enouncing the number *alone*, pronounce the final *x* as *ss*. The *x* is not pronounced before a consonant or aspirated *h*; it has the sound of *z* before a vowel or unaspirated *h*:

dix hommes = dix—hommes
 dix amis = dix—amis.

157 ONZE.—The *o* of *onze* is treated as if the word began with an aspirated *h*; that is to say, a vowel is not elided

before it, nor does any *liaison* take place with a preceding consonant; as :

c'est aujourd'hui **le onze***

to-day is the eleventh of the month.

And in speaking of *Louis Onze* (Louis XI.), the *s* of Louis is not pronounced.

158 DIX-SEPT
dix-huit
dix-neuf

pronounce
"
"

dix-sett
dix-huit
dix-neuf.

159 VINGT.—In enouncing the number alone or before a consonant or mute *h*, neither the *s* nor the *t* is pronounced :

vin(gt) soldats
vin(gt) héros.

Before a vowel or unaspirated *h* the *t* alone is pronounced :

vingt hommes
vingt amis

pronounce
"

vint-hommes
vint-amis.

The *t* is also pronounced in all numbers up to thirty :

vingt et un
vingt-deux
vingt-trois

vingt-quatre
vingt-cinq
vingt-six

vingt-sept
vingt-huit
vingt-neuf ;

but *not* before *mille* or *million* (vin(gt) mille hommes).

160 QUATRE-VIN(GTS).—In enouncing the number alone, or before a consonant or aspirated *h*, *gts* are mute; if followed by a vowel or mute *h*, the *s* alone is pronounced; as :

quatre-vingts-hommes
quatre-vingts-ans.

When followed by another number, the *s* is actually suppressed and the *gt* are mute; as :

quatre-vingt†-un
quatre-vingt-deux
quatre-vingt-onze

pronounce
"
"

quatre-*vin* un
quatre-*vin* deux
quatre-*vin* onze, etc.

* There is one exception to this rule; with the preposition *entre* the final *e* is elided; as :

venez *entre* onze heures et midi *pronounce* venez entr' onze heures et midi.

† Note too the suppression of *et*. From 21 to 71 inclusive, all the first numbers in each decimal take the copula *et*, as *vingt et un*, *trente et un*, *soixante et onze*; but 81, 91, 101, are written *quatre-vingt-un*, *quatre-vingt-onze*, *cent un*.

161 CENT.—The *t* is mute in enouncing the number *alone*. It is sounded before a vowel or unaspirated *h* ; as :

cent-oranges
cent-hommes.

It is mute before *un*, *unième*, *huit*, and *onze* ; as :

cen(t) un hommes	101 men
le cen(t) unième régiment d'in- fanterie	the 101st regiment of infantry.

Cent multiplied by another number takes an *s* if not immediately followed by another number ; as :

deux cents hommes	200 men
trois cents vaisseaux	300 vessels ;

or where its complement is understood ; as :

nous partîmes cinq cents	we set out 500 in all ;
--------------------------	-------------------------

but if another number follows it immediately, the *s* is suppressed ; as :

trois cent dix hommes	310 men
quatre cent cinquante livres	450 pounds ;

or when announcing a date, even when *not* followed by another number ; as :

l'an mil trois cent	the year 1300.
---------------------	----------------

The substantive *cent*, occasionally used for *centaine* (in commercial language generally), is preceded by an article, and takes the sign of the plural like any other substantive ; as :

un cent de marrons	100 chesnuts
deux cents d'œufs	200 eggs.

162 MILLE, 1,000, never takes an *s* in the plural :

trois mille hommes	3,000 men
quatre mille soldats	4,000 soldiers.

In English it is usual to precede the words *hundred* and *thousand* by the indefinite article or the numeral *one*, and to

join them to another number by the copula *and*. This is *not* the case in French :

one <i>hundred men</i>	cent hommes
a <i>hundred chances to one</i>	cent chances contre une
a <i>hundred and twenty men</i>	cent vingt hommes
a <i>thousand reasons</i>	mille raisons
<i>three thousand and twenty</i>	trois mille vingt.

There is one exception in the title of the book known as 'The Arabian Nights' in English, which in French is 'Les mille et une Nuits.'

163 *Mille* is written *mil* in dates; as :

l'année mil huit cent soixante et onze	<i>the year 1871.</i>
---	-----------------------

164 *Million, billion, milliard* (1,000,000,000,, *trillion*, &c., are treated as substantives, preceded by the indefinite article, take an *s* in the plural, and are followed by the preposition *de*; as :

un million d'hommes	1,000,000 <i>men</i>
la France a dû payer cinq milliards d'indemnité à la Prusse	<i>France has had to pay five milliards of indemnity to Prussia.</i>

165 NOTE.—Cardinal numbers spoken of as cyphers do not take an *s* in the plural; as :

cet enfant ne fait pas bien ses huit et ses neuf	<i>that child does not form his eights and nines well.</i>
--	--

166 The following *Italian* numbers are frequently employed to number the divisions of arguments in speeches or sermons and in commerce :

primo	1 ^o
secondo (<i>pronounce</i> secondo)	2 ^o
tertio	3 ^o
quarto	4 ^o .

167 ORDINAL NUMBERS.

		<i>Abbreviated in French.</i>
<i>first</i>	premier, première	1 ^r , 1 ^{re}
<i>second</i>	second, seconde, <i>or</i> deuxième	2 ^o
<i>third</i>	troisième	3 ^o , etc.

For ALL the rest add *ième* to the cardinal ; as :

trois, troisième ; quatre, quatrième, etc.

In the ordinals derived from *neuf* and *dix-neuf*, &c., the *f* is softened into *v* ; thus :

neuvième, dix-neuvième, vingt-neuvième, etc.

In the first of every decimal the termination *ième* is added to the ordinal ; as :

vingt et unième	.	.	.	.	21st
trente et unième	.	.	.	.	31st
cent unième	.	.	.	.	101st.

COLLECTIVE NUMBERS.

168 But few *collective numbers* exist in English ; such are, *a couple, a dozen, a score.*

In French we have :

une couple (see Appendix Part I. page 222)	<i>a couple</i>
une demi-douzaine	<i>half-a-dozen</i>
une huitaine*	<i>about eight</i>
une dizaine	<i>about ten</i>
une douzaine	<i>a dozen</i>
une quinzaine*	<i>about fifteen</i>
une vingtaine	<i>about twenty</i>
une trentaine	<i>about thirty</i>
une quarantaine	<i>about forty</i>
une cinquantaine	<i>about fifty</i>
une soixantaine	<i>about sixty</i>
une centaine	<i>about a hundred</i>
un millier	<i>a thousand.</i>

None of the above can be coupled with a substantive without the preposition *de* ; as :

une vingtaine de personnes	<i>some twenty people or so</i>
un millier de faits curieux	<i>a thousand curious facts.</i>

* *Huitaine* and *quinzaine* mean also respectively a space of eight or fifteen days ; Anglicè, *a week, a fortnight.*

There are three masculine substantives formed respectively from *quatre, six, and dix.* They are :

un quatrain	<i>a stanza of four verses</i>
un sixain	„ „ <i>six verses</i>
un dizain	„ „ <i>ten verses.</i>

Une neuvaine (Lat. *novena*) means a space of nine consecutive days set apart for some devotional purpose.

FRACTIONAL NUMBERS.

169 Fractional numbers are :

un demi *	}	<i>half</i>
une demie		
la moitié		
le tiers		
le quart *		<i>the third part</i> <i>the quarter.</i>

PROPORTIONAL NUMBERS.

170 Proportional numbers are :

le double	<i>the double</i>	}	<i>times as much.</i>
le triple	<i>the treble</i>		
le quadruple	<i>four</i>		
le quintuple	<i>five</i>		
le centuple	<i>one hundred</i>		

[We are indebted to the French Grammar of M. Delille for the order and nomenclature adopted in the last two sections.]

Important Rule for expressing days of the month, pages, lines, chapters of books, &c., and the order of succession of sovereigns in French.

171 In the above cases, where the *ordinal* number is almost invariably employed in English, the French use the *cardinal* ; as :

le deux † janvier	<i>the second of January</i>
le quatre juin	<i>the fourth of June</i>
c'est aujourd'hui le onze	<i>to-day is the eleventh (of the month)</i>
revenez le vingt-quatre	<i>come back on the twenty-fourth</i>
nous sommes partis le dix-huit	<i>we set out on the eighteenth of</i>
avril	<i>April</i>
acte deux , scène trois , livre	<i>second act, third scene, third</i>
trois , page quarante	<i>book, fortieth page.</i>
chant quatre , stance vingt	<i>fourth canto, twentieth stanza</i>
Louis Quatorze	<i>Louis the Fourteenth</i>
Charles Douze	<i>Charles the Twelfth</i>
Édouard Trois	<i>Edward the Third.</i>

* The articles (definite and indefinite) are suppressed after other numerals before *demi* and *quart* ; as :

un litre et demi	<i>a quart and a half</i>
trois livres et demie	<i>three pounds and a half</i>
une heure et quart	<i>a quarter past one</i>

† Observe the suppression of the preposition *of* in French.

EXCEPTIONS.

172 To express the first day of any month, it is usual to employ the ordinal, as in English :

le premier janvier (or le jour de l'an)	<i>the first of January</i>
le premier février	<i>the first of February, &c.;</i>

also with some names of sovereigns ; as :

François Premier	<i>Francis the First</i>
Napoléon Premier	<i>Napoleon the First ;</i>

sometimes, too, with *second* ; as :

Charles Second	<i>Charles the Second.</i>
-----------------------	----------------------------

In two remarkable instances, the Latin form *quint* is used instead of *cing* :

Charles Quint	<i>the Emperor Charles V.</i>
Sixte Quint	<i>Sixtus V. (Pope in 1585).</i>

V. PRONOUNS.

Pronouns are divided into *Personal, Possessive, Demonstrative, Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite*.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.*

173 A complete list of the personal pronouns, in all their cases, numbers, and genders, will be found in Part I. page 17. They are :

	<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>	
For the first person .	je	me	moi	nous	
„ second person .	tu	te	toi	vous	
„ third person .	il	elle	lui	ils	elles
	le	la		eux	leur
				les	

174 The *reflective pronoun* is *se, soi*; for all genders and numbers.

175 The genitive and dative forms more commonly applicable to things than to persons are :

<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>
en	y

for all genders and numbers.

The division of personal pronouns into *conjunctive* and *disjunctive* is fully explained in Part I. page 16, and the rules when to use the *disjunctive* instead of the *conjunctive* pronouns fully set forth in pages 25 and 26.

PLACE OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS IN A SENTENCE.

a. As subjects (*sujets*) of the sentence.

β. As predicates (*complément, or régime direct ou indirect*).

* It may not be out of place to give here the Latin etymology of the pronouns, when it is not obvious at first sight. We are indebted for them to M. Brachet's *Grammaire historique de la Langue française*.

Je is derived from *ego* by the following gradual transitions. In the ninth century we find *eo*, evidently from *e(g)o*, the *g* being lost, as in *lier* from *ligo*, *nier* from *nego*, &c. In the twelfth century it becomes *io*, whence the transition to *jo* in the thirteenth century is not uncommon (just as *Dibionem* became *Dijon*).

Moi, toi, soi, were in the eleventh century *mī, tī, sī*, evidently derived from *mihī, tibi, sibi*.

Eux is derived from *illos*, through the intermediate form *els* used in the thirteenth century. **En** comes from *inde*, which in Low Latin often had the signification of 'of or from it'; in the ninth century it was written *int*; in the tenth, *ent* as *souvent*, derived from *subinde*).

Y, originally written *i*, and earlier still *io*, is evidently derived from *ibi*—the change from *b* into *v* being very common (*livre* from *liber*, *fève* from *faba*, &c.).

176 a. As subjects.

The personal pronouns as subjects of the sentence *precede* the verb :

je parlais à ma sœur
nous déjeûnons à huit heures, etc.

Except :

177 In interrogative sentences, where they are placed immediately *after* the verb or auxiliary if there is one ; as :

où suis-**je** ? * qu'ai-**je** fait ?
 à qui parles-**tu** ? avez-**vous** fini de parler ? etc.

178 In elliptical sentences and such as express a wish or astonishment ; as :

puisse-t- il arriver à temps !	<i>would he may arrive in time !</i>
dussé- je après dix ans voir mon	<i>even were I after ten years to see</i>
palais en cendres ! (RACINE)	<i>my palace in ashes !</i>
est- il ridicule !	<i>how ridiculous he is !</i>
venez, ne fût- ce que pour une heure	<i>come, even though it were only for</i>
	<i>an hour.</i>

179 After the conjunctions *aussi, ainsi, à peine, au moins, du moins, encore, en vain, peut-être*, generally when these words serve to connect the sense with what has preceded :

il me pria de lui écrire, aussi le	<i>he begged me to write to him, and</i>
fais- je	<i>(you see) I am doing it</i>
à peine parle-t- on de la triste	<i>we hardly ever hear the name of</i>
Octavie (RACINE)	<i>Octavia mentioned</i>
quand nous sommes malheureux,	<i>when we are in distress, at least we</i>
au moins avons- nous la mort,	<i>have death, which is, as it were, a</i>
qui est comme un port assuré, etc.	<i>safe haven, &c.</i>

* 1. Observe the - (*trait d'union*) between the verb and pronoun in this and all other places where the pronoun comes *after* the verb.

2. As has been stated in Part I. page 108, the first singular present of verbs of the first conjugation, and the first singular present of any other tense ending in *e* of any other conjugation, take an acute accent on the final *e* when preceding *je* ; thus :

aimé- je ?	<i>do I love ?</i>
veillé- je ?	<i>am I awake ?</i>
souffré- je ?	<i>do I suffer ?</i>
dussé- je . . .	<i>even if I were to . . .</i>
puissé- je . . . !	<i>Oh, that I could . . . !</i>

3. When the third singular ends in a vowel, the letter -*t*- is inserted before the pronouns *il, elle, on* :

puisse- t-il arriver à temps !	<i>would that he might arrive in time !</i>
que vous donnera- t-elle ?	<i>what will she give you ?</i>
quand viendra- t-on ?	<i>when will they come ?</i>

4. With verbs whose first singular present is a monosyllable and ends in *as* or *rs*, used interrogatively, the following form is adopted :

<i>instead of</i> dors- je ?	<i>say</i>	est-ce que je dors ?
„ „ mens- je ?	„	„ „ mens ?
„ „ sers- je ?	„	„ „ sers ?

encore est-**il** plus raisonnable que *after all, he is more reasonable than*
 je ne pensais (MOLIÈRE, *Mar. I supposed he would be*
forcé)
 peut-être avez-**vous** raison *perhaps you are right (after all).*

180 With *aussi* and *peut-être* it is not unusual to place the pronoun before the verb: *aussi je le fais*; *peut-être vous avez raison*; but the phrase so loses both energy and elegance.

181 In parenthetical phrases; as:

Venez, dit-**il**. Vraiment nous sommes bien bêtes, dites-**vous** (Mme. DE SÉVIGNÉ.—Anglicè, *I think I hear you saying*)
 Que vois-je? cria-t-**il**. Ôtez-moi cet objet (LA FONTAINE, *Fable 1, xv. 7*).

POSITION OF GOVERNED PRONOUNS (*Complément direct ou indirect.*)

182 Governed pronouns immediately *precede* the verb or auxiliary if there is one, except in the imperative affirmative second singular, first and second plural. (See Part I. pages 19, 20, 21.)

183 *Examples of the Pronoun PRECEDING the Verb.*

il me voit	<i>he sees me</i>
il me parle	<i>he speaks to me</i>
je ne te vois pas	<i>I do not see thee</i>
je ne te parle pas	<i>I do not speak to thee</i>
je l' ai vu	<i>I have seen him</i>
je ne l' ai pas vu	<i>I have not seen him</i>
je l' ai punie	<i>I have punished her</i>
je ne l' ai pas punie	<i>I have not punished her</i>
il nous voit	<i>he sees us</i>
il nous parle	<i>he speaks to us</i>
je vous aime	<i>I love you</i>
je vous dois une livre	<i>I owe you a pound</i>
je les ai vus	<i>I have seen them</i>
je ne leur ai pas parlé	<i>I have not spoken to them.</i>

184 *Examples of the Pronoun FOLLOWING the Verb.*

ouvre- moi ta porte	<i>open thy door to me</i>
pends- toi , brave Crillon	<i>hang thyself, brave Crillon</i>
cet enfant fait trop de bruit; em- porte- le	<i>that child makes too much noise; take him away</i>
allons- nous-en	<i>let us be off</i>
puisque le vin est tiré, buvons- le	<i>since the wine is drawn, let us drink it</i>
mettez- vous à ma place	<i>put yourself in my place.</i>

185 The effect of the introduction of a *negative* into any one of the foregoing sentences would immediately be to throw back the pronoun to its proper place, and in the case of *moi*, *toi*, to restore them to their proper forms of *me*, *te* :

ne ~~m'~~ouvre pas ta porte
ne ~~te~~ pends pas
ne ~~nous en~~ allons pas, etc.

186 If there are two or more imperatives (affirmative) joined together by the conjunction *et* or *ou*, the governed pronoun (if there is one) will *precede* the verb in the second instance; as :

Nicole, apportez-~~moi~~ mes pantoufles et ~~me~~ donnez mon bonnet de nuit
(MOLIÈRE, *Bourg. Gent.* act ii. sc. 6)
polissez-~~le~~ sans cesse et ~~le~~ repolissez (BOILEAU, *Art poétique*, i. 173).

187 When an imperative (affirmative) governs two pronouns, one directly and the other indirectly, the one governed directly (accusative) is placed first; as :

donnez- le -moi	<i>give it me</i>
prêtez- le -lui	<i>lend it him</i>
cédez- le -nous	<i>yield it to us.</i>

188 Except in those instances where *moi*, *toi*, are taken in conjunction with *y*.

Therefore do not write :

voici mon jardin, promène- t'y	<i>but</i>	promènes*- y -toi
si vous allez à l'opéra, menez- m'y	"	menez- y -moi
si vous allez en voiture, donnez- m'y une place	"	donnez- y -moi une place.

POSITION OF PRONOUNS GOVERNED BY REFLECTIVE VERBS.

189 To avoid the ambiguity which would be caused by three or more pronouns following each other close together, the governed pronoun is placed *after* a reflexive verb, and the *disjunctive* form used instead of the *conjunctive*. (Part I. page 26, No. 7) :

je me suis attaché à elle dès le commencement	<i>I attached myself to her from the beginning</i>
vous pouvez vous fier à moi, je ne vous tromperai pas	<i>you can trust me, I shall not deceive you</i>
ils se sont rendus à nous sans coup férir	<i>they surrendered to us without resistance</i>

* Observe the insertion of the *s* for euphony between the two vowels.

195 However, if both verbs are in the same tense, the second pronoun may be omitted; as:

je dis et soutiens que c'est la vérité	<i>I say and I maintain that it is the truth</i>
vous pensez et croyez qu'ils viendront, n'est-ce pas ?	<i>you think and believe that they will come, don't you ?</i>
nous savons l'Anglais et le parlons assez correctement	<i>we know English, and we speak it pretty correctly.</i>

196 Also with the conjunction *ni*:

il ne donne ni ne reçoit de cadeaux	<i>he neither gives nor receives presents</i>
je ne veux, ni ne dois, ni ne peux obéir	<i>I neither will, should, nor can obey.</i>

REPETITION OF THE SAME PERSONAL PRONOUN WHEN GOVERNED BY TWO OR MORE VERBS (*Complément*).

197 Here, on the contrary, if the verbs are in the same tense, the governed personal pronoun (*complément*) must be repeated; as:

son visage odieux m' afflige et me poursuit (RACINE)	<i>his odious face torments and pursues me</i>
il nous recueille et nous reçoit de son mieux	<i>he welcomes us and receives us to the best of his ability.</i>

198 If the verb is in a compound tense, the pronoun may be repeated or not, according to taste; as:

nous les avons attaqués et vaincus	<i>we have attacked and conquered them</i>
je vous ai choisi et préféré à vos frères	<i>I have chosen you in preference to your brothers;</i>

(199) provided, *of course*, that both verbs govern the same case, otherwise the pronoun must of necessity be repeated; as:

il nous (dat.) a parlé longtemps et il nous (acc.) a assurés de sa bienveillance	<i>he spoke a long time to us, and assured us of his good will.</i>
--	---

TWO OR MORE PRONOUNS, SUBJECTS OR COMPLEMENTS OF A SENTENCE.

200 If two or more pronouns occur as *subjects* in a sentence, a plural pronoun of the *more worthy* person must precede the verb; as:

<i>lui et moi</i> nous irons au spectacle	<i>he and I will go to the play</i>
<i>toi et elle</i> vous m'accompagnerez	<i>thou and she will accompany me.</i>

201 If there are two or more *governed* pronouns (*complément*), or a pronoun and a substantive, in a sentence, the same repetition takes place and the preposition, if any, must be repeated; as:

il nous a parlé longtemps à moi et à lui	<i>he spoke a long time to me and him</i>
je vous engage vous et votre frère à vous conduire mieux à l'avenir	<i>I recommend you and your brother to behave better for the future</i>
je l'ai reconnu tout de suite, lui et son cheval	<i>I recognised him and his horse at once</i>
il m'a parlé à moi et à mon frère	<i>he spoke to me and my brother.</i>

PERSONAL PRONOUNS FOLLOWED BY A RELATIVE PRONOUN AND VERB.

202 If a personal pronoun is followed by a relative pronoun governing a verb, the verb must be in the same person as the personal pronoun; as:

ni moi qui suis son roi, ni vous qui devez l'être (VOLTAIRE, <i>Henriade</i> , ch. i.)	<i>neither I who am his king, nor you who are about to be so</i>
c'est moi qui me nomme Alfred est-ce toi qui as fait cela?	<i>my name is Alfred is it thou who didst that?</i>
c'est nous qui en sommes re- sponsables	<i>it is we who are responsible for that.</i>

PECULIARITIES OF SOME OF THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

203 *Moi** and *vous* are sometimes introduced for the purpose of adding emphasis to a sentence; as:

enfoncez- moi cela! criait le maré- chal	<i>come, break that door down! cried the marshal (ERCKMANN-CHA- TRIAN, Waterloo)</i>
faites- moi taire cet enfant!	<i>just quiet that child, will you!</i>

So *vous* :

il vous prend sa cognée, il vous tranche la bête (LA FONTAINE, Bk. vi. Fable xiii.)	<i>he takes his axe, and cuts up the beast</i>
le père mort, les fils vous retour- nent le champ (<i>Ibid.</i> Bk. v. Fable ix.)	<i>the father being dead, the sons dig up the field.</i>

204 Peculiar use of the second singular pronouns *tu*, *te*, *toi*, in French (as in other modern languages), called *tutoiement*.

* Cf. the same redundant use of 'me' often met with in Shakespeare; as: 'Villain, I say, knock *me* at this gate' (*Taming of the Shrew*, act I. sc. 2).

The French employ the second singular pronoun :—

1. In prayer, when the Deity is addressed ; as :

Notre Père, qui **es** aux cieux, etc.

2. In a lofty style, or in poetry, to give effect or energy, as in the *Cid* of Corneille (act ii. sc. 2), Rodrigue says to the Comte de Gormas :

Ôte-moi d'un doute,
Connais-tu bien don Diègue ?

and Boileau, addressing Louis XIV. :

Grand roi, c'est vainement qu'abjurant la satire
Pour **toi** seul désormais j'avais fait vœu d'écrire.

3. In familiar intercourse between members of the same family (though not always from children addressing their parents, as not sufficiently respectful), schoolfellows, fellow-soldiers, sailors, &c. ; as :

Tiens-toi droit. As-tu bientôt fini ?
Veux-tu te taire ! Va-t'en voir s'ils viennent, Jean !

This use of the second singular pronoun is called in French *tutoyer, tutoiement*.

205 The disjunctive pronouns *lui* and *eux* are sometimes found as the subject of a sentence and immediately governing a verb,* when it is required to lay a particular stress upon them ; as :

j'attends mon frère et mes sœurs ce soir ; elles partent demain, mais **lui** restera

Mais **lui**, voyant en moi la fille de son père,
Me tint lieu, chère Élise, et de père et de mère

(RACINE, *Esther*, act i. sc. 1.)

mes frères et mon cousin m'ont secouru ; **eux** m'ont relevé et **lui** m'a pansé.

206 The disjunctive forms *lui*, *eux*, must always be used when joined to a past participle (as in the Latin ablative absolute) ; as :

lui mort, un autre règnera à sa place *when he is dead, another will reign in his stead*

eux repus, tout s'endort, les enfans et la mère (LA FONTAINE, Bk. iv. Fable xxii.) *they having taken their fill, all went to sleep, the young ones and the mother.*

* Thus militating against the proper definition of disjunctive pronouns, laid down on page 16, Part I.

207 *Lui* is used with the ordinal numbers in such sentences as the following :

Créqui échappa à peine **lui** quatrième (VOLTAIRE, *Louis XIV.*, chap. xii.) *Créqui escaped with difficulty with only three others.* (Cf. Greek τέταρτος αὐτὸς.)

208 Difference between *LUI* and *Y*.

Lui is generally applied to persons, *y* to things.

As applied to *persons* :

j'ai vu votre frère et je **lui** ai parlé
cet homme est un traître ; ne vous fiez pas à **lui**.

As applied to *animals or things* :

si cette maison était à moi, j'**y** ajouterais une aile
ce cheval* est fougueux, ne vous **y** fiez pas.

SE, SOI (see Part I., pages 18, 24).

209 *Se* is a conjunctive reflective pronoun of the third person, of both numbers and genders, and may be employed in reference to *things* as well as to *persons* ; as :

Persons :

Masc. { *Sing.* mon père **se** promène
 { *Plur.* il faut que mes frères **se** dépêchent
Fem. { *Sing.* ma mère **se** fâchera
 { *Plur.* mes sœurs **se** repentent.

Things :

Masc. { *Sing.* le charbon **se** trouve sous la terre (Anglicè, *is found*)
 { *Plur.* ces arbres **se** meurent (Anglicè, *are dying*)
Fem. { *Sing.* la porte s'est ouverte tout d'un coup (Anglicè, *flew open*)
 { *Plur.* ces nouvelles **se** répandent vite (Angl. *are quickly spread*).

210 An observation of the foregoing examples will show that the reflective pronoun *se* has not always the meaning of *himself, herself, itself, &c.*, but that, especially when applied to *things*, it is more properly Englished by the passive voice, so uncommon in French (as shown in Part I., pages 160, 161).

211 The fact that there is but one form, *se*,† for the dative

* It would be perfectly correct to write :

mon cheval s'est cabré, et je **lui** ai donné un coup d'éperon.

Some grammarians attempt to establish the rule that where animals or things are personified, or represented as exerting any original action, the pronoun *lui* may be applied to them instead of *y* ; but the distinction seems too nice for us to be able to make a rule of it.

† This is also the case with the pronouns *me* and *te*.

and accusative cases (in French *régime direct et indirect*) gives rise to some ambiguity ; as :

1. cet enfant *se* fera fouetter *that boy will get himself whipped.*

Here *se* is accusative (*régime direct*).

2. mon père *se* fera un devoir de *my father will make it a duty to*
vous rendre visite *call upon you.*

Here *se* is dative (*régime indirect*).

As the difficulties arising from this ambiguity bear principally upon the rules of the agreement of the past participle, they will be treated of more fully under that heading (Rule 396, page 380).

212 Repetition of *se* with two or more verbs conjugated with this pronoun.

When two or more verbs govern the same case, the pronoun need *not* be repeated ; as :

1. il *s'est* soigné et guéri lui-même *he doctored himself and cured himself.*

Here *soigner* and *guérir* both govern the accusative case.

But if the verbs govern different cases the pronoun must be repeated ; as :

2. il *s'est* levé tout d'un coup et *he got up suddenly and gave him-*
s'est donné un grand coup à *self a violent blow on the head.*
la tête

Here *lever* governs the accusative and *donner* the dative case.

Soi.

213 *Soi* is a disjunctive reflective pronoun of both genders and of the singular number, applicable to persons as well as things.

Persons :

- aucun n'est prophète chez *soi* *no one is a prophet in his own country.*

Things :

- la vertu est aimable en *soi* *virtue is a thing to be loved for its own sake.*

214 When employed with regard to persons, *soi* almost invariably refers to some foregoing indefinite pronoun, such as *chacun*, *on*, *quiconque*, *aucun*, *personne*, &c., or some such vague expression as *celui qui*, *tout homme*, &c.

Examples.

on est content de **soi** quand on a fait une bonne action
 tout homme apporte en **soi** en naissant les germes de sa destruction
 quiconque n'aime que **soi** est indigne de vivre

Qui* ne songe qu'à **soi** quand la fortune est bonne
 Dans le malheur n'a point d'amis. (FLORIAN.)

215 *Soi* is also used in reference to an impersonal verb, or a verb in the infinitive mood used substantively ; as :

Ne vivre que pour **soi** c'est déjà être mort
 Il dépend toujours de **soi** d'agir honorablement
 Des passions la plus triste en la vie
 C'est de n'aimer que **soi** dans l'univers. (FLORIAN.)

216 Wherever the use of the indefinite pronoun *soi* might give rise to ambiguity, the definite pronoun *lui* may be used, even in reference to such indefinites as *chacun*, *on*, &c. ; as :

chacun trouve à redire en autrui ce	<i>each man finds that to blame in an-</i>
qu'on trouve à redire en lui	<i>other which others find to blame</i>
	<i>in him.</i>

If the pronoun *soi* had been used here, it must of necessity have referred to *on*, and the meaning of the sentence would have been entirely changed.

217 *Soi* is sometimes employed in reference to some defined object or person, in order to give more precision and vigour to the sentence ; as :

Idoménée revenant à **soi** remercia ses amis (FÉNELON) ;

and in such phrases as the following :

il a un chez soi	<i>he has a home of his own</i>
cette dame n'a pas de chez soi	<i>that lady has no home of her own.</i>

218 *Soi* is used in reference to definite objects taken in a general sense ; as :

le chat ne paraît sentir que pour soi	<i>cats seem only to think of them-</i>
	<i>selves</i>
la sagesse après soi laisse un long	<i>good conduct is long remembered</i>
souvenir	
de soi le vice est odieux	<i>vice is odious in itself.</i>

The following sentence, if compared with the first example,

* Qui here is put for celui qui.

will show the distinction between *soi* and *lui* in such sentences :

mon chat ne paraît sentir que pour *my cat seems to think of nothing*
lui *but himself.*

219 *Soi* is sometimes used in reference to plurals of things, never of persons; as :

ces choses sont indifférentes de *these things are by their nature im-*
soi *material.*

SOI-MÊME.

220 All that has been stated with regard to *soi* is equally applicable to *soi-même*, with the difference that the adverb *même* adds intensity to the expression.

EN.*

221 *En*, meaning *of, by, for, with, or from him, her, it, or them*, takes the place of *de lui, d'elle, d'eux, d'elles*, generally when speaking of *things*, rarely of *persons*.

Things :

vous écoutez mes conseils, sans **en** *you listen to my advice without pro-*
 profiter *fiting by it*

La Fortune a son prix ; l'imprudent **en** abuse,
 L'hypocrite **en** médit, et l'honnête homme **en** use

il est moins aisé de se guérir de *it is not so easy to cure oneself of*
 l'ambition que de s'**en** préserver *ambition as to keep out of the way*
of it

j'ai fait une faute et j'**en** suis *I have committed a fault and I am*
 puni *punished for it*

Connaissez-vous Rome? J'**en** viens *Do you know Rome? I have just*
come from thence.

222 *Persons.* It may also be applied to persons when it cannot give rise to any ambiguity :

Catulle était de Vérone; Cicéron *Catullus was a native of Verona;*
en faisait un cas tout particulier *Cicero held him in very high esteem*
 fiez-vous à cet homme; j'**en** répons *you may trust that man; I will*
 comme de mon propre frère *answer for him as if he were my*
own brother

les bons enfants aiment leurs pa- *good children love their parents, and*
 rents, et ils **en** sont aimés *are beloved by them.*

* Etymology of EN. From Latin *inde*, which is often found with the meaning 'of it.' In French writings of the ninth century the form *int* is found, in the tenth century *ent*, and in the twelfth and later on *en*.

3 *En*, meaning *for that reason, on that account* :

mort qui frappe tôt s'*en* fait *death that strikes rapidly is all the less felt*

vouant pour fils *en* est-il moins coupable?

-tu moins Brutus? *en* es-tu moins Romain? (VOLTAIRE)

the fact that he owns you as his son render him any the less guilty? or any the less Brutus or a Roman for that reason?

ma douleur s'*en* accroît, ma honte *my grief and shame are increased*
s'augmente (VOLTAIRE) *by it.*

Peculiar Idiomatic Uses of the Pronoun EN having no Equivalent in English.

aller	<i>to go away (take oneself off)</i>
avoir à quelqu'un	<i>to be incensed with anyone</i>
est assez!	<i>it is enough!</i>
est trop!	<i>it is too much of a good thing!</i>
est fait!	<i>it is all up with him (them, us)!</i>
pas devoir	<i>not to be behindhand with; not to come short of</i>
lire	<i>to reproach oneself</i>
re	<i>to belong to (a secret conspiracy, &c.)</i>
re à	<i>not to be farther advanced than</i>
jus à page 10	<i>I have got to page 10</i>
est de vous comme de moi	<i>it is the same with you as with me</i>
re pour son argent	<i>to have risked one's money with no returns</i>
qu'il <i>en</i> soit	<i>whatever the case may be</i>
lonner	<i>to take one's fill; to do a thing to one's heart's content</i>
alloir	<i>to be very near</i>
<i>en</i> est fallu qu'il ne tombât	<i>he was very near falling</i>
rendre à quelqu'un	<i>to reproach a person</i>
pouvoir mais	<i>to be at one's wit's end; to be thoroughly exhausted</i>
ne reviens pas	<i>I can't get over it; it beats me</i>
nir	<i>to be deceived, gulled, taken in</i>
n! nous <i>en</i> tenons tous deux	<i>well! we have both been gulled</i>
OLIERE, Dép. am. act i. sc. 5)	
enir à	<i>to be content, satisfied with, to stop at</i>
nir aux mains	<i>to come to blows</i>
uloir à quelqu'un	<i>to be angry with anyone</i>
<i>en</i> vais le faire	<i>I am going to do it.</i>

Y.*

5 *Y* is employed instead of *à lui, à elle, à eux, à elles* (*him, her, it, or them*), subject to the same rules as *en*; that

etymology of *y*. *Y* was originally written *i* and *iv*, from Latin *ibi*, by the transition of Latin *b* into French *v* (cf. *habeo, avoir; labrum, lèvres*).

is to say, that it generally refers to things, rarely to persons, and in such cases as admit of no ambiguity ; as :

Things :

L'honneur est comme une île escarpée et sans bords.

On n'y peut plus rentrer, dès qu'on en est dehors.

Ma maison n'était pas assez grande ; il a fallu y ajouter une aile.
Avez-vous pensé à vos intérêts ? Oui, j'y ai pensé.

Persons :

Pour ébranler nos cœurs

Est-ce peu de Camille, y joignez-vous, ma sœur ?

C'est un honnête homme, fiez-vous-y.

[It would be equally correct to say *fiez-vous à lui*. Perhaps the latter expression would call more especial attention to the *man* you are told to trust, whereas *fiez-vous-y* would more properly mean, 'rely upon my assertion that he is so.']

226 Y may also be employed in speaking of persons in a general sense—of men, for instance, as a family :

plus on approfondit l'homme, plus on y démêle de faiblesse et de grandeur.

227 Y may be used to avoid the repetition of a pronoun already used ; as :

quoique je parle beaucoup de vous, ma fille, j'y pense encore d'avantage.
(MME. DE SÉVIGNÉ.)

228 Y also means *thither* or *there, in it* :

j'y vais

I am going thither

il y est

he is there

voilà un fauteuil ; mettez-vous-y

there is an arm-chair ; sit down in it.

229 *Idiomatic Uses of Y.*

y êtes-vous ?

have you succeeded ? or do you understand ?

je n'y suis pas encore

I cannot quite make it out yet

il y a, il y avait, il y aura, etc.

there is, was, will be, &c.

je n'y vois goutte

I cannot see at all.

LE, LA, LES employed with reference to some preceding Substantive, or Adjective taken substantively, or Adjective proper.

230 These pronouns, when employed in reference to (and in the place of) some foregoing substantive or adjective taken substantively, vary according to the gender and number of *the foregoing* substantives or adjectives.

1. *Substantives* :

Êtes-vous la mère de ces enfants ? Je **la** suis. *I am (their mother).*
 Vous voulez voir le propriétaire de cet hôtel. C'est moi qui **le** suis. *I am he.*

Venez voir dans les nues
 Passer la reine des Tortues.
La reine ! Vraiment oui ! je **la** suis en effet.
 (LA FONTAINE, Bk. x. Fable iii.)

On demande qui sont les chefs de cette bande. Nous **les** sommes.
We are (the chiefs).

2. *Adjectives, or participles, taken substantively* :

Êtes-vous **la** mariée ? Oui, je **la** suis.
Are you the bride ? Yes, I am.

Nous venons soigner les malades et les blessés de la dernière campagne. Nous **les** sommes. *We are (the sick and wounded that you are looking for).*

231 The pronoun *le*, employed in reference to an adjective or participle, or a substantive taken in a general sense, or to any entire clause of a sentence or proposition, remains invariable in gender and number.

*Examples.*1. *Adjective or participle* :

On opprime les malheureux et nous **le** sommes
 Vous êtes mariée, mais je ne **le** suis pas moi !
 Madame, êtes-vous malade ? Oui, en effet, je **le** suis.
 Ma mère était chrétienne, mais je ne **le** suis pas.

2. *Substantives taken in a general sense* :

Je veux être mère parce que je **le** suis, et ce serait en vain que je ne **le** voudrais pas être (MOLIÈRE, *Am. mag.* act i. sc. 2)
 Je vous croyais frères ! Nous **le** sommes en effet.
 Ils ne sont pas dupes de votre tricherie, et ils ne **le** seront jamais.

3. *Referring to an entire clause or proposition* :

si le public a eu quelque indulgence pour moi, je **le** dois à votre protection.

[The reason here is evident. 'That which I owe to your protection is not so much the indulgence (which would be feminine) as the fact that the public has been indulgent to me'].

Again :

j'ai fait très-bonne chasse ce jour-là ; je me **le** rappelle parfaitement
 [**le** referring to the fact mentioned more than to the 'chasse'].

From Rules 230 and 231 the following simple rule may be deduced :—

232 Employ the invariable form *le* whenever it would be rendered by the English *it* or *so*.

LE and EN expressed in French where no such Pronoun is required in English.

233 In the second clause of a comparative sentence these pronouns must be expressed in French ; as :

on ne peut pas avoir plus d'esprit	<i>it is impossible to be cleverer than</i>
que mon frère en a	<i>my brother is</i>
il l'a fait beaucoup mieux que vous	<i>he did it much better than you.</i>
ne l'avez fait	

234 Or in parenthetical clauses referring to the main clause of the sentence ; as :

quand vous ne seriez pas malade,	<i>even supposing you were not ill, as</i>
comme vous l'êtes, vous ne devriez pas sortir	<i>you are, you ought not to go out</i>
c'est là, comme nous allons le voir,	<i>there lies, as we shall see, the real</i>
le vrai danger	<i>danger</i>
c'est honteux, comme vous le dites bien	<i>it is shameful, as you rightly say.</i>

REMARKABLE DIFFERENCE OF IDIOM IN THE MANNER OF ANSWERING QUESTIONS IN FRENCH AND ENGLISH.

235 Such elliptical English expressions as the following :— *I am, I do, I will, I have, &c.,* often cause the learner to make grievous blunders in conversation, such as the following, which every beginner must have frequently made or heard made :

Avez-vous faim ? Oui, **j'ai**
Êtes-vous fatigué ? Oui, **je suis**.

In making such answers in French it is necessary to employ some pronoun referring to the subject matter contained in the question, and generally to repeat the verb of the interrogatory sentence ; as :

1. *Examples with the Verb TO BE.*

Questions.

Êtes-vous content ?

N'est-il pas votre frère ?

Cette demoiselle est votre sœur,
n'est-ce pas ?

Answers.

Oui, **je le** suis

Oui, assurément, **il l'est**

Oui, **elle l'est**

Questions.

Answers.

N'est-ce pas l'Énéide de Virgile que vous traduisez là ?	Oui, ce l'est
Est-ce une tragédie de Shakespeare?	Oui, c'en est une
Madame, votre chapeau est de chez Laure, n'est-ce pas ?	Oui, il en est
<i>Is not your bonnet from Laure's?</i>	<i>Yes, it is</i>
Mesdemoiselles vos sœurs sont-elles à Paris ?	Oui, elles y sont
Est-ce un fusil Lefauchaux que vous avez là ?	Oui, c'en est un
N'est-ce pas curieux de l'entendre parler comme cela ?	Oui, en effet, c'est curieux .

Observe that all the above answers might have been made in English by the simple use of the verb *to be*—*I am, it is, &c.*

2. Examples with the Verb TO HAVE.

Questions.

Answers.

Avez-vous fait votre devoir ?	Oui, je l'ai fait
Ont-ils fini de dîner ?	Oui, ils ont fini
N'avait-il pas perdu sa montre ?	Oui, il l'avait perdue
Avez-vous écrit à votre père ?	Oui, je lui ai écrit.

Observe that all the foregoing answers might be expressed in English by such phrases as *I have, he has, &c.*

3. Examples with the Verb TO DO.

Questions.

Answers.

Sentez-vous le feu ?	Oui, je le sens
Le ministre des finances reçoit demain, n'est-ce pas ?	Non, il ne reçoit pas, mais le ministre de la guerre reçoit
<i>The Finance Minister receives company to-morrow, does he not?</i>	<i>No, he does not, but the Minister of War does</i>
Avez-vous besoin de votre loge ce soir ?	Oui, j'en ai besoin
<i>Do you want your box this evening?</i>	<i>Yes, I do.</i>

236 Recapitulatory Questions, such as 'Haven't you?' 'Doesn't he?' 'Does he?' &c.

That train goes 60 miles an hour, doesn't it? **Yes, it does**

Ce train-là fait 60 milles par heure, n'est-ce pas ? **Oui, en effet**

You have lost your umbrella, haven't you?

Vous avez perdu votre parapluie, n'est-ce pas ?

She lives in that little house. Does she?

Elle habite cette petite maison. **Vraiment !**

You will go there, won't you?

Vous y irez, n'est-ce pas ?

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

237 The Possessive Pronouns properly so called are:

le mien	<i>mine</i>
le tien	<i>thine</i>
le sien	<i>his, hers</i>
le nôtre	<i>ours</i>
le vôtre	<i>yours</i>
le leur	<i>theirs.</i>

They are fully declined in Part I. page 26 ; and note 2 on page 15 of Part I. shows how to avoid the mistake, so frequently made by beginners, of confounding the pronominal adjectives *notre* and *votre* with the possessive pronouns *le nôtre* and *le vôtre*.

SOME PECULIAR USES OF THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

238 These pronouns are frequently found in French employed *substantively*; as:

le Mien et **le Tien** sont la source de toutes les divisions et de toutes les querelles (LA ROCHE-FOUCAULD)

elle (c'est-à-dire la Discorde) et **Que-si-que-non** son frère, avecque **Tien-et-Mien** son père (LA FONTAINE, Bk. vi. Fable xx.)

entre les vrais amis il ne doit pas y avoir de **mien** et de **tien**

Mine and **Thine** (Lat. *meum* and *tuum*) are the source of all divisions and quarrels

she (Discord) with her brother **I-say-yes-I-say-no**, and her father **Thine** and **Mine**

amongst good friends there should be no disputes as to property.

239 moi et **les miens**
toi et **les tiens**
nous et **les nôtres**

I and mine
thou and thine
we and ours (i.e. our friends, family, people, relations, &c.).

C'est en vain que D'Aumale arrête sur ces rives
Des **siens** épouvantés les troupes fugitives (VOLTAIRE, *Henriade*)

In vain D'Aumale strives to rally on the bank
The scattered ranks of his frightened followers

si j'ajoute **du mien** à son invention, c'est pour peindre nos mœurs, et non point par envie (LA FONTAINE, Bk. iv. Fable xviii.)

if I add anything of my own to his (Esop's) invention, it is to portray our customs, and not from any spirit of envy.

240 With the indefinite article ; as :

un mien ami *a friend of mine*
un sien ami (LA FONTAINE, Bk. iv. Fable xiv.) *a friend of his.*

[N.B.—The more usual and correct form would be—*un de mes amis, un de ses amis.*]

241 In commercial style :

en réponse **à la mienne** du 20 *in answer to mine* (i.e. *my letter*)
 dernier, **la vôtre** du 30 m'an- *of the 20th ultimo, yours of the*
 nonce *30th informs me*
la vôtre m'est arrivée le matin *yours reached me on the morning*
 même du jour où vous avez dû *of the very day on which you*
 recevoir **la mienne** *must have received mine.*

242 It is incorrect to use the possessive pronoun in reference to a substantive taken in an indefinite or colloquial sense ; consequently the following phrase would be faulty :

1. il n'est point **d'humeur** à faire plaisir et **la mienne** est bienfaisante

to express :

he is not in a humour to do (us) a pleasure, and mine (i.e. my humour) is inclined to be serviceable ;

because *être d'humeur* is an idiomatic expression.

So also the following construction is to be avoided :

2. dans les premiers âges du monde chaque **père de famille** gouvernait **la sienne** avec un pouvoir absolu ;

because here *famille* is employed in an indefinite sense, forming with the word *père* a general idea, *père de famille*. The proper construction would be—

For No. 1. : il n'est point d'humeur à faire plaisir, et **moi**, je suis d'une humeur bienfaisante

For No. 2. : chaque père de famille gouvernait **ses enfants** avec un pouvoir absolu.

243 With the verb *être* it is usual to express the idea of possession, not by means of the possessive pronouns, *le mien*, &c., but by means of the personal pronoun and the preposition *à* ; as :

ces gants sont **à moi** *these gloves are mine*
 cette maison est-elle réellement **à** *is that house really yours?*
vous ?

ne prenez pas ce qui est à nous *do not take what is ours*
 c'est à moi à parler, à toi d'écouter *'tis mine to speak and thine to hear.*

This is more especially the case in answer to questions:

à qui est ce chapeau? *whose hat is this?*
 (Answer) à moi, à lui, etc. (Answer) mine, his, &c.

This construction may be compared with the Latin *est mihi*, I have:

est mihi namque domum pater, *est injusta* noverca.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

The Demonstrative Pronouns are:

ce,* celui, celle, ceux, celles, ceci, cela.

244 CE takes the place of *il, ils, elle, elles* (*he, she, it, they*) in a sentence where the verb *être* † is used, and in which the predicate is either (1) a substantive, (2) a pronoun, (3) a verb in the infinitive mood, or (4) a participle.

1. With a *substantive*:

c'est un * éléphant	<i>it's an elephant</i>
c'est mon auteur favori	<i>he is my favourite author</i>
Plato disait de l'homme que c'était un * animal à deux jambes sans plume	<i>Plato, defining man, said that he was a biped without feathers</i>
les astronomes, en parlant des étoiles fixes, disent que ce sont autant de soleils	<i>astronomers, speaking of the fixed stars, say that they are so many suns</i>
c'était merveille de le voir, merveille de l'ouïr	<i>it was marvellous to see him, marvellous to hear him.</i>

Interrogatives:

quel homme est-ce?	<i>what sort of man is he?</i>
est-ce un malheur si grand que de cesser de vivre? (RACINE)	<i>is it so great a misfortune to die?</i>

[* N.B.—Remark the insertion of the indefinite article in these sen-

* The old French *ico* (from Latin *ecce-hoc*) was later on changed into *co*, and thence comes the modern form **CE** (as *je* from *ego, eo, io, jo*). **CELUI** is from *ecce ille*, in old French *icil, icel*, of which the feminine form *icelle* (used by Racine in his *Plaideurs*, 'de ma cause et des faits renfermés en icelle') is retained in the modern form *celle*. **CELUI** is a case of the old nom. *icel*. **CEUX** comes from *eccillos*, and used to be written *iceux*.

Note that **CE**, demonstrative pronoun, is invariable in gender and number, and is not to be confounded with the demonstrative adjective **ce, cet, cette, ces**, which see Part I. page 16.

† **CE** is also used with *sembler*: *ce me semble, it seems to me*; and La Fontaine uses it once or twice as the object to the verb *dire*: *un tiens vaut, ce dit-on, mieux que deux en l'air*, a bird in the hand, they say, is worth two in the bush.

tences, and cf. Rule 21, page 245. The indefinite article is omitted before *merveille*, because *merveille* is used in an indefinite sense. Cf. *c'est dommage, ce fut pitié.*]

2. With *pronouns* :

<i>c'est moi, toi, lui, elle, nous, vous</i>	<i>it is I, thou, he, she, we, ye</i>
<i>ce sont eux</i>	<i>it is they</i>
Reconnaissez-vous ce vin ? <i>C'est</i>	<i>Do you recognise this wine ? It is</i>
celui que vous avez trouvé si bon	<i>that you thought so good yester-</i>
hier	<i>day</i>
<i>c'est celle-là qu'il veut épouser</i>	<i>that is the one he intends to marry.</i>

3. With verbs in the infinitive mood, or with participles :

<i>c'est agir en homme sage</i>	<i>that is acting like a wise man</i>
<i>c'est ressembler aux dieux</i>	<i>that is being like the gods</i>
<i>c'est bravement crié</i>	<i>well cried out</i>
<i>c'est bien fait</i>	<i>that's well done</i>
<i>c'est assommant</i>	<i>it is a terrible bore</i>
<i>c'est étonnant</i>	<i>it is marvellous.</i>

245 *CE with Adjectives.*

CE may not, *as a general rule*, have an adjective without a substantive as its predicate.

It would be a faulty construction to write :

je connais votre frère, <i>c'est très-</i>	<i>I know your brother, he is very</i>
grand	<i>tall</i>
j'ai rencontré votre sœur, <i>c'était</i>	<i>I met your sister ; she was very</i>
très-triste	<i>sad.</i>

246 *CE* may, however, be employed with an adjective for its object when used in a less determined sense ; that is to say, when meaning *it* or *that*, not *he* or *she*, referring to any previously mentioned person or animal ; as :

On a beaucoup déclamé contre la	<i>People have spoken much against</i>
gloire. <i>C'est naturel</i>	<i>glory. That is natural (enough)</i>
Mes défauts sont connus, pourquoi	<i>My faults are known, why grieve</i>
s'en affliger ? Affichons-les, <i>c'est</i>	<i>over them ? Let us make them</i>
si commode	<i>public, it is so convenient</i>
Dieu ! que <i>c'est</i> beau !	<i>Heavens ! how beautiful !</i>
Vous êtes venu, <i>c'est</i> vrai, mais	<i>You did come, true, but you came</i>
vous êtes venu trop tard	<i>too late.</i>

A comparison of the two following sentences will show the difference of meaning between *il* and *ce* :

je connais le château de Windsor,	<i>I know Windsor Castle, it is very</i>
<i>il</i> est très-beau	<i>grand.</i>

Whereas a person actually seeing it might exclaim:

c'est très-beau ! c'est magnifique !

247 Another remarkable difference between *ce* and *il* occurs in the common question, What o'clock is it?

quelle heure est-**ce** ?

means, *what is that hour I hear striking?*

quelle heure est-il ?

simply, *what time is it?*

Ce pleonastic, i.e. repeated for the sake of giving vigour and precision to the phrase, but untranslatable.

248 The repetition takes place—

1. When the first clause of the sentence begins by *ce qui*, *ce dont*, *ce que*; as:

ce qui me plaît en vous **c'est** que vous êtes toujours de bonne humeur

what I like in you is that you are always in a good humour

ce dont je me plains **c'est** qu'il rentre toujours tard

that which I complain of most is him is that he always comes in late

ce que je sais le mieux **c'est** mon commencement (RACINE, *Plaideurs*)

what I know best is my beginning.

249 If, however, the predicate of the second clause of the sentence is an adjective or participle, *ce* will *not* be repeated; as:

ce qu'on loue est souvent blâmable

that which one praises is often worthy of blame

ce qui réussit est rarement condamné

that which succeeds is rarely condemned

ce que vous dites là n'est pas vrai

what you say there is not true.

250 The repetition of *ce* takes place if the subject of the sentence is composed of several words; as:

le vrai moyen d'être trompé **c'est** de se croire plus fin que les autres (ROCHEFOUCAULD)

the best means to be deceived is to think oneself sharper than others

la fureur de la plupart des Français **c'est** d'avoir de l'esprit, et la fureur de ceux qui veulent avoir de l'esprit **c'est** de faire des livres

the ambition of the greater part of Frenchmen is to be witty, and the ambition of those who set up for being wits is to write books.

This is especially the case when the predicate of the sentence is either a substantive in the plural number or a pronoun:

ce qu'on souffre avec le moins de patience, ce sont les perfidies, les trahisons	<i>that which one suffers with the greatest impatience is perfidy and treachery</i>
ce qui m'arrache aux sentiments qui m'accablent, c'est vous	<i>that which saves me from the painful feelings which overwhelm me is yourself.</i>

251 When the verb *être* serves to join two infinitives, or when there is an infinitive as subject or predicate :

épargner les plaisirs c'est les multiplier	<i>to husband one's pleasures is the way to multiply them</i>
déchoir du premier rang c'est tomber au dernier	<i>to recede from the first rank is to fall down to the lowest</i>
la vie est un dépôt confié par le ciel ; oser en disposer c'est être criminel	<i>life is a deposit given us in trust by Heaven ; to dare to dispose of it is to commit a crime</i>
vouloir tromper le ciel, c'est folie à la terre (LA FONTAINE, Bk. iv. Fable xix.)	<i>to wish to take in the gods is madness for mortals</i>
le meilleur moyen de savoir, c'est d'apprendre	<i>the best means of knowing is to learn.</i>

252 *C'EST* followed by *QUE* and *QUE DE*.

When the proper order of a sentence is reversed, as is commonly the case in French, by placing the predicate where the subject should be, and *vice versa*, the first clause must be preceded by *ce* and some part of the verb *être*, and the second by *que* before a noun, *que de* before an infinitive ; as :

c'était un grand homme que César	<i>Cæsar was a great man</i>
fût-ce un fou qu' Alexandre? (BOILEAU)	<i>was Alexander a madman?</i>
est-ce un malheur si grand que de cesser de vivre?	<i>is to die such a great misfortune?</i>
c'est obliger tout le monde que de rendre service à un honnête homme	<i>to do an honest man a good turn is conferring a benefit on society in general.</i>

253 *CE* followed by *QUOI*.

When *ce* is itself governed by a verb and followed by the relative pronouns *qui*, *dont*, *que*, it cannot be omitted :

prenez ce qui est sur ma table	<i>take what is on my table</i>
donnez moi ce que vous tenez à la main	<i>give me what you have in your hand ;</i>

but it is omitted before *quoi* preceded by a preposition :

dites-moi (ce) à quoi vous pensez	<i>tell me what you are thinking of</i>
nous avons (ce) de quoi vivre à notre aise	<i>we have wherewithal to live comfortably</i>
je sais (ce) à quoi vous rêvez	<i>I know what you are dreaming about</i>
j'ai bien vu (ce) pour quoi* il était parti si tôt.	<i>I saw very well what made him go away so soon.</i>

Person and Number of the Verb ÊTRE following CE.

254 Persons :

The verb *être* conjugated with *ce* must always be placed in the *third* person singular or plural, in whatever person the predicate may be ; as :

c'est moi,	c'est toi,	ce sera lui,
c'était nous,	c'était vous,	ce sont eux.

255 Numbers :

With substantives and pronouns of the singular number the verb *être* is *of course* put in the singular number. It is also put in the *singular number* with the first and second persons plural ; as :

ce sera nous qui ferons cela	<i>we will do that</i>
c'est vous tous qui faites ce bruit	<i>it is all of you who are making that noise.</i>

256 The verb *être* is placed in the plural number—

1. With pronouns of the third person plural ; as :

ce sont eux	} qui ont fait cela	<i>it is they who have done that</i>
ce sont elles		
ce seront eux		
		<i>it will be they.</i>

2. With substantives in the plural number :

ce sont mes frères	<i>they are my brothers</i>
ce sont des Anglais	<i>they are Englishmen</i>
ce n'étaient plus ces jeux, ces festins et ces fêtes	<i>there were no longer any more of those games and festivals, &c.</i>

257 With two or more substantives or pronouns in the singular number the verb *être* is put in the singular ; as :

ce qui a causé tout ce dégât	c'est	<i>that which has caused all this mischief</i>
la pluie et la grêle		
c'est lui et moi qui devons y aller		<i>it is he and I who are to go there.</i>

* Contracted into one word, *pourquoi*.

258 *Si ce n'est* followed by *pas* or *point* follows the same rule as *c'est*. But when *not* accompanied by *pas* or *point*, and taken in the sense of *except, unless it be*, it is never used in the plural; as:

je ne connais personne capable de faire cela si ce n'est vos frères	<i>I know no one capable of doing that except (unless it be) your brothers.</i>
--	---

259 In *interrogative* sentences it is more usual to employ the singular number with all pronouns:

est-ce bien nous qui avons fait cela?	<i>can it really be that we have done that?</i>
est-ce eux qui parlent?	<i>can it be they who are speaking?</i>
viendra-ce elles qui viendront?	<i>will it be they who will come?</i>

and the plural with nouns:

est-ce les Anglais qui ont fait cela?	<i>is it really the English who have done that?</i>
un courage naissant sont-ce là les effets? (RACINE)	<i>are these the effects of a rising courage?</i>

provided that care be taken to avoid such constructions as form a disagreeable concourse of sounds, such as:

furent-ce, seront-ce, etc.

CELUI, CELLE. *Plural* CEUX, CELLES.

260 These pronouns are either employed (1) *absolutely*, in which case they are always followed by one of the relative pronouns, *qui, que, dont*; or (2) *relatively*, i.e. in reference to some preceding noun, in which case they are either followed by the relative pronoun or the preposition *de*:

- Celui** qui met un frein à la fureur des flots
Sait aussi des méchants arrêter les complots
ceux qui vous ont dit cela en ont menti
celle que vous voyez là est ma sœur.
- je préfère mes chevaux à **ceux** de votre frère (*Anglicè, to your brother's*)
le style de Crébillon est dur, **celui** de Racine est élégant et harmonieux
Crébillon's style is harsh, Racine's is elegant and harmonious
la chambre du roi est plus belle que **celle** de la reine (*than the queen's*)
ces fraises sont aussi belles que **celles** que vous avez dans votre jardin.

261 *Celui, ceux, celles*, are sometimes found joined to adjectives or participles, as in Montesquieu :

on confondait sous l'action de la loi ancienne la blessure faite à une bête
et **celle faite** à un esclave
les chariots dont les cochers étaient habillés de vert disputaient le prix
à **ceux habillés** de bleu.

Such examples are however of such rare occurrence, that they should rather be avoided than imitated.

CELUI-CI, CELUI-LÀ.

262 The particles *ci* and *là* affixed to the demonstrative pronoun imply respectively proximity or distance, either in idea or in fact.* *Là* generally referring to the first-mentioned or farther removed of two objects; *ci* to the last-mentioned or nearer; as :

Dans une ménagerie
De volatiles remplie
Vivaient le cygne et l'oison.
Celui-là destiné pour les regards du maître,
Celui-ci pour son goût.
(LA FONTAINE, Bk. iii. Fable xii.)

Here *celui-là* refers to *le cygne*, *celui-ci* to *l'oison*.

voici deux voitures ; si vous prenez **celle-ci** je prendrai **celle-là**.

CECI, CELA.†

263 *Ceci* and *cela* are essentially neuter, and refer generally to things (of both genders and numbers) and not to persons :

faites ceci	do this
ne faites pas cela	do not do that .

264 *CECI* and *CELA* referring to something already said or to follow.

Ceci generally alludes to something that is to follow ; as :
il y a **ceci** de remarquable qu'il n'y a plus paru depuis
there is this to be noticed, that he did not appear there again.

Cela to something that has preceded ; as :

Il n'est meilleur ami ni parent que soi-même,
Retenez bien **cela**, mon fils. (LA FONTAINE, Bk. iv. Fable xxii.)
Bear that well in mind, my son.

* The same particles are used with the demonstrative adjective : cet homme **ci**, cette femme-**là**, ces enfants-**là**.

† *Cela* is familiarly contracted into *ça* : **ça** ne va plus, **ça** ira, rien que **ça** ! etc.

265 *Cela* is sometimes found applied to persons in a familiar style :

j'ai vu **cela** tout jeune

I saw that child when he was quite young

comme **cela** dort les jeunes gens !

how sound they sleep, young people !

j'ai vu M. de Pompone, M. de Besons, Madame de Villars ; tout **cela** vous fait mille compliments

I saw M. de Pompone, M. de Besons, Madame de Villars ; they all send you their best compliments.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

266 The relative pronouns are *qui*, *dont*,* *que*, *quoi*, *lequel*, *laquelle*, *lesquels*, *lesquelles*. They may be found fully declined on pages 27, 28, of Part I.

To the foregoing may be added *où*, *d'où*, *par où*, used respectively (and under certain restrictions) for *auquel*, *duquel*, *par lequel*, *à laquelle*, &c.

267 The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; but as it is itself invariable in form, the agreement with the antecedent must be looked for in the verb or participle that follows the relative pronoun ; as :

moi qui le **dis**

I who **say** it

nous qui **aimons** les fraises

we who **are** fond of strawberries

les fraises **que** vous avez **man-**
gées,†

the strawberries **which** you have
eaten.

[NOTE.—It stands to reason that the relative pronoun, so often ungrammatically omitted in English (*the horse I ride*, for *the horse which I ride* ; *the books you are reading*, for *the books which you are reading*), MUST be supplied in French.]

268 The verb that follows *qui* must be in the same number and person as its antecedent :‡

Fille d'Agamemnon, c'est **moi** qui la première,
Seigneur, vous **appelai** de ce doux nom de père.

(RACINE, *Iphig.* act iv. sc. 4.)

* *Dont*. This word is found in the works of Marot (sixteenth century) spelt *d'ond*, evidently showing its derivation to be the Latin *de-unde*, whence.

† For rule of agreement of past participle with preceding relative (or other) pronoun, see Rule 395, page 380.

‡ Many instances occur in the classical authors of violation of this rule ; such are :

ce ne serait pas **moi** qui **se ferait** prier. (MOLIÈRE, *Sganarelle*.)

Britannicus est seul, quelque ennui qui le presse,

Et ne voit dans son sort que **nous** qui **s'intéresse**. (RACINE.)

And in the famous address of Blondel to Cœur-de-Lion :

O Richard, ô mon roi,

L'univers t'abandonne ;

Sur la terre il n'est donc que **moi**

Qui **s'intéresse** à ta personne.

est-ce **vous** qui me **parles** de ce ton insolent ?
je ne vois que **nous** deux qui **soyons** * raisonnables.

269 When, however, *qui* is preceded by a substantive or an adjective used substantively (such as *le seul*, *le premier*, *le dernier*), referring to some preceding personal pronoun, the verb may be either in the third person (singular or plural), or else be made to agree with the preceding pronoun. The former is the more usual custom ; as :

êtes-vous encore ce même grand seigneur qui venait souper chez un misérable poète ? (BOILEAU.)

souviens-toi que **je** suis le **seul** qui t'a déplu. (FÉNELON.)

tu étais le **seul** qui put me dédommager de l'absence de Rica. (MARTESQUIER, *Lettres pers.*)

vous êtes le **premier** qui ait fait cela.

POSITION OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS IN A SENTENCE.

270 The relative pronoun should be placed *as near to its antecedent* as the construction of the phrase will allow. This rule, however, is not inevitable, and the relative pronoun may be separated from its antecedent provided that no *ambiguity* is thereby caused.

A consideration of the following sentences, in which the relative pronoun and its antecedent are separated from each other, will show that the meaning does not suffer by such separation:

il y a une foule d'**usages** dans ces provinces **qui** sont ridicules

il y a plusieurs **pages** dans vos manuscrits **qui** sont illisibles

il y a **une nouvelle édition** de mon livre **qui** doit paraître l'année prochaine.

271 The fact that there is but *one form* of the relative pronoun for both genders and numbers might render it difficult to determine to which of two or more preceding substantives of different gender and number reference is made. This difficulty is obviated by the use of the relative pronoun *lequel*, which has two forms for the singular and plural, masculine and feminine ; as :

j'ai vu **cet homme** qui devait arranger le mariage de ma sœur, **lequel** m'a paru être toujours dans les mêmes sentiments.

Here, if *qui* had been used, it would not have been clear whether allusion was made to *cet homme* or *ma sœur*.

* For use of the subjunctive mood see Rule 356, page 360.

rencontré **le mari** de ma cousine, **duquel** je vous ai si souvent parlé.

nt here would have left it doubtful whether I had spoken of her cousin or of her husband.

s recevoir **une lettre** de mes enfants, **laquelle** j'attends avec patience.

re que would have referred equally to *enfants* and *lettre*, would have rendered the meaning ambiguous.

2 *Qui* (nom.), *dont* (gen.), *que* (acc.), may be employed in reference to *persons* and *things*.

persons :

l'homme **qui** vous parle
la personne **que** vous voyez là
la femme **dont** vous avez épousé la sœur.

things :

la chaise **qui** est près de la fenêtre
le livre **que** vous tenez à la main
la maison **dont** vous voyez la façade.

3 *Qui* preceded by a preposition is employed with reference to *persons*, not to *things* ; as :

l'homme **à qui** vous parlez
les chefs **de qui** vous dépendez
la personne **avec qui** je me promène
l'homme **contre qui** je plaide.

4 With *things* the relative pronoun *lequel* is used when preceded by a preposition ; as :

l'exemple **sur lequel** vous vous réglez
le bâton **avec lequel** il soutient ses pas chancelants
la plante **à laquelle** je vais ajouter une greffe.

5 However, with *things personified* and in poetry this is not always observed ; as :

ordonne à la main **par qui** Dieu m'a frappé. (VOLTAIRE.)
viendrez-vous un faix **sous qui** Rome succombe ? (CORNEILLE.)

Il court parmi le monde un livre abominable
Et **de qui** la lecture est même condamnable.
(MOLIÈRE, *Le Misanthrope*, act v. sc. 1.)

IMPORTANT RULE WITH REGARD TO **DONT**.

276 *Dont* cannot be used when *the complement of the relative is preceded by a preposition*, but recourse must be had to the relative pronoun *lequel*; as :

<p>l'homme au pouvoir duquel vous êtes tombé est très-méchant celui-là sous les auspices duquel la guerre s'est faite les conquérants laissent en friche la terre pour la possession de laquelle ils ont fait périr tant de millions d'hommes</p>	<p><i>the man into whose power ye have fallen is very cruel he under whose auspices the war was undertaken conquerors leave desolate the land for the possession of which they have caused the death of so many thousands of men.</i></p>
--	---

277 Difference between *dont* and *d'où*, signifying *whence*, or *from* or *out of which*.

The former is employed in a figurative sense ; as :

la famille dont je descends	<i>the family from which I as descended.</i>
------------------------------------	--

Je jure par le ciel qui me voit confondue,
Par ces grands Ottomans **dont** je suis descendue.

(RACINE.)

Rentre dans le néant **dont** je t'ai fait sortir.

(Ibid.)

D'où is employed when reference is made to some actual locality ; as :

<p>Vénus remonta dans un nuage d'où elle était sortie d'où venez-vous ?</p>	<p><i>Venus reascended in the cloud from which she had emerged where do you come from ?</i></p>
---	---

A comparison of the two following sentences, in which *maison* is used alternately in its literal and figurative senses, will explain the difference :

<p>la maison d'où je venais de sortir a été frappée par la foudre le Tasse naquit à Sorrente ; la maison dont il sortait était une des plus illustres de l'Italie</p>	<p><i>the house which I had just left was struck by lightning Tasso was born at Sorrente ; the family to which he belonged was one of the most illustrious in all Italy.</i></p>
---	--

278 *Dont* is sometimes employed with the signification of *by which*, *by means of which* ; as :

le favorable aveu **dont** elle l'a séduit. (CORNEILLE.)
après quelques paroles **dont** je tâchais d'adoucir la douleur de cette
charmante affligée. (MOLIÈRE, Les Fourberies de Scapin.)

279 *Qui* absolute.

Qui is often found employed *absolutely* for persons, and sometimes for things, in the sense of *celui—celle—ceux—celles qui*.

Persons :

qui vit aimé de tous à jamais *whoever lives beloved by all should*
 devrait vivre *live for ever*
qui ne fait des heureux n'est pas *a man who does not contribute*
 digne de l'être *towards the happiness of others*
does not deserve to be happy
himself.

Le bonheur appartient à *qui* (i.e. à *celui qui*) fait des heureux,
 Mais j'ai tort d'en parler à *qui* (i.e. à *celui qui*) ne peut m'entendre.
 (CORNEILLE.)

Especially in such colloquial phrases as the following:—

qui vivra verra
 rira bien **qui** rira le dernier
 sauve **qui** peut !

Things :

voici **qui** (i.e. *quelque chose qui*) me convient
 voilà **qui** vous plaira (i.e. *une chose qui*)
qui plus est *what's more*
qui pis est *what's worse.*

280 *Peculiar Uses of Qui.*a. *A qui*, signifying competition, rivalry :

c'était à **qui** arriverait le premier *they strove to see which would arrive*
first

Et tous trois à l'envi s'empresser ardemment
A qui dévorerait ce règne d'un moment.

(CORNEILLE.)

And all three (might have been seen) vying with each other, to see who would first devour this shortlived reign.

β. *Qui que* in the sense of *quelque* :

Qui que tu sois, voici ton maître ;
 Il l'est, le fut, ou le doit être.

(VOLTAIRE.)

Whoever you are, here is your master (i.e. Love) ;
He either is so, or has been so, or is destined to be so.

γ. *Qui* — *qui* with the sense of *some* — *others* :

ils cherchèrent la source du mal, *they sought for the source of the*
qui d'un côté, **qui** d'un autre, *evil, some on one side and some*
 et pas un ne la trouva (BALZAC) *on another, and no one found it*

ils empoignèrent **qui** un couteau, *they seized one a knife, another a*
qui un fusil, et se jetèrent sur *gun, and threw themselves upon*
 moi *me.*

INTERROGATIVES.

281 *Qui** used interrogatively refers to **persons** only, and is of all cases, genders, and numbers. *Que* refers to **things**.

Persons :

qui a fait cela ?	avec qui êtes-vous venu ?
qui demandez-vous ?	à qui parlez-vous ? etc.
contre qui plaidez-vous ?	

Things :

(*Nom.*) **que** vous semble, mes sœurs, de l'état où nous sommes ?
 (RACINE, *Esther.*)
que vous semble, a-t-il dit, du goût de cette soupe ?
 (BOILEAU, *Sat.* iii.)
qu'est-ce ?
qu'est ceci ? dit-il à son monde. (LA FONTAINE.)
qu'importe que le reste soit mis de travers ? (BOILEAU.)
 (*Acc.*) **que** tenez-vous à la main ?
que feriez-vous à ma place ?
que ne quitterait-on pour vous accompagner ?

282 *Que* with the sense of *quoi, à quoi, pourquoi*

Et **que** sert à Cotin la raison qui lui crie,
 N'écris plus, guéris-toi d'une vaine furie ?
 (BOILEAU, *Sat.* viii.)
Que peut servir ici l'Égypte et ses faux dieux ?
Que parlez-vous ici d'Albe et de sa victoire ?
 (CORNEILLE, *Horace.*)
Que tardez-vous, seigneur, à la répudier ?
 (RACINE, *Britann.*)

Les ruines d'une maison
 Se peuvent réparer ;
Que n'est cet avantage
 Pour les ruines d'un visage ?
 (LA FONTAINE, Bk. viii. Fable v.)

si le choix est si beau, **que** ne le prenez-vous ? (MOLIÈRE, *Femmes. sav.*)

283 *Que* with infinitives.

que devenir ?	<i>what is to become of us ?</i>
que faire dans un pareil cas ?	<i>what is to be done in such a case ?</i>

* Note that the *i* of **qui** can never be elided ; as : **qui** êtes-vous ? **qui** avez-vous vu ?

Mais quand nous serions rois, **que** donner à des Dieux?
(LA FONTAINE, *Ph. et B.*)

Que faire ! Il faut partir ; les matelots sont prêts.

284 *Que* with the sense of *comment* :

que sait-on ce qui arrivera ? *how is one to know what will happen?*

que sait-on s'il viendra ? *how can one tell whether he will come or not?*

285 *Que* followed by *que*, with the sense of *why . . . ; if not . . . ? what else but . . . ?*

Que fais-tu Jupiter, **que** du haut de la nue
Tu n'en perdes la race afin de me venger ?
(LA FONTAINE, Bk. viii. Fable v.)

*What are you doing, Jupiter, that from the height of heaven
You do not destroy their whole race, in order to avenge me?*

que font les obstacles **que** piquer nos désirs ?
what else do obstacles do but stimulate our desires?

Que may be either a relative or interrogative pronoun, or a conjunction, or an exclamation, or a redundant particle with no equivalent in English. Under the two first-named categories of relative or interrogative pronouns we have nearly exhausted the subject. It is sometimes very difficult to define exactly under which head to class *que*; we have thought better, therefore, to give a list of some of the peculiar uses of *que*, without attempting to state under what category they are to be classed.

286 *Peculiar Uses of QUE.*

a. *N'avoir, ne savoir, ne pouvoir* — **que**, *n'avoir que faire* :

C'est demain qu'elle (Médée) sort de nos terres ;
Nous n'avons désormais **que** craindre de sa part.
We have henceforward nothing to fear. (CORNEILLE.)

il ne pouvait **que** dire. (LA FONTAINE, Bk. vii. Fable vii.)
he had no reason to give.

S'il faut agir, je **ne sais que** faire,
S'il faut parler, je **ne sais que** dire. (J.-J. ROUSSEAU.)

je **n'ai que faire** de vos dons *I don't want your gifts*
(MOLIÈRE, *Avare*)

vous êtes un sot de venir vous *you are foolish to come and thrust*
fourrer où vous **n'avez que** *yourself in where you are not*
faire (*Ibid. Médecin malgré lui*) *wanted*

je ne **peux qu'y faire** *I can't help it (I can't mend matters.)*

β. *Que* with an adjective or participle and the verb *être*:

insensé **que** vous êtes !

madman that you are !

aveugle **que** j'étais !

blind that I was !

arrivé **qu'**il fut, il se mit à la
besogne

*he had no sooner arrived than he
set to work.*

γ. *Que je crois, que je pense, que je sache*, with the sense of
à ce que je crois:

vous n'êtes pas d'ici **que je crois**
(MOLIÈRE)

*you are not a native of this place,
as I suppose*

On aura, **que je pense**,

Grande joie à me voir après dix ans d'absence.

(MOLIÈRE, *L'École des Femmes*.)

il n'est point de destin plus cruel, **que je sache**.

δ. *Ce que c'est* followed by *que*:

je sais **ce que c'est que** d'aller
dans ce monde-là

*I know what it is to go amongst
that sort of people*

ce que c'est que de nous !

*what people we are ! (we of the
human race !).*

ε. *Que*, exclamatory, *how ! how much ! how many !*

Dieu, mon créateur, **que** ta magnificence étonne tout le monde !

que les Français sont grands quand leur maître les guide !

que vous prenez des soins superflus !

que de filles, mon Dieu, mes pièces de monnaie ont produites !

(LA FONTAINE)

ζ. *Que* for *when*:

le jour suivant **que** tout le monde
était parti

*on the day following, when every-
one had gone away*

du moment **qu'**il gagna ce qui
cause nos peines (LA FONTAINE,
Bk. viii. Fable i.)

*from the time that he gained that
which occasions our sorrows*

j'y serai au mois de septembre,
que j'irai à B—— (Mme. de
SÉVIGNÉ)

*I shall be there in the month of
September, when I shall go to
B——*

à l'heure **qu'**il est

at the present moment.

η. *Que* with the sense of *selon lequel, laquelle, &c.*:

de la façon enfin **qu'**avec toi
j'ai vécu (CORNEILLE)

*from the manner in which I have
lived with you*

je tournai la tête du côté **que**
partait la voix (GIL BLAS)

*I turned my head in the direction
from whence the voice came.*

θ. *Que* in the sense of *soit que, s'il arrive que, &c.*:

tout ce que nous faisons, **que** nous pleurons, **que** nous nous réjouissons,
il doit être d'une telle nature que nous puissions du moins le
rapporter à Jésus-Christ. (MASSILLON.)

que son maître paraisse et ses sens sont calmés *only let his master appear, and his feelings are appeased*
qu'il fasse le moindre excès, il en est malade *if he commits the slightest excess, he is sure to be ill.*

ι. *Que* in the sense of *il faut que, je veux que* :

que tout le monde se taise !

que je vous retrouve à mon retour tel que je vous laisse !

que la foudre à vos yeux m'écrase si je mens !

(CORNEILLE, *Le Menteur*.)

κ. *Que* for *avant que* :

ne venez pas **que** je ne vous appelle *don't come till I call you.*

λ. *Que* for *depuis que* :

il y a un an **que** je ne vous ai vu *it is a twelvemonth since I saw you.*

μ. *Que* bien que mal, as best one can :

Que bien que mal, elle arriva

Sans autre aventure fâcheuse.

(LA FONTAINE, *Les Deux Pigeons*.)

ν. *Ne que*, nothing but, nothing else than, only :

je **ne** vois **que** lui, il **ne** fait **que** ça, etc.

ο. In English the conjunction that seems to introduce the first clause of a speech or description is generally repeated at the beginning of the second and any other subsequent clause ; as : *if* you have done dinner, and *if* you are ready to begin again, &c. ; *when* you go north, and *when* you see my mother, &c.

In French, whatever be the conjunction that serves to introduce the first clause, all subsequent clauses are introduced by *que* ; as :

comme nous avons déjà dit, et **que** nous le verrons plus clairement ailleurs. (BOSSUET.)

quand tout céda à Louis, et **que** nous crûmes voir revenir le temps des miracles. (*Ibid.*)

si* vous allez à Londres, et **que** vous y voyiez mon père, dites-lui, etc.

π. *Que si* in the sense of *si* :

que si ce loup t'atteint, casse-lui la mâchoire.

que si le mort n'était convaincu d'aucune faute, on l'enterrait honorablement. (BOSSUET.)

* Remark that if the first clause is governed by *si*, the verb in the second clause after *que* must be in the subjunctive mood.

p. *Que de* or *que* redundant after *ce*. (See Rule 252, page 321.)

si j'étais <i>que de</i> vous	if I were you
oh <i>que non! que non pas!</i>	not at all! not in the least!
(famil.)	

QUOI.

287 *Quoi* is a conjunctive indeclinable pronoun, signifying *quelle chose* or *laquelle chose*, with but one form for both genders and numbers.

It is generally the *complement*, rarely the *subject*, of a sentence.

It cannot be employed in reference to persons.

It is either *relative*, *interrogative*, or *interjectional*.

QUOI relative.

288 *Quoi* generally refers to some indefinite antecedent, such as *ce* or *rien*; as:

<i>ce à quoi</i> nous pensons	that which we are thinking of
<i>ce sur quoi</i> nous nous disputons	the point on which we are disputing
il n'est <i>rien à quoi</i> je ne sois disposé	there is nothing for which I am not ready.

289 It may also be used in reference to some preceding clause; as:

Flatter ceux du logis, à son maître complaire,
Moyennant *quoi* votre salaire
Sera force relief de toutes les façons.

(LA FONTAINE, Bk. i. Fable v.)

290 Or in reference to the words *chose* or *point*:

l'éducation des enfants est une *chose à quoi* il faut s'attacher fortement. (MOLIÈRE, *Les Fourberies de Scapin*, act ii. sc. 1.)
deux *points à quoi* je m'attache. (BOURDALOUE.)

291 Such examples as the following, where it would seem to have direct reference to a preceding noun substantive, are rare:

Travailler c'est la loi,
Sans quoi
L'on n'a rien à soi.

c'est encore ici une des raisons **pour quoi** je veux élever Émile à la campagne. (J.-J. ROUSSEAU.)

In the literature of the seventeenth century *quoi* is frequently found referring to nouns substantive used in a definite sense :

ce blasphème, seigneur, de **quoi** vous m'accusez. (CORNEILLE, *Andromède*, act i. sc. 2.)

ce n'est pas le bonheur après **quoi** je soupire. (MOLIÈRE, *Tartuffe*, act iii. sc. 3.)

QUOI *interrogative*.

292 *Quoi* interrogative, if employed with an adjective, requires the preposition *de* between itself and the adjective; as :

quoi de nouveau ?	<i>what news?</i>
quoi de plus satisfaisant pour des parents que des enfants sages ?	<i>what can be more satisfactory to parents than well-behaved children?</i>

293 In no other circumstances can it be nominative, but it must be preceded by a preposition ; as :

de quoi discourez-vous ?	<i>what are you talking about?</i>
à quoi pensez-vous ?	<i>what are you thinking of?</i>
avec quoi avez-vous fait cela ?	<i>with what did you do that?</i>

294 *QUOI interjectional*.

Car **quoi** ! rien d'assuré ! point de franche lipée. (LA FONTAINE, Bk. i. Fable v.)

How ! what ! nothing fixed and certain ! no hearty meal !

Qu'est-ce là ? lui dit-il. Rien ! **Quoi** ! rien ! (*Ibid.*)

What is that ? said he to him. Oh, nothing ! How do you mean, nothing !

Quoi ! mes plus chers amis ! **quoi** ! Cinna ! **quoi** ! Maxime !

Les deux que j'honorais d'une si haute estime !

(CORNEILLE, *Cinna*, act iv. sc. 1.)

Peculiar Uses of QUOI.

a. *Ni qui ni quoi*, neither who nor what :

Comme vous êtes roi, vous ne considérez

Qui ni quoi.

(LA FONTAINE, Bk. v. Fable xviii.)

β. *De quoi*, wherewithal :

j'ai de quoi me défendre et de	<i>I have wherewithal to defend my-</i>
quoi vous répondre (ROTROU)	<i>self and to reply to you</i>
donnez-moi de quoi écrire	<i>give me writing materials</i>

j'écrirais volontiers si j'avais **de quoi** *had I the materials, I would willingly write*
ils trouvaient aux champs trop **de quoi** (LA FONTAINE, Bk. i. Fable viii.) *they found too much to eat in the fields.*

γ. *De quoi* with the signification of wealth, affluence, sufficiency :

avoir **de quoi** *to be pretty well off*
ces pauvres gens n'ont pas **de quoi** *those poor people have nothing to live on.*

δ. *Il n'y a pas de quoi* (fam.), elliptical for *il n'y a pas de quoi vous mettre en peine* ; as :

Je vous remercie infiniment, monsieur ! Monsieur ! il n'y a pas **de quoi** *I am infinitely obliged to you, sir. O sir ! there is no occasion.*

Il n'en ordonna pas moins des prières pour remercier Dieu de ce qu'il n'y a eu que 300 ou 400 malheureux qui aient été brûlés ; je m'imagine que Dieu répondra qu'il **n'y a pas de quoi** (i.e. that 'there is not much to be thankful for'). (*Extract from a letter of D'Alembert to Voltaire.*)

QUOI QUE.

295. *Quoi* followed by *que* is equivalent to *quelque chose que* :

quoi que vous disiez, je ne le *whatever you may say, I will not do*
ferai pas *it*
je ne crains rien, **quoi qu'on** *I fear nothing, whatever they may*
fasse pour me perdre *do to ruin me*
donnez-le-moi, **quoi que** ce soit *give it me, whatever it is.*

A **quoi qu'en** reprenant on soit assujettie,
Je ne m'attendais pas à cette repartie.

(MOLIÈRE, *Misanthrope*, act iii. sc. 5.)

*Whatever one may be exposed to in the way of recrimination,
I did not expect that answer at least.*

296 Important Observation.

Quoi que is not to be confounded with the conjunction *quoique*, although. The latter is *one* word, the former is composed of *two* distinct words ; they both govern the subjunctive mood.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS (*Pronoms indéfinis*).

There are many words which are sometimes employed as *adjectives*, sometimes as *indefinite pronouns*; they will be found under the heading *adjectives*.

Such are the following, which may be found by referring to the rule and page here given.

	Rule	Page
aucun	109 γ . .	279
autre	110 . .	279
nul	122 . .	282
plusieurs	125 . .	283
quelque chose	131 . .	284
tel	137 β . .	286
tout	139 . .	286

The indefinite pronouns never employed otherwise, and never joined to a noun substantive, are :

- | | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. autrui * | 4. on | 7. quelqu'un |
| 2. chacun | 5. personne | 8. qui or quoi que ce soit |
| 3. l'un l'autre | 6. quiconque | 9. rien. |

These indefinite pronouns are treated of briefly in Part I. pages 30 to 33.

The following rules are intended to supply matter, with regard to them, which was there omitted:—

297 *Autrui* (others, other persons, another) can only be used in reference to *persons*. It can refer to men or women indifferently; can never be the subject of a sentence; and if not directly governed by a verb, must be preceded by a preposition (or the word *chez*):

il ne faut pas envier les biens d' autrui	<i>we must not covet another person's goods</i>
ne fais à autrui ce que tu ne vou- drais pas qui fût fait à toi-même	<i>do not unto others what thou wouldest not have done to thyself</i>
vouloir tromper autrui c'est vou- loir se tromper soi-même	<i>to wish to deceive another is to wish to deceive oneself</i>
on est toujours mieux chez soi que chez autrui	<i>one is always better off in one's own house than in another person's.</i>

* 1. As in old French *celui* was a case of the nom. *cel*, *cettui* of *cet*, so *autrui* is a case of *autre*, and used to mean *de l'autre*. One wrote formerly *l'autrui cheval*, the horse of another. 2. *Chacun*=*quisque unus*. 4. *ON* in old French *hom* (*homo*). In the *Roman de la Rose* 'beau gentilhom' is found to rhyme with *prison*, and Marot has 'Noé le bon hom' rhyming with *saison*, showing the pronunciation to have been *hon*. Cf. the use of the German *man* in the same indefinite sense. 9. *Rien*, from Lat. *res*, which coupled with the negative particle *ne* gives the sense of nothing.

298 *Autrui* is in itself so vague an expression that it is not allowable to employ the possessive adjectives *son, sa, ses*, or the personal pronouns *lui, leur*, in reference to it.

For instance, such constructions as the following would be faulty :

- (1) nous signalons les défauts d'**autrui** sans jamais faire remarquer ses bonnes qualités
 (2) en médissant d'**autrui** nous lui faisons une injustice.

It is necessary in such cases either to employ the pronoun *en* followed by the article *le, la, or les* ; as :

- (1) nous signalons les défauts d'**autrui** sans jamais **en** faire remarquer les bonnes qualités ;

or, which would be still better, to change the construction entirely, and write :

- (2) en médissant **des autres** nous **leur** faisons une injustice.

299 *Chacun* is either employed in a general and indefinite sense with the signification of *anyone, everyone*, in which case it is always of the masculine gender, and can only be used in speaking of persons ; as :

chacun sait cela	<i>everyone knows that</i>
chacun a son bonheur ; il faut s'en contenter	<i>every man has his (turn of) luck, and must make the best of it ;</i>

(300) or it is employed in reference to some term that has preceded it or is to follow, in which case it must take the gender of the person or object to which it refers (for this use of *chacun* applies equally to *things* and *persons*) :

chacun de ses gestes était du dernier comique	<i>each one of his gestures was comic in the extreme</i>
ces deux demoiselles ont également bien joué ; il faut donner un prix à chacune	<i>those two young ladies have played equally well ; a prize must be given to each.</i>

301 *Chacun* followed by *son, sa, ses*, or by *leur, leurs*.

French grammarians have written much on the difficulty of deciding whether *chacun* should be followed by the singular possessive *son* or the plural *leur*. The rules upon which they seem agreed are as follows :—

302 Whenever *chacun* is placed *after* the complement of a transitive verb, the singular possessive adjective should be

employed and the singular personal pronoun *le* (if any is required); as :

les deux rois faisaient chanter des Te Deum (<i>complément</i>), chacun dans son camp (VOLTAIRE)	<i>the two kings caused thanksgivings to be celebrated, each in his camp</i>
ils ont apporté leurs offrandes (<i>complément</i>), chacun selon ses moyens	<i>they brought their offerings, each according to his means</i>
ils ont raconté cette histoire (<i>complément</i>), chacun à sa manière	<i>they related this story, each in his own fashion</i>
ils ont subi la peine de mort (<i>complément</i>), chacun dans l'ordre qui lui avait été assigné	<i>they underwent the penalty of death, each in the order which had been assigned to him</i>
la loi lie tous les hommes (<i>complément</i>), chacun en ce qui le concerne	<i>the law lays all men under an obligation, each man in that particular which concerns him.</i>

303 Whenever *chacun* precedes the complement of the verb, thus separating the verb from the case that it governs, the plural possessive adjective *leur, leurs*, must be used; as :

ils ont donné, chacun leur avis	<i>they each gave their opinion</i>
César et Pompée avaient chacun leur mérite	<i>Cæsar and Pompey had each their several merits</i>
les dix tribus de l'Attique avaient chacune leurs présidents, leurs officiers de police, leurs tribunaux, leurs assemblées, et leurs intérêts	<i>the ten tribes of Attica had each their presidents, magistrates, tribunals, assemblies, and peculiar interests</i>
les hommes ayant chacun leurs défauts devraient avoir plus d'indulgence les uns pour les autres	<i>all men having each their several failings, they should be more indulgent to each other</i>
les abeilles bâtissent chacune leur cellule	<i>bees construct each their several cells.</i>

304 *Chacun* following a neuter or intransitive verb.

Whenever the sense of the proposition is complete without the complementary clause, the singular possessive is to be used; as :

les juges ont opiné, chacun selon ses lumières	<i>the judges gave their opinion, each one according to his own views</i>
ces dames ont chanté, chacune à sa méthode	<i>those ladies sang, each in her own peculiar style.</i>

305 If, however, the complementary clause is necessary to complete the sense of the preceding clause, the plural possessive must be used; as :

on a eu des poètes qui excellaient chacun dans leur genre	<i>we have had poets who excelled each in their style</i>
ces nations barbares se distin- guaient chacune par leur ma- nière particulière de combattre et de s'armer	<i>these barbarous nations were dis- tinguished each by their peculiar manner of fighting and wearing arms.</i>

It seems to us that as Englishmen we have a means at our disposal, which is wanting to French grammarians, of deciding this difficulty, which is that wherever we would in English employ the singular possessive *his, her, its*, after *each*, we should in French use *son, sa, ses*; and wherever we would employ the plural *their*, we should use the French plural possessive *leurs*.

- 306 1. *L'un, l'autre; les uns, les autres.*
2. *L'un et l'autre; les uns et les autres.*
3. *L'un l'autre; les uns les autres.*

The above combinations of *un* and *autre*, although offering but very slight difference to the eye, have nevertheless very different significations.

We propose to treat them consecutively.

(1) *L'un, l'autre*, or *les uns, les autres*, when used separately from each other, and in reference to some previously mentioned person or object, have respectively the meaning of *the former* and *the latter*; as:

Charles XII, roi de Suède, éprouva ce que **la prospérité** a de plus grand, et ce que **l'adversité** a de plus cruel, sans avoir été aveuglé par **l'une** ni ébranlé par **l'autre**.

Here *l'une* refers to 'la prospérité,' and *l'autre* to 'l'adversité.'

la jeunesse est présomptueuse et la vieillesse est timide; l'une veut vivre, l'autre a vécu	<i>youth is presumptuous and old age timid; the former is eager to taste the sweets of life, the lat- ter has had its day.</i>
---	--

(2) *L'un et l'autre, les uns et les autres*, have the signification of *both*:

L'un et l'autre rival s'arrêtant au passage,
Se mesure des yeux, s'observe, et s'envisage.

(BOILEAU, *Lutrin*, ch. v.)

L'un et l'autre à mon sens ont le cerveau troublé.

(BOILEAU.)

L'un et l'autre consul suivaient ses étendards.

When they are governed by a verb it is necessary to precede them by a personal pronoun in the same case :

je les crois compromis **l'un et l'autre** *I consider them both compromised*

je veux leur parler à **l'un et à l'autre** *I wish to speak to both of them.*

(3) *L'un l'autre, les uns les autres*, have the signification of *one another*.

Here we have an idea of reciprocity, the first (*l'un*) being *always the subject*, and the latter (*l'autre*) *the object* :

dans ce monde il se faut **l'un l'autre** secourir.

(LA FONTAINE.)

les hommes sont faits pour se consoler **les uns les autres**.

(VOLTAIRE.)

ces deux demoiselles se detestent **l'une l'autre**.

In English, whenever the expression *one another* is governed by a preposition, we place the preposition before both :

they never speak **to** one another
they are jealous **of** one another.

In French, the preposition precedes the *latter* of the two pronouns :

ils ne se parlent jamais **l'un à l'autre**

ils sont jaloux **l'un de l'autre**

est-il édifiant de voir des catholiques déchaînés les uns **contre** les autres !

ON.

The plain rules with regard to this pronoun have been already stated in Part I. page 30. It will, therefore, only be necessary to recapitulate them in a summary manner.

1. *On* is always the subject of a sentence, and is accompanied by a verb in the third person singular number. It is rarely followed by a feminine or plural. See Rule 307, p. 342.

2. It is customary to place the definite article before it (*l'on*) when it follows *et*, *si*, *où*, or *que*, provided always (for euphony's sake) that the word that immediately follows it do not begin with the letter *l*.

3. Like the personal pronouns *il* or *elle*, when *on* comes after a verb in the third person singular and terminating in *e* or *a* (as is the case in interrogative, parenthetical, or interjectional

sentences), it is usual to insert the letter *t* between *on* and the verb, for euphony :

À moi seul que ne **donne-t-on**
Jeanne, Jeannette, et Jeanneton ! (*Old Song.*)

je me moque du qu'en-**dira-t-on** *I don't care a fig for what people will say.*

307 Although, as has been before stated, *on* is nearly always accompanied by a word in the singular number and masculine gender, there are instances in which it so evidently has reference to a woman or some object in the plural number, that it may be found followed by a feminine or a plural.

Feminine :

on n'est pas toujours jeune et **jolie**. (*Dict. de l'Académie.*)
quelque mine qu'**on** fasse, **on** est toujours bien aise d'être **aimée**.
(*MOLIERE.*)

à votre âge, ma fille, **on** est bien **curieuse**. (*MARMONTEL.*)

Plural :

on n'est pas **des esclaves** pour essayer de si mauvais traitements.
le commencement et le déclin de l'amour se font sentir par l'embarras où l'**on** est de se trouver **seuls**.

Corneille even uses *on* with *tous deux* :

on n'a **tous deux** qu'un cœur qui sent mêmes traverses.

PERSONNE.

308 *Personne* is either (1) a substantive or (2) an indefinite pronoun.

1. *Personne* substantive, meaning *a person*, is always feminine, whatever be the sex of the person to whom it refers :

il y a en Sorbonne des personnes très-savantes et très- dis- crètes, auxquelles on peut se fier pour la conduite de ses mœurs (Le Père BONHOURS)	<i>the University of Sorbonne will supply very learned and discreet teachers, to whom one may trust implicitly for the guidance of one's morals</i>
j'ai connu son frère; c'était une personne très- instruite	<i>I knew his brother; he was a very well-informed person.</i>

309 2. *Personne* indefinite pronoun, with the signification

of *no one, anyone*, is always of the masculine gender and singular number, and takes no article, definite or indefinite.

It is *generally* accompanied by the negative particle *ne* :

personne ne serait assez hardi pour le contredire	<i>no one would be bold enough to con- tradict him</i>
je ne connais personne de plus généreux	<i>I know no one more generous</i>
je suis entré, mais je n'y ai trouvé personne	<i>I went in, but found nobody there.</i>

310 *Personne* may be employed without the negative particle *ne*—

1. Absolutely, as in answering questions :

Qui est là-haut? Personne	<i>Who is upstairs there? No one</i>
Qui avez-vous vu? Personne	<i>Whom did you see? Nobody</i>
Avec qui étiez-vous là-haut? Avec personne	<i>With whom were you upstairs? With no one.</i>

Or (2) with the sense of *anyone* in interrogative phrases, or where doubt is expressed or implied :

je doute que personne ait jamais mieux parlé que vous	<i>I doubt whether anyone ever spoke better than you</i>
y a-t-il personne d'assez sot pour le croire?	<i>is anyone fool enough to believe that?</i>
personne a-t-il jamais raconté plus naïvement que La Fon- taine?	<i>did anyone ever tell a tale with greater simplicity than La Fon- taine?</i>

QUICONQUE.

311 *Quiconque*, whosoever, is generally masculine, and always of the singular number :

quiconque est riche est tout *whoever is rich is everything.*
(BOILEAU)

Quiconque ne voit guère n'a guère à dire aussi.
(LA FONTAINE, Bk. ix. Fable ix.)

Whoever never sees anything has nothing to talk about.

312 If *quiconque* refers in an unmistakeable manner to a woman, an adjective or participle taken with it may be put in the feminine gender. Thus a schoolmistress might say in addressing her pupils :

quiconque de vous parlera sera
punie *whoever among you speaks shall be
punished.*

QUI QUE CE SOIT, *whoever it be.*

313 *Qui que ce soit* can only be said of persons, and requires the verb that follows it to be in the subjunctive mood:

à qui que ce soit que nous par-	<i>to whomsoever it be that we speak,</i>
lions, nous devrions être polis	<i>should be polite</i>
il ne faut mal parler de qui que	<i>we should not slander anyone, whom-</i>
ce soit	<i>soever it be.</i>

QUOI QUE CE SOIT, *whatsoever it be.*

314 *Quoi que ce soit* can only be said of things, and also requires the verb that follows it to be put in the subjunctive mood:

quoi que ce soit qu'il dise, je ne	<i>whatever he may say, I do not believe</i>
le crois pas	<i>him</i>
les gens paresseux ne réussissent à	<i>idle people succeed in nothing what-</i>
quoi que ce soit	<i>ever.</i>

QUELQU'UN.

315 *Quelqu'un* has two significations, the one *absolute*, and the other *relative*.

316 1. *Quelqu'un* used absolutely, with the signification of *anyone, some one*, is always *masculine* and *singular*:

quelqu'un m'a dit que vous étiez	<i>some one told me that you had</i>
sorti	<i>gone out</i>
quelqu'un a-t-il jamais douté	<i>has anyone ever entertained se-</i>
sérieusement de l'existence d'un	<i>rious doubts as to the existence</i>
Dieu?	<i>of a God?</i>

2. *Quelqu'un* preserves its masculine form even where referring evidently to a word in the feminine gender:

Quelqu'un en vérité

Qui pour vous n'a pas trop mauvaise volonté,
Ma maîtresse en un mot. (MOLIÈRE.)

3. *Quelqu'un* taken in conjunction with an adjective requires the preposition *de*:

y a-t-il quelqu'un d'assez hardi	<i>is there anyone bold enough to</i>
pour lui répondre?	<i>answer him?</i>
trouvez-moi quelqu'un de plus	<i>find me some one better in-</i>
instruit	<i>formed.</i>

317 *Quelqu'un* relative has both genders and numbers:

quelqu'un, quelqu'une; quelques-uns, quelques-unes.

1. If *preceding* the noun to which it refers, it requires the preposition *de* :

connaissez-vous quelques-uns	<i>do you know any of these gentlemen?</i>
de ces messieurs ?	
quelques-unes de ces étoffes	<i>some of these substances are water-</i>
sont imperméables	<i>proof.</i>

2. If *following* and *referring to* a noun, it must be preceded by the pronoun *en* :

Avez-vous examiné ces élèves?	<i>Have you examined those boys?</i>
Oui; j' en ai examiné quelques-uns	<i>Yes; I have examined some of them</i>
Avez-vous mangé ces fraises que je	<i>Did you eat those strawberries</i>
vous ai envoyées l'autre jour?	<i>which I sent you the other day?</i>
J' en ai mangé quelques-unes	<i>I eat some of them, and found</i>
et je les ai trouvées très-bonnes	<i>them very good.</i>

RIEN.*

318 *Rien* is either an *indefinite pronoun* or (rarely) a *substantive*.

319 As an indefinite pronoun *rien* is always of the masculine gender; and although generally used in conjunction with the negative particle *ne*, it may under certain circumstances be used without it :

rien n'est plus incertain que notre	<i>nothing is more uncertain than our</i>
dernière heure	<i>last hour</i>
j'ai eu beau chercher, je n'ai rien	<i>it was of no use my seeking, I found</i>
trouvé	<i>nothing.</i>

320 *Rien* without *ne*.

1. Absolutely, in answer to questions :

Qu'avez-vous fait ? Rien	<i>What have you done? Nothing</i>
Que vous a-t-il donné ? Rien ,	<i>What did he give you? Nothing,</i>
absolument rien	<i>literally nothing.</i>

2. With a preposition :

il vit de rien	<i>he lives on nothing</i>
nous avons eu cela pour rien	<i>we got that for nothing (i.e. very</i>
	<i>cheap)</i>
on n'a rien pour rien	<i>you get nothing in return for</i>
	<i>nothing.</i>

* From Latin *rem*. *Rien* was a substantive in old French, with the signification of *chose* ; it was spelt with an *s* (*riens*), and, like Latin *res*, was of the feminine gender :

la riens que j'ai vue est fort belle ; une très-belle riens.

3. In interrogative phrases, or where doubt is expressed, with the sense of anything :

y a-t-il rien de plus rare ?	<i>is there anything more unusual ?</i>
je doute que rien m'ait jamais fait plus de plaisir que ce livre-là	<i>I doubt whether anything ever afforded me so much pleasure as that book.</i>

4. *Rien* with an adjective requires the preposition *de* :

rien de nouveau	<i>nothing new</i>
il n'y a rien de meilleur	<i>there is nothing better.</i>

321 *Rien* as a substantive is preceded by the article, definite, indefinite, or partitive :

chantez-nous quelque chose, une ariette, un rien	<i>sing us something, a little air, a trifle</i>
il vaut mieux ne rien faire que des riens	<i>it is better to do nothing than (to waste one's time on) trifles.</i>

322 Peculiar Signification of RIEN.

cet homme ne m'est rien	<i>that man has nothing whatever to do with me</i>
ne mangez pas cela ; ce n'est rien pour vous	<i>don't eat that ; it is not good for you.</i>

VI. THE VERB.

323 The verbs, regular, irregular, reflective, and defective, may be found fully conjugated in Part I., from pages 33 to 67 inclusive.

It has been stated in a note to page 39 that, although, for the sake of economising space, only one so-called compound tense has been introduced into the models contained on pages 38, 39, 40, 41, there do in reality exist to every verb just so many 'compound tenses' as there are tenses to the auxiliary verbs *avoir* and *être*; the following model (see the next four pages), then, in no way differs from those already given in Part I. It has only been drawn up for the purpose of adding all the compound tenses omitted in Part I., and affixing to each tense (simple or compound) the names given to such tenses by modern French grammarians, to facilitate the references that may be made to such tenses from time to time in the course of the exercises on the syntax.

324 Model of an Active Verb conjugated with the Auxiliary AVOIR.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SIMPLE TENSES.

Present.

I finish, or am finishing, &c.

je finis
tu finis
il finit
nous finissons
vous finissez
ils finissent

Imperfect.

I finished, or was finishing, &c.

je finissais
tu finissais
il finissait
nous finissions
vous finissiez
ils finissaient

Preterite (called also *Prétérit défini*).

I finished, &c.

je finis
tu finis
il finit
nous finîmes
vous finîtes
ils finirent

Future.

I shall finish, &c.

je finirai
tu finiras
il finira
nous finirons
vous finirez
ils finiront

Conditional.

I should, or would finish, &c.

je finirais
tu finirais
il finirait
nous finirions
vous finiriez
ils finiraient

COMPOUND (i.e. COMPOSED) TENSES.

Present (called also *Prétérit indéfini*).

I have finished, or I finished, &c.

j'ai
tu as
il a
nous avons
vous avez
ils ont

} fini

Imperfect (called also *Plus-que-parfait*).

I had finished, &c.

j'avais
tu avais
il avait
nous avions
vous aviez
ils avaient

} fini

Preterite (called also *Prétérit antérieur*).

I had finished, &c.

j'eus
tu eus
il eut
nous eûmes
vous eûtes
ils eurent

} fini

Future (called also *Futur antérieur*).

I shall have finished, &c.

j'aurai
tu auras
il aura
nous aurons
vous aurez
ils auront

} fini

Conditional (called also *Conditionnel antérieur*).

I should, or would have finished, &c.

j'aurais
tu aurais
il aurait
nous aurions
vous auriez
ils auraient

} fini

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present.**That I may finish, &c.*

que je finisse
 que tu finisses
 qu'il finisse
 que nous finissions
 que vous finissiez
 qu'ils finissent

Present (called also Parfait du Subjonctif).

(*)

que j'aie
 que tu aies
 qu'il ait
 que nous ayons
 que vous ayez
 qu'ils aient

} fini

*Imperfect.**That I might finish, &c.*

que je finisse
 que tu finisses
 qu'il finît
 que nous finissions
 que vous finissiez
 qu'ils finissent

Imperfect.

(*)

que j'eusse
 que tu eusses
 qu'il eût
 que nous eussions
 que vous eussiez
 qu'ils eussent

} fini

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Finish, &c.

finis
 qu'il finisse
 finissons
 finissez
 qu'ils finissent

Have finished, &c. (i.e. by a certain specified time)

aie
 qu'il ait
 ayons
 ayez
 qu'ils aient

} fini

INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present.*finir *to finish**Present.*avoir fini *to have finished**Future.†*devant finir *being about to finish*

PARTICIPLES.

*Present.*finissant *finishing*

—

*Past.*fini, -ie *finished**Past.*ayant fini *having finished.*

* No English has been given with these tenses, as their rendering into English would necessarily vary with the verb used to govern them; as: *il faut que j'aie fini*, I must have finished (by a certain time); *il veut que tu aies fini*, he wishes you to have finished, &c.; *il fallait que j'eusse fini*, I was obliged to have done.

† Cf. Latin fut. in *rus*.

325 Model of an Active Verb conjugated with the Auxiliary ÊTRE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SIMPLE TENSES.

Present.

I come, or am coming, &c.

je viens
tu viens
il vient
nous venons
vous venez
ils viennent

Imperfect.

I came, or was coming, &c.

je venais
tu venais
il venait
nous venions
vous veniez
ils venaient

Preterite (called also *Prétérit défini*).

I came, &c.

je vins
tu vins
il vint
nous vinmes
vous vîtes
ils vinrent

Future.

I shall come, &c.

je viendrai
tu viendras
il viendra
nous viendrons
vous viendrez
ils viendront

Conditional.

I should, or would come

je viendrais
tu viendrais
il viendrait
nous viendrions
vous viendriez
ils viendraient

COMPOUND (i.e. COMPOSED) TENSES.

Present (called also *Prétérit indéfini*).

I come, or I have come, &c.

je suis
tu es
il, elle, est
nous sommes
vous êtes
ils, elles, sont

} venu, venue
} venus, venues

Imperfect (called also *Plus-que-parfait*).

I had come, &c.

j'étais
tu étais
il, elle, était
nous étions
vous étiez
ils, elles, étaient

} venu, venue
} venus, venues

Preterite (called also *Prétérit antérieur*).

I had come, &c.

je fus
tu fus
il, elle, fut
nous fûmes
vous fûtes
ils, elles, furent

} venu, venue
} venus, venues

Future (called also *Futur antérieur*).

I shall have come, &c.

je serai
tu seras
il, elle, sera
nous serons
vous serez
ils, elles, seront

} venu, venue
} venus, venues

Conditional (called also *Conditionnel antérieur*).

I would, or should have come, &c.

je serais
tu serais
il, elle, serait
nous serions
vous seriez
ils, elles, seraient

} venu, venue
} venus, venues

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present.**That I may come, &c.*

que je vienne
 que tu viennes
 qu'il vienne
 que nous venions
 que vous veniez
 qu'ils viennent

Present (called also Parfait du Subjonctif).

(*)

que je sois
 que tu sois
 qu'il, elle, soit } venu, venue
 que nous soyons
 que vous soyez } venus, venues
 qu'ils, elles, soient

*Imperfect.**That I might come, &c.*

que je vinsse
 que tu vinsses
 qu'il vînt
 que nous vinssions
 que vous vinssiez
 qu'ils vinssent

Imperfect.

(*)

que je fusse
 que tu fusses } venu, venue
 qu'il, elle, fût
 que nous fussions
 que vous fussiez } venus, venues
 qu'ils, elles, fussent

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Come, &c.

viens
 qu'il vienne
 venons
 venez
 qu'ils viennent

(*)

sois
 qu'il, elle, soit } venu, venue
 soyons
 soyez } venus, venues
 qu'ils, elles, soient

INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Present.**venir to come**Present.**être venu, venue to have come**Future.†*

*devant venir being about to come,
 or having to come*

PARTICIPLES.

*Present.**venant coming*

—

*Past.**venu, venue come**Past.**étant venu, venue having come.*

* No English given, for same reason as in preceding verb. See note to p. 249.

† Cf. Latin fut. in *rus*—*venturus*.

MOODS AND TENSES.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

326 *Present Tense.*

The present tense, as its name imports, speaks of an action that takes place at the actual time in which one is speaking, whether momentary or prolonged; as:

je vous **vois**
j'**aime** les oranges

I see you (now, at present)
I like oranges (now and at other times).

327 The present tense is often used in French (as in English) in an elevated style, both in prose and in verse, in giving a graphic description of any *past* event; as:

Mentor **prend** un bouclier, il **range** les soldats d'Aceste, et **marche** à leur tête.

328 Molière often uses the present tense for the future:

je **suis** de retour dans un moment *I shall be back soon;*

and in modern familiar parlance it is not uncommon:

adieu! je **pars** demain
je **suis** à vous dans un instant
je **reviens** dans huit jours

good-bye! I shall set out to-morrow
I will be with you directly
I shall be back in a week.

329 The *present* tense is employed in the subordinate clause of a sentence in French in many instances where we should employ the *imperfect* in English.

α. When it is intended to express some invariable maxim, axiom, or assertion which is true *at all times*, and not only at the time at which one was speaking; as:

je crois vous avoir démontré que la terre **est** ronde
il tenait pour maxime qu'un habile capitaine **peut** bien être vaincu, mais qu'il ne lui **est** pas permis d'être surpris. (BOSSUET.)

β. When it is intended to express anything actually existing or taking place at the time at which one speaks; as:

Madame de Grès a mandé à M. de Coulanges que vous **êtes** belle comme un ange (Mme. de SÉVIGNÉ)

Mme. de Grès sent word to M. de Coulanges that you were as beautiful as an angel

J'ai appris que vous **êtes** actuellement à Paris

some one told me that you were actually in Paris.

330 *The Present Tense with SI.*

When *si* implies a condition, and may be translated by the English *if*, it is followed by the present tense; as:

il sera récompensé s'il travaille	<i>he will be rewarded if he works</i>
si votre ami se présente , il sera le bien venu	<i>if your friend presents himself, he will be welcome.</i>

331 But if any *doubt* is implied, and the conjunction *si* may be translated in English by *whether*, the future tense is employed; as:

je ne sais pas si mon frère viendra	<i>I do not know whether my brother will come</i>
je me demande s'il fera beau demain	<i>I wonder whether it will be fine to-morrow.</i>

332 *The Imperfect Tense.*

The imperfect tense is used in French:—

α. To express an action that was going on at the same time as another; as:

je déjeûnais quand vous êtes entré	<i>I was breakfasting when you came in</i>
Talma jouait au moment que nous sommes arrivés	<i>Talma was playing when we arrived.</i>

β. To express an action that was going on during some period expressed or implied; as:

nous gellions pendant tout le temps du sermon	<i>we were frozen with cold during the whole sermon</i>
il neigeait tous les jours pendant notre séjour à Paris	<i>it snowed every day during our stay in Paris</i>
Que faisiez-vous au temps chaud? Nuit et jour, à tout venant, je chantais , ne vous déplaît (LA FONTAINE)	<i>What used you to do during the fine weather? I used to sing night and day to the first comer.</i>

γ. To express an action habitual to any person or persons; as:

Louis Quatorze aimait le faste	<i>Louis XIV. loved display</i>
le roi se levait à six heures, et se couchait à onze	<i>the king used to get up at six, and go to bed at eleven</i>
les Romains plantaient des colonies par toute la terre	<i>the Romans settled colonies all over the world</i>

δ. After the conjunction *si*; as :*

si je vous racontais tout ce que j'ai vu, vous seriez étonné	<i>were I to tell you all I have seen, you would be astonished</i>
vous vous feriez mal si vous sou- leviez ce poids-là	<i>you would hurt yourself if you were to lift that weight</i>
si vous m' aviez écouté, ce mal- heur ne serait pas arrivé	<i>had you listened to me, this mis- fortune would not have happened.</i>

ε. In elliptical sentences such as the following :

si l'on savait seulement !	<i>if one only knew !</i>
si vous vous donniez un peu plus de peine	<i>if you would not mind taking a little more trouble.</i>

For difference of construction in French and English in such sentences as the following :

I told you that he **was** there, &c.

see *antè*, Rule 329.

333 The Preterite (*Prétérit défini*).

This tense is employed to express an action which has taken place at some stated time or period, the *said time or period being completely elapsed at the time of speaking*; as :

je lui écrivis hier	<i>I wrote to him yesterday</i>
il partit ce matin	<i>he set out this morning</i>
nous rencontrâmes votre frère l'année passée à Paris	<i>we met your brother last year in Paris.</i>

334 If mention is made of a tense or period not yet elapsed, the use of the preterite would be faulty, as in the following sentences :

je le vis **cette semaine** ;

or,

aujourd'hui je reçus une lettre de votre sœur.

335 The preterite is generally employed in *narrative* either of historical events or in fiction; as :

Napoléon naquit à Ajaccio	<i>Napoleon was born at Ajaccio</i>
Jules-César mourut assassiné	<i>Julius Cæsar was assassinated</i>
Amour, tu perdis Troie	<i>Love, thou destroyedst Troy.</i>

* The use of the imperfect tense indicative with *si* should be particularly noted by students of Latin, who are taught to use the subjunctive with *si* (Latin).

336 The preterite is rarely used in ordinary every-day conversation or correspondence; indeed, its use would be considered rather pedantic than otherwise.

337 The past tense most commonly in use in French is—

The Present Compound (Prétérit indéfini,
see page 347, obs. 323),

whether with regard to a specified time already completed, as:

j'ai rencontré M. votre frère *I met your brother yesterday evening,*
hier soir

or with regard to a time or period some part of which has yet to elapse; as:

je l'ai rencontré aujourd'hui *I met him to-day,*

or when no particular time is expressed; as:

j'ai beaucoup voyagé	<i>I have travelled much</i>
j'ai souvent été en Suisse	<i>I have often been into Switzerland</i>
y avez-vous été?	<i>were you ever there?</i>
il est parti sans dire un mot	<i>he went away without a word.</i>

338 *Comparison of the two Tenses, the Preterite (Prétérit défini) and the Compound (Prétérit indéfini).*

Although the rule may be definitively laid down (see Rule 334, p. 354) as to when the preterite (*prétérit défini*) must not be employed, there would seem to be no definite rule as to when it must be used. It would be difficult indeed to find an instance where the *prétérit indéfini* could not be substituted for the *prétérit défini*.

In the foregoing examples of the preterite, given in Rule 335, p. 354, the *prétérit indéfini* might well be substituted; as:

Napoléon **est né** à Ajaccio
Jules-César **est mort** assassiné
Amour, tu **as perdu** Troie.

To resume what has been already said, the best rule that can be laid down with regard to the use of these two tenses would seem to be—

a. In narrative, anecdote, historical or other composition, use the preterite (*prétérit défini*).

β In ordinary conversation and correspondence use the present compound (*prétérit indéfini*).

339 The imperfect compound (see page 348), *j'avais fini* (called also *plus-que-parfait*), and the preterite compound (called also *prétérit antérieur*), *j'eus fini*, are employed after such expressions as *dès que*, *aussitôt que*, *quand*; as:

- α. *il se couchait ordinairement dès qu'il avait fini de souper* *he generally went to bed as soon as he had finished supper*
 β. *quand nous eûmes retrouvé la route, nous continuâmes notre voyage* *when we had found the road again we continued our journey*
aussitôt qu'il nous eut vus, il fondit sur nous *he no sooner saw us than he made a dash at us.*

Consideration of the foregoing examples will show that the imperfect compound denotes a *habit*; the perfect compound a *single action* then and there completed.

340 The *Future* (simple) denotes—

α. An intention; as:

- je reviendrai demain, ce soir,* *I shall return to-morrow, this evening, &c.*

β. An injunction or command; as:

- tu ne tueras point* *thou shalt do no murder (sixth commandment, and so with the others)*
vous irez dans ma chambre, vous prendrez la clef qui est sur la commode *you will go to my room, and take the key which is on the drawers.*

γ A simple statement of a fact that will probably happen:

- il fera beau demain* *it will be fine to-morrow*
vous aurez froid si vous ne prenez pas de manteau *you will be cold if you do not take a cloak.*

341 The compound future (called also *futur antérieur*) speaks of an action which *will have taken place* before some other; as:

- dès que j'aurai fini de déjeuner,* *as soon as I have done breakfast, I*
je vous accompagnerai *will go with you.*

342 *Difference of French and English Idioms with regard to the Use of the Future, both Simple and Compound.*

In English, if one clause of a sentence contain a future tense, it is by no means necessary that the same tense should be used in the other clause.

In French, on the contrary, the future must be used in *both* clauses.*

French.

English.

il vous **écriera** quand il en **aura**
le temps

he will write to you when he **has**
time

vous **rendrez** fidèlement le dépôt
qu'il vous **aura** confié

you will faithfully restore the
deposit which he **entrusts** to
your care

je **viendrai** vous voir dès qu'il
sera remis de son indisposition

I will come and see you as soon as
he **has** recovered from his illness.

343 Peculiar Use of the Future Compound (*Futur antérieur*).

Où est ma canne? **L'aurai-je**
perdue par hasard?

Where is my stick? Can I have lost
it by chance?

vous vous **serez** certainement
trompé de route

you must certainly have lost your
road

vous **aurez** mal **pris** vos me-
sures

you must have laid your plans ill.

344 The signs *shall* or *will*, which in English often seem to be merely signs of the future tense, though in reality they are *verbs*, expressing intention, willingness, or injunction, cannot in such cases be rendered by the simple future in French, but require the verb *vouloir*, *vouloir bien*.

a. Intention, willingness :

voulez-vous m'accompagner?

will you come with me?

oui, je **veux bien**

yes, I **will**

je **veux bien** le faire cette fois si
vous voulez

I'll do it this time if you like

voulez-vous prendre un verre de
vin?

will you have a glass of wine?

β. Injunction, command :

je ne **veux** pas que vous fassiez
cela

you **shall** not do that.

345 Some French grammarians have given the name of *futur probable* (future expressing probability) to the infinitive of any verb taken in conjunction with *devoir* :

je **dois voir** votre frère ce soir;
avez-vous quelque chose à lui
faire dire?

I shall see your brother this even-
ing; have you any message *for*
him?

nous **devons aller** à l'Opéra ce
soir

we are to go to the Opera this even-
ing.

* Reference to Rule 330, page 353, will show that with the conjunction *si* the present tense may be used in French in a conditional clause; as : il viendra s'il le peut.

346 *The Conditional.*

The conditional mood (as its name implies) asserts that something would take place *under certain conditions* implied or expressed.

a. Condition expressed :

je serais très-flatté si vous vouliez me faire l'honneur de venir dîner	<i>I should be greatly flattered if you would do me the honour of dining with me</i>
les eaux baisseraient si le vent soufflait du côté de l'est	<i>the water would go down if the wind blew from the east.</i>

β. Condition implied :

je pensais que l'orage se dissiperait	<i>I thought that the storm would clear off</i>
je croyais que vous viendriez plus tôt	<i>I thought you would come sooner</i>
j' aurais parié qu'il pleuvrait	<i>I would have bet it would rain.</i>

347 The compound conditional (*conditionnel antérieur*) implies that something *would have taken place* under certain conditions (implied or expressed); as :

j' aurais été charmé de vous voir	<i>I should have been delighted to see you</i>
je l' aurais fait si j'avais pu	<i>I would have done it if I could.</i>

348 Care must be taken *not* to use the conditional where *no condition* is implied or expressed, as in the following sentences :

- (1) they told me that you **would** set out this evening
- (2) our farmer told us that the harvest **would** be abundant this year
- (3) my uncle promised that he **would** send us the papers the next day.

The foregoing sentences, expressing an *intention*, *hope*, *prospect*, of something to happen *not dependent* on any condition or contingency, should be rendered by the *future tense* in French ; as :

- (1) on m'a dit que **vous partirez** (or que **vous devez partir**) ce soir
- (2) notre fermier nous a assuré que la moisson **sera** abondante cette année
- (3) mon oncle a promis qu'il nous **enverra** (or **de nous envoyer**) les journaux le lendemain

349 There is a second form of the compound conditional, made up of the imperfect subjunctive of *avoir* (*eusse*):

j'eusse compati à tous vos chagrins si je les avais connus	<i>I should have sympathised with all your sorrows if I had known of them</i>
nous l'eussions mis à la porte s'il s'était présenté	<i>we should have shown him the door if he had called.</i>

350 It is not unusual to find the same tense in the subordinate sentence after *si* :

si j'eusse été vaincu, j'eusse été criminel (CORNEILLE)	<i>if I had been vanquished, I should have been (considered) guilty ;</i>
--	---

but, as a general rule, if the subjunctive *eusse* is found in the subordinate clause with *si*, the ordinary form of the compound conditional is employed in the main clause for the sake of euphony ; as :

j'aurais bien pu l'aimer, s'il ne l'eût couronné. (CORNEILLE.)

351 When the verb in the principal clause is in the past tense, the verb in the subordinate clause should be in the *present* (not *compound*) conditional, as is frequently the case in English :

- (1) *I thought you would have come*
je croyais **que vous viendriez** (not **que vous seriez venu**)
- (2) *I would have bet that you would have succeeded*
j'aurais parié **que vous réussiriez** (not **que vous auriez réussi**).

352 *Peculiar Uses of the Conditional Mood in French.*

a. To express intention, desire :

je désirerais lui parler	<i>I should like to speak to him.</i>
---------------------------------	---------------------------------------

β. In announcements (newspaper and others), when such announcements are not alleged as *positive facts*, but as something rather more than probable, to be accepted under certain restrictions ; as :

on dit que le Pacha d'Égypte serait descendu à l'hôtel de l'Orient, et que le Préfet aurait été lui rendre visite	<i>our reporters say that the Pacha of Egypt has put up at the Hôtel de l'Orient, and that the Prefect has gone to pay him a visit</i>
on annonce qu'il y aurait eu une grande bataille le 11, et que les Prussiens auraient été vaincus	<i>we learn that there has been a great battle on the 11th, and that the Prussians have been beaten.</i>

γ. To express a suggestion :

serait-il tombé par hasard ?	<i>can he have fallen down by any chance?</i>
Pourquoi ne vient-il pas ? L'aurait-on retenu à la maison ?	<i>Why does he not come? Can they have detained him at home?</i>

353 Peculiar Meaning of the Conditional of SAVOIR.

The conditional mood of *savoir* is used in the place of the present indicative in negative sentences (omitting *pas*):

je ne saurais le croire	<i>I cannot (possibly) believe it</i>
nous ne saurions le faire	<i>we could not (possibly) do it.</i>

354 The conditional mood after *quand* or *quand même* has the meaning of *even if, even supposing* ; as :

quand vous courriez comme un lièvre, vous ne l'attraperiez pas	<i>even if you ran as fast as a hare, you would not catch him</i>
quand vous me haïriez , je ne m'en plaindrais pas (RACINE, <i>Phèdre</i>)	<i>even if you hated me, I would not complain</i>

Quand le malheur ne serait bon
Qu'à mettre un sot à la raison,
Toujours serait-ce à juste cause
Qu'on le dit bon à quelque chose.

(LA FONTAINE, Bk. vi. Fable vii.)

(*Even supposing misfortune were of no other use than to bring a fool to reason, it would still be said with justice that it is of some use.*)

355 *Quand* is sometimes suppressed, and its place supplied by *que* in the other clause :

vous me jureriez votre parole d'honneur, que je ne vous croirais pas	<i>even if you gave me your word of honour, I would not believe you.</i>
--	--

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

356 The subjunctive mood is employed after verbs expressing :

- α. Doubt and supposition (if negative or interrogative).
- β. Fear.
- γ. Desire, hope, expectation.
- δ. Grief, regret.
- ε. Command, exhortation.
- ζ. Permission, consent.
- η. Some impersonal verbs.
- θ. The following (and similar) expressions :

on dirait, on croirait ; on eût dit, cru, etc.

a. Doubt :

je doute qu'il **réussisse**.

Surmise,* supposition, &c. (with negation or interrogation) :

je ne pense pas que votre sœur **viene**
 je ne croyais pas qu'il **vint** si tôt
 je ne m'imaginais pas que vous **fussiez** frères
 croiriez-vous qu'il **fût** si chaud ici ?

β. Fear :

je crains qu'il ne **† tombe**
 j'ai peur qu'elle ne **réussisse** pas
 nous craignons qu'il ne **tombât**
 je tremble qu'il ne se **fasse** mal.

γ. Desire, hope, expectation :

je désire que vos frères **viennent** me voir
 je veux qu'il se **taise**
 je prétends **‡** qu'il vous **fasse** des excuses
 nous voulions qu'il vous **accompagnât**
 je souhaite que vous vous **portiez** mieux
 je m'attends à ce qu'il me **réponde** de suite.

δ. Grief, regret, joy, surprise :

je suis fâché que vous **soyez** malade
 je regrette qu'il ne **soit** pas venu
 je suis enchanté qu'il **fasse** beau
 je m'étonne que vous lui **répondiez** ainsi.

ε. Some verbs expressing command, exhortation :

je veux qu'il m'**obéisse**
 j'entends **‡** que les choses se **fassent** selon mes désirs.

Exceptions.

Ordonner, arrêter, résoudre, décider, commander, are followed by the indicative future or conditional whenever a *certain fact or inevitable result* is announced ; as :

le roi ordonna, commanda, que le coupable **aurait** la tête tranchée
 on a décidé que la première représentation **aura** lieu demain
 j'avais résolu qu'il **partirait**.

* See Rule 357, page 363.

† For use of *ne* in these sentences see Rule 588, page 446.

‡ See Rule 359, page 364.

ζ. Permission, consent :

je consens qu'il s'en aille
 je veux bien qu'on fasse du feu
 je ne permets pas qu'on sorte sans que je le sache.

η. Of impersonal verbs some require the subjunctive, some the indicative.

1. *Indicative.*

Impersonal verbs expressing a *certainty* or settled conviction in the mind of the speaker are followed by the indicative; such are :

il y a, il paraît, il résulte, il arrive, il est certain, il s'ensuit.

il y a raison de croire qu'il ne **viendra** pas
 il y a apparence que la question **n'est** pas claire (VOLTAIRE)
 il y a dix ans que je ne vous **ai** vu
 il n'y a pas dix minutes qu'il **est** parti
 il paraît que le temps se **remet** au beau
 il résulte de tout cela que vous **avez** eu tort
 il arriva que mon père ne l'**avait** jamais vu
 il est certain que vous **avez** eu tort
 il est **vrai** que ce **sont** des pitiés (MOLIÈRE, *Femmes sav.* act ii. sc. 6)
 il s'ensuit de ce que vous venez de dire que les hommes **sont** condamnés à l'erreur (Bern. de SAINT-PIERRE).

2. *Subjunctive.*

All the above impersonal verbs, if accompanied by a negative or interrogative, require the subjunctive mood after them; as :

il n'y a aucune apparence que le temps se **remette** au beau
 il ne paraît pas que vous **ayez** eu raison
 il ne résulte pas de là que j'**aie** tort
 est-il certain que les choses se **soient** passées comme vous le dites?

Except *il y a* (meaning *time*) :

il n'y a pas longtemps qu'il **est** parti
 y a-t-il longtemps que vous **êtes** là ?

The following impersonal verbs, conveying no positive assertion, but expressing injunction, necessity, &c., require the subjunctive mood :

il faut	il est fâcheux	c'est dommage
il convient	il est possible	c'est merveille
il est juste	il est impossible	c'est miracle.

il faut qu'il **vienne**
 il convient que vous lui **demandiez** pardon
 il est juste qu'il **soit** puni
 il est fâcheux que vous n'**ayez** pas voulu m'écouter
 il est possible que cela **soit** vrai
 il est impossible qu'il vous **ait** répondu de la sorte
 c'est dommage que vous ne **soyez** pas venu plus tôt.

C'est merveille

Qu'il n'**ait** eu seulement que la peur pour tout mal.

(LA FONTAINE, Bk. iv. Fable xx.)

Il semble, il me semble,

are followed sometimes by the indicative, and sometimes by the subjunctive.

1. *Indicative.*

Where no doubt is entertained :

il me semble que nous **montons**
 il nous semblait qu'il **devenait** tout pâle.

2. *Subjunctive* with negatives or interrogatives, and where doubt is expressed :

vous semble-t-il qu'il **soit** plus grand que son frère ?
 il ne me semble pas qu'il **fasse** plus froid ici qu'autre part
 il me semble que mon cœur **veuille** se fendre par la moitié.

(Mme. de SÉVIGNÉ.)

3. **On dirait, on croirait; on eût dit, on eût cru,**

in the same manner, when expressing a matter that may fairly be considered within the range of probability, take the indicative :

on eût dit que **c'était** un roi qui passait en triomphe
 on dirait que vous **êtes** venu exprès pour m'insulter.

Should doubt or improbability be expressed or implied, the subjunctive should be used :

On dirait que le ciel, qui se fond tout en eau,
Veuille inonder ces lieux d'un déluge nouveau.

(BOILEAU, *Sat.* vi. 73.)

on croirait, à vous entendre, que vous **soyez** plus instruit que vos maîtres.

357 Croire, espérer, penser, présumer supposer,

when used *affirmatively*, require the verb that follows them to be in the *indicative* mood ; as :

je crois qu'il **viendra**
 je pense qu'il **va** faire beau
 j'espère que vous **ferez** ce que vous avez promis de faire
 je présume qu'il **est** malade, puisqu'il n'est pas venu
 je suppose que vous **approuvez** mon dessein.

358 With a *negative or interrogative* these verbs require the *subjunctive* mood :

je ne crois pas qu'il **vienne**
 croyez-vous * vraiment qu'il le **fasse** ?
 pensez-vous que ce chapeau me **convienne** ?
 je ne pense pas que vous **ayez** l'intention de m'insulter
 je n'espère pas que vous le **fassiez**
 espériez-vous que je le **fisse** ?
 je ne présume pas qu'il **soit** malade
 présumez-vous qu'il **soit** parti ?
 je ne suppose pas que vous **soyez** toujours de cet avis.

359 The following verbs, *dire, entendre, prétendre, supposer*, require the verb in the subordinate clause to be put into the indicative or subjunctive mood, according as they announce a positive fact (*indic.*), or convey an injunction, or express a doubt (*subj.*).

Indicative.

je vous dis que cela ne me **plaît**
 pas
 (*that does not please me*)

j'entends que vous m'**offrez** un
 nouveau diadème (RACINE, *Bérénice*, act vi. sc. 4)
 (*I am informed that you intend to offer me*)

je prétends qu'Aristote n'**a** point
 d'autorité céans
 (*I maintain, affirm*)

Supposer (*to think, suppose*).

je suppose que vous n'**avez** au-
 cune objection.

Subjunctive.

... il a dit que l'aurore levée
L'on fît venir demain ses amis
 pour l'aider.

(LA FONT. Bk. iv. Fable xxii.)
 (*he gave orders to have his friends sent for*)

non, s'il vous plaît, je n'entends
 pas que vous **fassiez** des dé-
 penses, et que vous **envoyiez**
 rien acheter pour moi
 (*I do not wish you to incur expense, &c.*)

de lui seul il prétend qu'on **reçoive**
 la loi (BOILEAU, *Sat.* xi.)
 (*he insists upon being the only person to lay down the law*)

Supposer (*to put the case*).

je suppose que l'ennemi **revienne**,
 que ferons-nous ?
 (*I just put the case that the enemy comes back again.*)

* Littré says that *croire* interrogative may be followed by the future or conditional ;
 as :

Croyez-vous qu'il **payera** ses dettes ?
 Aviez-vous cru qu'il les **payerait** ?

360 The subjunctive is also employed in interjectional or ejaculatory sentences :

puisse le ciel confondre vos projets! (*i.e.* je veux que le ciel puisse confondre)

saue qui peut!

dussé-je y périr, je le ferai! (*were I to die for it*)

veuille le ciel exaucer vos prières! (*may Heaven be willing!*)

CONJUNCTIONS, ETC., GOVERNING THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

361 The following conjunctions, or, as they are more properly called in French, *locutions conjonctives*, require the verb that follows them to be put into the subjunctive mood :

- | | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. afin que | 9. en cas que | 17. pourvu que |
| 2. à moins que | 10. jusqu'à ce que | 18. sans que |
| 3. avant que | 11. non que | 19. soit que |
| 4. au cas que | 12. non pas que | 20. { c'est bien le moins |
| 5. bien que | 13. pas que | que |
| 6. de crainte que | 14. pour que | c'est assez que. |
| 7. de peur que | 15. pour peu que | |
| 8. encore que | 16. si peu que | |

Examples.

1. je vous écris afin que vous **sachiez** à quoi vous en tenir
2. nous irons nous promener à moins qu'il ne **pleuve**
3. écoutez ce récit avant que je **réponde** (LA FONT. Bk. iii. Fable i.)
4. je vous écrirai au cas qu'il me **dise** quelque nouvelle.
(Mme. de SÉVIGNÉ.)
5. bien qu'à des déplaisirs mon âme **compatisse**
(CORNEILLE, *Cid*, act ii. sc. 8.)
6. } je l'ai retiré { de crainte } qu'il ne **fût** blessé
7. } { de peur }
8. encor * qu'à mon devoir je **coure** sans terreurs
(CORNEILLE, *Horace*, act ii. sc. 3.)
9. en cas qu'il **vienne**, priez-le de rester dîner
10. restez là jusqu'à ce que je **revienne**
11. non que je **veuille** à Rome imputer quelque crime
(CORNEILLE, *Nicom.* act v. sc. 10.)
12. il se déclara contre lui, non pas qu'il **fût** son ennemi
13. **pas** que je **sache** !
14. je l'ai puni pour qu'il **apprenne** à se conduire mieux à l'avenir
15. et pour peu qu'on le **pousse** il est prêt d'éclater
(CORNEILLE, *Pomp.* act iv. sc. 1.)
16. si peu qu'on **ait** considéré les anciens monuments de l'église.
(BOSSUET.)
17. nous viendrons pourvu qu'il ne **pleuve** pas

* Poetical abbreviation for *encore*.

18. il l'a fait ~~sans~~ que je l'~~aie~~ su
 19. soit qu'il ~~vienn~~e, ou qu'il ne ~~vienn~~e pas, nous y irons
 20. c'est assez que je lui en ~~aie~~ parlé, il ne le fera plus
 21. c'est bien le moins que ~~vous donniez~~ quelque chose à votre fils.

362 *a. Qui que ; β . quel que ; γ . quelque ; δ . quelque,*
 adjective and adverb ; *ϵ . quoi que ; ζ . quoique ; η . si—que ;*
 require the verb that follows them to be in the subjunctive mood.

a. Qui que tu ~~sois~~, voici ton maître.
 Il l'est, le fut, ou le doit être. (VOLTAIRE.)

β . quel qu'il ~~soit~~, le Français veut un maître. (*Ib.*)
 quels que ~~soient~~ les humains, il faut vivre avec eux. (GRENET.)

γ . Quelque (adjective) :

quelque effort que ~~fassent~~ les hommes, leur néant paraît partout
 (BOSSUET.)

Princes, quelques raisons que vous me ~~puissiez~~ dire,
 Votre devoir ici n'a point dû vous conduire.

(RACINE, *Mithr.* act ii. sc. 2.)

δ . Quelque (adverb) :

quelque méchantes et dignes de punition qu'elles ~~fussent~~
 quelque puissant que vous ~~soyez~~, vous serez puni

ϵ . donnez-le-moi, quoi que ce ~~soit~~

ζ . vous l'avez fait, quoique je vous ~~aie~~ défendu de le faire

η . si terrible que ~~soit~~ sa colère, nous ne le craignons pas
 si mince qu'il ~~puisse~~ être, un cheveu fait de l'ombre.

363 The following conjunctions (*locutions conjonctives*) take the subjunctive when there is any doubt or uncertainty implied or expressed, or any injunction given ; otherwise they take the indicative :

de façon que
 de manière que

de sorte que
 sinon que

si ce n'est que.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

il travaille de façon qu'il ~~peut~~
 vivre (LITTRÉ)

(in such a manner that he can gain
 a living)

il a vécu de manière qu'il ~~a~~ mérité
 l'estime de tout le monde

(he has lived in such a manner that
 he has merited the esteem of every-
 one)

il travaille de façon qu'il ~~puisse~~
 vivre

(in order to be able to get a living)

vivez de manière qu'on ~~ait~~ de
 l'estime pour vous

(in such a manner that people
 should esteem you)

*Indicative.**Subjunctive.*

il l'a fait de telle sorte que nous
ne **pouvons** que l'en louer

(*he has done it in such a manner
that we cannot help praising
him*)

nous n'avons rien à lui reprocher
si ce n'est qu'il **est** tant soit peu
paresseux

(*we have nothing to reproach him
with unless it be that he is rather
idle*)

faites-le de sorte qu'on n'en **sache**
rien

(*do it in such a manner that no
one should know anything about
it*)

il **obtiendra** cette place si ce n'est
qu'on en **ait** déjà disposé

(*he will get that place unless (it
should turn out) that they have
already given it away.*)

364 QUE * with the Subjunctive Mood.

a. *Que* with the meaning of *afin que*, *à moins que*, *sans que*, *soit que*, *s'il arrive que*, requires the subjunctive mood; as :

approchez **que** nous vous **parlions** (*i.e.* afin que nous vous parlions)

je ne sortirai pas **que** vous ne me **promettiez** d'être sages (*i.e.* à moins que vous ne me promettiez)

il ne fait pas de voyage **qu'il** ne **soit** malade (*i.e.* sans qu'il soit malade)

qu'il le **veuille** ou **qu'il** ne le **veuille** pas, je le ferai (*i.e.* soit qu'il le veuille, etc.)

β. *Que* † put for *si* in the second clause of a sentence requires the subjunctive; as :

si le temps se remet au beau, et **que** nous **sortions**, nous irons vous voir

si votre frère vient dîner, et **qu'il** vous **convienne** de l'accompagner, nous serons enchantés de vous voir.

365 *Tout que*. Writers employ the indicative or subjunctive indifferently after *tout* — *que* :

tout infaillibles qu'ils **sont**, les géomètres se trompent (PASCAL)

tout intéressant que **soit** cette question, elle demeure presque insoluble (CHATEAUBRIAND.)

RELATIVE PRONOUNS FOLLOWED BY THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

366 The relative pronouns *qui*, *que*, *dont*, *où*, when preceded by a negative or by *le seul*, *le peu*, *le meilleur*, *le moindre*, *le moins*, *le mieux*, or any adjective in the superlative degree,

* For various meanings of the conjunctive *que*, see pages 332-3.

† See page 333, Rule 286.

generally require the verb following to be in the subjunctive mood ; as :

<i>Negatives.</i>	{	il n'y a rien qui doive vous choquer là-dedans	
	{	il n'y a personne qui me soit plus antipathétique que est homme	
	{	je ne connais rien qui me plaise mieux que vos vers	
	{	je ne veux pas d'un mari qui me contredise à chaque instant	
<i>Superlatives, le peu, &c.</i>	{	c'est le seul homme qui m'ait jamais parlé de la sorte	
	{	il y a peu d'hommes qui sachent supporter l'adversité (MASILLO)	(MASILLO)
	{	c'est le plus grand homme que je connaisse	
	{	c'est le moins honnête homme qu'il y ait au monde	
	{	c'est la meilleure chose que vous ayez à faire	
	{	c'est bien la moindre chose que vous puissiez faire	
	{	l'homme est le seul animal qui sache qu'il doit mourir	
	{	c'est la femme la mieux habillée qui soit dans tout Paris.	

367 However, if the verb in the subordinate clause asserts a positive fact about which no doubt can be conceived, the indicative mood may be used ; as :

j'ai fait du mieux que j'**ai** pu
la seule chose que nous ne **savons** pas, c'est son adresse
le plus grand mal que **fait** un ministre, c'est le mauvais exemple qu'il donne
de ces deux messieurs c'est le plus jeune qui **est** mon mari.

368 In propositions depending on a relative pronoun, and one of the following, and similar verbs, *chercher, demander, envoyer, indiquer, montrer*, the subjunctive or indicative is to be used, according as doubt or certainty are intended to be expressed.

<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
je cherche la maison où nous avons dîné hier	je cherche une maison où nous puissions bien dîner
je demande le garçon qui nous a servis ce matin	je demande un garçon qui nous serve avec zèle
je vous envoie un homme qui sait parler Français	envoyez-moi quelqu'un qui sache parler Français
indiquez-moi la maison où vous demeurez	indiquez-moi une ville où je puisse me retirer
je vous montrerai ce tableau qui nous a tant plu	montrez-moi un homme qui soit plus instruit que lui.

In all the foregoing sentences the indicative mood refers to some thing or person *actually existing*. The subjunctive, on the other hand, implies uncertainty with regard to the existence of such thing or person.

RULE OF ATTRACTION.

369 The subjunctive mood being always dependent on another verb (expressed or not), it is the tense of the verb in the principal clause which determines the tense of the subjunctive mood to be employed in the subordinate clause. This is called the rule of attraction (*règle d'attraction*), and is as follows:

1. If the principal verb is the *present* or *future* tense, the subordinate verb is to be put into the *present* subjunctive (simple or compound).

2. If the principal verb is in a *past* tense or in the *conditional mood*, the subordinate verb is to be put into the *imperfect* subjunctive (simple or compound).

Examples.

1. Principal verb in *present* or *future* :

il faut que je **parte**

j'**empêcherai** qu'il ne **sorte**

je ne **crois** pas qu'il l'**ait** fait

je ne **croirai** jamais qu'il **ait** pu vous manquer jusqu'à ce point.

2. Principal verb in a *past* tense, or the *conditional* * mood :

j'**avais défendu** qu'il **vînt**

j'**ai empêché** qu'il ne **fît** cette sottise

je **voudrais** que la pluie **cessât**

j'**aurais voulu** qu'il se **conduisît** mieux.

Exceptions.

370 To Rule 1.

When the principal verb is in the *present* or *future* tense, the subordinate verb is to be put into the *imperfect subjunctive* (simple or compound) if it expresses or implies a *condition*; as :

a. Condition expressed :

je ne crois pas } que vous le **fissiez** si l'on ne vous y contraignait
je ne croirai pas } pas

je ne crois pas } que vous l'**eussiez fait** si l'on ne vous y **eût**
je ne croirai pas } **contraint**

* Exception must be made for the conditional of *savoir* and *pouvoir* when used (as they often are) for the present indicative :—je ne **saurais** penser (*I am unwilling to believe*) qu'il vous **trompe** ; je ne **pourrais** croire qu'il **ait** grandi à ce point.

β. Condition implied :

je ne crois pas qu'il **réussît** sans vous (c'est-à-dire si vous ne le protégez pas)

je ne suppose pas qu'il l'**eût fait** sans votre ordre.

on peut dire que les vices nous attendent dans le cours de la vie
et je doute que l'expérience nous les **fit éviter**, s'il nous était permis de faire deux fois le même chemin. (LA ROCHEFOUCAULD.)

Exception to Rule 2.

Although the principal verb be in a *past* tense, the subordinate verb is to be put into the *present* subjunctive if it expresses either (1) a fact actually existing at the time of speaking, or (2) one likely to happen, or (3) one which is always existing; as:

(1) il **m'a trompé** quoiqu'il **soit** mon frère

(*he is my brother, and yet he deceived me*)

(2) nous lui **avons écrit** pour qu'il **prenne** demain sa décision

(*we hope for this result from our writing*)

(3) Dieu nous **a donné** la raison afin que nous **discernions** le bien d'avec le mal

(*God has given us the power of reason in order that we should now and at all other times use it for the purpose of distinguishing between good and evil*)

nous avons fait mettre des stores afin que l'on ne **puisse** pas voir de la rue dans notre appartement.

THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

371 The infinitive mood may be employed in the place of a substantive—(1) as the subject, (2) as the predicate of a sentence.

1. *Subject* :

Travailler c'est la loi,
Sans quoi,
L'on n'a rien à soi.

Eh bien ! **manger** moutons. Canaille, sottè espèce !
Est-ce un péché ? etc. (LA FONTAINE, Bk. vii. Fable i.)

2. *Predicate (or object) :**

Et le financier se plaignait
Que les soins de la Providence
N'eussent pas au marché fait vendre **le dormir**
Comme **le manger** et **le boire**.
(*Ibid.* Bk. viii. Fable ii.)

372 The infinitive mood is most often employed as the complement of some other verb (or of an adjective),† either—

1. With the preposition *à* ; as :

il cherche **à** vous **tromper**,

or,

2. With the preposition *de* ; as :

je vous défends **de** **parler**,

or,

3. With no preposition at all ; as :

je vais **partir** à huit heures.

373 The following is a list of those verbs which require the preposition *à* before the infinitive mood :—

abaisser	aimer	assujettir	chercher
abandonner	animer	attacher	se complaire
accorder	appliquer	s'attendre	concourir
accoutumer	apprendre	autoriser	condamner
acharner	apprêter	avoir	consentir
aguerrir	aspirer	balancer	consister
aider	assigner	borner	conspirer

* Greek τὸ πίνειν, τὸ ἐσθίειν, &c.

† See pages 276-7.

consumer	enseigner	nécessiter	réduire
contribuer	s'entendre	s'obstiner	renoncer
convier	exceller	s'offrir†	répugner |
coûter *	exciter	parvenir	se résigner
décider	exhorter	pencher	se résoudre¶
déterminer	exposer	penser §	réussir
disposer	habituer	persévérer	servir
donner	hésiter	persister	songer
dresser	instruire	se plaire	tarder **
employer	inviter	se plier	travailler
encourager	se mettre †	préparer	viser.
enhardir	montrer	provoquer	

374 Verbs which require the preposition *de* before the infinitive mood :

s'abstenir	se défier	gémir	préserver
accuser	désespérer	se glorifier	se presser
achever	désirer	hâter	promettre
affecter	détester	imputer	proposer
s'affliger	différer	s'ingérer	se rappeler
il s'agit	dire	jurer	recommander
ambitionner	discontinuer	manquer	refuser
s'applaudir	disconvenir	méditer	se réjouir
appréhender	disculper	se mêler	se repentir
avertir	disperser	menacer	reprocher
s'aviser	dissuader	mériter	résoudre
blâmer	éluder	négliger	rire
cesser	empêcher	offrir	risquer
charger	enrager	ordonner	sommer
commander	entreprendre	oublier	souffrir
conjuré	s'étonner	pardonner	souhaiter
conseiller	éviter	parler	soupçonner
contenter	s'excuser	se permettre	se souvenir
convenir	feindre	se persuader	tenter
craindre	féliciter	se piquer	trembler
dédaigner	se flatter	se plaindre	se vanter.
défendre	frémir	prescrire	

- * *Coûter*, used impersonally, sometimes takes *à*, sometimes *de* :
 mettez ce qu'il en coûte *à* plaider aujourd'hui (LA FONTAINE)
 que coûte-t-il *d'*y ajouter un sourire? (LA BRUYÈRE.)

Sometimes *pour* :

crois qu'il m'en a coûté **pour** vaincre tant d'amour. (RACINE.)

- † *Mettre* or *se mettre*, followed by *hors d'état* or *en état*, requires the preposition *de* :
 il mit un vaisseau en état *de* voguer (FÉNÉLON, *Télémaque*)
 je le mets hors d'état *d'être* jamais malade. (CORNEILLE, *Le Menteur*.)

‡ *Offrir* (simple) requires *de*, and it is even found sometimes with *s'offrir*.

§ *Penser*, see Rule 375, meaning of *penser* with *no* preposition and an infinitive mood.

|| *Répugner*. *Il me répugne*, impersonal, requires *de* (not *à*).

¶ *Résoudre* (simple), *être résolu de*, requires *de*.

** *Tarder*, used impersonally, requires *de* :
 il me tarde *de* le voir arriver.

375 Verbs requiring *no preposition at all* before the infinitive mood :

aimer mieux*	entendre	oser	sentir
aller	espérer	penser †	valoir mieux *
compter	faire	pouvoir	venir
croire	il faut	prétendre	voir
daigner	s'imaginer	savoir	vouloir.
devoir	laisser	sembler	

376 The following verbs take sometimes the preposition *à*, sometimes *de* before the infinitive :

commencer	déterminer	essayer	résoudre
consentir	s'efforcer	se hasarder	suffire
continuer	s'empresser	manquer	tarder
contraindre	s'engager	obliger	se tuer.
demander	s'ennuyer	occuper	

With most of the above verbs grammarians have endeavoured to draw subtle distinctions between their meaning when followed by *à* or *de* respectively. We are, however, of the opinion of M. Littré (whose dictionary we have consulted under every one of the above verbs), that such distinctions are not borne out by the custom of the best authors, and that the *ear* and *taste* are really the only guides.

In one or two cases, however, there would seem to be some distinction. Thus:

Déterminer, verb transitive or reflexive, takes *à*.

je l'ai déterminé *à* m'obéir
I induced him to obey me
 je me suis déterminé *à* lui répondre
I made up my mind to answer him

manquer à means to fail in doing something that one ought to do;
 as:

il a manqué *à* remplir ses devoirs

Déterminer, used intransitively, with the sense of settling in one's mind to do anything, requires *de*; as:

il a déterminé *de* rebâtir sa maison

manquer de means simply to omit (through forgetfulness or carelessness) to do anything; as:

j'ai manqué *de* vous écrire

* If *aimer mieux* or *valoir mieux* are followed by a *second* infinitive (as a term of comparison with the first infinitive), the *second* infinitive must be preceded by *de*; as:

j'aime mieux me taire que *de* trahir un ami
 il vaut mieux n'y pas aller que *d'y* rester si peu de temps.

† *Penser* followed by the infinitive without a preposition has two meanings:—1. The ordinary one of *to think*:

j'ai **pensé** lui faire plaisir;

2. The other idiomatic:

j'ai **pensé** tomber, *I was very near falling.*

<i>occuper à</i> refers to some external act ; as :	<i>occuper de</i> refers to some intellectual process ; as :
il faut occuper les pauvres à faire des choses utiles, en les faisant travailler	les enfants paresseux s'occupent de mal faire
<i>se tuer à</i> , to wear oneself out with doing anything ; as :	<i>se tuer de</i> , to go on continually doing something :
(Chapelain) se tue à rimer, que n'écrit-il en prose?	je me tue de vous faire signe que j'ai quelque chose à vous dire.
(BOILEAU, <i>Sat.</i> ix.)	

377 In the same manner grammarians have sought to establish a distinction between

and c'est à moi, à vous, etc., **à**

c'est à moi, à vous, etc., **de**,

which are in fact synonymous expressions, as a comparison of the following quotations will show :

C'est à moi **d'**obéir, puisque vous commandez
(CORNEILLE, *Polyn.*)

C'est à vous **à** régler ce qu'il faut que je fasse,

C'est à vous, Émilie, **à** lui donner sa grâce.

(*IBID.*, *Cinna*, act iii. sc. 3.)

378 Use of the infinitive in French in such places where the English employ the present participle with a preposition ; as :

come and see me **before going** away
after having eaten his dinner he went to sleep
 he caught cold **through bathing** imprudently
 I insist **on your going** away.

In French all these and similar present participles will be rendered by the *infinitive mood* after the preposition, or by the *subjunctive mood* after a conjunction ;* as :

je m'amuse **à conter** des histoires à mes enfants
 il passe tout son temps **à lire**
 quant **à l'inviter** à dîner, je ne le ferais pas à votre place
 venez me voir **avant de** vous **en aller**
 vous n'auriez pas dû en parler **après avoir** promis de vous taire
 tout cela n'est venu que **faute de savoir** danser
 (MOLIÈRE, *Bourg. Gent.*)

* The only preposition in French governing the present participle is *en* ; as :

en revenant de Londres j'ai rencontré votre père
 il est parti **en maudissant** son mauvais sort
 tout **en** nous **parlant** elle s'est évanouie.

je suis fatigué **de courir**
à force **d'étudier** l'on devient savant
loin **de vous blâmer**, je vous approuve
ils ont commencé **par jouer** l'ouverture de *Don Giovanni*
vous finirez **par tomber**
un canif **pour tailler** les plumes
j'ai insisté qu'il me **demandât** pardon
(*I insisted on his begging my pardon*).

379 The active infinitive in French frequently takes the place of the passive infinitive in English, especially after such verbs as *entendre, faire, laisser, voir*; as:

la romance que j'ai entendu chan- ter	<i>the ballad which I heard sung</i>
c'est un homme que j'ai entendu condamner à mort	<i>he is a man whom I heard sen- tenced to death</i>
je me suis fait faire un habit neuf	<i>I have had a new coat made</i>
j'ai fait noyer mon chat	<i>I have had my cat drowned</i>
allez-vous faire raser	<i>go and get shaved</i>
je l'ai laissé emmener en prison	<i>I allowed him to be carried off to prison</i>
avez-vous jamais vu prendre le poisson à la lanterne?	<i>did you ever see fish caught by the light of a lantern?</i>
j'ai vu planter tous ces arbres-là	<i>I saw all those trees planted.</i>

380 This *passive* sense of the French infinitive active is very common with the preposition *à*:

c'est à prendre ou à laisser	<i>it is a thing to be taken or left alone</i>
femme à vendre (title of a French farce)	<i>wife to be sold (or to sell)</i>
maison à louer	<i>house to let, or to be let</i>
c'est une faute à éviter	<i>it is a fault to be avoided.</i>

381 This is sometimes the case with the interrogative *que* and the verb *faire*:

que faire dans ces cas-là?	<i>what is to be done in such cases?</i>
-----------------------------------	--

382 Several infinitives are often employed consecutively without any intervening preposition, when governed by such verbs as may be found in the list of Rule 375:

j'ai cru devoir vous parler de cette affaire	<i>I thought I ought to speak to you of this business</i>
je n'ai pas cru devoir insister plus longtemps	<i>I did not think I ought to press the matter any further</i>
si vous voulez venir dîner avec nous, nous serons charmés	<i>if you will come and dine with us we shall be delighted.</i>

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

383 The present participle in French is *invariable*;* that is to say, it does not change its form in the feminine gender or plural number to suit the substantive to which it refers; as :

j'ai rencontré madame votre mère **allant** à la campagne
mes frères, **croyant** que je n'arriverais pas, ne m'ont pas attendu
on entendait les coups des terribles marteaux **frappant** l'enclume
(FENELON.)

384 Care must be taken not to confuse the *present participle* with the *verbal adjective*, also terminating in *ant*, and which is *variable*, i.e. which *does* change its gender and number to agree with its noun substantive :

c'est une femme **charmante**
je déteste les esprits bas et **rampants**
On n'entend que le bruit de la proue **écumante**,
Qui fend d'un cours heureux la mer **obéissante**.

385 The *present participle* and the *verbal adjective* being often exactly similar in form, it is sometimes difficult to distinguish between them so as to determine whether they are to be *variable* or *invariable*.

It will be, however, quite sufficient for such purpose to consider :—

1. Whether the word (adjective or participle) is followed by a case governed without the help of a preposition (in French *complément direct*), in which case it is a *participle* and *invariable*.

2. If not followed by a *complément direct*. whether it expresses an *action*, in which case it is a *participle* and *invariable*, or a *state* of being, in which case it is a verbal adjective and *variable*.

(In the following sentences, wherever it has been possible, the *same* word has been employed as adjective and as participle, the better to exemplify the distinction.)

* The terms *variable* and *invariable* will be frequently employed in speaking of the participles to mean words that do or do not change their gender or number, according to circumstances.

Examples to illustrate the foregoing Rule.

1. Followed by a direct complement; consequently an *invariable participle*.

Cette réflexion **embarrassant**
notre homme,
On ne dort pas, dit-il, quand on
a tant d'esprit (LA FONTAINE)
Esther in Racine's play says:
C'est là que **fuyant** l'orgueil du
diadème
Aux pieds de l'Éternel je viens
m'humilier.

No complement; consequently a *variable verbal adjective*.

J'ai bien considéré cette réflexion
embarrassante

Le bruit des cors. celui des voix
N'a donné nul relâche à la **fuyante**
proie. (LA FONTAINE.)

2. Followed by an indirect complement or with no complement at all.

α. Representing *action*; therefore a *participle*, and *invariable*.

on voyait des débris **flottant** vers
la côte
(i.e. *actually in a state of motion,*
advancing)

N'est-ce pas à vos yeux un spectacle
assez doux
Que la veuve d'Hector **pleurant** à
vos genoux?
(RACINE, *Andromaque*)
(i.e. *supplicating with tears*)

on peut voir la rosée **dégouttant**
des feuilles
(one can see the dew **actually**
dropping from the leaves)

la sueur **ruisselant** sur un visage
(the perspiration **pouring** down
from a face.)

β. Representing a *state of being*; therefore a *verbal adjective*, and *variable*.

Calypso aperçut des cordages **flot-**
tants sur la côte
(i.e. *in a state of repose floating on*
the water)

pleurante après son char, vous
voulez qu'on me voie?
(would you have me seen behind his
car **in tears**?—no actual mo-
tion is implied or expressed)

des feuilles **dégouttantes** de
rosée
(leaves steeped in dew)

une figure **ruisselante** de sueur
(a face bathed in perspiration.)

386 It is only the present participle, *never* the verbal adjective, that can be preceded by the preposition *en* (the only preposition capable of being employed with a participle. See note to Rule 378):

les hommes apprennent **en étudiant**
ma mère **en entrant** dans la chambre m'a reconnu à l'instant
nous perdons tout, madame, **en perdant** Rodogune.

387 In like manner the *participle* only (*never* the verbal adjective) can be negated; as:

des écoliers **ne travaillant pas**
ne vous **voyant pas** venir, ma femme est partie.

388 *Étant, ayant.*

These two participles always remain *invariable*, under all circumstances :

Le cigale **ayant** chanté tout l'été, etc.

(LA FONTAINE, Bk. i. Fable i.)

Perrette

Ayant mis ce jour-là, pour être plus agile,
Cotillon simple et souliers plats.

(IBID. Bk. vii. Fable x.)

Gentille Agnès, plus d'honneur tu mérites,
La cause **étant** de France recouvrer.*

389 The verbal adjective is, of course, nothing more than a present participle used *adjectively*; many actually change their terminations on becoming adjectives. Such are:

<i>Participles.</i>		<i>Adjectives.</i>	
extravagant		extravagant	
fatigant		fatigant	
intrigant		intrigant	} also used as substantives
fabriquant		fabricant	
vaquant		vacant	
communiquant		communicant	
affluent		affluent	
adhérant		adhérent	
différent		différent	
inhérent		inhérent	
excellent		excellent	
présidant	}	become as	{ président
résidant		substantives	
			{ résident.

390 THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

The rule to determine the agreement (or non-agreement) of the past participle with the subject or object of a sentence, being the most important in French syntax, we propose to treat it under four different heads.

1. The agreement of the past participle with the *subject* of a sentence, when used *without* any auxiliary verb.

2. Its agreement (or non-agreement) with the *subject* of a sentence—

a. When the auxiliary *avoir* is used.

β. When the auxiliary *être* is used.

* From a poem by François L. in honour of Agnes Sorel.

3. Its agreement (or non-agreement) with the *object* or predicate of a sentence (in French called *régime direct*) when the auxiliary *avoir* is used.

4. Its agreement (or non-agreement) with the *object* of a sentence when the auxiliary *être* is used (as is the case with reflexive verbs).

I. *Past Participle without any Auxiliary.*

391 The past participle, when used either as a simple qualifying adjective, or without any auxiliary, agrees with the substantive to which it refers in gender and number; as:

la cruche **cassée**

une conversation **suivie**

dans le tremblement de terre à Lisbonne que de maisons **renversées**,
que de bâtiments **coulés** à fond, que de malheurs **répandus** sur la
ville infortunée!

eux repus * tout s'endort, les enfants et la mère. (LA FONTAINE.)

II. *Past Participle and SUBJECT of Sentence.*

a. With auxiliary *avoir*.

β. With auxiliary *être*.

392 When the auxiliary *avoir* is used, the past participle does not, *under any circumstances*, agree with the subject of the sentence:

Hélas! on voit que de tout temps

Les petits ont **pâti** des sottises des grands (LA FONTAINE)

Ma blessure trop vive aussitôt a **saigné** (RACINE, *Phèdre*)

Partout en même temps la trompette a **sonné**.

393 † When the auxiliary *être* is used, the past participle *does agree* with the subject of the sentence; as:

ma fille est **morte**

mes sœurs sont **revenues** hier

tous les maux sont **sortis** de ce don détesté

la nouvelle a été **démentie**.

III. *Agreement with the OBJECT (régime direct) when the Auxiliary AVOIR is used.*

394 The past participle does *not* agree with its object (*régime direct*) when the said object comes after it; as:

* Cf. Latin ablative absolute.

† This rule does not apply to reflexive verbs, for which see Rule 396, page 380.

l'ennemi avait **pris** la ville d'assaut
il m'a **écrit** une lettre de dix pages
leur artillerie a **démonté** nos batteries.

395 The past participle *does agree* with the object (*régime direct*) when the said object *comes before it*, which can only be the case when the object is a *pronoun** (personal, relative, or other); as :

Songez-vous qu'en naissant mes bras **vous** ont **reçue** ?
(*Phèdre*, act i. sc. 3.)

(Cenone speaking to Phèdre.)

Malheureuse ! voilà comme tu m'as **perdue** !
(*Ibid.* act iv. sc. 6.)

(Phèdre speaks.)

cela **nous** a **privés** du plaisir de votre société
ni les maux **qu'elle** a **prévus**, ni ceux qui l'ont **surprise**, n'ont abattu
son courage (Bossuet, *Oraison funèbre sur la reine d'Ang.*)
le moindre des tourments **que** mon cœur a **soufferts**

(*que* plur. masc. referring to *tourments*).

la lettre **que** je lui ai **écrite** est encore sur ma table
il passa par des chemins **qu'on** avait toujours **crus** absolument impraticables
la langue latine **qu'ont écrite** Cicéron et Virgile était déjà fort changée
du temps d'Aulu-Gelle
de ces deux plumes **laquelle** avez-vous **choisie** ?
quelle nouvelle m'avez-vous **apportée** ?

IV. Agreement of Past Participle with the Object (*régime direct*) when the Auxiliary ÊTRE is used (i.e. with *Reflective Verbs*).

396 The past participle of a reflective verb conjugated with the verb *être* is subject to the same rules as those before stated with regard to a verb conjugated with *avoir* (see Rules 394, 395), i.e. it does *not* agree with the object (*régime direct*) whenever such object precedes it, and it *does* agree with the object when the object comes after it.

* There are some rare instances in the classic poets of the object, other than a pronoun, preceding the past participle. Such as the following :

Quelle horreur d'embrasser un homme dont l'épée
De toute ma famille a **la trame** coupée !

(CORNEILLE, *Horace*, act v. sc. 8.)

Examples.

Object (*régime direct*) preceding the participle, which is consequently **variable**.*

Elle **s'est blessée** à la tête
(Q. Whom did she wound? A. Her-self)

(*se* (*régime direct*) preceding the past participle, which is accordingly made to agree with it in gender and number)

Je **me** suis **reconnue** indigne de vos feux (MOLIÈRE, *École des Maris*, act iii. sc. 10)

(Isabella speaks, consequently *me* (*régime direct*) is fem., and *reconnue* agrees with it)

La porte du sérail à mes yeux **s'est ouverte**

Et d'abord une esclave à mes yeux **s'est offerte** (RACINE, *Baj.* act v. sc. 6)

(In both instances *se* is *régime direct*)

L'infortunée Tatia voit détruire en un moment toutes les illusions de bonheur **qu'elle s'était formées**

(*que* (*régime direct*) refers to *illusions*, fem. plur., with which *formées* naturally agrees.)

Object (*régime direct*) coming after the participle, which consequently remains **invariable**.*

Elle **s'est donné** un coup terrible
(Here *se* is dative and not *régime direct*, consequently *donné* does not agree with it)

Ces dieux qui **se** sont **fait** une gloire cruelle

De séduire le cœur d'une faible mortelle (RACINE, *Phèdre*, act ii. sc. 5)

(Here *se* is dative (*not régime direct*), consequently *fait* remains *invariable*)

Ils **se** sont **adressé** chacun une lettre menaçante

(*se* is dative)

Nous **nous** sommes **succédé** dans cet appartement

(*nous* is dative, consequently *succédé* remains *invariable*)

Votre mère **s'est imaginé** cela
(*se* is dative).

397 The difficulty of determining whether to make the past participle of a reflective verb *variable* or *invariable* arises from the fact that the pronouns *me*, *te*, *se* (singular and plural), *nous*, *vous*, have but one form in French for the dative and accusative cases.

The simple plan is to translate them into English: if they are in the dative case, the participle remains *invariable*; if they are in the accusative case, they are *régimes directs*, and the participle is *variable*.

One instance will suffice for all:

nous **nous** sommes **blessés** we hurt ourselves.

Here *nous* is accusative, *régime direct*, and *blessés* agrees with it.

* Observe the employment of these two terms *variable* and *invariable*, adopted by French grammarians to imply agreement or non-agreement of any word susceptible of change of gender and number.

nous **nous** sommes **fait** mal

we have done an injury to ourselves.

Here *nous* is dative and *fait* is invariable.

398 With such verbs as *s'abstenir*, *s'asseoir*, *se douter*, *s'échapper*, *se repentir*, &c., which are *essentially* reflexive verbs, and cannot be used otherwise than in their reflexive form, the past participle is always *variable*:

nous **nous** sommes **abstenus** de lui répondre
elle **s'est** **assise** auprès du feu
ma mère **s'en** était **doutée** (*had suspected it*)
les prisonniers **se** sont **échappés**
ils **se** sont amèrement **repentis** de leur faute.

399 The past participles of neuter verbs (such as in Latin govern a dative case, and are incapable of being followed by a *régime direct*) are always *invariable*:

ils se sont **nuî** en notre estime

(*they have done themselves injury in our estimation*)

les poètes épiques se sont toujours **plu** à décrire des batailles
(*have always taken pleasure in describing battles*)

ces deux hommes ne se sont jamais **parlé** depuis cette affaire
les trois frères, François II, Henri III et Charles IX se sont **succédé**
sur le trône de France.

Further Rules concerning the Agreement of the Past Participle not included under the four foregoing Heads.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

400 The past participle of impersonal verbs always *remains invariable*:

après les chaleurs qu'il **a fait** cet été, il faut espérer de bonnes récoltes
(*after the heat that has prevailed this summer, &c.*)

malgré la disette qu'il y a **eu**, les pauvres n'ont pas trop souffert
il s'est **glissé*** une petite erreur dans votre copie.

401 The past participle preceded by a substantive qualified by *combien de*, *que de*, *plus de*, *autant de*, and other adverbs

* Observe that when the word *se glisser* is used in its ordinary reflexive form the past participle is *variable*:

une petite erreur s'est **glissée** dans votre copie.

of quantity, is *variable*, i.e. it takes the gender and number of the substantives :

combien de **pleurs** m'eût **épargnés** cette philosophie !
 je n'aurais jamais cru que tant de **vertus** se fussent **trouvées** dans la même personne
 plus de **combats** il a **livrés**, et plus de victoires il a **remportées**
 (MARMONTEL)
 autant de **lois** il a **faites**, autant de **sources** de prospérité et de bonheur il a **ouvertes**.

402 If, however, the past participle comes *first*, it does *not* agree :

combien il a **versé** de **larmes** !
 plus il a **rencontré** de **difficultés** sur sa route et plus il a été content.

403 LE PEU.

With a substantive qualified by *le peu* the past participle is *variable*, i.e. it agrees with such substantive, provided that the attention is directed more to *the matter* than to the *small quantity* of such matter ; if, on the contrary, our attention is more particularly directed to the expression *le peu*, the past participle remains invariable.

Variable.

le peu de **liberté** que vous avez **prise** ne peut guère vous être reprochée
 (*the slight liberty you have taken can hardly be made a matter of reproach to you*)
 (Here **it is** the liberty taken which is the **main** object of the sentence)

nous avons hébergé le peu de **personnes** qu'on a **sauvées** de ce naufrage
 (*we housed the few people who were saved from that shipwreck*).

Invariable.

le peu de **sûreté** que j'ai **vu** pour ma vie à retourner à Naples m'a fait y renoncer pour toujours
 (MOIÏÈRE, *Avare*, act v. sc. 5)
 (*the little security (i.e. the danger) that I saw for my life if I returned to Naples induced me to give up the idea altogether*)
 (Here the attention is called to the fact that there was *little security*, consequently *danger*)
 la douleur m'ôta dès ce moment le **peu** de raison que l'amour m'avait laissé
 (*i.e. love had left me but little reason, and that little grief deprived me of*).

EN.

404 The past participle following *en* is invariable, when *en* is its only object ; as :

Avez-vous reçu des lettres? Non, je n'en ai pas reçu
il a fait de grandes fautes, mais cherchez un roi qui n'en a pas fait
d'inexcusables

Je ne hais point les grands, j'en ai vu quelquefois
Qu'un désir curieux attirait dans ces bois.

(VOLTAIRE, *Zul.* act iv. sc. 2.)

405 Should there be, however, any other *régime direct*, and *en* be only incidental, the past participle will agree with the *régime direct* (if it precedes it); as:

je reviens de Nice, voici des oranges que j'en ai rapportées
ma sœur a commis cette erreur, bien que je l'en eusse souvent avertie.

406 Past Participle followed by the Infinitive Mood.

The past participle of such verbs as *croire*, *compter*, &c. (see list, Rule 375), as can be followed by an infinitive mood not preceded by a preposition, are sometimes variable, sometimes invariable.

If the object to which the participle refers is governed by the participle, the latter is *variable*; if the object is governed by the infinitive, the participle is *invariable*.

Participle variable.

je connais cette actrice, je l'ai souvent entendue chanter

(*I have often heard her sing. La, her, is régime direct of the verb entendre*)

Où sont vos frères? Je les ai vus arriver avant vous

(*I saw them arrive. Les is governed by vus*)

Où est votre sœur? L'avez-vous laissée sortir?

(*La is régime of laissée.*)

Participle invariable.

je connais cette romance, je l'ai souvent entendu chanter

(*I have often heard it sung. Here la (the ballad) is régime direct of chanter*)

vous rappelez-vous ces arbres que nous avons vu abattre?

(*which we saw cut down; que, referring to arbres, is governed by abattre*)

je l'ai laissé mener au bal

(*I allowed her to be taken to the ball. La is governed by mener.*)

407 The above rule holds good when the past participle is followed by another verb not in the infinitive mood:

la dépense qu'il avait compté que je ferais. (*Gil Blas.*)

Here *compté* does not agree with *que* (referring to *la dépense*), as *que* is not governed by *compté*, but by *ferais*.

N.B.—For English students of the French language, the best way to determine whether the participle shall be variable or not, when followed by a verb in the infinitive mood, is as follows:

See whether the infinitive mood can be translated by the English *active* infinitive; if so, the participle is *variable*.

If, on the contrary, it can only be rendered by the English *passive* infinitive, the participle remains *invariable*.

408 *Past Participle followed by an Infinitive governed by a Preposition.*

Here again, if the preceding object is governed by the participle, the participle will be *variable*; if by the infinitive, the participle will be *invariable*.

<i>Variable.</i>	<i>Invariable.</i>
étudiez la leçon qu'on vous a donnée à apprendre (<i>que</i> is governed by <i>donnée</i>)	je lui ai offert ma main, qu'elle a refusé d'accepter (MOLIÈRE, <i>Mal. im.</i>) (<i>que</i> is governed by <i>accepter</i>)
le fils d'Ulysse comprit la faute qu'il avait faite d'attaquer le frère d'un des rois alliés (<i>que</i> is governed by <i>faite</i>)	ne faites rien qui ne soit digne des vertus que j'ai tâché de vous inspirer (<i>que</i> is governed by <i>inspirer</i>)
voilà les obstacles que j'ai eus à surmonter (<i>que</i> is governed by <i>eus</i> .)	voici la lettre que vous m'avez dit d'écrire (<i>que</i> is governed by <i>écrire</i> .)

409 ELLIPSE OF INFINITIVE MOOD.

The infinitive mood may be suppressed after the past participles of *pouvoir*, *devoir*, *vouloir*, *croire*, *supposer*, &c., in which case the past participle always remains *invariable* :

je l'ai frappé avec toute la force que j'ai pu
il a obtenu toutes les grâces qu'il a voulu (*i.e.* qu'il a voulu obtenir)
j'en ai ressenti plus de joie que je n'aurais cru (*i.e.* cru ressentir)
je lui ai rendu tous les services que j'ai dû (*i.e.* que j'ai dû lui rendre).

410 The aforesaid participles, however, when taken in their ordinary sense, are subject to the ordinary rules, and are *variable* when preceded by their object (*régime direct*).

les choses se sont passées comme je les aurais voulues
il m'a payé les sommes qu'il m'avait dues
quant à cette nouvelle, je l'avais souvent entendue, mais je ne l'ai jamais crue.

411 *Fait* followed by an infinitive mood is always *invariable* :

voilà la robe que j'ai **fait** faire par votre modiste
Télémaque prend les armes, don précieux de Minerve, qui les avait **fait**
faire par Vulcain
ces demoiselles **se** sont **fait** habiller à Paris.

412 The participle coming between two *que*'s, the one a conjunction, the other a relative pronoun, remains *invariable*; as :

la maison que j'ai **supposé** que vous habiteriez est restée vide
voici la nouvelle qu'il m'a **dit** qu'il avait entendue.

413 The past participle of several verbs which, to all appearance, govern their object directly (*régime direct*), but which in reality do so *indirectly* by means of some suppressed preposition, remains *invariable*.

Such are *pleurer, souffrir, vivre, régner, dormir, durer, &c.*

les heures **que** j'ai **pleuré** ! (i.e. **pendant lesquelles** j'ai pleuré)
les années **qu'**elle a **souffert** ! (i.e. **pendant lesquelles** elle a souffert)
parlez-moi des années **que** vous avez **vécu** à Rome
les vingt-trois ans **que** ce Pape a **régné**
les **trois heures** que cet enfant a **dormi** lui feront énormément de bien.

414 The past participles of the same verbs used transitively are subject to the ordinary rules ; i.e. *variable* if preceded by their object, *invariable* otherwise ; as :

les pertes que j'ai **pleurées**
les maux que j'ai **soufferts**.

415 The verbs *manquer, servir*, and some others, sometimes govern the accusative case (*régime direct*), sometimes the dative (*régime indirect*) ; in the former case the past participle is *variable*, in the latter *invariable*.

Variable.

il est arrivé en retard et il **nous a**
manqués
(he missed us)
ce domestique **nous a** fidèlement
servis.

Invariable.

cet homme **nous a manqué** en
plusieurs occasions
(i.e. *has been wanting in politeness*)
cet homme **nous a servi** de père
(i.e. *has been a father to us.*)

416 *Coûté, Valu, Pesé.*

These participles are sometimes *variable*, sometimes *invariable*.

Variable.

après tous les ennuis **que** ce jour
m'a **coûtés** (RACINE, *Brit.* act v.
sc. 3)

que de **soins** m'eût **coûtés** une
tête si chère (RACINE, *Phèdre*,
act ii. sc. 5)

les honneurs **que** lui a **valu** cette
action

(Here *valu* means procured)

j'ai peu goûté la réprimande **que**
ma conduite m'a **value**

(i.e. *that my conduct brought upon me*)

Combien pèse cette truite? Je ne
sais pas, je ne l'ai pas encore
pesée.

Invariable.

la somme **que** cette maison a
coûté

je regrette les mille et quelques
francs **que** ce cheval m'a **coûté**

la somme **que** ce domaine a
valu l'an dernier

(*the sum of money that that pro-
perty was worth last year*)

j'ai payé les dix francs **que** cette
éttoffe a **valu**

comparez cela aux quatre-vingts
kilogrammes **que** j'ai **pesé**
l'année dernière.

417 *Past Participle preceded by l'.*

In order to ascertain whether in such cases the past participle should be *variable* or *invariable*, it is necessary to ascertain whether the *l'* stands for *le* or *la*, personal pronouns, in which case the participle will agree with it in gender and number, or to the pronoun *le*, *it* (referring to the sentence in general), in which case the participle will remain *invariable*.

Variable.

je viens de voir Mme. votre mère,
je l'ai **trouvée** très-bien por-
tante

(Here *l'* stands for *la*, referring to
mère)

quant à cette nouvelle, on me l'avait
annoncée hier

(Here *l'* stands for *la*, referring to
nouvelle.)

Invariable.

cette personne n'est pas la même
que je l'avais **cru**, ou **supposé**
(Here *l'* stands for *le*;—*as I had
thought or supposed that she
was*)

sa vertu était aussi pure qu'on
l'avait **cru** d'abord

(Here *l'* stands for *le*, referring to
the whole previous sentence.)

Agreement of Verb with the SUBJECT of a Sentence.

418 The verb agrees with its subject in *number* and *person*:

je **suis** malade
tu **étais** parti
le roi **est** mort

nous **demeurons** à Londres
où **demeurez-vous**?
ils **partiront** demain.

419 Where there are two or more subjects united, or not, by the conjunctions *et* or *ni*, the verb will be put in the *plural number*:

le roi, la reine et les princes **sont revenus** de Londres
ni l'or ni la grandeur ne nous **rendent** heureux.

420 If the subjects of the sentence are all personal pronouns, or if there be but one personal pronoun, and the other subject or subjects nouns substantive, the verb will be in the plural number, and agree with the *more worthy person*—(the first person being considered more worthy than the second, the second than the third), and the pronouns must generally be repeated before the verb; as:

lui et moi **nous** irons à Londres demain
votre frère et moi **nous** lui **avons** souvent écrit à ce sujet
nous espérons que vous et votre frère **dînez** avec nous demain.

421 However, if the subjects of the sentence should be two or three *nearly synonymous* nouns substantive in the singular number, the verb may be placed in the singular; as:

tout rang, tout sexe, tout âge **doit** aspirer au bonheur
une pâleur de défaillance, une sueur froide **se répand** sur tous ses membres. (FÉNELON, *Télémaque*.)

422 This is especially the case whenever there is *gradation* in the ideas:

ce sacrifice, votre intérêt, votre honneur, Dieu vous le **commande**;

423 or when the enumeration of subjects is preceded or followed by a term which *resumes* all, such as *tout, chacun, personne, &c.*

tout le monde, noble, bourgeois, artisan, laboureur, y **devient** soldat (MONTESQUIEU)

lois, police, discipline militaire, marine, commerce, manufacture, sciences beaux-arts, **tout s'est perfectionné** (VOLTAIRE)

frères, sœurs, mari, femme, **chacun en prend**

eh bien! de tout ce monde-là, colonels, préfet, généraux, etc., **personne n'est venu** à sa soirée.

424 *Subjects joined by the Conjunction Ou.*

When two nouns substantive (or pronouns) are joined by the conjunction *ou*, the verb will be—

α. In the singular number if one of the two subjects *entirely excludes* the other.

β. In the plural number if there be no idea of opposition between the two subjects; as:

α. c'est Cicéron **ou** Démosthène
qui **a** dit cela

(i.e. *if one said it the other did not*)

c'est le soleil **ou** la terre qui
tourne

(*if the sun turns, the earth does not, and vice versa.*)

β. le temps **ou** la mort **sont** nos
remèdes

(*perhaps both*)

ce sera son père **ou** son frère qui
obtiendront cela de lui

(*both might bring their influence to bear upon him*)

425 If, however, the several subjects joined by *ou* are of different persons and numbers, the verb must agree with the more worthy person and number; as :

le roi, l'âne, ou moi **nous mourrons.**

(LA FONTAINE, Bk. vi. Fable xix.)

426 L'UN ET L'AUTRE, NI L'UN NI L'AUTRE, or two Subjects joined by NI.

There is great difference of opinion among grammarians whether to employ the singular or plural number after the foregoing *locutions*.

The rule upon which most seem agreed is as follows :—

α. If the verb expresses an action that can only be performed by *one* (not *both*) of the two subjects, the verb will be in the singular number; as :

ni M. le duc **ni** M. le cardinal **ne sera** nommé ambassadeur
ce **ne sera ni** votre père **ni** le mien qui **sera** nommé à la place vacant
à l'Académie française.*

In both of the foregoing instances, as only *one* person could possibly be named ambassador or academician, the verb is in the singular number.

β. The verb will be in the plural number when the sense of the expression either entirely *excludes* both *l'un* and *l'autre*; as :

ni l'un **ni** l'autre **ne sont** coupables ;

or when both are inseparably connected :

l'un et l'autre à mon sens **ont** le cerveau troublé (BOILEAU)
l'un et l'autre méritent nos éloges.

427 COLLECTIVE SUBSTANTIVES.

It is often difficult to determine in which number to place a verb which has for its subject a *collective substantive* such as *une foule*, *une troupe*, in combination with a word in the plural number (*une foule de gens*, *une troupe de voleurs*), &c.

The best rule is to ascertain to which of the two substantives the attention is most directed, and to make the verb agree with that one.

* Examples given by Poitevin.

Verb agreeing with the *collective*
(*singular.*)

la **moitié** des passagers n'**avait**
pas la force de s'inquiéter du
danger (VOLTAIRE)

(Here the attention is called to
that *half* of the passengers who
had been unable to apprehend
the extent of the danger)

la **pluralité** de maîtres n'**est** pas
bonne

(attention is called to the danger
of a *plurality* of masters, not of
the masters themselves)

l'**armée** des infidèles **fut** entière-
ment défaite.

Verb agreeing with the substantive
following the collective (*plural*).

un grand nombre d'**oiseaux**
faisaient résonner ces bocages
sous leurs doux chants

(attention is called to the *birds*
more than to their number)

il laissa la moitié de ses **gens**
morts

une nuée de **barbares** désolèrent
le pays

une foule d'**enfants** **couraient**
dans la rue

(attention is principally called to the
children running, not to the fact
that there was a *crowd* of them.)

428 It has been explained (see pages 258–9) that *collectives* are either *general* or *partial*; *general collectives* being such as express any quantity considered in its entirety, *la totalité, la foule, l'armée, &c.*, *partial collectives* such as express a *part* only of the subject taken in combination with them, *une infinité, une troupe, un nombre, &c.*

For *general collectives* we would refer the learner to the rules laid down in No. 427.

For *partial collectives* the rule is to place the verb in the singular number *if the collective is followed by a noun substantive in the singular*; as:

la plupart du monde ne se **soucie** pas de l'intention ni de la diligence
des auteurs

une grande quantité de neige **est tombée** cette nuit.

The verb will be in the plural number *if the collective is followed by a substantive in the plural number, or if no complement is expressed*:

la plupart des gens ne **font** réflexion sur rien
un petit nombre **s'échappèrent**.

The following examples will serve to illustrate our meaning:

- (1) un tiers du genre humain **périt** avant d'avoir atteint l'âge de vingt-trois ans
- (2) il n'y a pas un tiers des hommes qui **puissent** prendre l'état de consistance dans la société.

429 Adverbs of quantity, such as *beaucoup, peu, assez, moins, tant, &c.*, require the verb in the *singular*, if they are followed by a *singular complement*, and *vice versa*.

Singular.

beaucoup de monde **était** à la
promenade
très-peu de vin **suffira**
plus d'un roi **s'est vengé** par une
perfidie
plus d'une Hélène au beau plumage
fut le prix du vainqueur (LA
FONTAINE, Bk. vii. Fable xiii.)

Plural.

peu de gens **négligent** leurs in-
térêts
assez d'autres **viendront** à mes
ordres soumis (RACINE)
tant de coups imprévus m'**ac-**
cablent à la fois. (IBID.)

430 *Agreement of Verb with RELATIVE PRONOUN.*

As a general rule, a verb following a relative pronoun agrees with the antecedent to such relative; as :

c'est moi qui vous le **dis** qui suis votre grand'mère (MOLIÈRE)
ni moi qui **suis** le roi, ni vous qui **devez** l'être
est-ce bien vous qui **donnez** de pareils exemples !

431 However, if the relative pronoun is preceded by an attribute to which it may more closely refer than to its own antecedent, the verb *may* be made to agree with such attribute :

je suis, je crois, le premier auteur moderne qui **ait** donné la description
de la Laconie (CHATAUBRIAND)
vous parlez comme un homme qui **s'entend** à ces sortes de choses
tu étais le seul qui **pût** me dédommager de l'absence de Rica.

432 This is more especially the case when the proposition is a negative one :

je ne suis pas l'officier qui **devait** être de garde.

AUXILIARIES.

All verbs are conjugated in their compound tenses (*temps composés*) by the aid of one of the two auxiliaries, *avoir* and *être*. It is sometimes difficult to determine which of these two to employ, especially as some verbs take sometimes one and sometimes the other, according to their signification. Some general rules (subject, of course, to exceptions) may be laid down for the student's guidance.

433 All *transitive* verbs take *avoir* for their auxiliary in the *active*, and *être* in the *passive* voice :

le roi **a** publié un édit
l'édit **sera** publié demain
j'**ai** puni cet enfant sévèrement
cet enfant **sera** sévèrement puni, etc.

434 All *reflective* verbs take *être* for their auxiliary :

je me **suis** aperçu de son intention
je m'**étais** assis sur sa chaise.

435 Generally speaking, verbs expressing coming, going, returning, &c., take *être* for their auxiliary :

je **suis** revenu avant-hier
où **êtes-vous** allé ce matin ?
nous **sommes** partis à dix heures, etc.

436 Many of these verbs, however, may be found conjugated sometimes with one auxiliary, sometimes with another, according to the idea which it is intended to convey.

We subjoin a list of the principal verbs of this sort:

accourir	demeurer	empirer	<i>passer</i>
cesser	descendre	entrer	rajeunir
changer	disparaître	<i>expirer</i>	<i>rester</i>
convenir	échapper	grandir	sonner
croître	échoir	monter	sortir
décamper	embellir	partir	vieillir.
déchoir			

437 The rule for determining which auxiliary to use is as follows:—

If the principal idea intended to be conveyed is one of *action*, the auxiliary *avoir* should be used; if, on the contrary, our attention is drawn to the *state of being consequent upon such action*, the auxiliary *être* should be used.

A careful study of the following examples of the principal verbs in the foregoing list, conjugated alternately with *avoir* and *être*, will perhaps render our meaning clearer:—

Cesser :

sa fièvre a cessé hier	sa fièvre est cessée
(i.e. <i>there was an abatement of the fever</i>)	(<i>the fever is past, ended</i>)

*Changer : **

il a changé de visage en entrant	il est bien changé depuis l'année dernière
(<i>he changed countenance</i>)	(<i>he is a very different man now from what he was last year</i>)

Convenir :

cet arrangement m' a convenu	ils sont convenus de nous payer
la maison ne nous a pas convenu.	le prix que nous avons demandé

* *Changer*, used actively, as *changer de chemise, de botte, &c.*, always takes *avoir*.

Demeurer : *

où **avez-vous** demeuré à Paris ?
(*where did you put up in Paris?*)

je me suis tant plu à Paris que
j'y **suis** demeuré quand les
autres ont continué leur voyage
vers Rome

Descendre :

le baromètre **a** descendu de quatre
degrés pendant la journée

nous **sommes** descendus pour lui
parler
cet homme **est** descendu bien bas
(*is fallen very low in public esteem*)

Échapper :

veuillez répéter ce que vous venez
de dire, le sens de votre dis-
cours m'**a** échappé
(*I did not seize your meaning*)
le cerf **a** échappé aux chiens
(*expressive of the action of the stag
escaping from the hounds*)

pardonnez-moi cette expression,
elle m'**est** échappée malgré moi
(*it escaped me, passed my lips un-
intentionally*)
cette chose m'**est** échappée de la
mémoire
(*has slipped from my memory*)
ce voleur **est** échappé de prison,
des mains des sergents, etc.
(*the idea intended to be conveyed
being that the thief is still at
large*)

Expirer :

mon père **a** expiré dans mes bras
(*actually breathed his last in my
arms*)
son bail **aura** expiré avant le mois
de juin
(*his lease will have run out*)

les délais **sont** expirés
le terme **est** expiré
(*is over, finished*)

Monter :

Qu'avez-vous fait hier ? Nous
avons monté à cheval
nous **avons** monté pendant huit
heures avant d'arriver au sommet
de la montagne

Où est votre père ? Il **est** monté
dans sa chambre il y a une heure
(*the probability being that he is
still there*)
ce jeune officier **est** bien monté en
grade pour si peu de temps !

Passer : †

il **a** passé comme un nuage
la procession **a** passé sous nos
fenêtres.

l'empire des Mèdes **est** passé
(*has passed out of existence*)
les grandes chaleurs **sont** passées
(*are over for this year*)

* *Demeurer*, used in a figurative sense, takes *être* :

nous en **sommes** demeurés d'accord
elle **est** demeurée tout interdite.

† *Passer*, used in a figurative sense, takes sometimes *être*, sometimes *avoir* :

Ce mot, cette expression **a** passé (means that such an expression *has been intro-
duced into the vernacular*).

Ce mot **est** passé (means that the expression has become obsolete).

Rester :

il **a** resté deux mois à Lyon
j'ai resté six mois en Italie

on l'attendait à Paris, mais il est
resté à Lyon en route
nous **sommes** restés exprès pour
vous parler

Sonner :

midi **a** sonné quand il est entré
dans la chambre
(*it actually struck twelve as he
entered*)

Quelle heure est-il? Midi est
sonné depuis quelques minutes.

438 Several of the foregoing verbs have occasionally a signification entirely different from their original and proper one, and are used as transitive verbs, and then always take the auxiliary *avoir*; such are:

descendre, monter, passer, rentrer, sortir.

avez-vous descendu nos malles?

*have you brought our luggage down-
stairs?*

je n'**ai** pas monté ma montre et
elle est arrêtée

*I did not wind up my watch, and it
has stopped*

ils l'**ont** passé de main à main

they passed it from hand to hand

a-t-on rentré les fleurs dans la
serre?

*have they brought the flowers into
the conservatory?*

elle **a** sorti sa nouvelle robe pour
la première fois hier

*she took her new dress (out of the
wardrobe) for the first time yester-
day.*

VII. ADVERBS.

ADVERBS AND ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS (*Locutions adverbiales*).

A list of the adverbs most commonly in use has been given in Part I., pages 68–72. We propose here to treat of them with regard to their proper place in a sentence, their etymology and meaning, and to call attention to the mistakes that should principally be avoided in their employment.

439 FORMATION OF ADVERBS.

It has been stated in Part I. (pages 68, 69) that adverbs are *generally* formed from adjectives by adding *ment* to any adjective ending in a vowel; as:

sage-ment, poli-ment, assidu-ment;

and to the feminine form of such adjectives as end in a consonant; as:

bon, bonne-ment; heureux, heureuse-ment.

This suffix *ment* * is derived from the ablative of the Latin *mens*, which is found in writers of the time of the latter Empire, with the signification of *manner, fashion*; Quintilius uses *bonâ mente*, Claudian *devotâ mente*.

440 A list is given on pages 68, 69, of such adverbs as have introduced an accent on the *e* preceding *ment* (*confusé-ment, profondément, &c.*). The following are some irregularly formed adverbs *not* contained in that chapter:

nuitamment, from the substantive *nuit*
diablement " " *diable*.

441 PLACE OF ADVERBS.

The proper place for an adverb in a sentence is immediately *after* the verb in a simple tense or present participle:

je crains **beaucoup** qu'il ne pleuve aujourd'hui
 en travaillant **assidûment** vous gagnerez **amplement** de quoi vivre.

* We are indebted for these remarks on the etymology of the suffix *ment*, as well as for the etymological explanation which will be given hereafter of several adverbs, to M. Brachet's *Grammaire historique de la Langue française*.

442 In compound tenses the adverb should be placed immediately *after* the *auxiliary*; as :

cet orateur a **bien** parlé
 nous avons **heureusement** terminé notre ouvrage
 il sera **poliment** éconduit
 vous avez **mal** fait de lui répondre ainsi.

443 Adverbs of interrogation naturally *precede* the verb:

où allez-vous ?
comment faites-vous cela ?
pourquoi venez-vous si tard ?

444 The adverb *où*, even when not interrogative, *precedes* its verb and subject :

où la haine domine la vérité fait naufrage
 je sais **où** il est.

445 The foregoing rules are not so strictly observed but that in the best authors instances may be found of the adverb placed before or after the verb, according to their taste, and in ordinary conversation such adverbs as *jamais*, *souvent*, *rarement*, are often found *preceding* the verb, to give emphasis to the sentence :

rarement vous ne rencontrerez un homme pareil
souvent je l'ai vu rôder autour du parc
jamais vous ne parviendrez à l'en convaincre.

The following is an alphabetical list of such adverbs the use of which presents any peculiarities or difficulties.

446 *Ailleurs* (*aliorsum*), elsewhere; not to be confounded with *d'ailleurs*, besides :

il n'est pas ici, il faut le chercher **ailleurs**
d'ailleurs il ne nous en a jamais parlé.

447 *Alentour* is an adverb :

les tristes aquilons y sifflent **alentour** (VOLTAIRE);

and must not be confounded with *autour de*,* a preposition:

autour de la maison ; **autour de** nous.

* However, *autour* modified by *tout* can be used as an adverb; as :

il y avait des arbres **tout autour**.

448 *Alors* (old French *à l'ore*, from Latin *hora*), at that hour, then.

449 *Auparavant* is essentially an adverb :

nous allons au spectacle, mais il faudra dîner **auparavant**.

In old French one finds the expression *par avant* with the same signification.

450 *a. Aussitôt*, used absolutely, means *immediately* :

il répondit **aussitôt**

aussitôt sous leurs pieds les tables renversées

(BOILEAU, *Sat.* iii. 221.)

β. Aussitôt followed by *que* means *as soon as*.

451 *Assez* (*ad satis*). The original meaning of this word was *much* (cf. Italian *assai*); the modern signification is *enough* :

j'ai **assez** mangé, etc.

It has also a meaning equivalent to the English term *pretty* (to a certain extent) :

Comment trouvez-vous ce vin? Mais **assez** bon (*pretty good*).

452 *Aussi, si, autant, tant*.

a. Aussi, si, are joined to adjectives, participles, and adverbs :

je ne le croyais pas **aussi** grand

je suis **si** fatigué que je ne puis plus marcher

ne courez pas **si** vite.

1. *Autant, tant*,* are joined to verbs and nouns substantive, or adjectives used substantively :

autant vaudrait parler à un sourd *you might as well speak to a deaf man.*

* Some peculiar meanings of *autant* :

autant que vous êtes, venez avec nous (*as many of you as there are*).

Autant — autant, with the meaning of *just so many — as much* :

autant il a de vigueur, **autant** vous témoignez de mollesse.

Autant que = as far as :

autant qu'il est en moi, *as far as in me lies*.

D'autant = in the same proportion, to the same extent :

Tous trois burent **d'autant**. (LA FONTAINE, Bk. xi. Fable x.)

D'autant plus, see under *plus*, Rule 487.

(Proverb) **autant de têtes, autant d'avis**.

Quel esprit ne bat la campagne? **autant** les sages que les fous.
(LA FONTAINE.)

j'ai **tant** marché que je suis épuisé de fatigue
tant de coups imprévus m'accablent à la fois.

Exceptions.

Autant joined to an adjective (in which case it is placed *after* the adjective which it qualifies):

Cornélius Népos, auteur ancien et judicieux, **autant** qu'élégant.
(BOSSUET.)

Tant joined to an adjective (obsolete):

voilà une malade qui n'est pas **tant** dégoûtante.
(MOLIÈRE, *Méd. malgré lui*)

2. Peculiar meanings of *tant*:

Tant il est vrai, etc., so true is it, &c.

tous **tant** que nous sommes (LA *every man among us*.
FONTAINE, Bk. viii. Fable xvii.)

Tant et plus = enough and to spare.

Tant que = as long as, as far as:

tant que la vue se peut étendre
tant que vous resterez là.

Tant plus que moins = or thereabouts.

En tant que = in so far as.

Tant il y a que, or *tant y a que* = at all events, by the same token that.

Tant soit peu = ever so little.

Tant s'en faut que = far from:

tant s'en faut qu'elle soit jolie qu'au contraire elle est hideuse
(*Proverb*) **tant** va la cruche à l'eau qu'elle se brise.

β. *Aussi* and *autant* are employed to establish a comparison; *si* and *tant* to express extent or quantity:

Comparison:

aussi bon père de famille que bon citoyen
je vous aime **autant** que vous m'aimez.

Extent:

il est devenu **si** gros et **si** gras qu'il est à craindre qu'on ne le trouve un jour étouffé dans son lit

cette tragédie offre **tant** de beautés que je l'aurais crue de Racine
l'amitié est une chose **si** précieuse qu'il ne faut pas la prodiguer.

γ. In negative sentences *si* and *tant* are preferable to *aussi*, *autant*:

il n'est pas **si** grand que vous
je n'ai jamais vu **tant** de soldats:

but the rule is not without exceptions, *aussi* being of frequent occurrence in negative sentences, especially when any comparison is expressed or implied :

il ne fait pas **aussi** beau aujourd'hui qu'hier
je ne vous croyais pas **aussi** susceptible.

δ. *Aussi* and *si* are not to be used to modify adverbial locutions such as *à peine*, *à propos*, &c.; it is expedient to insert some such word as *fort* or *bien* :

si fort en peine, **si bien** à propos
notre pendule est **si fort** (or **tellement**) en retard que nous ne savons pas l'heure qu'il est.

Peculiar Meanings of AUSSI, AUSSI BIEN.

Aussi, introducing the second clause of a sentence is sometimes equivalent to the English expressions *and that's why*, *and so* :

il m'a prié de lui écrire, **aussi** le fais-je
(*he begged me to write to him, and I am doing so*)

il a toujours secouru l'infortuné, **aussi** a-t-il à son tour trouvé des amis
(*and that's why he has found friends when it came to his turn to need help*).

Aussi bien = *dans le fait*, in fact, of a truth.

vous êtes **aussi bien** le véritable roi (CORNEILLE)
(*you are, after all, the real king*)

Aussi bien ce n'est pas la première injustice
Dont la Grèce d'Achille a payé le service
(CORNEILLE, *Androm.* act i. sc. 2.)

*And indeed it is by no means the first injustice
That Greece has done to Achilles in return for his services.*

453 *Beaucoup* (*beau-coup* ; * Lat. *colpus* ; κόλαφος).

a. *Beaucoup* preceded by *de* acquires more force :

il est **de beaucoup** plus grand que vous.

If the comparative adjective precedes *beaucoup*, *de* is indispensable ; as :

il est plus grand **de beaucoup**
il est moins riche **de beaucoup**.

β 1. il s'en faut **beaucoup**
2. il s'en faut **de beaucoup**.

• Other adverbial expressions composed with *coup* are :

encore un coup = *once more*
pour le coup = *this time at least*
coup sur coup = *without intermission*.

For tout d'un coup, tout-à-coup, see under *TOUT*.

The first of these two expressions establishes a comparison (and difference) between two persons or things :

1. le cadet n'est pas aussi sage que l'ainé, il s'en faut **beaucoup** *the younger brother is not so well conducted as his elder brother far from it.*

The latter expresses a simple failing in some requisite quantity :

2. vous croyez m'avoir tout payé ; il s'en faut de **beaucoup** *you think you have paid me in full ; there are still considerable arrears.*

γ. *Beaucoup* by itself having the significance of *much, very much*, can not be preceded by any qualifying adverb: *très-beaucoup* for *very much*, *si beaucoup* for *so much*, are grievous faults.

454 α. *Bien*, signifying *much, many*, is the only adverb of quantity requiring the definite article before its complement:

bien du monde *much company*
bien des personnes *many persons.*

β. *Bien* has often a peculiar meaning in French, difficult to render into English by anything more than a particular stress laid upon the noun or pronoun which it (*bien*) qualifies :

vous en avez **bien** mangé, vous, pourquoi n'en mangerais-je pas aussi, moi ? *you have eaten some, why should not I?*

Elle (Rome) peut **bien** souffrir en son libérateur
 Ce qu'elle a **bien** souffert en son premier auteur.

(CORNEILLE, *Hor.* act v. sc. 3.)

Rome may surely concede to her liberator

That which she allowed without any difficulty to her first originator.

γ. Some other peculiar meanings of *bien* :

c'est **bien** fait = *he has got what he deserves.*

Bien = *very* :

vous voilà **bien** = *ah ! just like you !*

bien lui prend de n'être pas de verre ! (MOLIÈRE, *Femmes sav.*)
very lucky for him that he is not made of glass !

c'est **bien** à vous de parler ainsi ! (ironically)
you are a nice person forsooth to speak so !

être bien avec quelqu'un = *to be on good terms with anybody*

on dit qu'avec Bélise il est **du dernier bien** (on the very best terms).
 (MOLIÈRE, *Misan.* act ii. sc. 5.)

Bien et beau = straightway :

le berger vient, le prend, l'encage **bien et beau**.

(LA FONTAINE, Bk. ii. Fable xvi.)

Bien que = although :

bien qu'il change d'état il ne change point d'âme.

Si bien que = to such an extent that :

la chétive pécure s'enfla **si bien** qu'elle creva.

(LA FONTAINE, Bk. i. Fable iii.)

455 *Bientôt*, soon, being itself composed of *bien* and *tôt*, cannot be modified by another adverb.

Do not write :

si bientôt	<i>but</i>	sitôt , so soon
très-bientôt	„	bien tôt , very soon.

456 *Çà* (Lat. *ecce hac*) is an adverb of place :

ça et là	<i>hither and thither</i>
or ça !	<i>look you now</i>
ça ! travaillons	<i>come ! let us set to work.</i>

It is distinguished from *ça* (contracted from *cela*, that) by having a grave accent.

457 *Céans* (Lat. *ecce-hac-intus*) = here within, is nearly obsolete :

je n'aime point **céans** tous vos gens à Latin

(MOLIÈRE, *Fem. sav.* act ii. sc. 7.)

la dame de **céans**, the lady of the house.

458 *Combien* should not be confused with *comment*. The former means *how much, in what quantity?* the latter (Lat. *quomodo mente*), *how? in what manner?*

459 *Davantage*.

Davantage and *plus* are both adverbs of comparison ; their difference is twofold.

a. *Davantage* indicates a comparison with some term *previously stated* :

la science est estimable, la vertu l'est bien **davantage**.

Plus, on the contrary, indicates comparison with some term to be announced subsequently ; as :

la vertu est **plus** estimable que la science.

β. *Plus* is followed by an adjective and *que*. *Davantage* stands alone.

Plus, modified by *encore*, *bien*, or *beaucoup*, may be used for *davantage* :

la ville me plaît assez, mais la campagne me charme encore **plus**.

Le plus, and not *davantage*, is used to express superiority, not comparison :

de toutes les comédies de Molière les *Femmes savantes* est celle qui **me** plaît **le plus**

de tous les confiseurs de Paris c'est encore Boissier qui fait **le plus** d'affaires.

460 *Dedans*, *dehors*, *dessus*, *dessous*,* are essentially *adverbs*, and are not to be confounded with the prepositions *dans*, *hors de*, *sur*, and *sous* :

on le cherchait **sur** le lit, il était **dessous**

un trésor est caché **dedans**

il est allé **dehors**

ce qui est sous la table, mettez-le **dessus**.

These words can be employed as prepositions—

α. When expressing opposition and governing the same complement :

il n'est ni **dessus** ni **dessous** la table

les ennemis sont **dedans** et **dehors** la ville.

β. When preceded by the prepositions *de* and *pas* :

on a tiré cet homme **de dessous** le lit

il a sauté **par dessus** le fossé

(*Peculiar meaning*) bras **dessus** bras **dessous** = *arm in arm*.

461 *Derrière* is sometimes a preposition, sometimes an *adverb*—more often the former :

Prep.—il laissait tous les autres **derrière** lui

Adv.—nous demeurâmes un peu **derrière**.

The more common adverbial form is *en arrière*.

462 *Déjà* (*de-jam*), already.

* The following compounds of these adverbs are *adverbial expressions*:—*en dedans*, *là-dedans*; *au dehors*; *au-dessus*, *en dessus*, *là-dessus*; *en dessous*, *au-dessous*, *là-dessous*.

33 *Désormais* (*des-ore-[hora]-mais [magis]*), from (that, time forward, has much the same signification as *doré-ant* (*de-ore-en-avant*).

34 *Demain* (*de-manè*) *de bon matin*, early on the (mor-) morning.

35 *Depuis* (*de-puis = post*) is either a preposition or an verb :

Prep.—qu'avez-vous fait **depuis** hier ?

Adv.—qu'avez-vous fait **depuis** ?

36 *Donc*,* 'then,' 'consequently'; in argument as opposed to *alors* (*ad-illam horam*), 'then,' in point of time :

disiez **donc**
is **done** !

you were saying, then
you cannot mean what you say,
surely !

37 *Encore* (*encor* often in poetry). The proper meaning of word is in *hanc horam*, still, yet :

elle vit **encore**

there is yet some life in her

il est **encore** plus riche que son frère.

; rarely has the sense of *again*.†

The following are some of the peculiar meanings of *encore*.

la dit, maître loup s'enfuit et fuit **encor** (*and may be running yet for all I know*)

(LA FONTAINE, Bk. i. Fable v.)

Un seul arbre s'offrit, tel **encor** que l'orage
Maltraita le pigeon en dépit du feuillage
(*and such a miserable tree*), &c.

(*Ibid.* Bk. ix. Fable ii.)

Encore with the meaning of *after all* :

encore est-il plus raisonnable que je ne pensais.

(MOLIÈRE, *Mar. forcé*.)

Encore with the meaning of *moreover* :

encor si la saison s'avanceit davantage.

Encore que, even though :

on a peur de le voir **encor** qu'on le désire.

(LA FONTAINE, Bk. viii. Fable xiii.)

Some grammarians give *tunc* as the etym. of *donc* ; Littré prefers *de-unquam*. The cry of *encore* in theatres and operas in England when a song or musical position is asked to be repeated would be perfectly unintelligible in a French theatre.

468 *Enfin* (*en-fin*), at last, has a more general meaning than *à la fin*, which refers to the termination of some individual act. *Finale* is more conclusive still.

469 *Ensuite*, afterwards :

travaillez d'abord, vous vous reposerez **ensuite**.

470 *Environ* (*en-virer*, to turn round), about :

il y avait là **environ** trois cents hommes.

It is also used as a preposition :

environ ce temps.

471 *Fois* (Lat. *vices*) is only an adverb in conjunction with *autre*, *quelque*, *par*, *à la*, *toute* :—*autrefois*, formerly ; *quelquefois*, sometimes ; *parfois*, occasionally ; *à la fois*, at one and the same time ; *toutefois*, anyhow (not to be confounded with *toutes les fois*, every time).

472 *Hui* (*hodie*), in modern French, only found in the composite word *aujourd'hui*.

473 *Hier* (*heri*), yesterday ; *avant-hier*, the day before yesterday.

474 *Jadis*, formerly (*jam diu*).

475 *Lors* (old French *l'ore* = *la ore* [*hora*]), the present time, then, is seldom found in its simple form in modern French :

elle vous traita **lors** en rivale odieuse.

(CORNEILLE, *Rod.* act i. sc. 7.)

It is generally used in conjunction with a preposition :

à lors = alors = *then*

pour lors = *at that time*

dès lors = *from that time*

lors de = (lors de son élection, *at the time of his election*).

476 *Lorsque* is a synonym of *quand*, with exactly the same meaning.

477 *Maintenant*, now (*la main tenant encore l'objet*), whilst the thing is yet in hand.

478 *Même* (see page 281).

479 *Mieux* (*melius*) requires *de* before the second of two infinitives :

il vaut mieux se taire que **de** parler mal à propos.

difference between MIEUX and PLUS.

Mieux expresses *quality* or *extent*. *Plus* quantity ; as :

une chose vaut **mieux** qu'une autre
(*is intrinsically better*)
une chose vaut **plus** qu'une autre
(*is worth more money*).

Idiomatic Expressions.

A qui mieux mieux = vying with one another to see who can do a thing best :

mes élèves travaillent à **qui mieux mieux**.

480 *Moins* (*minus*).

a. *Moins* followed by a number requires the preposition *de* :

il n'y avait pas moins **de** vingt personnes à table.

With a noun substantive or pronoun it takes the conjunction *que* :

moins **que** vous, moins **que** lui.

β. *Moins* (like *plus*), repeated :

moins on travaille, et **moins** on *the less one works, the less one learns.*
apprend

γ. *A moins de* is properly speaking a preposition :

tout est perdu, madame, à *moins* d'un prompt remède.

(CORNEILLE, *Nicom.* act v. sc. 4.)

A moins que is an adverbial locution :

car que faire en un gîte à **moins que** l'on ne songe ?

δ. *Rien moins que* = nothing less than, far from
il n'est rien **moins que** beau *he is far from handsome.*

Au moins, du moins. These words are nearly synonymous. If there is any distinction, it would seem to be that *au moins* imparts an idea of restriction of something previously announced :

quand nous sommes malheureux, **au moins** avons-nous la mort, etc.

Du moins has the sense of *nevertheless, however, at least* :

s'il est étourdi, **du moins** il a bon cœur
il est parti hier, **du moins** on me l'a dit.

481 *Naguère*, formerly, is a corruption of *il n'y a guère longtemps*, it is not so long since.

482 *Or* (old French *ore, ores*; Lat. *hora*) had originally the signification of *at present*. Its present signification is—

a. A conjunction joining the minor to the major premises in a syllogism :

tous les hommes sont mortels; **or** un roi est un homme, donc un roi est mortel.

β. To take up the thread of a story or speech, like *now* in English :

or bien je vais t'aider, dit la voix, prends ton fouet.

(LA FONTAINE, Bk. vi. Fable xviii.)

Or ça = look you now !

Or sus = up! *or* come now !

483 *Partant* (*par-tant*), consequently :

plus d'amour, **partant** plus de joie !

(LA FONTAINE, Bk. vii. Fable i.)

It is used in commercial language; as *partant quitte*=all accounts being balanced, the two parties are quits.

484 *Partout* (*per totum*), everywhere.

485 *Peu* (*paucum*) is either a substantive, in which case it is preceded by one of the articles, definite or indefinite, or it is an adverb.

Peu, substantive :

le **peu** de sûreté que j'ai * vu pour ma vie, etc.

(MOLIÈRE, *Avare*, act vi. sc. 5.)

le **peu** que je suis (i.e. *of little importance*)

un homme de **peu** (*of little worth*).

Idiomatic and Familiar Use of PEU.

Cet homme a trois millions de rente. Excusez **du peu** ! (*You don't mean to say so !*)

dites **un peu**

just tell me

voyons **un peu**

let's have a look.

Un peu bien = rather too much.

c'est pour un grand monarque **un peu bien** du scrupule.

(CORNEILLE, *Cid*, act i. sc. 3.)

* For this agreement see Rule 403.

Un peu, mon neveu ! rather ! (a vulgarism).

Ni peu ni prou, neither much nor little.

Peu ou point, so little as to be as good as none.

C'est peu de, c'est trop peu de, it is not sufficient :

c'est peu d'être philosophe, il faut être chrétien.

Peu with the meaning of *peu de personnes* requires the verb to be in the plural number :

assez de gens méprisent le bien, peu savent le donner.

(LA ROCHEFOUCAULD.)

PEU, *Adverb.*

Peu qualifying an adjective requires an indefinite article, and means 'rather' :

il est un peu sourd.

With a participle no article is required, and *peu* means 'not much' :

nous sommes peu habitués à ces manières-là.

Adverbial Locutions compounded with PEU.

Dans peu, sous peu = shortly.

Depuis peu = a short time ago.

Quelque peu = somewhat :

un païen qui sentait quelque peu le fagot.

(LA FONTAINE, Bk. iv. Fable xix.)

Tant soit peu = ever so little.

A peu de chose près = nearly.

Si peu que rien = very little, almost nothing.

Si peu que, pour peu que = however little.

Il s'en faut peu, il s'en faut de peu = within an ace :

il s'en fallut de peu que je ne tombasse.

486 *Pis* (*pejus*) is essentially an adverb, and not to be confounded with *pire*, adjective.

In the following and similar examples it approaches *nearly* to the condition of an adjective :

ce que j'y trouve de pis

ils sont pis que jamais ensemble (on worse terms than ever)

aller de mal en pis (from bad to worse)

que m'offrirait de pis la Fortune ennemie?

(CORNEILLE, *Pomp.* act iii. sc. 2)

et le pis du destin fut qu'un certain vautour, etc.

(LA FONTAINE, Bk. ix. Fable ii.)

Idiomatic Expressions.

Au pis aller = at the worst.

Mettre quelqu'un au pis = to defy anyone to do his utmost.

Mettre à pis faire (same meaning):

Je mets à **faire pis** en l'état où nous sommes,
Le sort **et** les démons **et** les dieux **et** les hommes.

(CORNEILLE, *Hor.* act ii. sc. 3.)

Dire pis que pendre de quelqu'un = to abuse anyone like a pickpocket.

487 a. *Plus* is either an adverb of comparison or of quantity. In the former case it requires the conjunction *que*:

je suis plus grand **que** vous, quoique vous soyez plus âgé **que** moi.

In the latter case it requires *de*:

cette étoffe ne vaut pas plus **de** dix francs le mètre
il y avait plus **de** trente personnes assemblées.

β. *Plus* generally (not always) takes *de* before the expressions *à demi*, *à moitié*:

prit sa fronde et tua plus **d'**à moitié, etc.

(LA FONTAINE, Bk. ix. Fable ii.)

nos deux frères entendirent plus **d'**à demi ces paroles. (*Ibid.*)

γ. *Plus* followed by *plus*, *et plus*, or *moins*, in another clause, with the sense of *the more—the more, the less*:

plus je vois les hommes, **plus** je vous estime.

plus je suis votre amant, **moins** je suis Curiace

(CORNEILLE, *Hor.* act ii. sc. 5.)

plus grande en est la peine, **et plus** grande est la gloire

(CORNEILLE)

plus obscure est la nuit, **et plus** l'étoile y brille.

(LAMARTINE.)

δ. *Plus* used absolutely means *no more*:

plus de vers, **plus** de prose, en un mot **plus** de moi.

(SCARRON.)

This signification of *plus* comes more properly under the head of negatives, which see page 439.

ε. *D'autant plus* = with all the more reason:

il est riche, **d'autant plus** doit-il être charitable.

D'autant plus que = all the more that:

il devrait être charitable **d'autant plus** qu'il est riche.

488 *Plus tôt* and *plutôt*, although originally of the same signification, are not to be confounded :

Plus tôt = sooner, is always written in two words.

Plutôt = rather, „ „ one word.

489 *Pourtant* (*pour-tant*) in old French had the signification of *for that reason, purpose* :

il voulut bien assommer, mais ne pas bleçer, **pourtant** ne combattait que de masse.

The modern signification is *however, nevertheless*, and it is synonymous with *cependant*.

490 *Quand* (*quando*), synonym of *lorsque*. For *quand*, *quand même*, followed by the conditional mood, see Rule 354.

491 *Quelque*. For *quelque*, adverb, see Rule 128.

492 *Soudain* (*subitus, subitaneus*). One of the many adjectives used adverbially ; compare the following :

voir **clair** ; parler **haut, bas** ; frapper **fort** ; marcher **vite**, etc.

493 *Souvent* (*subinde*), often, almost synonymous with *fréquemment*. The latter, however, implies a habit ; *souvent* merely constant repetition :

plus souvent ! *not if I know it ! catch me !* (familiar idiom).

494 *Tandis* (*tam diu*), originally, *during that time*. It is almost obsolete with this signification, and is now used with *que* to mean *whilst*. As compared with *pendant que*, *tandis que* implies a sort of *opposition* in the terms compared ; whereas *pendant que* only implies that the two terms compared were contemporaneous :

il fait froid ici **tandis qu'il** fait chaud dans le midi
nous travaillons **pendant qu'il** fait la lecture.

495 *Tantôt* originally meant *soon* :

vous n'avez **tantôt** plus que la peau sur les os.

(RACINE, *Les Plaideurs*, act i. sc. 4.)

Its modern signification is twofold—

a. *A little time on, or back.*

β. (Repeated) *at one time, at another* :

a. je l'ai vu **tantôt**
je le verrai **tantôt**

I saw him a little while ago
I shall see him by and by.

Tantôt is rarely, if ever, used to signify anything beyond the actual day on which one is speaking:

β. il est **tantôt** gai, **tantôt** sérieux, *he is by turns gay and serious.*

Peculiar Uses of TANTÔT.

depuis **tantôt** six mois (LA FONTAINE, Bk. i. Fable **xxi.**) *about six months ago*

tantôt plus, **tantôt** moins (*Ibid.*) *sometimes more, sometimes less.*

496 *Tard*, late :

travailler **tard**

se lever **tard**

sur le **tard** (*inusit.*), *towards evening*

tôt ou **tard**, *sooner or later.*

497 *Toujours* (*tous les jours*), always, still. It has also the signification of *in the meanwhile* :

je vais sortir, travaillez **toujours** ;

and of *at all events* :

si je n'ai pas réussi, **toujours** ai-je fait mon devoir.

498 *Tout*, adverb, meaning *quite*.

α. The peculiarity of this adverb is that it assumes the feminine form when qualifying a feminine adjective beginning with a consonant or aspirated *h* :

elle est **toute** tremblante

elles parurent **toutes** honteuses.

Tout qualifying a substantive is not subject to the above rule :

elle est **tout** cœur, **tout** zèle, **tout** ardeur.

β. *Tout* with adverbs and adjectives :

tout froidement, **tout** haut, **tout** bas,

tout beau! (*gently!*), **tout** juste

nous sommes arrivés **tout** just^h *we arrived in the very nick of time*
à temps

tout le premier

the very first

tout le plus gros du pâturage (LA FONTAINE, Bk. xi. Fable i.)

quite the biggest in the pasture

un **tout** autre homme

quite a different man

je suis **tout** à vous

I am devotedly yours

tout grand qu'il est, il n'y atteindra pas

tall as he is, he will not reach it.

tout ours qu'il était, **toute** femme qu'elle est
tout en parlant *whilst speaking*
tout un *all one (a matter of indifference).*

γ. *Tout à coup, tout d'un coup.*

The first of these adverbial locutions means *suddenly* :

la porte s'ouvrit **tout à coup**.

The second means *with one motion* :

la porte s'ouvrit **tout d'un coup**, i.e. *not gradually, but wide open at once*

tout à coup elle aperçut les débris d'un navire

(FÉNELON, *Télémaque*)

Ou plutôt il fallait, comblant la perfidie,

Leur ravir **tout d'un coup** (*at one and the same time*) la parole et la vie.

δ. *Tout de suite, de suite.*

The first of these two means *immediately* :

il faut envoyer chercher le médecin **tout de suite**.

The second signifies *one after the other, in succession* :

il ne saurait dire deux mots **de suite**.

499 *Très (trans)*, very, can only modify an adjective, participle, or adverb :

cet homme est **très-instruit**

il est **très-sage**

vous parlez **très-sagement**.

It is always joined to the word that follows it by a hyphen, except with adverbial locutions ; as :

très à la hâte, très en retard.

• *Très* can never be used with *beaucoup*, the prefix *beau* being in itself a signification of intensity.

500 *Trop* (L.L. *troppus* ; Ital. *troppo*), too much, an adverb qualifying participles, adjectives, and adverbs :

trop grand, trop fatigué, trop vite.

Idiomatic Expressions.

c'en est **trop**
 vous êtes **de trop**

that is too much of a good thing
your room is preferable to your
company

Par trop has much the same signification as *trop* :

vous êtes par trop bon
c'est trop d'une négative

you are really too good
that is one negation too much.

Trop (like *très*) must never be used to qualify *beaucoup*.

Too much is expressed by *trop* alone. *Trop beaucoup* would be a grievous fault.

VIII. PREPOSITIONS.

501 In Part I., pages 73–74, a nearly complete list of French prepositions has been given : we propose here to adopt the same classification, and to treat of them as—

- α.* Simple prepositions (*avec, dans, &c.*) ;
 - β.* Compound prepositions (*à cause de, prêt d, &c.*) ;
 - γ.* Adjectives and participles used as prepositions (*durant, excepté, &c.*) ;
- and to remark on any peculiarities that may exist in their etymology, meaning, or the manner of employing them.

502 The *Simple Prepositions*, i.e. such as govern their complement without the aid of any other preposition, are :

à	derrière	fors	pour
après	dès	hormis	près
avant	dessous (par-dessous)	hors	sans
avec	dessus (par-dessus)	jusque	selon
chez	devant (par-devant)	malgré	sous
comme	devers (par-devers)	outre	sur
contre	en	par decà	vers
dans	entre	par delà	voici
de	envers	parmi	voilà.
depuis	environ		

503 *À*.

1. *À* and *dans* (which see) are used before names of towns and distinctly specified places, whereas *en* is used before names of countries ; as :

je vais <i>à</i> Rome	je vais <i>en</i> Italie
je demeure <i>à</i> Paris	je demeure <i>en</i> France.
je vais <i>au</i> spectacle	

2. *À* with the sense of *in* ; as :

il n'est pas arrivé *à* temps.

3. *À la guerre* means at the war ; *en guerre*, in a state of warfare : *aller en guerre*, to go to the wars.

4. *Difference between À LA CAMPAGNE, EN CAMPAGNE; À LA VILLE, EN VILLE.*

ma mère est **à la campagne** (*in the country*)
 les troupes sont **en campagne** (*on campaign*)
 ma mère est **en ville** (*has gone into town*)
 il demeure **à la ville** (*he lives in town habitually*).

5. *Peculiar Meanings of À.**

à quand ?	<i>what day?</i>
à quand la revue ?	<i>when are we to have the review?</i>
à demain !	<i>I wish you good-bye till to-morrow!</i>
se faire faire un habit à son tailleur	<i>to have a coat made by one's tailor</i>
c'était à qui jouerait le premier	<i>it remained to be seen who should play first</i>
ils ont couru à qui mieux mieux	<i>each ran to the best of his ability.</i>

Difference of À or Ou between two Numbers.

If the two numbers are consecutive, *ou* must be used, not *à*:

il y avait sept **ou** huit personnes présentes;

but

il y avait de sept **à** dix personnes

would be correct. If, however, the objects enumerated are in themselves capable of being divided into fractions, *à* may be used:

je suppose que cette montre coûtera de neuf **à** dix livres.

304 *Avant* (*ab-antè*) means *before* in point of time as opposed to *devant* (equivalent to, though not derived from, the Latin *coram*), which means *before* in point of space.†

ils sont arrivés bien **avant** nous, il est vrai, mais ce n'est pas une raison pour se placer droit **devant** nous et nous empêcher de voir.

305 *Avec* (old French *avec*, from Lat. *ab hoc*, *apud hoc*) is often found in poetry written in three syllables, *avecque*, for the sake of the metre.

* C'est à vous à jouer. C'est à vous de jouer.

The difference which some grammarians have endeavoured to establish between these two expressions has not been borne out by the practice of the best authors.

† This distinction is not by any means stringent, many instances existing in the works of the best authors of *avec* being used with regard to place, and *devant* with regard to time. Modern custom is, however, certainly in favour of its observance.

506 *Après* (same etymology as *près*, i.e. Ital. *presso*, Lat. *pressus*, pressed close, therefore *near*) :

(*Idiom*) *après ! what next (I wonder) !*

507 *Chez* (*casa*, at the house of) was originally a substantive, and required the help of a preposition to govern its complement ; in the thirteenth century one wrote :

il est **en chez** Gautier.

It is still used with *de* in modern French :

je viens **de chez** vous.

It can never be used with any but names of persons : *chez vous, chez moi, chez le général, &c.*

508 *Dans* (old French *dens*, Lat. *de-intus*). *Dans* and *en* are almost synonymous expressions ; the best distinctions seem to be the following :—

a. Dans marks a fixed and definite idea, and *en* a vague and indefinite one :

j'ai voyagé **en** Italie (*about Italy generally*)
 les Gaulois étaient **dans** Rome (*actually in the town*)
 j'ai vécu **en** pays étranger
 c'est **dans** le pays étranger qu'on apprend à juger du sien
 mettez cela **dans** mon tiroir, **dans** mon armoire.

β. Dans (and *à*, see Rule 503) are used with names of towns ; *en* with names of countries :

il est **dans** Paris, *or* il est **à** Paris ;

but

il est **en** France.

γ. Dans takes a definite article before the name of a kingdom or province :

dans l'Espagne, **dans le** Berry ;

en takes no article :

en Espagne, **en** Normandie.

This distinction is also observed before some common nouns :

ne vous mettez point **en** colère ; **dans** la colère on ne distingue rien.

δ. *Differences of DANS and EN before a specified Time.*

je ferai cela **en** une heure
je ferai cela **dans** une heure

I shall only take an hour to do that
I will set about it in an hour's time.

509 *De* has many meanings besides the ordinary one of *of, from, or by*, and of the *partitive*, either in combination with or without the definite article.

α. It serves to establish comparison, when it must be repeated before each term compared :

qui est le plus grand **de** vous ou **de** votre frère ?

Qu'ils jugent en partant qui méritait le mieux

Des Français ou **de** moi l'empire de ces lieux. (VOLTAIRE.)

β. In the second clause of a sentence dependent on *aimer mieux*, or *valoir mieux* :

il vaut mieux se taire que **de** dire des bêtises.

γ. After a numeral adjective or collective substantive modified by a participle :

il y eut cent hommes **de** tués

il y eut une quantité de personnes **de** blessées;

and before both participles and adjectives if *en* has been inserted previously :

parmi tous les opéras qu'il a écrits il y en a **de** bons comme il y en a **de** mauvais.

δ. *Idiomatic Employment of DE*

de gaîté **de** cœur

out of pure light-heartedness, inconsiderately

de bonheur

by good luck

de jour

by day

de nuit

by night

faire une chose **de** soi-même

to do anything by one's self

il en est **de** vous comme **de** moi

it is just the same with you as with me

si j'étais que **de** vous

if I were you.

With *rien, personne, quelqu'un* :

y a-t-il rien **d'**aussi ennuyeux ?

y a-t-il quelqu'un **d'**assez lâche ?

un fripon **d'**enfant

a rascally child

un saint homme **de** chat

quite a saint amongst cats. (La FONTAINE.)

= With the historic infinitive :

grenouilles de rentrer dans leurs grottes profondes (LA FONTAINE) *the frogs began to seek their deep grottoes.*

= After *plus* or *moins* before a numeral :

plus de vingt personnes *more than twenty people*
il n'a pas moins de quatre-vingts ans *he is not less than eighty years old*
vivre de *to live on*
je vis de bonne soupe, et non de beau langage *I live on good soup, and not on fine language. (MOLIÈRE.)*

510 *Dès* (*de-ex*) = *à partir de*, no later than :

dès aujourd'hui *no later than to-day, this very day*
dès demain *to-morrow and no later*
dès lors *from that time.*

(For *dès que*, *dès là que*, see CONJUNCTIONS.)

511 *Depuis*, *derrière*, *dessus*, *dessous*, *par-dessus*, *par-dessous*, are sometimes prepositions, sometimes adverbs (see Rules 460 to 465).

Depuis may be used either in reference to *time* or *place* :

la France s'étend **depuis** les Alpes jusqu'à l'Océan
 je vous attendrai **depuis** cinq heures jusqu'à six (*from five to six*)

depuis quand êtes-vous ici ? *how long have you been here ?*
j'y suis depuis peu *I have been here a short time only.*

512 *Devant* (*de-ab-antè*), before, generally, with regard to place :

assis **devant** le feu
 mettre le siège **devant** une ville.

But there are not wanting instances in good authors where *devant* has the meaning of *before*, with regard to time. Bossuet uses the expression :

devant le déluge.

It is, however (as we have said under the heading of *avant*) more usual to make the distinction of—

avant meaning *before* with regard to **time**
devant " " " **place.**

Au-devant de :

aller **au-devant de**, *to anticipate*
 il va **au-devant de** tout ce que je puis souhaiter.

It also means *to go to meet* :

j'irai **au-devant de vous**, *I will come and meet you.*

Par-devant, a term used in law courts :

par-devant notaire, etc.

513 *Devers*, towards :

mais quel mauvais démon **devers** nous le conduit? (CORNEILLE)
par-devers soi, *in one's own (secret) mind.*

514 *En*. (For distinction between *en* and *dans*, see Rule 508.)

En is used after such verbs as *changer*, *diviser*, *dissiper*, *fondre*, *résoudre*, &c.:

le pauvre enfant fondit **en** larmes
 l'eau s'est résous **en** vapeur.

En is rarely followed immediately by the definite article, but by a personal pronoun :

ce n'est pas **en** moi, **en** vous, etc.;

or by a word taking the place of the definite article, such as a demonstrative or pronominal adjective :

en telle année, **en** quel temps? **en** quelque sorte, **en** mon nom.

The few exceptions of *en* followed by the definite article in the singular * are such expressions as :

en l'honneur de, **en** l'absence de, **en** l'état où.

Peculiarities of EN.

It is the only preposition that can precede a present participle :

en marchant, **en** dormant
en y allant de bonne heure, vous êtes sûr de le trouver (*by going there early, &c.*).

* *En* before the plural def. art. only exists in the contracted form of *ès* (*en-lus*): *bachelier ès-lettres*.

Idioms :

un portrait en pied	<i>a full-length portrait</i>
se coiffer en cheveux	<i>to wear one's hair plain</i>
parler en soldat	<i>to speak like a soldier</i>
agir en roi	<i>to act as a king should</i>
traiter quelqu'un en ami	<i>to treat anyone as a friend</i>
en tant que	<i>inasmuch as, or according as</i>
mettre quelqu'un en prison	<i>to put anyone into prison</i>
monter en voiture	<i>to get into a carriage</i>
aujourd'hui en huit, en quinze	<i>a week, a fortnight hence.</i>

515 *Entre* (*inter*), between.

a. It properly means between two objects (time or place) :

le bataillon se trouva pris **entre** deux feux
flotter **entre** le ciel et la terre
entre le lever et le coucher du soleil
entre huit et neuf heures.

β. *Entre* expresses relation between two objects :

l'entente cordiale **entre** la France et l'Angleterre
entre amis il ne faut point de cérémonie
entre nous (= de vous à moi), *between you and me*
entre hommes d'honneur cela ne se fait pas.

γ. *Entre* sometimes has the meaning more properly affixed to *parmi* of 'amongst' :

vous que l'Orient compte **entre** ses plus grands rois.

(See *Parmi*, No. 525.)

Peculiar (idiomatic) Meanings of ENTRE.

nager **entre** deux eaux, *to swim below the surface*
entre deux vins, *half seas over* (familiar)
regarder quelqu'un **entre** les yeux, *to look anyone steadily in the face*
entre quatre yeux (pronounced *quatre-s-yeux*), *said of two persons conversing with no one else near*
mon bonheur est **entre** vos mains (*in your hands*)
entre tous = *above and beyond all others.*

N.B. The final *e* of *entre* is only elided in compound words : *entr'acte*, *s'entr'aider* ; never before another vowel.
entre eux, *entre elles*, *entre autres*, &c.

516 *Envers*, towards, is never employed except with a mental signification :*

il est compatissant **envers** les pauvres
mon devoir **envers** Dieu est, etc.

It has also the meaning of *auprès de*, in the estimation of:

je perdrai mon crédit **envers** sa majesté (CORNEILLE)

envers et contre tous, *an obsolete expression of the more simple form, contre.*

517 *Environ*, generally with the signification of time (*environ ce temps-là*) can also be used with regard to place.

518 *Fors* (*foris*), same meaning as *hors*, an obsolete word rendered famous by Francis I.'s well-known letter to his mother after the disaster of Pavia:

'Tout est perdu **fors** l'honneur.'

519 *Hors* (*foris*) = without, except:

être mis **hors** la loi = *to be outlawed*
nul n'aura de l'esprit **hors** nous et nos amis.
(MOLIÈRE, *Fem. sav.* act iii. sc. 2.)

More often found with *de* (see Rule 542).

520 *Hormis*, same meaning as *hors*:

hormis cet homme je ne connais personne.

Corneille employs it with an infinitive mood:

tout **hormis** l'irriter, tout **hormis** lui déplaire.
(*Androm.* act v. sc. 1.)

521 *Jusque* (in old French of the eleventh century *usque*, showing its derivation from Lat. *usque*, *de-usque*) is generally found in combination with another preposition:

jusqu'à présent	jusqu'à quand
jusque par-dessus la tête	jusqu'à demi.
jusque sur les toits	

With the adverb *où* no preposition is required:

jusqu'où voulez-vous aller?

* *Vers* (which see 535) means towards with regard to place or time.

and with *aujourd'hui* (which contains a preposition in the first syllable, *au*):

jusqu'aujourd'hui.

The form *jusques* is generally used before a vowel :

percé **jusques** au fond du cœur. (CORNEILLE, *Cid*, act i.)

522 *Malgré* (*male-gratum*, Lat.), in spite of:

malgré vous, malgré moi.

Idiom :

malgré que j'en aie, qu'il en ait, *in spite of myself, of himself.*

523 *Outre* (*ultrà*), beyond, in actual distance as well as in idea :

passer **outre** = *to go farther*

il ne nous a pas permis de **passer outre**

percer **d'outre en outre** = *to pierce through and through.*

524 *Par* (*per*).

The ordinary signification of the word is *by* :

jurer **par** Dieu, **par** ma foi, etc.

It has, however, many other significations, such as the following :

jeter quelque chose **par** la fenêtre (*out of the window*)

il faut en passer **par** là, *we must submit to that*

aller au prince **par** les ministres (VOLTAIRE), *to get at the prince through the ministers*

par un beau clair de lune

par le temps qu'il fait = *in such weather (bad or good)*

par la ville = *all over the town*

par curiosité, **par** envie = *through curiosity, envy*

couper **par** morceaux, *to cut to pieces*

par trois fois = *three times*

c'est **par** trop fort = *that is a little too much.*

After commencer and finir :

j'ai commencé **par** parler de vous

vous finirez **par** tomber, *you will fall at last (i.e. if you don't take care)*

passer **par** chez quelqu'un, *to call at some one's house*

par en haut = *upwards*; **par** en bas = *downwards*

par ici! *this way!* **par** là! *that way!*

par ci, **par** là = *here and there.*

*Distinction between PAR and DE with regard to the Person
BY whom anything is done.*

Par implies some *actual* operation.

De implies some operation of the *mind* :

un homme aimé **de** Dieu
le monde a été créé **par** Dieu.

(For *de par*, see at Rule 545.)

525 *Parmi* (*per-medium*), among :

parmi tous ces messieurs il n'y en avait que deux de ma connaissance.

It may be used with a substantive in the singular number:

parmi ce bruit confus de plaintes et de clameurs (VOLTAIRE, *Henr.*)
il court **parmi** le monde un livre abominable (MOLIÈRE, *Mis. act v. sc. 1*)
parmi la plaine (LA FONTAINE); **parmi** le peuple; **parmi** la foule.

Parmi, however (as distinct from *entre*), cannot be used before any definite number; it would be wrong to say:

parmi deux, trois personnes.

Pendant que. For distinction between *Pendant que* and *Tandis que*, see 494.

526 *Pour* marks the *motive*, *destination*, *reason* of doing anything :

je suis venu **pour** vous parler (*motive*)
pour qui est ce chapeau? (*destination*)
il a été puni **pour** avoir menti (*reason*).

Different Meanings of POUR.

pour Dieu! = *for God's sake!*
j'ai **pour** moi l'opinion publique (*in my favour*)
avoir de l'aversion **pour** la campagne
je n'y suis **pour** rien, *I have nothing to do with it*
pour tout potage, *for the whole feast (with nothing else)*.

Also used figuratively : *en être pour* :

j'en suis **pour** mes vingt francs, *that's all I get for my twenty francs (i.e. nothing)*
en être quitte pour la peur = *to come off with a fright and no hurt*.

Pour que with the sense of *although* :

pour saints, **pour** éclairés, **pour** sages **que** soient les hommes, ils ne sont pas infailibles (ST.-SIMON)
— on n'est pas criminel toujours **pour** le paraître (*because one appears so*).

527 *Près* (Ital. *presso*, Lat. *pressus*, close, therefore *near*), though more often used with *de* (see Rule 543), is sometimes employed independently :

il demeure **près** la porte St.-Martin
 Passy **près** Paris.

Peculiar diplomatic meaning :

ambassadeur **près** la cour de France, *ambassador to the French court.*

À — *près* and *de* — *près* are, properly speaking, adverbial locutions ; yet as they have not been treated of under that heading, and as in some of their meanings they may almost be considered as prepositions proper, they may be introduced here :

à peu de chose **près** = *very nearly*

à quelques siècles **près** = *within a very few centuries*

à cela **près** = *excepting that*

à votre indifférence **près** (LA FONTAINE, Bk. iv. Fable i.), *were it not for your indifference.*

De bien près ; de si près :

serrer quelqu'un **de bien près**, *to hem anyone in close*
 ne pas y regarder **de si près**, *not to be so particular.*

528 *Proche* is sometimes, though rarely, used without the help of *de*.

529 *Sans* (*sine*) may be followed by *ni* or *et* :

sans force **ni** vertu

sans force **et sans** vertu ;

with this distinction, that when *ni* is used *sans* need not be repeated, whereas with *et*, *sans* must be repeated.

Peculiar meaning with *plus* :

sans plus, *one and no more*

un rat **sans plus**. (LA FONTAINE.)

530 *Sauf*, though properly an adjective, is also used as a preposition in the following expression :

sauf votre respect = *with all due deference to you*

sauf correction = *under correction.*

It also means *except* :

il lui a légué tous ses biens **sauf** une terre.

(For other adjectives used as prepositions, see 546.)

531 *Selon* (etymol. either *secundum* or, as the old French form, *selonc*, would seem to warrant, from *sub-longum*):

les choses iront **selon** nos désirs (*in accordance with our wishes*)
selon La Fontaine, **selon** Molière, l'Évangile **selon** St. Mathieu
 c'est **selon** = *that depends on circumstances*
selon que = *according as* :

Selon que vous serez puissant ou misérable,
 Les jugements de cour vous rendront blanc ou noir.
 (LA FONTAINE, Bk. vii. Fable i.)

532 *Sous* (*subtus*), under.

Peculiar meanings :

tenir quelqu'un **sous** le bras, *to give anyone one's arm*
 mourir **sous** le bâton, *to be beaten to death*
sous peu = *in a little time, before long*
sous un mauvais jour, *in a bad light*.

533 *Sur* * (*super*), on, upon.

Peculiar meaning :

j'ai sa lettre **sur** moi (*somewhere about me*).

Sur, out of:

sur dix poires je n'en ai trouvé que cinq de bonnes
 dix pieds de long **sur** huit de large, *ten feet long by eight broad*
sur tout, **sur** toute chose, *above all*
 je suis **sur** mon départ, *I am on the eve of departure*
 un homme déjà **sur** l'âge (*middle-aged*)
 loger **sur** la rue, *to have rooms looking out on the street (as compared with loger dans la rue, to live in the street)*.

534 *Sus* (*sursum*, *susum*), either preposition or adverb; only found as a preposition with *courir* :

courir **sus**, *to attack*
 on a sonné le tocsin dans tous les villages, et les paysans se sont armés pour lui **courir sus**.

* Observe the difference between *sur*, preposition unaccented, and *sus*, adjective, contracted from *securus*.

As adverb :

en **sus**, *in addition*
sus, sus! *at him!*
 or **sus!** *look you now!*

535 *Vers* (*versus, versum*), towards:

regarder **vers** le ciel
vers midi, *about mid-day*
vers le commencement de l'année 1815, *towards the beginning of the year 1815.*

Many grammarians, and the dictionary of the Academy, endeavour to establish a distinction between *envers* and *vers*, saying that *envers* alone can have a moral or figurative sense; but many of the classical poets employ *vers* in this sense.

536 *Voici, voilà*, here is, there is, behold! (from *vois*, see, and *ici* or *là*, here or there).

Rabelais separates the two words thus :

voy me ci prêt.

Voici may be used before the infinitive *venir* :

tremblez, méchants, tremblez, **voici venir** la foudre
le voici! *here he is!* vous **voilà!** *there you are!*
 nous **voici** arrivés, *you see we have come*
 nous y **voici**, *here we are*
 m'y **voici** donc, *surely I am big enough now* (the frog wishing to imitate the ox) (LA FONTAINE, Bk. i. Fable iii.)
 comme me **voilà** fait! comme doit être un ours (LA FONTAINE, Bk. xii. Fable i.), *how ugly I am, you say; just as a bear should be*
voilà qui est fait! *there! that's done!*
voilà qui va bien! *that's capital!*
 l'homme que **voilà**, que **voici**, *this man here*
 en **voilà** assez! *come, that's enough!*

Important Distinction between VOILÀ and VOICI.

Voilà refers to something that is past; *voici* to something to come :

voilà ce qu'il m'a dit; **voici** ce que je compte lui répondre.

537 *Prepositions requiring the Aid of another Preposition to make them complete.*

a. Some require *de* and *à* or *en*, such as those compounded of a substantive :

à cause de
 à côté de

à l'aide de
 à la faveur de

en dépit de
 en face de, &c.,

and the following :

à moins de	au prix de	hors de
au-delà de	autour de	le long de
au-devant de	au travers de	loin de
au-dessous de	avant de	près de
au-dessus de	avant que de	proche de
auprès de	faute de	vis-à-vis de.

β. Some require à :

jusqu'à, par rapport à, prêt à, quant à. (See Rule 521.)

γ. Some are preceded by another preposition, and require neither à nor *de* after them :

à part	de chez	de près
à travers	d'entre	par-devant
d'après	de par	par-devers.
d'avec		

538 *Auprès de.* Ordinary signification, *near* :

sa maison est **auprès de** la mienne
je l'ai vu passer tout **auprès de** nous.

It is also used to express comparison :

tous les ouvrages de l'homme sont vils et grossiers **auprès des** moindres ouvrages de la nature.

Difference between AUPRÈS DE and AU PRIX DE.

The former is more general, the latter is rarely used except where attention is called to the *price* or *value* set upon one object in comparison with another :

ces hommes-là sont heureux **auprès de** nous
ma maison n'est rien **au prix de** la vôtre.

This distinction, however, is not always observed.

Difference between AUPRÈS DE and PRÈS DE.

The former is more definite, the latter vaguer in meaning :

cet enfant n'est heureux qu'**auprès de** sa mère (*actually at his mother's apron-strings*)
il demeure près de l'église (*in the vicinity of the church*).

- 539 1. *Avant de* } with infinitive.
 2. *Avant que de* }
 3. *Avant que* with subjunctive (and sometimes infinitive)

The two former are precisely similar in meaning :

1. **avant de** partir, venez me voir
2. **avant** donc **que** d'écrire, apprenez à penser (BOILEAU)
3. écoutez ce récit **avant que** je réponde (LA FONTAINE)
 le roi voulut voir ce chef-d'œuvre **avant** même **qu'**il fût achevé.
 (VOLTAIRE.)

Avant que, with infinitive, only used in poetry :

mais **avant que** sortir, viens que ton roi t'embrasse.

Avant que is often followed by *ne* :

je ne peux pas le faire **avant que** je n'aie vu son père.

540 *Ensuite de, ensuite de cela, &c.*, after :

ensuite de cette belle réflexion. (Mme. de SÉVIGNÉ.)

541 *Faute de* = for want of :

et le combat cessa **faute de** combattants
 (CORNEILLE, *Cid*, act iv. sc. 3)

tout cela n'est venu que **faute de** savoir danser.
 (MOLIÈRE, *Bourg. Gent.* act i. sc. 2)

542 *Hors de* = out of, beyond :

mais le cœur d'Émilie est **hors de** son pouvoir
 (CORNEILLE, *Cinna*, act iii. sc. 4)

hors de Paris il n'y a point de salut pour les honnêtes gens.
 (MOLIÈRE, *Préc. Rid.* sc. 10)

hors d'ici ! *away from here* !
hors de là ! *be off* !

Idioms :

être **hors de** soi, *to be beside oneself*
hors de cour, **hors de** cause = *nonsuited*
hors de dispute, *beyond dispute, incontrovertible*
hors de combat, *disabled*
hors de prix, *beyond all price*
 être **hors de** page, *to be out of leading-strings, one's own master.*

543 *Près de*, not to be confounded with *prêt à*:

près de means *on the point of*
prêt à „ *ready to*.

étant **près de** mourir, il voulait se faire donner l'absolution
 je suis **prêt à** vous suivre.

544 *Quant à* = as for:

quant à ce que vous m'avez dit hier, il n'y a pas un mot de vrai.

The similarity of the pronunciation of *quand* (when) before a vowel to that of *quant* may sometimes cause confusion. It should be remembered, however, that *quant* is invariably followed by *à*.

545 *Travers, au travers, à travers, &c.*

The distinction between *au travers* and *à travers* (both meaning *through, across*) is that the former requires the preposition *de*; the latter governs its case without the aid of another preposition:

Au travers des ombres de la nuit
 Le timide escadron se dissipe et s'enfuit
 (BOILEAU, *Lutrin*, iii.)

au travers des périls un grand cœur se fait jour
 (RACINE, *Andr.* act iii. sc. 3)

il marchait à pied **à travers** ses ennemis (VOLTAIRE)
 on voyait le soleil **à travers** les nuages.

En travers (adverbial) = across

j'ai fait mettre à cette fenêtre des barres de bois **en travers**.

De travers (adverbial) = obliquely:

avoir la bouche, les jambes de travers	<i>to have a mouth on one side, crooked legs</i>
regarder quelqu'un de travers	<i>to look at anyone askance</i>
parler à tort et à travers	<i>to speak without rhyme or reason.</i>

546 PREPOSITIONS PRECEDED BY *DE*.

D'après = in consequence of, after:

un tableau peint **d'après** nature
d'après votre ordre j'ai agi
 l'année **d'après**.

D'avec = from, from amongst :

on peut aisément distinguer le flatteur **d'avec** l'ami.

De chez, from the house of :

votre chapeau est **de chez** Laure, n'est-ce pas ?

D'entre, from amongst :

je vous ai choisi **d'entre** vos compagnons.

D'en haut, d'en bas :

la partie **d'en haut** est plus solide que celle **d'en bas**.

De par = *par l'ordre de* :

de par le roi des animaux. (LA FONTAINE, Bk. vi. Fable xiv.)

je ne sais que ma croix **de par** Dieu (*my alphabet*)

de par le monde = *somewhere or other in the world*.

(For *de près*, see No. 527.)

547 Many adjectives and participles are used as prepositions ; such are :

attendu	excepté	pendant	touchant
attendu que	joignant	sauf	vu
concernant	moyennant	suivant	vu que.
durant	nonobstant		

The principal peculiarity to be observed in the foregoing participles used as prepositions is that *as such* they are invariable in gender and number (see Syntax, Rule 76) :

il fut exempté de service, **attendu** ses infirmités

excepté votre femme, il n'y avait personne de ma connaissance.

Vu (a legal formula) :

vu les ordonnances précitées

vu les raisons et allégations de part et d'autre.

548 *Durant* has this peculiarity, that it is the only preposition that can be put *after* the word it governs :

on vous parle une heure **durant**, et vous ne répondez pas à ce qu'on vous dit. (MOLIÈRE, *Mar. forcé*, sc. 6.)

Difference between DURANT and PENDANT.

The former implies during the whole time ; the latter, during a portion of such time :

les régiments sont restés dans leurs quartiers **durant** l'hiver (*the whole winter through*)
c'est **pendant** l'hiver que cette bataille eut lieu, *this battle was fought in the winter-time.*

549 *Joignant* = close to (obsolete) :

Votre trésor ! où pris ? Tout **joignant** cette pierre.
(LA FONTAINE, Bk. iv. Fable xx.)

550 *Moyennant* = *au moyen de*, by means of, or in return for :

l'homme de bien, **moyennant** une conduite égale et simple, se fait chérir partout

Moyennant quoi votre salaire
Sera force reliefs de toutes les façons.
(LA FONTAINE, Bk. i. Fable v.)

551 REPETITION OF PREPOSITIONS.

It is more correct to repeat the preposition before each complement that is governed by it ; though, for certain reasons of euphony, it may be occasionally suppressed.

il n'y a point de poète **auquel** je m'attache avec plus de plaisir qu'à Horace

il n'y a pas d'homme **sur** qui je compte autant que **sur** vous voyager **par** monts et **par** vaux (*over hill and dale*)

sans bien, **sans** nom, **sans** tous ces titres vains. (VOLTAIRE.)

552 The monosyllabic prepositions (*à, de, en, pour, &c.*) are generally repeated :

la lecture sert **à** parer l'esprit, **à** régler les mœurs, et **à** former le jugement (SCUDÉRY)

cette loi qui m'instruit **de** tout ce que je dois **à** mon père, **à** mon fils, **à** ma femme, **à** moi-même

la conversation d'aujourd'hui est toute **en** saillies, **en** menus propos, **en** équivoques, **en** calembourgs.

However, there are not wanting instances of the suppression of the consecutive monosyllabic prepositions :

on divise l'ancien continent **en** Europe, Asie, Afrique (VOLTAIRE)
il sort partout **de** grands prédicateurs, riches prélats, casuistes, docteurs. (*Ibid.*)

IX. CONJUNCTIONS.

553 Conjunctions* may be divided into two classes, *simple* and *compound*.

The simple conjunctions are :

car	mais	quand	savoir
comme	ni	quant	si
donec	or	quand même	sinon
et	ou	que	soit
lorsque	puisque	quoique	voire.

The compound conjunctions may be divided into :

- α.* Such as govern the *infinitive mood*.
- β.* Such as govern the *indicative mood*.
- γ.* Such as govern the *subjunctive mood*.

α. Those governing the infinitive mood are :

afin de	au lieu de	avant que de	loin de.
à moins de	avant de	de peur de	

β. Those governing the indicative mood are :

à cause que	aussitôt que	dès que	sitôt que
à condition que	autant que	outre que	tandis que
à la charge que	comme si	parce que	tant que
à mesure que	de manière que	pendant que	tout — que
après que	de même que	puisque	vu que.
attendu que	de sorte que		

γ. Those governing the subjunctive mood are :

afin que	de peur que	malgré que	quoi que
à moins que	en cas que	pour que	sans que
au cas que	encore que	pourvu que	soit que
avant que	jusqu'à ce que	quelque — que	supposé que.
bien que	loin que	quoique	

For such as govern sometimes the indicative, sometimes the subjunctive (such as *de façon que*, *de manière que*, *de sorte que*, &c.), see Rule 363 of this syntax.

* See list in Part I. page 74.

SIMPLE CONJUNCTIONS.

554 *Comme* has several peculiar meanings besides the original one of *as, like* :

on le trouva **comme** mort, *they found him to all appearance dead.*

It has sometimes the signification of *comment*, how, in what manner :

voici **comme** l'affaire se passa
un cœur né pour servir sait **comme** l'on commande. (CORNEILLE.)

It is sometimes, but rarely, used without a complement at the end of a sentence. La Fontaine has a remarkable instance in Book viii. Fable x. :

je t'attraperai bien, dit-il, et voici **comme**.

555 *Et*, repeated, has sometimes the same meaning as *et* in Latin,* *both — and —* :

il réunit dans sa personne **et** les talents du plus grand général, **et** le génie du plus profond politique.

Je sais trop que je dois au bien de votre empire
Et le sang qui m'anime, **et** l'air que je respire.
(CORNEILLE, *Cid*, act iv. sc. 3.)

Et is sometimes omitted with a gradual succession of ideas, and thus adds force to the expression :

moines, femmes, vieillards, tout était descendu
(LA FONTAINE, Bk. vii. Fable ix.)
tout nous trahit, la voix, le silence, les yeux. (RACINE.)

556 *Mais* (*magis*) had originally the sense of *more*, as may be seen from the words derived from it, *jamais* (*jam magis*) and *désormais* (*de istâ horâ magis*). This signification exists still in the phrase *n'en pouvoir mais* = *n'en pouvoir plus*, to be incapable of further action :

je n'en peux **mais** = *I cannot help myself*
bat l'air qui n'en peut **mais**.
(LA FONTAINE, Bk. ii. Fable ix.)

* Ast ego, quæ divûm incedo regina, Jovisque
Et soror et conjux (Virgil, *Æneid*, l. 46, 47.)

Molière uses it without *ne* :

Faut-il de vos chagrins sans cesse à moi vous prendre,
Et puis-je ~~mais~~ des soins qu'on ne va pas vous rendre?
(*Misanthrope*, act iii. sc. 5.)

(For *ni*, see under NEGATIVES, Rule 577.)

557 *Or* (*hora*) signified in old French *now*. *Or* is used to introduce a new argument, or period in a speech or story :

or d'aller lui dire non, etc.
(LA FONTAINE, Bk. viii. Fable xiii.)

It also serves to introduce the minor premise in a syllogism :

Tout homme est inconstant.
Or, mon ami, vous êtes homme.
Par conséquent,
Vous êtes inconstant.

558 *Ou*, or (from Latin *aut*, as distinguished from *où*, where, from Latin *ubi*).

Ou followed by *ou* has the signification of *either* — *or* (in English the first conjunction may be suppressed) :

quel est le plus criminel à votre avis? **ou** celui qui emprunte un argent
dont il a besoin, **ou** celui qui vole un argent dont il n'a que faire?
(MOLIÈRE, *Avare*.)

voyez, est-ce, madame, **ou** ma faute, **ou** la vôtre?
(*Femmes sav.* act i. sc. 2.)

Ou joining two subjects takes the verb in the plural number if the two subjects govern the verb *conjointly* :

le bonheur **ou** la témérité **ont** pu faire des héros.
(MASSILLON.)

If, however, *ou* serves to separate the two subjects, the verb will be in the singular number :

sa perte **ou** son salut **dépend** de sa réponse.
(RACINE, *Baj.* act i. sc. 3.)

Two or more substantives coupled by the conjunction *ou* require the adjectives in the plural number, and agreeing with the more worthy gender :

les Samoïèdes se nourrissent de chair **ou** de poisson **cru**.

Ou bien = or else :

Non, ou vous me croirez, **ou bien** de ce malheur
Ma mort m'épargnera la vue et la douleur.

(RACINE, *Britann.* act iv. sc. 3.)

559 *Quand, quand même, quand bien même*, with the conditional mood, has the meaning of *even supposing that* :

et **quand** vous seriez roi ! *and even supposing you were a king !*
je serais votre ami **quand même** (or **quand bien même**) vous ne le voudriez pas.

À quand ? = till when, when :

a **quand** la première représentation ? *when shall we have the first night (of the play) ?*

Pour quand :

pour quand la réunion ? *for what day is the meeting fixed ?*

Depuis quand :

depuis quand êtes-vous là ? *how long have you been there ?*

Quand et quand (obsolete) = with, at the same time as :

nos prières partirent l'une **quand et quand** l'autre.

560 *Que*, conjunction, serves to unite two members of a phrase :

je vous dis **qu'il** viendra
je sais **qu'il** est venu.

There is no greater mistake than to suppose that *que* is of necessity followed by the subjunctive mood ; this mistake arises with Latin students from the fact that the Latin equivalents for '*that*' do require the subjunctive mood after them.

Rule 356 of this syntax contains a list of all the verbs which govern the subjunctive mood by aid of *que*.

A list of the various meanings of the conjunction *que* will be found in Rule 286 of this syntax. What is there said (286 o) with regard to *comme, quand, si* (viz. that instead of repeating them in the second clause of a sentence their

place may be supplied by *que*) may also be said of *lorsque* and *quoique* :

Lorsqu'on a des dispositions et qu'on veut étudier, on fait des progrès rapides quoiqu'il soit parti et qu'il ne soit plus revenu.

561 For distinction between *quoique* and *quoi que*, see Rules 295, 296.

Quoique (conjunction), *although*, always governs the subjunctive mood. It may be joined to a present participle :

quoique souffrant, je suis venu ;

or with a substantive :

quoique amis, ils ne se voient pas.

It is not usual to employ it with a past participle. The final *e* can only be elided before *il, ils, elle, elles, on, un, une*.

562 *Si*, conjunction, with the sense of *if, provided that, supposing* :

je viendrai si je peux.

Si governs the indicative mood :

s'il tombait, il se ferait mal.

However, it may be followed by the pluperfect subjunctive :

**s'il fût venu, il m'aurait fait plaisir
sage, s'il eût remis une légère offense.
(LA FONTAINE, Bk. iv. Fable xiii.)**

This can only be with the auxiliary verbs *avoir* and *être* :

si j'eusse su ; si je fusse venu.

Instead of repeating *si* in the second clause, *que* may be used with the subjunctive :

**si les malades guérissaient et qu'on m'en vînt remercier.
(MOLIÈRE.)**

Si elliptical expresses a wish :

**si je pouvais hériter d'un million !
si j'étais roi !**

It also serves to express strong affirmation coupled with surprise that any doubt should be entertained :

Comment, coquine ! **Si** je suis malade ! **Si** je suis malade, impudente !
(MOLIÈRE, *Mal. im.* act. i. sc. 5)

si je l'aime ! *love him, indeed ! (I should think I did !)*

si on le fut, **si** jamais on le fut, *if ever one was so.*

plein de zèle échauffé, **s'il** le fut de sa vie.

(LA FONTAINE, Bk. xii. Fable xii.)

Que si = *si* (see 286 π).

Ou si = or can it be that :

serais-je dans l'erreur, **ou si** c'est vous qui vous trompez ?

Justes cieux ! me trompé-je encore à l'apparence ?

Ou si je vois enfin mon unique espérance !

(CORNEILLE, *Cid*, act. iii. sc. 5.)

Remark.

Si can only be elided before *il*, or *ils* :

s'il vous plaît

s'ils viennent.

563 *Si*, adverb* = so much, to such an extent :

je n'ai jamais rien vu de **si** beau !

Peculiarities.

Si in a negative phrase followed by *que* requires the subjunctive mood :

il n'a pas couru **si** vite **qu'il** n'**ait** été dépassé par mon frère.

Si—*qui* in a negative phrase also requires the subjunctive :

il n'y a **si** misérable poltron **qui** ne **puisse** trouver un plus poltron que soi.

Si sometimes takes the place of *aussi*, *autant*, but only in negative or interrogative phrases :

mais Rodrigue ira-t-il **si** loin que vous allez ?

(CORNEILLE, *Cid*, act ii. sc. 5)

je n'ai jamais rien vu de **si** brillant !

* Purposely omitted from the list of adverbs, in order to introduce it here next to the conjunction *si*.

Si peu, si peu que rien = *très-peu*.

Si bien que = *tellement que* :

Si bien que, tout ours qu'il était,
Il vint à s'ennuyer.

(LA FONTAINE, Bk. viii. Fable x.)

Si, an affirmation, only (and always) used in answer to some preceding negation :

Vous n'êtes assurément pas son frère! **Si** (*I beg your pardon, I am*)

Vous dites que non, je dis **que si**, *you say no, I say yes*

Gageons **que si**! *let us bet that it is so!*

Si fait (Ital. *si fatto*) = yes indeed :

Vous n'y avez jamais été! **Si fait**, mon ami!

Oh que si! (familiar) :

Vous n'irez pas là! **Oh que si**! (*oh yes, but I will though!*)

Et si (obsolete), and yet :

j'ai la tête plus grosse que le poing, **et si** elle n'est pas enflée.

(MOLIÈRE, *Bourg. Gent.* act iii. sc. 5.)

564 *Sinon* (*si—non*) = otherwise :

s'il m'apporte une lettre de son père, je le recevrai ; **sinon** je lui ferme ma porte.

Sinon que = except that, were it not that :

sinon que je me sens un peu fatigué, je continuerais.

Sinon before an infinitive requires *de* (whatever the former preposition may have been) :

il ne me reste plus rien à faire **sinon de** vous remercier.

565 *Soit, soit que*, whether, whether it be, a conjunction expressing an alternative :

soit une vérité, **soit** un conte, n'importe

(CORNEILLE, *Androm.* act iv. sc. 1)

soit qu'il soit votre père, **soit** qu'il ne le soit pas, je ne veux pas le voir.

Ou may be used instead of the second *soit* :

Soit que je vous regarde **ou** que je l'envisage,
Partout du désespoir je rencontre l'image.

(RACINE, *Bérén.* act v. sc. 7.)

Peculiar Meanings of SOIT.

Soit sometimes means supposing, let us suppose :

soit quelqu'un qui demande une place, *let us suppose someone wanting a place.*

It is sometimes also equivalent to *à savoir* = that is to say :

un capital de cent mille livres, **soit** cinq mille livres de rente.

N.B. A complete list of the compound conjunctions, arranged according as they govern the infinitive, indicative, or subjunctive mood, may be found at Rule 553. It remains only to remark on one or two peculiarities.

566 *A moins de, à moins que de, &c.*

a. With infinitive mood :

toute puissance est faible **à moins que d'être** unie.

(LA FONTAINE, Bk. iv. Fable xviii.)

à moins d'être gentilhomme on n'est pas admis.

A moins que, without *de* :

le moyen d'en rien croire **à moins qu'être** insensé.

(MOLIÈRE, *Amphit.* act ii. sc. 1.)

β. With subjunctive mood :

A moins que followed by *ne* and the subjunctive

Un lièvre en son gîte songeait,

Car que faire en un gîte **à moins que l'on ne** songe ?

(LA FONTAINE, Bk. ii. Fable xiv.)

Ne suppressed :

La maîtresse ne peut abuser votre foi,

A moins que la suivante en fasse autant pour moi.

(MOLIÈRE, *Dép. am.* act i. sc. 4.)

(For the meanings of *moins*, see under ADVERBS, Rule 480.)

567 *Parce que ; par ce que :*

Parce que, in two words, has the ordinary signification of *because*.

Par ce que, in three words, means *by (or from) that which* :

il est facile de voir par ce qu'il	<i>it is easy to see from what he has</i>
nous a écrit qu'il ne viendra pas	<i>written to us that he does not intend to come.</i>

X. NEGATIVES (*Adverbes de Négation*).

568 The adverbs of negation are the following :—

1. *Ne*, rarely having a negative force when employed alone (see Rule 576).

2. *Pas*, *point*, *plus*, *mie*, *goutte*, *personne*, *rien*, *guère*, *jamais*, *aucun*, *nul* (these two last are adjectives).

The above have a negative force only when used in combination with *ne*.*

569 A consideration of the etymology of these words will show that they are *all* actually affirmatives until they are rendered negatives by the addition of *ne*.

α. *Pas*, Lat. *passus*, a step.

β. *Point*, Lat. *punctum*, a point.

γ. *Plus*, Lat. *plus*, more :

je ne le ferai **plus**.

δ. *Mie*, Lat. *mica*, a crumb, or speck :

Et messieurs de l'Académie

Ne me le pardonneraient **mie**. (SCARRON.)

ε. *Goutte*, Lat. *gutta*, a drop ; only used as a negative with *voir*, *y voir*, and *entendre* :

quand on est mort, qu'on **ne voit goutte**, and when one has no longer the powers of sight. (SCARRON.)

c'était un temps à **n'y voir goutte** du brouillard, it was so misty that you could not see before you. (Mme. de SÉVIGNÉ.)

Plautus employs the word *gutta* in the same sense :

quos neque parata **gutta** certi consili.

ζ. *Personne*, Lat. *persona*, a person.

η. *Rien*, Lat. *rem*, a thing, was originally a feminine substantive in French with the sense of *thing*, and written with a final *s* :

une très-belle **riens**.

* *Pas*, *point*, *guère*, *personne*, *rien*, *jamais*, *aucun*, *nul*, can only be used without *ne* when standing alone in answer to a question : Que faites-vous ? **Rien**. Qui est là ? **Personne**, &c.

θ. *Guère* is a very strong affirmative if Diez' conjecture is correct, that it is derived from the old German *weigaro*, much.

ι. *Jamais, jà mais (magis)*, yet more.

κ. *Aucun*, Lat. *aliquis unus*.

570* The expressions *pas, point, mie, goutte*, were originally only employed in combination with verbs which allowed them to retain their proper meanings :

je ne marche pas	<i>I do not walk a step</i>
je ne vois point	<i>I do not see a speck</i>
je ne mange mie	<i>I do not eat a crumb</i>
je ne bois goutte	<i>I do not drink a drop.</i>

571 Difference between *Pas* and *Point*.

1. *Point* is a much stronger negative than *pas*.

2. *Pas* negatives something special or accidental.

Point negatives something habitual and permanent :

vous pouvez nous faire voir l'enfant s'il ne dort pas	<i>you can show us the baby if he is not asleep</i>
je ne sais pas ce qu'il a cet enfant, il ne dort point	<i>I do not know what is the matter with that child, but he never sleeps.</i>

572 *Pas* is preferable to *point* before *plus, moins, si, autant*, and other terms of comparison, and also before *numbers* :

je ne suis **pas plus** grand que lui
il n'est **pas moins** à plaindre que vous, etc.

Pas un seul petit morceau
De mouche ou de vermisseau
(LA FONTAINE, Bk. i. Fable i.)

il n'y a **pas quatre** personnes qui soient de votre avis.

573 *Point* may be used with *tant* :

Vous êtes fatigué? **Point tant que** vous le pensez

or with *trop* :

je ne suis **point trop** fatigué;

but not with *beaucoup*.

* See Brachet, *Grammaire historique de la langue française*, p. 242. Paris: Hetzel.

574 POSITION OF NEGATIVE PARTICLES IN A SENTENCE.

1. The negatives *pas*, *point*, *jamais*, *rien*, *guère*, are placed immediately after the verb in simple tenses :

je ne crois **pas** ; je ne dors **point** ; je ne fais **rien**.

2. They are placed after the auxiliary verb in compound tenses :

je n'ai **pas** fini ; vous n'avez **guère** parlé ; a-t-on **jamais** vu !

3. *Ne pas*, *ne point*, precede the verb in the infinitive mood :

il vaut mieux **ne point** parler que de dire des bêtises.

'Je voudrais **ne pas** savoir écrire,' disait Néron, forcé de signer un arrêt de mort.

575 Suppression of NE with PAS or POINT.

The note to Rule 568 states that the negatives *pas*, *point*, &c., can only stand independently and without *ne* in answer to questions.

There are some few instances where custom authorises the suppression of *ne* under other circumstances.

1. *Pas* with *trop*, *même*, or *encore* :

vingt-cinq mille hommes **pas trop** mal équipés (THIERS)
il n'y avait personne à la maison, **pas même** les enfants
les passions **pas encore** modérées par l'expérience
(Fam.) **pas** vrai ? is it not so ? (cf. Germ. *nicht wahr* ?)

In questions :

t'ai-je **pas** là-dessus ouvert cent fois mon cœur ?

(MOLIÈRE, *Tart.* act ii. sc. 3.)

2. *Point* in exclamations :

point de courroux, messieurs, mon lopin me suffit

(LA FONTAINE, Bk. viii. Fable vii.)

(Prov.) **point de** nouvelles, bonnes nouvelles

(Fam.) **point d'affaire**, it's of no use

invité ou **point** invité, j'y irai

les gens **peu ou point** instruits

point du tout, not at all

(Prov.) **point d'argent**, **point de** Suisse, without a fee the door will remain closed. (Cf. Angl. no song, no supper.)

576 *Suppression of PAS or POINT.*

1. *Pas* or *point* may be omitted with the verbs *bouger*, *cesser*, *oser*, *pouvoir*, *savoir*, *importer*, and *avoir garde*:

Bouger :

Désormais je **ne bouge**, et ferai cent fois mieux
(LA FONTAINE, Bk. vii. Fable xii.)

Appelez-moi Nicole, que je lui donne quelques ordres. **Ne bougez** :
la voilà. (MOLIÈRE, *Bourg. Gent.* act iii. sc. 1.)

Cesser :

le tonnerre **ne cesse** de gronder.

Oser :

je **n'ose** l'approcher.

Pouvoir :

je **ne puis** me taire.

Savoir :

je **ne saurais*** le faire.

Importer :

n'importe ! *it is of no consequence !*

Avoir garde :

il **n'a garde** d'y manquer, *he takes very good care not to fail.*

2. *Pas* or *point* may also be suppressed—

a. Before *autre* :

je **ne veux** d'autre témoignage que votre approbation.

β. With *quelqu'un*, *personne* :

y a-t-il **quelqu'un**, **personne** qui **ne** le sache ?

* *Savoir* with the sense of *pouvoir*, especially in the conditional mood, *saurais*, does not take *pas* ; but employed in its proper sense of *to know*, it requires *pas* :
je **ne savais pas** cela !

γ. With *de* before a number expressing some lapse of time :

je ne sortirai * de trois jours
il y a dix ans que **je ne l'ai vu.**

δ. With *que*, signifying *why* :

que ne vous montrez-vous ?

Or *qui ne*, signifying *without* :

il ne court jamais **qu'il ne** tombe.

ε. With expressions implying, though not containing, a negative :

je ne l'ai vu de ma vie
je n'en parlerai à âme qui vive, à qui que ce soit.

ζ. With *mot* :

et vous **ne dites mot** à ces indignités
(MOLIÈRE, *Dép. am.* act iii. sc. 2)
il **ne répondit mot**
ne soufflez mot, *do not utter a word.*

577 1. *Ni* (nor) must always be either preceded or followed by the negative particle *ne* :

les enfants **n'ont ni** passé **ni** avenir
je **ne** veux, **ni ne** dois, **ni ne** puis obéir.

2. *Ni* must be repeated before each clause or word in a sentence which is to be negatived :

la religion commande des choses difficiles, mais elle n'est **ni** affreuse, **ni** farouche, **ni** cruelle.

Exceptions.

Frequent instances are found, especially in poetry, of the suppression of *ni* before the first word or clause :

Patience et longueur de temps
Font plus que force **ni** que rage.
(LA FONTAINE, Bk. ii. Fable xi.)

3. After *ni* repeated *pas* and *point* are suppressed :

il ne faut être **ni** avare **ni** prodigue.

* If the latter verb is in the present or imperfect tense, the *pas* is necessary :

il y a un an que je ne lui **parle pas**
il y avait un an que je ne lui **parlais pas.**

If *ni* is not repeated, *pas* or *point* may be employed :

ma maison **ni** mon lit **ne** sont **point** faits pour vous (BOILEAU, *Sat.* 1.)

578 *Jamais* is, generally speaking, only negative in conjunction with the particle *ne*, otherwise it has the signification of the English *ever* :

je me porte mieux que **jamais**, *I am better than ever* (*I was*)
si jamais il parut un homme extraordinaire, c'est lui !

À jamais = for ever :

la mort les a réunis **à jamais**.

À tout jamais = same meaning.

Pour jamais, *pour tout jamais* = same meaning :

adieu ! **pour tout jamais**. (CORNEILLE, *Sert.* act iii. sc. 4.)

Jamais is negative in conjunction with the particle *ne* :

je **ne** le vois **jamais**
 je **ne** l'ai **jamais** vu.

Jamais without NE has a negative sense under the following circumstances :—

1. In answer to questions :

Avez-vous été à Paris ? **Jamais** !

2. With *sans* :

j'y ai souvent été **sans** avoir **jamais** réussi à voir l'empereur.

3.

c'est le cas ou **jamais** ! *now or never is the time* !

4. By ellipse :

vous avez toujours été orateur et **jamais** philosophe. (FÉNELON)

579 *NE* *redundant* or *Expletive*.

The negative particle *ne* is employed in many cases where no actual negation is implied.

α. In sentences containing a comparison.

β. After certain adverbs or adverbial expressions, *à moins que*, *de peur que*, *avant que*, &c.

γ. After verbs of doubting, fearing, denying, &c.

a. *In Comparisons.*

580 In comparisons implying any inequality, such comparisons being expressed by *plus, mieux, moins, autre, autrement*. The second clause requires the negative particle *ne*, *if the first clause is affirmative*; as:

il est plus riche qu'il n'était	<i>he is richer than he was</i>
vous écrivez mieux que vous ne parlez	<i>you write better than you speak</i>
il est moins riche qu'on ne croit	<i>he is less rich than one supposes</i>
On se voit d'un autre œil qu'on ne voit son prochain (RACINE)	<i>one looks upon oneself with a different eye to that with which one looks on one's neighbour</i>
te voilà immortel, mais autrement que tu ne l'avais prétendu (FÉNELON)	<i>you are now immortal, but in a very different manner from what you expected.</i>

581 Should, however, the first clause contain a negative or interrogative, the *ne* is omitted from the second:

les rochers de Thrace et de Thessalie **ne** sont **pas** plus sourds
 que Télémaque **l'était** à toutes ces offres (FÉNELON)
croyez-vous qu'un homme puisse être plus heureux que vous **l'êtes**?
 (J.-J. ROUSSEAU, *Émile*.)

582 In comparisons of equality the particle *ne* is *not* expressed in the second clause, whether the first be affirmative or negative:

je n'ai pas **tant** de crédit que vous **l'imaginez**
 il vit **aussi** magnifiquement qu'il **se** peut.

β. *NE Expletive after certain Conjunctions or Adverbial Expressions.*

583 *À moins que, de peur que, de crainte que*, and *que* employed with the signification of *sans que*, require the particle *ne*:

car que faire en un gîte **à moins que** l'on **ne** songe?
 (LA FONTAINE, Bk. ii. Fable xiv.)
 je ne sors pas **à moins qu'il ne** fasse beau
 éloignons-nous, **de peur (or de crainte) que** le bruit **ne** le dérange.

Que standing for *sans que*:

je vous donne avis qu'il n'avouera jamais qu'il est médecin **que** vous **ne** preniez chacun un bâton et **ne** le réduisiez à force de coups
 (MOLIÈRE, *Méd. mal. lui*, act i. sc. 5.)

584 *Avant que* and *sans que* * do not require the negative particle *ne*:

Avant que la raison, s'expliquant par ma voix,
Eût instruit les humains, **eût enseigné** les lois (BOILEAU)
 les puissances établies par le commerce . . . s'élèvent peu à peu et
sans que personne s'en aperçoive (MONTESQUIEU, *Grand. Rom.*)
 vous devez m'obéir **sans que** je vous le **dise**.

γ. *Certain Verbs of FEARING, DOUBTING, &c.*

585 The verbs *appréhender*, *avoir peur*, *craindre*, and *trembler*, if not themselves employed with a negative or interrogative, require the particle *ne* after them:

j'appréhende qu'il **ne** vous retienne
 j'ai peur qu'il **ne** tombe de la pluie
 je crains qu'il **ne** nous manque
 je tremble que la voiture **ne** verse.

586 Should, however, these verbs be employed in a negative or interrogative form, the *ne* is suppressed in the second clause:

hélas, on **ne craint pas** qu'il **venge** un jour son père (RACINE)
craignez-vous que mes yeux **versent** trop peu de larmes? (*Ibid.*)

587 If *craindre* is both interrogative and negative, it will be followed by *ne*:

ne craignez-vous pas qu'il **ne** vienne?

because here the negative and interrogative forms give *craindre* the sense of affirmation, *surely you do fear*.

588 *CRAINdre*, &c., followed by *NE PAS* instead of *NE*.

Craindre followed by *ne* implies a fear lest anything should happen:

je crains qu'il **ne** tombe, *I fear that he will fall.*

Craindre followed by *ne pas* implies a fear that anything which we desire will not happen:

je craignais qu'il **ne vint pas**, *I wished him to come, but was afraid that he would not.*

* *Sans que* is sometimes found with the indicative mood with the sense of *verre il not that*:

Sans que je **crains** de commettre Gêronte. (LA FONTAINE.)

589 *Désespérer, disconvenir, douter, and nier* only require the particle *ne* when they themselves are interrogative or negative; otherwise they do not take *ne* after them:

a. je **ne désespère pas** qu'il **ne** me pardonne un jour
je **ne doute pas** que vous n'ayez plus de talent et de capacité
que moi

Doutez-vous que l'Euxin **ne** me porte en deux jours
Aux lieux où le Danube y vient finir son cours?

(RACINE)

ne nierai pas cependant qu'il **ne** fût homme de très-grand mérite
Aut-on **nier** que la santé **ne** soit préférable aux richesses?

β. Without negatives or interrogatives:

je **doute** qu'il **vienn**e
je **nie** que cela **soit** ainsi.

590 *Empêcher*, whether it is employed affirmatively, negatively, or interrogatively, always requires *ne*:

Dis-lui que l'amitié, l'alliance et l'amour
Ne pourront **empêcher** que les trois Curiaces
Ne servent leur pays contre les trois Horaces.

(CORNEILLE, *Hor.* act ii. sc. 2.)

a pluie presque continuelle **empêche** qu'on **ne** se promène dans les
cours et dans les jardins. (RACINE, *Lettres à Boileau*)
Puis-je **empêcher** qu'il **ne** vienne?

591 *Défendre* never takes the particle *ne*:

j'ai **défendu** que vous **fissiez** cela
Mais il me semble, Agnès, si ma mémoire est bonne,
Que j'avais **défendu** que vous **vissiez** personne.

592 *Prendre garde and se garder*, with the sense of taking measures to prevent anything happening, require the subjunctive mood and *ne*:

prenez garde que pareille chose **ne** vous arrive aussi
prenez garde que cet enfant **ne** tombe

Gardez-vous qu'une voyelle à courir trop hâtée
Ne soit d'une voyelle en son chemin heurtée.

(BOILEAU, *Art poét.*)

Prendre garde, with the sense of to remark, observe, is followed by the indicative without the expletive *ne*:

prenez garde que je vous en **ai** souvent averti
prenez garde que l'auteur **ne dit pas** ce que vous lui prêtez, *be so good as to observe that the author does not use the expression for which you give him credit.*

593 *Il s'en faut, il s'en faut beaucoup, peu s'en faut, il tient à, &c.*, require *ne* only when they are themselves interrogative or negative, or accompanied by words implying some negation, as *guère, peu, &c.* :

With *ne*

peu s'en faut que Mathan **ne** m'ait
nommé son père (RACINE)

peu s'en est fallu que je **ne** tom-
basse

il **ne** s'en faut **pas** de beaucoup
que la somme **n'y** soit

je **ne** sais à quoi il tient que je
ne lui rompe en visière

il **ne** tiendra **pas** à moi qu'on **ne**
vous rende justice

Without *ne*

il s'en faut beaucoup qu'il **fût** à
plaindre que moi

il s'en fallait beaucoup avant Pierre
le Grand que la Russie **fût** aussi
puissante (VOLTAIRE)

il s'en fallait cent pistoles que la
somme entière y **fût**

il tient à vous que tout **se** passe
convenablement.

EXERCISES ON THE SYNTAX.

B.—The Exercises will not invariably follow the exact order of the Rules, but each Exercise will refer to a number of Rules, which will be stated at the head of each Exercise.

EXERCISE I.

The Definite Article.

(Pages 239 to 241. Rules 1 to 7 inclusive.)

1. *Ambition** is one of the greatest curses of *humanity*. 2. *Labour* and *patience* surmount many obstacles. 3. *Charity* is the greatest of all Christian virtues. 4. *Italians* are generally fond of *music*, much more (so) than *Englishmen* or *Frenchmen*. 5. Last year I wished to visit *Peru*, so I set out from *Havre* in the month of March, stopping at the *Antilles* on my way; I spent three months in *Peru*, and was back again at *Havre* before the end of July. 6. *Marshal* MacMahon succeeded M. Thiers as President of the French Republic in 1873. 7. Of all our company, *Sergeant* Rabot, *Captain* Florentin, and myself alone were not wounded. 8. Every time *the late* Emperor Napoleon III. (Rule 5, page 240) opened Parliament (*les Chambres*), he used to begin his speech thus:—‘*Senators!*’ ‘*Deputies!*’ 9. How many times must I tell you not to drink *so much wine*? If you are thirsty, take a *little water*. 10. *Most* civilised nations bury their dead, but *many* scientific men have recommended burning (*la crémation*).

EXERCISE II.

(Pages 241–242. Rules 8 to 13 inclusive.)

1. It is very dangerous to leave *fire-arms* in the way (*sous la main*) of children; one never knows whether they are loaded or not. 2. Go and fetch me an *ink-bottle* that you will find on my table, and whilst you are there bring me some *steel* (*fer*) *pens* and two or three *goose-quills*. 3. Please put that letter into the *letter-box* for me; you will

* In the first twenty Exercises, and in subsequent Exercises when necessary, the word or words bearing directly on the Rule to be exemplified will be printed in italics.

find one close to the *hall-door*. 4. *The more* you scold that child, *the less* he will obey you. 5.* One may reasonably suppose that *the older* a man is, *the wiser* he ought to be. 6.* It is very odd; I have often found, in the game of billiards, that *the more* trouble I have taken (*mettre*) to make a good stroke, *the less* I have succeeded. 7. The royal lines of Valois and Bourbon have each terminated in three brothers: in the first, Francis *the Second*, Charles *the Ninth*, and Henry *the Third*, and in the second, Louis *the Seventeenth* and *Eighteenth*, and Charles *the Tenth*, all died without male issue to succeed them. 8. Vienna, the capital of Austria, had its great Exhibition in 1873. The Prince of Wales, *the eldest son* of Victoria, *the Queen* of England, was present (*assister*) at the opening ceremony.

EXERCISE III.

(Pages 244, 245. Rules 15 to 22 inclusive.)†

1. I have travelled over the greater part of *Europe*. I know *France*, *Germany*, *Russia*, *Denmark*, *Spain*, and *Portugal*. I have drunk *English* beer, *French* and *Spanish* wines, and I have eaten *German* soucrout (*choucroûte*), *Westphalian* ham, &c. I can make myself happy (*me plaire*) everywhere. 2. Game of post! The post goes from *Canada* to *Japan*, from *Japan* to *Peru*, from *the Hague* to *Harn*! General post! 3. The rich man (*le financier*) complained that Providence had not caused to be sold at market the (power of) *sleeping* as well as the (necessaries of) *eating* and *drinking*.

The Indefinite Article.

4. Are you not *an Englishman*? Hardly. I was born in England, it is true, but my father was *a Frenchman* and my mother *an Italian*. 5. My brother was *a soldier* once (*autrefois*), but he has left the army and turned (*se faire*) *doctor*. Our father was *a barrister*. 6. (Rule 21.) Who is that gentleman that has just gone out? *He is an American* whom I have known a long time. *He was a* very distinguished general in the civil war. What *a pity* that he is gone! I should have liked to make his acquaintance.

EXERCISE IV.

1. (Rule 24.) *What an idea!* Who ever heard speak of *such a thing!* What *sort of a man* must you be to propose it to me! 2. *As a father*. I pity you sincerely, but *as a magistrate* I must punish you. 3. I have told you *a hundred* times that a milliard is *a thousand* millions. 4. I

* In sentences 5 and 6 the following order is to be observed:—For *the older* a man is, write *the more* a man is old. For *the more* trouble I have taken, write *the more* I have taken of trouble.

† Rules 14 and 16 are omitted, as being more adapted for reference than for exercises.

could find (*citer*) you *twenty** or *thirty* similar examples. 5. If you have got *no* dictionary, I will lend you one (supply *en*). I have got *no* grammar either (*non plus*). Well! I never saw *a* boy like you, you never have *any* books. 6. (Rules 30, 31.) Hasn't he got *a* son in the Life Guards (*garde à cheval*)? and *another* in the 60th Rifles? 7. With an income of £200 *a* year one can hardly afford (*se permettre*) salmon at half-a-crown *a* pound and strawberries at eighteenpence *a* basket. 8. Champagne costs about four francs *a* bottle in the country (where it is grown), but the wine-merchants make us pay from £3 to £5 *a* dozen. 9. *Few* people know (how) to moderate their appetites. *A little* wine can do no one any harm; it is excess which is injurious.

EXERCISE V.

(Pages 247 to 249. Rules 34 to 40 inclusive.)

1. We had disposed ourselves quite comfortably to dine on the grass, when we were surrounded by *quite a* crowd of beggars, and we had (*nous dûmes*) to decamp. 2. A friend *of mine*, when he cannot recollect *a* person's name, always speaks of him as 'Mr. So-and-so.'

The Partitive Article.

The rules of the common use of the Partitive Article are fully explained in Part I., pages 6, 7, references to which may be necessary for the following examples:—

3. What did you have for breakfast? *Coffee, milk, sugar, bread, butter, and boiled eggs.* 4. What will you have to drink? *wine or beer?* Thank you, I never drink *wine*, rarely *beer*, I will take *water*. 5. I bought (some) *good pens* yesterday, but they sold me *execrable ink*. 6. (Rule 36.) I hope we shall have *fine weather* to-morrow. We are expecting *some young people* to spend the afternoon. 7. How many *actions* celebrated in history, and how many *men* who are proposed to us as examples to be imitated, have been far from deserving (*infin.*) this honour! 8. (Rule 40.) True happiness does not consist in living (*à vivre*) in *rich apartments*, surrounded by all that money can give; with *wisdom and contentment* one can be independent of such advantages.

EXERCISE VI.

Common Nouns.

(Pages 250 to 252. Rules 41 to 48 inclusive.)

1. I was travelling from London to Dover in a *post-carriage* by *moonlight*, when suddenly I heard *a pistol-shot*; my postilion fell from his

* Use *collective numbers* for *twenty* and *thirty*, see p. 296, Rule 168.

saddle, and a robber presenting his (*la*) head at the carriage-window, politely demanded my *gold watch, diamond buckles, jewel-case, and snuff-box.*

45a. Gender of GENS.

2 (γ). Those *good* people are very *troublesome*; they remained *seated* in our drawing-room for three hours. 3 (δ). *All* merry people have the marvellous talent (*don*) of putting *all* serious people into a good humour (*en train*). 4.* *True* honest folk are those who know their faults and confess them. *Sham* honest folk are those who hide their faults from (*à*) others, and from (*à*) themselves. 5 (ε). Certain *men of business* of my acquaintance do not always shine in society. For all that I prefer them to those tiresome *men of letters* who are always talking of their own works. 6. Madame de Staël was daughter of Neckar, Minister of Finance under Louis XVI. She was one of the most celebrated French *authoresses*, and a very distinguished *writer*. Her best-known work is 'Corinne.'

EXERCISE VII.

(Pages 253 to 257. Rules 49 to 59 inclusive.)

1. Of all the *stabat maters* I ever heard, I infinitely prefer that of Rossini to all the others. 2. We had a capital match (*partie*) yesterday; we made 150 runs (*points*) in the first innings (*manche*), there were two *eighteens* and two *twenty-fives*: no one else made a double figure. 3. How many first prizes did you obtain? Not one; but I got several *second prizes* and hardly any (*presque pas*) *punishments*.

Plurals of Composite Nouns.

4. I suppose our gardener must have had a drop too much (*boire un coup*), for I sent him out yesterday evening to cut some *cauliflowers*, and he walked all over my *flower-borders* and spoilt them completely. 5. That painter has produced several *masterpieces*; his *rainbows* are marvellous, but I think he excels especially in painting (*à* with infin.) *moonlights*. 6. Tyrants love to surround themselves by their creatures. Thus Louis XI. had frequent *secret conversations* with Oliver le Daim, his barber, and Richelieu with Father Joseph, a simple capucin monk. 7. I should like to have as many *dwelling-places* (*pied-à-terre*) as there are seasons in the year; one in Italy for the winter, in France for the spring, in England for the summer, and in Switzerland for the autumn. 8. Every *afternoon* (pl.) I used to go out into the garden to see if the *snowdrops* had appeared yet.

* The same rule applies to *vrai* and *faux* as to *tout*, when preceding *gens* with another adjective.

EXERCISE VIII.

(Pages 257 to 259. Rules 60 to 66 inclusive.)

1. There have been two *William Pitts* who have rendered themselves famous in history, and there have been two *Richelieus*, the cardinal and the duke of the same name. 2. (Rule 61.) The same king who employed *Condé*, *Turenne*, and *Villars* in his armies, *Colbert* and *Louvois* in his cabinet, chose *Racine* and *Boileau* to write his history, *Bossuet* and *Fénelon* to instruct his children. 3. (Rule 62.) (Poets like) *Shakespeare*, *Milton*, and *Corneille* are without their equals in their respective lines (*genre*). 4. (Rule 63.) The *Orléans* succeeded the *Bourbons* in France, just as the *Stuarts* succeeded the *Tudors* in England. 5. The famous day of the Barricades taught Henry III. how formidable were the *Guises*.

Collective Nouns.

6. The *army* of the infidels *melted* away like snow in the sun's rays, and *escaped* into the mountains. 7. *Half* of the passengers on the raft *died* of hunger, and the *other half* lost their (def. art.) reason. 8. A *colony* of Phocéans, consisting of a great number of illustrious citizens, *wandered* on the shore and *founded* the town of Massilia, which afterwards assumed (*prendre*) the name of Marseilles.

EXERCISE IX.

Adjectives.

(Pages 260 to 265. Rules 67 to 76 inclusive.)

1. (Rule 68.) [N.B. The same Rule applies to participles as to adjectives.] In Sparta, old men, women, and children, *animated* by the same courage, were always *ready* for the greatest sacrifices for the service of their (def. art.) country. 2. (Rules 69, 70.) The orator spoke with *perfect* style and eloquence. His speech was animated by a sort of *noble* fury and enthusiasm which gave it almost *divine* fire and vigour. 3. (Rule 74.) The other day, in St. George's Chapel at Windsor, I saw a company (*troupe*) of *Americans* *assembled* near the tomb of the Princess Charlotte. Of all the *sculptured* marble monuments which the chapel contains, that one seemed to strike them most. 4. I cannot bear (*supporter*) those young ladies, they always *look* very sulky, and the other day they *looked* quite *angry* because I only spoke to them. [For the next two examples consult pages 264, 265.] 5. Diogenes used to go about *bare-footed* and sleep in a tub; and Saint Louis, they say, bore the crown of thorns from Vincennes to Notre Dame *with naked feet* through the snow. 6. The review begins at *half-past five*; *after* four o'clock no carriages will be admitted into the Park *except* those of the royal family. If each brigade takes (*mettre*) *half* an hour to march-past (*défiler*), as there will be three brigades on the ground (*terrain*), the whole affair will take about from two hours to two hours and a half.

EXERCISE X.

(Pages 266 to 268. Rules 77 to 85 inclusive.)

1. (Rule 77.) My little dog always holds his (def. art.) ears quite *straight*. 2. Do you remember the story of Gil Blas and the innkeeper, and of the trout which cost him so *dear*? 3. That oil does not smell *good*. The Russians never think oil good, unless (*à moins que* with *ne* and subj.) it smells *strong*. 4. Of what colour was the casket? Red! No, grey! Well, *greyish-red*! That is what I meant (*vouloir dire*). 5. *New-born* children are very susceptible to the variations of temperature. 6. By the law of primogeniture, all *first-born* males inherit all the real (*immeuble*) property. 7. Perrette, active and *short-coated*, walked along with (*à*) long steps. 8. Nero, they say, had *bright-auburn* hair and *dark-blue* eyes. 9. (Rule 82.) My mother complained of having great pain in *her* head this morning, so I sent for the doctor, who felt *her* pulse, and told her to go to bed at once. 10. (Rule 85.) I went to the review at Windsor on the 24th June, 1873. I had (*je dus*) to stand on *my legs* all the time; but I did not regret it, for I actually saw *with my own eyes* the Shah of Persia mounted on a horse with half of *his* tail dyed pink!

EXERCISE XI.

(Pages 269 to 271. Rules 89 to 97 inclusive.)

1. (Rule 89.) If you will come and see us, *my father and mother* will be delighted. We will send *our carriage and horses* down to the station to meet you. 2. (Rule 94.) The earthquake of Lisbon was one of those *great and terrible* blows that fall upon the human race from time to time.

Comparison of Adjectives.

(In order to be sure that the learner is acquainted with the ordinary rules for forming the comparative and superlative of adjectives, the following examples are introduced. If necessary, Part I. page 12 may be consulted.)

3. Tall, taller, the tallest (*masc. sing.*)
 Good, better, the best (*masc. plur.*)
 Old, older, the oldest (*fem. sing.*)
 Bad, worse, the worst (*fem. plur.*)

4. (Rule 95.) When ambition is not *the noblest* of passions it becomes *the vilest*. *The most seductive* graces are those of beauty, *the most attractive* (*piquant*) are those of wit, but *the most touching* are those of the heart. 5. (Rules 96-97.) People are often *the most* disposed to be generous when their means allow it *the least*. 6. Pigeons are *the swiftest* birds, but generally birds whose wings and tails are *longest* (Rule 95) fly *fastest* and for the *longest* time (Rule 97). 7. Your party (*soirée*) was a great success; the society was *the most wisely assorted* possible (*du monde*). There is where one *best* recognises the art of giving pleasant-parties.

EXERCISE XII.

(Pages 272 to 276. Rules 98 to 105 inclusive.)

1. My *dear* friend, Switzerland is no doubt a *fine* country—a *charm-
ing* country; you will find there *lofty* mountains, *transparent* lakes, and
natural beauties of every description; but the innkeepers are *regular*
(*vrai*) robbers, the *red* wine is execrable, and the *white* no better.
[Rules 98 to 102 inclusive being more for the purpose of *reference*
than for any other, no examples will be given.] 2. (Rule 103.)
We took this house for eighteen months, in the month of June *last*
year, and we are quite sorry now to be in our *last* month. 3. He
is but a *wretched specimen* (*pauvre*) (of a) *fine* gentleman. 4. One
must not always judge people by their exterior; I have known
many (*maint*) a *great* man who had a very unprepossessing (*mauvais*)
appearance. 5. Go and put on *another* coat; that one is quite worn
out. Would you have me put on my *new* coat? I have no other.
6. (Rules 104, 105.) If you are *ambitious* of learning French, I shall be
very happy to teach you; but I know you are very *impatient* of correc-
tion, and *slow* of comprehending what is told you, and rather *apt*
(*sujet*) to get disheartened. However, I am quite *ready* to begin at
once.

EXERCISE XIII.

(Pages 278 to 280. Rules 109 to 113 inclusive.)

1. (Rule 109.) Our life does not suffice (*i.e.* is not long enough) for *any*
art, *any* exercise, *any* profession. 2. Of all known authors I do not
know *a single one* that I prefer to him; *none*, in fact, that is (subj.) so
deservedly popular in almost every country. 3. (γ). *Some people*
perhaps will tell you quite the contrary, but you need not believe them.
4. (Rule 110.) If you do not like those boots you can leave them; I will
give you *others* which will fit (*aller*) you better perhaps. 5. You would
hardly know my sister again now, she is *quite changed* from what she
was. 6. (Rule 112.) I went to London three times last week, and *each*
time I lost my return-ticket, and had (*j'ai dû*) to get myself another (*en*).
This time we will *each* put our tickets in our purses. 7. If you go into
Hyde Park any afternoon in the season, you may see a dozen coaches,
each drawn by (*atteler à*) four fine horses, generally driven by their
owners. 8. I have heard that story told *many and many* a time, and
never twice in (*de*) the same manner.

EXERCISE XIV.

(Pages 280 to 283. Rules 114 to 125 inclusive.)

1. What I like in (*chez*) that man is that he is always *the same*, his
temper (*humeur*) never varies. 2. Although the Gospel sets before all

(men) *the same* doctrine, it does not present *the same* rules to all. 3. Selfish men are constantly thinking of *themselves*, constantly speaking of *themselves*. 4. (Rule 117.) Why, you are ignorant of subjects known *even* to the most backward of my pupils! 5. Alas! to what are kings exposed! The wisest *even* (among them) are often deceived. (Fénelon.) 6. You will meet people there of all conditions, of all professions—dukes, earls, barons, men of the middle class (*bourgeois*), ay, *even* simple workmen, all on a footing of equality. 7. (Rule 122.) *No road, no communication (whatever)* in that desert. We could not find a single trace of civilisation. 8. *No one* is bound (*tenir*) to do what is impossible. 9. (Rule 125.) I have been *several* times into Scotland, and I can never remember seeing ten consecutive days of fine weather. 10. Try and find me a partner (*danseuse*); I have not been introduced to any of those ladies, though I know *many* of them by sight and name.

EXERCISE XV.

(Pages 283 to 284. Rules 126 to 131 inclusive.)

1. That man has never pardoned me, because as a (*étant*) boy I picked *a few* wretched strawberries in his garden without his permission. 2. (Rule 127.) *Whatever* care (pl.) you may take (*mettre*) in (*à*) learning (infin.) a language, you will never speak it well, unless you have (Rule 566 β.) some special aptitude. 3. *Whatever* good qualities you have (subj.), they are all spoiled by that one defect, a bad temper. 4. (Rule 128.) *However* ill-conditioned (*méchant*) men may be, they would not openly avow themselves to be enemies of virtue. 5. We do not fear him—rich, powerful, supported (*appuyé*) as he may be—because we know that our cause is just. 6. *However* well written your book may be, it will never sell (refl. verb), unless you advertise it widely. 7. (Rule 129.) How old is your brother? I do not know exactly, but I suppose that he is* *some* twenty or five-and-twenty years my senior. 8. *Some one* told me, I don't know who, that there was *some* advantage in (*à* with infin.) arriving early; but it seems not (*que non*). 9. Come with me, and I will tell you *something* amusing.

EXERCISE XVI.

(Pages 285 to 287. Rules 133 to 140 inclusive.)

1. (Rule 133.) *What* a nuisance (*ennui*)! we were told that we should spend a pleasant evening. *What* an evening! I don't think I shall ever forget it. 2. (Rule 134.) *Whatever* be the rank, fortune, and interest of your family, you will never succeed if you act in a dishonourable manner. 3. Give me a pen, *whatever* it may be I don't care (*cela m'est égal*), I can write with any (*la première venue*). 4. A woman's face, *whatever* be the strength or power (*étendue*) of her mind, *whatever* be

* See Part I. page 102, rule for expressing 'age' in French.

the importance of the objects about which she busies herself, always has considerable influence on her life. 5. (Rule 137.) There was *such* a confusion at the station that we could not find our luggage. 6. The fable of the rat and the oyster is a good illustration of the proverb of 'the biter bit.' [Put into French]: *He who* thought to catch (another) is caught (himself). 7. We did not like the house much, but we were obliged to take it *such as it was*, there was no other to let. 8. Now! have you got my portmanteau, hat-box, carpet-bag, gun-case, &c.? Yes, Sir, *everything* is in (*y*). 9. She (*ce*) is an excellent woman, she unites (in her person) *all* the Christian and social virtues.

EXERCISE XVII.

(Pages 287 to 290. Rules 141 to 147 inclusive.)

1. They kept (*faire*) us waiting *quite* half an hour, and did not come after all. 2. It is the most troublesome thing I know [turn *all* that there is of most troublesome]. That man never arrives in (*à*) time. 3. I had hoped to meet some of your brothers, but they had *all* gone away before I arrived. 4. (Rule 143.) *The whole of* Smyrna could not produce a basket of better figs than those. 5. (Rule 144.) *Every time* I have met him he has behaved in (*de*) the same manner; *any how* I do not intend to invite him to my house. 6. I am afraid my mother will not be able to accompany us this evening, she is *quite* worn out (*accablée*) with fatigue. 7. Drink a glass of this water, it is *quite* fresh from the spring. 8. She came and sat down *quite* close to us (Rule 145 *γ*). 9. His birth may be less illustrious than yours, but it is *quite* as good, and *quite* as ancient. 10. (Rule 146.) You would hardly believe that, rich *as* those people are, they never see any company. 11. Tall *as* you are, you will never reach it. 12. (Rule 147.) That's *quite* another thing.

EXERCISE XVIII.

N.B. As Part I. (pages 86-87) contains all that is necessary in the way of exercises on the cardinal and ordinal numbers, no such exercise will be introduced here.

Rules 148 to 167 inclusive bear principally upon the orthography and peculiarities of numbers in French.

(Pages 296 to 298. Rules 168 to 172 inclusive.)

Collective Numbers.

1. (Rule 168.) How many people were there there? Really I hardly know, but I should say *about* fifty, not more. 2. If you have nothing better to do next month, come and spend *a fortnight* with us; we can give you a little hunting and shooting. 3. I don't think I am exaggerating when I say that our table-cloth, which we had foolishly laid on the

grass was covered by *thousands* of ants in about five minutes. 4. (Rule 169.) If we each drink *half* a bottle, that will make a bottle and *a half* (note, page 297) between (*à*) us three. 5. We have had a wretched season this year, there were not *a third* of the company that were here last year, and we expected at least *double* as many. 6. We arrived in New York on the *4th of July*, the anniversary of the declaration of American independence, and we were back (*de retour*) in Paris in time for the Emperor's fête, *the 15th of August*. 7. (Rules 171, 172.) Henry the Eighth of England, Charles the Fifth, Emperor of Germany, and Francis the First, King of France, were contemporaries. 8. Partridge-shooting always begins on the *first* of September in England and ends on the thirty-first of January.

EXERCISE XIX.

Personal Pronouns.

A.B.—Exercises on the ordinary Use of the Personal Pronouns will be found in Part I., pages 89 to 93.

(Pages 299 to 303. Rules 173 to 192 inclusive.)

1. (Rules 178, 179.) Why can *I* not [omit *pas*] express to you how much I am indebted to you? 2. Even were *we* to find them gone, we must call and leave a card. 3. Were *it* only to show him the road, you ought to accompany him a short way. 4. *We* had hardly got on board, when the wind rose and we saw that we should have a nasty passage (*traversée*). 5. Perhaps *I* was wrong, but I could not help giving him a bit of my mind (*lui dire son fait*). 6. Have I ever deceived you? am I deceiving you now? (note, page 300.) 7. (Rules 184 to 188.) *Make haste*, or we are sure to be late. 8. If that man comes and bothers you again, send *him* about his business (*envoyer promener*). 9. Do not speak *to her* about that accident, she cannot bear to hear it mentioned. 10. Take this book and put *it* on my table with the others. 11. Give *it me* or do not give *it me*, it is all the same (*égal*) to me. 12. If you are going to the Opera, do take *me there* with you, I have not been once this season. 13. (Rule 189.) Why avoid us in (*de*) that manner? You may trust *us* without fear. 14. (Rule 190.) You must have been very rude to him, he has done nothing but complain *of it* all day.

EXERCISE XX.

Personal Pronouns—continued.

(Pages 303 to 307. Rules 193 to 207 inclusive.)

1. (Rule 196.) Those people live (*mener*) a very quiet life, they *neither* give nor accept dinners. 2. His conduct torments *me* and drives *me* to despair (*désespérer*). 3. (Rule 198.) Look at his ingratitude; my *mother* cherished him and took care of (*soigner*) him as *her* own son,

and now he never comes to see her. 4. How shall we play? Well, *you and I* can stand (*tenir contre*) the other two! 5. The king was very amiable; he received *my brother and myself* most graciously. 6. (Rule 202.) I am the person who *showed* them how to do it (*s'y prendre*), and now it is they who carry off all the prizes. 7. (Rule 203.) What does my father do? You know how strong he is. He [^] takes the fellow by the collar, spins him round (*faire pirouetter*) and [^] sends him (flying) into the middle of the street. 8. (Rule 204.) Just *come* here a moment, *go up* into my room, *look* on the table and in the drawer, and *take* all the papers *you find*, (put) *bring* them here, and I will give *you* something for your pains. 9. (Rule 205.) Both my brother and myself are invited (Rule 200); I shall go, but *he* prefers staying at home. 10. (Rule 206.) When *they* have gone away, we shall probably have a little quiet.

EXERCISE XXI.

Personal Pronouns—continued.

(Pages 307 to 311. Rules 209 to 224 inclusive.)

1. I gave *him* all I had about (*sur*) me, and he was not satisfied. 2. I broke the spring of my watch this morning, I must get (*faire*) a new one put *to it* as soon as possible. 3. (Rule 209.) I don't think I shall go out to-day, the weather has got a little clouded over (*se couvrir*). 4. (Rule 213.) Whoever thinks only of *himself* will find but few friends in adversity. 5. Fortune and talents are not given to everybody, but it depends entirely upon *oneself* to be happy and contented. 6. When one has not got *a home of one's own*, one is not sorry to have hospitable friends.

EN.

7. You have committed a grievous fault, and you will long repent *it*. 8. We spent the whole winter in Florence; we left (*partir*) *it* only on the 1st of May. [For the next four *sentences* see examples in 224.] 9. What! you don't mean to say that you have *got as far as that* already! I am still in (*à*) the first volume. 10. I told the boy to eat as many peaches as he liked, and he certainly *did not stint* himself. 11. I consider you responsible, and I shall certainly *blame* you if any accident occurs. 12. After having said all the insulting things they could (*possible*) to each other, they actually *came to blows* at last.

EXERCISE XXII.

(Pages 311 to 314. Rules 225 to 234 inclusive.)

Y.

1. I hope you will find that coat to your taste; I have given (*apporter*) all possible care and attention *to it*. 2. If you like to go with us, we

start at eight o'clock to-morrow morning. Think *about it*. 3. If he invites you, I recommend you to go (*se rendre*) *there* by all means. 4. (Rule 229.) I should never have thought that *there would have been* (imperf. subj.) so many people there.

LE, LA, LES.

5. Surely you are not the same person I spoke to yesterday! Yes, indeed *I am*. 6. Are you prisoners? Yes, unfortunately *we are*. But are you not the prisoners that they spoke (*il y avait question*) of exchanging? I fear that *we are not*. 7. The oracles foretold that Rome would one day become the capital of the civilised world, and in fact she did become *so*. 8. It was at that party (*soirée*) that we met her for the first time. I recollect *it* perfectly. 9. (Rule 233.) It is much farther from here to London than I should have supposed. 10. You have helped yourself liberally certainly, but your brother has taken twice as much.

EXERCISE XXIII.

(Pages 314 to 318. Rules 235 to 243 inclusive.)

1. Why I thought that you two were brothers! So (*en effet*) *we are*; you thought right. 2. Dear me! I thought I had brought my dictionary; and now I find that *it is not one*. 3. I have not done (*finir*) yet; when *I have* (fut.) I will come with you. 4. If you don't intend to go there, *I do*, so you may do as you like. 5. You will come (and) dine with us now, *won't you?* 6. You say that it makes no difference, but I say that *it does*. 7. I promised to go and play with him this morning, but I have so much to do that I am afraid *I cannot*.

Possessive Pronouns.

8. (Rule 239.) Be so good (*veuillez*) as to remember me * to all *your* (family, people, &c.). 9. As soon as you shall have received *mine* of this date, be so good as to acknowledge (*accuser*) its arrival. 10. (Rule 243.) I beg your pardon, I thought that umbrella was *mine*. If I had known it was *yours*, I would not have taken it. 11. It is *your* (turn) to begin, pray don't keep me waiting (infin.).

EXERCISE XXIV.

CE.

(Pages 318 to 322. Rules 244 to 253 inclusive.)

1. *He* is a man to be avoided (active infinitive); he has the bad habit of borrowing money and never repaying it. 2. Is *it* you or your

* Turn in French 'to recall me to the kind remembrance of.'

brother who told (Rule 202) me that story? I know *it* was one or the other. 3. Do not do that; *that* would be throwing good money after bad. 4. [*Study carefully Rules 245, 246.*] Have you seen your father? He is looking for you everywhere; *he* is furious with you for keeping him waiting; I never saw him so angry, and yet *he is* generally so good-natured (*bon*). 5. *Is it* five or six (page 105) striking (*qui sonne*)? I really have not the slightest idea what time *it is*. 6. (Rule 248.) What I like best in him *is* that he never loses his temper, however much he is beaten (Rule 128). 7. That which succeeds the best *is* not always the most honourable course. 8. (Rule 250.) The real mark of a gentleman *is* to have regard (*égard*) for other people's feelings. 9. (Rule 252.) Napoleon the First was a great general, but modern historians are beginning to paint him in much less favourable colours than before. 10. Take *what* is your own, and leave me *what* is mine (Rule 243.) That is all I ask.

EXERCISE XXV.

(Pages 322 to 325. Rules 254 to 265 inclusive.)

CE—*continued.*

1. It is *I* who came (Rule 202) first, consequently it is *my turn*: (Rule 243) to begin first. 2. (Rule 255.) It is *you* who originated (Rule 202) that report, consequently it is your duty (Rule 243) to corroborate it. 3. *They are* fools and ignorant (people) who said that. 4. (Rule 257.) *It is* air and exercise that you require (*qu'il vous faut*), then you will soon get quite well. 5. If *it is not you*, it is your brother.

CELUI, CELLE, &c.

6. The finest mushrooms are generally *those* that one gathers in the early morning. 7. Her style (*tournure*) is infinitely superior to *her sister's*, though perhaps I prefer their *mother's* to either. 8. (Rule 262.) Put those two handwritings side by side. *This* is perhaps bolder and freer (*plus coulante*), but *that* is much more legible. 9. Listen to *this*, I insist upon your being home before midnight. 10. Come as often as you like, *it* will give (*faire*) us much pleasure.

EXERCISE XXVI.

Relative Pronouns.

(Pages 325 to 329. Rules 266 to 280 inclusive.)

1. (Rule 267.) If it is not *you* (sing.) *who* spilt the ink, at all events it is *you who* meddled with my writing-table, and I shall consider you responsible. 2. I really believe that *I am* the first person *who* introduced that custom into England. 3. (Rule 271.) He still suffers from

a fall from his horse, *which* kept him to his room (*lui a fait garder la chambre*) for more than three months. 4. There is a lady *whom* I know perfectly well by (*de*) sight, but *whose* name I cannot possibly recollect. 5. (Rule 273.) Let us begin; but first of all (*auparavant*) tell me *who* I am *with*, and *against whom* I have (*je dois*) to play. 6. The 'Gloire de Dijon' is the rose *to which* I decidedly give the preference. 7. (Rule 276.) There is the gentleman *in whose house* I spent such a pleasant evening yesterday. 8. The peasants attached to the soil (*glèbe*) were the property of their lords, *from (au) whose power* nothing could free them. 9. (Rule 280.) We cannot complain of our reception, for *it was a contest who* should invite us oftenest and treat (*régaler*) us best. 10. We looked for them everywhere, *some* on one side, *some* on another, but could not discover their hiding-place.

EXERCISE XXVII.

(Pages 330 to 333. Rules 281 to 286 inclusive.)

QUE.

1. [*Pay particular attention to note on page 330.*] *Whom* did you see in Paris, and *what* did you do all the time you were there? 2. *What appears* to you most probable—that your brother will come, or not? 3. (Rule 282.) *What is the use* of disguising yourself in (*de*) that manner? they will recognise you immediately. 4. *What's to be done?* We have made all possible apologies, but he refuses to hear them. 5. *What are you doing that* you don't make more haste? you will never arrive in (*à*) time. 6. (Rule 286.) *I don't know what to do* with (*de*) this child. I have told him fifty times not to go there, but he always disobeys me. 7. *I'll have none* of your gifts; bestow (*porter*) them on (*à*) whomsoever you like. I will not accept them. 8 (*β*). *Fool that* you are! Don't you see that you have made him your enemy for life? 9 (*ε*). *How* beautiful the sea is after the storm! and *how* tiresome it is that we have (*devons*) to go back to town to-morrow! 10 (*ι*). *Don't let me hear* speak of it any more; I am tired to death of the subject. 11 (*λ*). It is twenty years *since* we have seen him; I hardly think we shall recognise him. 12 (*ν*). *It was nothing but* trouble and vexation (*ennui*) from the beginning to the end. 13 (*ο, and note*). If you are coming this way after dinner, and *if* it looks like (*avoir l'air*) raining, bring my umbrella with you.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

(Pages 334 to 336. Rules 287 to 296 inclusive.)

QUOI.

1. I don't know *what* I was thinking of (*à*), but when I looked at my watch, I saw that it was too late to go there to-day. 2. The signal-man *has* most important duties; he *has* (*devoir*) to be on duty (*de service*)

from morning till night, to have an eye on all the up- and down-trains, &c., *in return for which* his salary is often very insufficient. 3. (Rule 292.) *What can be* more annoying than to be always expecting (infin.) people who never come after all? 4. I could not make out (*deviner*) *what* he was talking about, but he went on haranguing (*pérorer*) for more than an hour. 5. *What!* all that for a franc? Why, it would cost half-a-crown in London. 6. (Rule 294 γ.) I should have much liked to subscribe to that charity, but I really had not *the means*. 7. I beg you a thousand pardons, Sir! I believe I trod (*marcher*) on your foot. O Sir, *there is no need* (of apology); you hardly touched me. 8. (Rule 295.) *Whatever* you do or say, you will never make him change his (*de*) opinion. 9. We have really hardly anything to offer you; we dined an hour ago. Never mind, *whatever it is*, it will do for me (*je m'en contenterai*). 10. (Rule 296.) *Although* I made as much haste as possible, I arrived too late.

EXERCISE XXIX.

Indefinite Pronouns.

(Pages 337 to 341. Rules 297 to 306 inclusive.)

1. (Rule 297.) *Other people's* property (*bien*) often appears to us preferable to our own. 2. (Rule 298.) We are apt (*enclin*) to be very hard upon (*difficile pour*) the faults of *others*, we do not forgive them [two pronouns] very readily. 3. (Rules 299; 300.) Let *each one* take what belongs to him; or, if you prefer it, we will give to *each one* what we consider to be his by (*de*) right. 4. (Rule 302.) After having visited all the sentinels (Part I. page 197), and ascertained (*s'être assuré*) that *each was at his* post, the officer on duty (*de service*) will retire for the night. 5. (Rule 303.) Both the generals took credit to themselves for the success of the manœuvre, and considered (*regarder*) it *each* as their work. 6. (Rule 112.) I went three times to Paris last year, and *each* time I had an excellent passage (*traversée*). 7. Youth is presumptuous, and old age timid; the *latter* desires to live, the *former* has had its turn of life (*a vécu*). 8. I certainly did invite them *both*, but I don't know whether they will come or not. 9. It was pitch dark when we came home yesterday evening, we could not see *each other* at ten yards off. 10. Those two boys are so jealous of *one another* that they hardly ever speak (*se parler*).

EXERCISE XXX.

Indefinite Pronouns—continued.

(Page 341. Rule 307.)

1. [Consult Part I. page 30.] What do *people* do at that house? How *do they* spend the day? At what time does *one* breakfast, dine, &c.? I should like to know before going (infin.) there if *one* amuses oneself or not. 2. (Rule 307.) I am (a) woman, it is true, but that is not a

reason why *one* should be treated with indifference. 3. Who is that man? I do not know him, but they tell me *he is a person* with whom you would do well not to associate (*vous lier*). 4. I never knew *anyone* so generous as you, nor *anyone* so extravagant; you give away (*jeter*) (your) money right and left. 5. Who has ever denied that fact? *No one* that I know (of) (subj.). 6. (Rule 313.) You can tell it me without fear, I will not repeat it to *anyone* (omit *pas*). 7. (Rule 315.) It would require (*il faudrait*) *some one* cleverer than you to take him in. 8. (Rules 317, 2.) He sent me some peas the other day. We tasted* *some of them*, and found* them very good. 9. (Rule 319.) Nothing in the world (*au monde*) would induce (*engager*) me to ask him to my house. 10. (Rules 320-4.) There is *nothing* more amusing than to hear him talk: I could listen to him for hours without tiring.

EXERCISE XXXI.

The Verb.

As Part I. (pages 98 to 180) contains exercises on the *conjugation* of all verbs, regular, irregular, reflective, &c., the following exercises are intended to bear principally upon difficulties in the use of the tenses, &c., and such questions of concord as come under the head of *Rules of Syntax*.

(Pages 352 to 354. Rules 326 to 335 inclusive.)

Present Tense.

1. Good-bye! *I am off*. If anyone comes during my absence, ask them to wait for me, *I shall be back* before long (*peu*). 2. You will certainly be late. I thought I had told you that the morning train *started* at eight instead of a quarter to eight. They have altered it this month. 3. If he *is* wise, he will have nothing to do (*démêler*) with that man; he has ruined half a dozen young men of fortune already. 4. I hardly know if *I shall be able* to be of any service to you, but I hope you will make any use *you please* (fut.) of my name and credit.

Imperfect and Perfect Tenses.

(Consult Rules 332 to 335 inclusive.)

5. I never knew anyone (*de*) so inconsistent; he had no sooner said a thing than (*que*) he contradicted himself immediately. 6. Nothing ever exceeded the warmth of the reception given to Jenny Lind on her first appearance in London. The doors of the Opera (House) *were besieged* hours before the performance, the boxes and stalls *were paid*

* For rule of agreement of past participle here, consult Rules 395 and 404.

for at three or four times their value, and it is a wonder where all the flowers came from which were showered (*faire pleuvoir*) upon her every evening. [Turn these verbs into the singular number, with *on*.] 7. We set sail on the 4th (Rule 171); we had a favourable wind, we went (*faire*) two hundred miles the first day, and, after a most prosperous voyage, we arrived at our destination in exactly one month, day for day, after having set out. 8. If you would only pay (*faire*) a little attention to what I say, it would be, to say the least, more polite. 9. If you only knew what (Rule 253) some one told me about you this morning, perhaps it would please you (*faire plaisir*).

EXERCISE XXXII.

(Page 355. Rules 336 to 338 inclusive.)

The present compound tense, *prétérit indéfini*, to be used throughout. Employ the auxiliary *être* (see page 350) where specified.

1. Shall I tell you how we spent the day yesterday? Some one reminded us that it was the 4th of June (Rule 171), and I remembered (*être*) then that I had promised to go to Eton (on) that day to see the Regatta, &c., as no American ought to go back to his country without seeing (infin.) an anniversary celebrated at an English public school. We started (*être*) from London by the 10 a.m. train, and arrived (*être*) at Windsor at about 11. Of course we did not stop (*être*) to visit Windsor, which we know well, but went (*être*) straight on to Eton, where we met one of the boys (*élèves*), son of an old friend of mine (Rule 240, note) in the States. He took (*conduire*) us everywhere, showed us the chapel, hall (*réfectoire*), playing-fields, &c. We were not present (*assister*) at the speeches,* which we believe are inferior to those delivered by the youth of our own country; but we walked (*être*) in the playing-fields, and heard the band play, &c., and in the evening we went (*être*) on the river in a four-oar as far as Surly, saw the crews (*équipages*) sup *à fresco*, and returned (*être*) to Windsor in time to see the fireworks (sing.) let off, which were (sing.) really very good, and managed to catch the 10 p.m. train, which brought us back safe and sound by about eleven.

EXERCISE XXXIII.

(Pages 356–357. Rules 339 to 345 inclusive.)

1. As soon as the king had finished speaking, he put on his hat, and the Assembly rose. 2. As soon as we had (*être*) arrived in any place,

* Speeches — '*ré citations*.' The term 'speeches' being in itself a misnomer, as the entertainment consists of recitals of passages of poetry and prose, and of scenes taken from the works of dramatic authors, ancient and modern, the *literal* rendering of the word into French would be altogether wrong. We have therefore chosen the word '*ré citations*,' as being the best rendering we can think of.

we found that he had preceded us, and, as usual, secured (*prendre d'avance*) the best room in the hotel. 3. I hope *we shall receive* better news of our brother by the next mail; we learnt by the last that he had been very ill of the prevalent fever. 4. You must set out as soon as *you have received* my letter, and we may possibly manage to meet in Paris. 5. (Rule 342 and note) I will come when I *can*, you may rest assured of that (*vous en assurer*); but recollect that I shall not come if *it rains*. 6. You *must have* offended him some how or other (*d'une manière ou d'une autre*), for he always tries to change (*de*) the subject whenever we speak to him of you. 7. If you are going up to town to-morrow, *will* you take me with you? I have a great deal of shopping (*emplettes*) to do, and I do not like to go alone. 8. He *shall not* remain a moment longer (*de plus*) in the house. 9. (Rule 345, *futur probable*.) Let us see what *I am to do*! *I am to take* the first street to the left, then look for a house with gables; (you cannot recollect the number (*numéro*), you say); then *I am to knock* at the door and leave the letter.

EXERCISE XXXIV.

Conditional.

(Page 358. Rule 346.)

1. If the sun would (note, page 354) only consent (*se mettre*) to shine for a day or two, we *might* hope for a decent (*respectable*) harvest. 2. *Would you believe* that he has not been to see us once since we came back! 3. (Rule 349.) If *he had* taken my opinion (*en croire*), he would have abstained from making that silly speech; it has done him a great deal of harm (*nuire*), I don't think he has a chance of being returned (*élire*). 4. Well, that's odd! (*voilà qui est drôle*!) I would have bet anything that he *would have* carried (*emporter*) all the votes. 5. (Rule 352.) This is how they relate the circumstances; (it appears that) your brother *said* something to mine which vexed him, then my brother *replied* with an insulting expression (*grossièreté*), your brother immediately *challenged* him, &c., and you know the rest. 6. What's the meaning of this? The doors are shut! *Can they have put off* (*remettre*) the concert without letting us know (*prévenir*)? 7. It is no use (*vous avez beau*) your trying, you would never be able to play as well as he; he could give you (*rendre*) points any day. 8. Even if he *were to go* (*se mettre*) on his knees to (*devant*) you, you must not pardon him this time.

EXERCISE XXXV.

Subjunctive Mood.

(Pages 360 to 363. Rule 356.)

1. He promised to come before two if it was fine, but as I cannot think that the weather *will get better* (*se remettre*) before that (*d'ici là*), I am afraid *we shall be obliged* to go without him. 2. I will (have) *you be ready* before six o'clock; I cannot bear being kept (*faire*) wait-

ing, and if we hope to arrive in (à) time, we must certainly *be* at the station at half-past six at the latest (*au plus tard*). 3. It is now decided that we go away to-morrow; I had determined (*résoudre*) that we *should* spend exactly a fortnight (note, page 296) here, and I had taken (*louer*) the apartments (sing.) for that time. 4. Why (*voyons*), it's five years since *I saw* you. It is true that *you have* not changed much, and yet (*pourtant*) there is a slight difference. I think (*il me semble*) that you had no (*de*) beard formerly. 5. It does not seem *that you have* a good memory, for I had just as much beard then as now. Can it be (*serait*) possible that *you are mistaken*, and that *you are taking* me for my brother, who is about the same height, though several years younger?

EXERCISE XXXVI.

Subjunctive Mood—continued.

(Pages 363 to 366. Rules 357 to 361 inclusive.)

1. I hope your mother *will not go out* to-day, it is dreadfully cold. To tell you the truth, I do not think that the air of the place *suits* her: I think that she *would do* better to go away. 2. You say that it is all the same (*revenir au même*) whether (note, page 332) you *work*, or whether you *do not work*, but I insist *upon your following* my instructions, and *doing* what I tell you, for the present at least. By and by (*plus tard*) you can be your own master (*indépendant*), and then you may do as you please; but *even were you* (Rule 360) to bear me a grudge (*m'en vouloir*) for a long time, I shall do what I consider to be my duty. 3. You had better (*faire mieux*) come with us, unless *you prefer* staying at home (*à la maison*); but if you do stay, you must promise me not to go out before *I return* (see Rule 552 γ). 4. I would not trust him (Rule 189) if I were you (*à votre place*); not that he *has ever* disobeyed me as yet (*jusqu'ici*), but let his companions *seek* to persuade him *ever so little*, I think he has not sufficient moral courage to (*pour*) resist. 5. He managed to get out (*s'échapper*) without his father or mother or myself *knowing* anything about it. [Consult Rule 200.]

EXERCISE XXXVII.

Subjunctive Mood—continued.

(Pages 366 to 368. Rules 362 to 366 inclusive.)

1. [Compare Rules 127 and 134.] *Whatever* his intention *may have been*, he has certainly asked in (*de*) a very unbecoming manner. 2. (*Quelque*, adverb.) *However* well painted a picture *is*, it can never quite approach nature (gen.). 3. Fierce as his look *is*, you need not fear him, he won't bite you. 4. He has behaved in (such) a manner, that *it was* impossible for us to invite him to our house any more. 5. Try to acquit yourself in such a manner that all your friends *may*

be pleased (*content*) with (*de*) you. 6. (Rule 364.) I never eat melon *without getting* (*m'en faire*) an indigestion. Really! well, as far as I am concerned (*quant à moi*), *whether I eat* it (*gen.*) or *whether I do not eat* it, it is all the same to me. 7. If you go to London, and *if you see* my brother there, ask him to come and spend Sunday with us. 8. (Rule 366.) There is nothing that I *would not do* to render you a service; but pray do not ask that of me (*dat.*). 9. The greatest insult *you can offer* to certain people (Rule 45) is to tell them that they look older.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

Subjunctive Mood—continued.

(Pages 368–369. Rules 367 to 369 inclusive.)

1. There is a very curious fact concerning that author, the only book which *he has not* written well is precisely the one (Rule 260) on which he bestowed most pains. 2. Both those young ladies created a great sensation (*avoir un grand succès*) this season. The eldest is perhaps the more beautiful, but it is undoubtedly the youngest who *has* the best style (*tournure*). 3. (Rule 368.) It is no use (*j'ai beau*) racking my brains, I cannot recollect the name of the hotel where we *put up* (*descendre*—compound tense with *être*) last year; I think it was the Hôtel de l'Orient, but I am not sure. 4. We intend to spend the winter in the south of France. Can you recommend me any place where one *is* sheltered from that horrible *mistral*? It is the plague of that country (*plur.*).

Rule of Attraction.

5. They will be obliged (*fut. of falloir*) *to surrender*; they are hemmed in (*cerner*) on all sides, and there is no means (for them) (*de*) *to escape*. 6. I thought I had given orders that the street door *should be locked*. [Turn into active voice with *on*.] There have been several robberies of late. I wish people *would pay* (*faire*) attention to what I say.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

The Infinitive Mood.

(Pages 371 to 373. Rules 372 to 375 inclusive.)

1. If you like to take a row (*vous promener en bateau*) as soon as it has (Rule 341) ceased raining, we can go out for an hour or so; if you have never *learnt* to row, and if you are not *afraid* to trust yourself to me, I will *endeavour* (*chercher*) to give you some idea of how it is done. All you will *have* to do will be to sit still and watch how I do it (*s'y prendre*); only you must not *expect* (*s'attendre*) to succeed the first time you try yourself. 2. I had with great difficulty managed

(*parvenir*) to induce my father to consent to put me in the army; everything was prepared for it, when a troublesome uncle of mine (Rule 240, note) who always meddles with what does not concern him, drew (*faire*) him such a picture of the dangers to which a young man is exposed in the service, that he has changed (*de*) his mind (*avis*), and he is now thinking of putting me into business—an occupation which I never could understand (*s'entendre*). 3. (Rule 375.) If you prefer staying at home to coming with me, I am going to invite your brother: I must (*devoir*) own that I should prefer taking you, for he does not know (how) to ride in the least, and the other day he was very near falling off (note) the moment the horse began to trot.

EXERCISE XL.

Infinitive—continued.

(Pages 374–375. Rules 378 to 382 inclusive.)

1. If you cannot play without quarrelling, I should advise you not to play at all. 2. If you want to know how we amused ourselves there, I can soon tell you. There was nothing but hunting and shooting by day, and dancing by night; as to working, there was very little of that (done). 3. If you are climbing mountains in Switzerland, there is nothing like getting gradually accustomed to walking (*faire*) first of all eight or ten miles a day, then fifteen, then twenty. On getting up (note, page 374) (in) the morning, make a good breakfast, and on coming home in the evening, if much fatigued, make a point (*ne manquez pas*) of getting a warm bath before going to bed. 4. (Rule 379.) He is a man that I have heard praised by some and blamed by others; take him all in all (*en somme*), he is a very good fellow. 5. What (was) to be done? There was not a single apartment to be let in the whole town, so we had to have our luggage taken back to the station, and we went away by the next train. 6. I thought I was doing (*rendre*) you a service. I am sure I am very sorry if I have put you to any inconvenience.

EXERCISE XLI.

Present Participle.

(Pages 376 to 378. Rules 383 to 389 inclusive.)

1. The noise of the shells bursting on all sides in the darkness was perfectly awful. 2. If you make many such (*ce*) brilliant strokes, you will win the game easily. 3. (Rule 385.) One saw on all sides nothing but trembling women, and tottering old men, and little children, with tears in their eyes, running towards the town. The lowing oxen and bleating sheep came in crowds (sing.), deserting their rich pasturages, and not being able to find sufficient stalls to shelter them. 4. Turpentine is got in (*de*) the following manner. A man mounts a small ladder, and cuts a slit (*taille*) in the bark of the pine-tree, the matter oozing out from

which is collected in a hole dug at the foot of the tree. 5. *By walking* quickly you may possibly get there in a quarter of an hour. I have done it before now in ten minutes' *running*. 6. (Rule 389.) Why call me (an) *intriguer*? I have been elected quite fairly. I do not think I have gained one vote *by intriguing*. 7. *By presiding* in the absence of his chief, he has gained great skill in conducting assemblies, but he has never been actually *president*.

EXERCISE XLII.

Past Participle.

(Page 379. Rules 391 to 393 inclusive.)

1. (Rule 391.) Lying* on a wretched raft, hastily *constructed* of a few spars which had been (*on avait*) *seized* a moment before the ship sank, six passengers, four men, one woman, and a child, wandered for three days, now (*tantôt*) *burnt* by the rays of a tropical sun, now (*tantôt*) *drenched* by torrents of rain, *surrounded* by hungry sharks, ready to seize the first who, *worn out* by fatigue, should loose (their) hold. 2. (Rule 392.) [Use compound tense throughout.] (On) the fourth day they *perceived* a sail on (à) the horizon. With great difficulty they *succeeded* in (à) attracting attention by means of a handkerchief, tied to an oar; the vessel immediately *tacked* (*virer*), and bore down (*diriger sa course*) upon them; but when the men sent to their help *laid hold* of the raft, they only *found* five survivors; the child had *disappeared*, washed off by the violence of the waves, and the poor woman had entirely *lost* her (def. art.) reason. 3. (Rule 393.) My brother and sister were both *born* (Rule 69) in France. He (Rule 205) *remained* there till the age of twenty, but my sister *came away* when she was ten (Part I., page 102). Since (that) she has never *left* (*sortir de*) England, so that you may say that she has been almost entirely *brought up* in this country.

EXERCISE XLIII.

Past Participle—continued.

(Pages 379 to 381. Rules 394 to 397 inclusive.)

1. [Consult Rules 394–395, and make the participles agree where necessary.] Joan of Arc had *accomplished* her mission and *executed* the king's orders. This monarch, whom she had *implored* on her knees to allow her to return to her home, had not *been willing* to consent (*y*); he had *seen* (*reconnaître*) too well what ardour Joan's presence had *communicated* to the troops, to deprive himself of her help. However, the rapid progress (*pl.*) which Charles VII. had *made*, and the anointing (*sacre*) which he had *received* in the town of Rheims, had *augmented* the number of his partisans, and the assurances of submission which the most important towns had *laid* (at his feet) (*apporter*) gave him hopes

* Use the past part. of *coucher*.

'sing.) of soon recovering the whole of his kingdom.* 2. (Rule 396.) Four kings of the name of *Louis succeeded* each other on the throne of France; (one and) all have *drawn* upon themselves the detestation of their subjects and the condemnation of posterity, instead of the glory which they had *promised* themselves. 3. They betook themselves (*se rendre*) to the appointed spot at five in the morning; then they took their places (*se placer*) at twenty paces from each other (Rule 306, 3). They fired (*se tirer*) two shots, fortunately without any disastrous result; whereupon they *declared* themselves perfectly satisfied, and *retired* each his own way.

EXERCISE XLIV.

Past Participle—continued.

(Pages 382–383. Rules 398 to 402 inclusive.)

1. (Rule 398.) Well! it appears that you have failed to pass (*échouer*) your examination: we had *suspected* that there was something wrong last night, you were so very silent. 2. We *bowed* (*se saluer*) (cf. Rule 397), but we did not *speak* (*se parler*). 3. She always *took pleasure* in (*à*) teasing me, and now she complains that I never go and see her! 4. (Rule 400.) What (Rule 286 *ε*) trouble, what care (pl.) *have been required* (compound of *falloir*) to bring up that child! 5. Charlemagne governed with glory one of the most vast monarchies that have ever *existed* (present subj. compound of *y avoir*) since the beginning of the world. 6. A great scar *was formed* (*se former*, impersonal), which has never disappeared since. 7. (Rule 401.) I should never have supposed that so many persons would have *presented* themselves for admission. 8. As many evils as I have *caused*, so many have I *suffered* myself. 9. How many things necessary and pleasant to human life has nature *placed* in those countries within reach (*à portée*) of our hand! 10. (Rule 402.) He *talked* (*débiter*) so much nonsense and impertinence, that we showed him (*mettre à*) the door.

EXERCISE XLV.

Past Participle—continued.

(Pages 383 to 385. Rules 403 to 407 inclusive.)

1. I should have wished you to attach (Rule 369) more importance to the study of German; nevertheless the *little* capacity that you have acquired in it (*y*) will help you to get along (*à vous tirer d'affaire*). 2. The *small amount* of skill which you displayed in handling a gun will prevent my ever taking (Rule 378) you out shooting again. 3. (Rules 404, 405.) His father left him a large fortune, but he has already *squandered* (*gaspiller*) more than half of it. 4. My mother says (*prétendre*) that she did not know of your arrival, but I had certainly

* From Parnajon's *Cours complet de Grammaire française*. Paris: Hachette & Co. 1868.

informed her of it. 5. He sent us six beautiful peaches : we have *eaten* three of *them* ; shall I give you the other ? 6. The greatest talents have often been dangerous to those who most *boasted* (*se glorifier*) of *them*. 7. [*Pay particular attention to note, page 384.*] I am perfectly *sure* that those flowers are fresh ; *I saw them picked* this morning myself. 8. If you will come and dine with me this evening, you will meet the two barristers *that you heard plead* so eloquently yesterday. 9. The frigate was dashed (*mettre*) to pieces ; we actually *saw her thrown* on the rocks under our very eyes.

EXERCISE XLVI.

Past Participle—continued.

(Pages 385–386. Rules 408 to 412 inclusive.)

1. (Rule 408.) We almost died of thirst, we could not possibly swallow the water which they *gave us to drink*. 2. There is the lesson which I *endeavoured* to make him learn ; I am sure it is not beyond his powers. 3. (Rule 409.) You did not show on (*à*) that occasion all the firmness which I should have *wished* (you to show). 4. I have borne (*faire*) for the education of my children all the expenses which my fortune has *permitted* me (to bear). 5. He never turned away a poor man ; he was not rich, but he exerted (*faire*) all the efforts which he should (*devoir*) and could (exert) to relieve the unfortunate. 6. (Rule 410.) She is not unreasonable in her wishes, but she does *all she can* (*tout son possible*) to obtain a thing, when once she has wished (for) it. 7. (Rule 411.) Would you recognise this dress ? It is the same I wore last winter ; *I had it dyed* at Puller's, in Perth. 8. Men are rarely satisfied with (*de*) the position in which Providence has placed them by birth (*faire naître*). 9. My sister had a very bad (*grave*) fever in Naples, and she *had* all her pretty hair *cut off* (*se faire couper*). 10. (Rule 412.) That is not the house which they *told* us that you had taken (*louer*) for this season.

EXERCISE XLVII.

Past Participle—continued.

(Pages 386–387. Rules 413 to 417 inclusive.)

1. (Rule 413.) Well, it really is astonishing that after all the years that you have *lived* in France, you cannot (subj.) speak French better! 2. (Rule 414.) You shall not reproach her (dat.) with that fault ; she has *bewailed it* so much and so long that we ought to forgive her. 3. We got on (*se tirer d'affaire*) as well as we could ; we had neither forks nor plates, but our fingers *served* us for forks, and the crusts (*dessous*) of the loaves for plates. 4. I do not know how *I missed* her ; I walked along the right side of the street all the way, and did not go into any shop. 5. I cannot tell you how many congratulations that which you are good enough to call an act (*trait*) of courage *procured* (*valoir*) me

What father ever regretted the cares and sacrifices of every description which the education of his children has cost him! 7. (Rule 17.) After that you will own that war is a more horrible thing than you had supposed. 8. If she had said it twenty times, I would not have believed her (Rule 355). 9. She has grown immensely in the last six months, much more than I should have thought possible. 10. The news has turned out to be perfectly false, just as I had told you.

EXERCISE XLVIII.

Concord of Verb.

(Pages 387 to 389. Rules 418 to 426 inclusive.)

1. We lost all our luggage going (page 374, note) to Paris; my portmanteau and my wife's trunk were recovered, but neither my carpet-bag nor her dressing-case have appeared ever since. 2. (Rule 420.) If you and I are both guilty, why am I alone punished? 3. Alas! by what cruel fate have you and your young companion been thrown on this inhospitable shore! 4. One single word, a sigh, a glance would betray us! 5. Men, gods, animals, all (sing.) play some part in it. 6. Promises, threats, prayers, supplications, nothing was of any avail, the culprit was executed. 7. That regiment was 1,000 strong when it arrived in India, but the heat or the fever has more than decimated it. 8. The inhabitants saw us wrecked with the most perfect indifference, and our destruction or safety did not interest them in the least. 9. Neither one nor the other would consent (*vouloir*) to be surpassed in generosity by his rival. 10. Two goats having met (*se rencontrer*) on a narrow bridge, neither one nor the other would retreat, and both fell into the water.

EXERCISE XLIX.

Concord of Verb—continued.

(Pages 389 to 391. Rules 427 to 432 inclusive.)

1. (*General collectives.*) The multiplicity of remedies is deleterious to health. 2. The prodigious number of plants (*végétaux*) which God has caused to grow (*naître*) present us (with) an agreeable spectacle. 3. Meanwhile this frightful mass of barbarians advances with steady step towards the Roman legions. 4. (*Partial collectives.* Rule 428.) Already more than (*de*) one tyrant, more than one ferocious monster, had felt the weight of your arm. 5. We had hoped (for) an excellent crop from that vine, but a quantity of insects, come from Heaven knows where or how, devoured all the blossom in one night. 6. (Rule 429.) (There are) people enough (who) despise riches, but few know (how) to give them up (*renoncer*, governs dat.). 7. Few men possess wit without knowing (Rule 378) it; many display (*faire*) it when they have none; the greater part (Rule 428) are jealous of that of others. 8. (Rule

430.) It is not us that one should pity; it is you, and those like you (*vos pareils*), who *lead* a scandalous life. 9. It is my brother and I who *worked* hardest to get him elected (Rule 379), and he hardly even thanked us. 10. We grope about in the darkness like men who *have* lost their way.

EXERCISE L.

Use of Auxiliary AVOIR or ÊTRE.

(Pages 391 to 394. Rules 433 to 438 inclusive.)

1. (Rule 434.) Where can your brother be? We *had* promised (reflect.) to meet here at one o'clock. He must *have* lost his way (*s'égarer*). 2. After *having* (Rule 378) fought for about half an hour, they *had* sat down to rest a little, when some one signalled a policeman, and they were obliged to decamp. 3. (Rule 435.) They sent for the doctor in all haste, but he could not get there before the morning. The poor fellow *had* died during the night. 4. After *having* (Rule 378) come from so far, it was a great nuisance (*très-en-nuyeur*) to find no one at home. 5. When you *have* (Rule 342) arrived at that pitch of grandeur you will probably despise your old friends. 6. (Rule 436.) As soon as it *has* (Rule 341) ceased raining you can take this letter to the post for me. 7. When we arrived in India, the great rains *had* ceased. 8. You ought to know (how) to speak French, you *have* lived five years in Paris. 9. I amused myself immensely at my friends' house. I *rode* nearly every day. 10. My mother *has* not come down, because she has a slight headache; she says you are to have breakfast without waiting (Rule 378) (for) her. 11. (Rule 438.) We shall be late; the porter has not yet *brought down* half my things (*effets*), and the train starts in a quarter of an hour. 12. You ought not to *have brought* that horse out of the stable: I want him to have two or three days' rest.

As pages 395 to 438, Rules 439 to 567, contain matter concerning adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions, more suitable for *reference* than for exercises, no exercises will be given on those Rules.

EXERCISE LI.

Negatives, and especially NE.

(Pages 439 to 445. Rules 568 to 582 inclusive.)

Position of Negative Particles in a Sentence.

1. (Rule 574.) Will they *never* have done? Why (*que voulez-vous*) we cannot induce (*engager*) them to work for one hour consecutively. 2. We spoke as loud as we could, but he seemed *not* to hear us.

Suppression of PAS or POINT.

3. (Rule 576.) We dare *not* foretell anything about (*de*) the weather. It has *not* ceased (pres.) raining since we have been here (pres.). 4. I *cannot* (cond. of *savoir*) conceive anything so stupid as his conduct. *Never mind!* It is no business of ours. 5. Is there anyone here present who is *not* of my opinion? 6. Why, what has become of you (turn: what have *you become*)? I have not seen you for a month. 7. I walked about in the wood for two or three hours without meeting a living soul. 8. I have been scolding (pres.) you for ten minutes, and you do *not* say a word in reply! 9. (Rule 577.) I have looked about (*chercher*) everywhere, and I have found neither letter nor parcel; I think you must have made some mistake. 10. (Rule 580.) I have been in Germany for about eighteen months, and have learnt a good deal of German, but I still write it much better than I speak it. 11. (Rule 581.) You are not more advanced than *I was* after a year's stay in the country.

EXERCISE LII.

Negatives—continued.

(Pages 445 to 448. Rules 583 to 593 inclusive.)

1. Well! I am off, unless you wish me to stay a little longer. 2. (Rule 584.) We can never have ten minutes' chat (*casser*) without his coming (Rule 378) to interrupt us. 3. I knew him to be a Frenchman, even before he opened his mouth.

Verbs of Fearing, Doubting, &c.

4. I was afraid lest the train should arrive late: we should have had (*il aurait fallu*) to spend the whole day in Paris. 5. (Rule 587.) Are you not afraid lest the house should catch fire (lest the fire should take (*prendre à*) the house)? There is nobody left to look after it. 6. I doubt not but that my successor will have much more talent and capacity than myself. 7. You may sit here in perfect security. I will take very good care (*empêcher*) that no one comes to disturb you. 8. I have even forbidden by an express law that anyone should dare to pronounce your name in my presence (*devant moi*). 9. (Rule 593.) I was very near giving him a box on the ear, he answered me so impertinently. 10. She is far from being as pretty as her mother (*il s'en faut beaucoup*).

MISCELLANEOUS VERSIONS,

WITH REFERENCES, WHERE NECESSARY, TO GRAMMAR RULES.

* * * The numbers refer to Rules in the Syntax. Where reference is made to Part I. it will be specially so stated.

No. I.—THE HORSE-SHOE. (1.)

There was a *gentleman* who *was* extremely *fond* of beautiful horses, and did not *grudge* to give the highest prices for them. (Rule 221.) One day a horse-dealer *came to him*, and showed him (*en*) one so handsome, that he thought it superior to all he had ever seen before. He mounted him, and found his *paces* equally excellent; for, though he *was* (Rule 296) full of *spirit*, he was gentle and tractable *as* could be wished. So many perfections delighted the gentleman, and he eagerly demanded the price. The horse-dealer answered, that he would *abate* nothing of two hundred guineas; the gentleman, although he admired (Rule 296) the horse, would not consent to give it; and they were just on the point of *parting*. As the man was *turning his back*, the gentleman *called out to him*, and said, 'Is there no possible way of our agreeing? (Rule 378) for I would give you *anything in reason* for such a beautiful creature.'

A gentleman, not *gentilhomme*. To be fond of, *aimer*. To grudge, *hésiter*. Came to him, *vint le trouver*. Pace, *allure*. Spirit, not *esprit*. As, *autant que*. To abate, *rabattre*. To part, *se séparer*. To turn the back, *s'en aller*. Called out to him, *le rappela*. In reason = reasonable.

No. II.—THE HORSE-SHOE. (2.)

'*Why*,' replied the dealer, who was a *shrewd fellow*, and perfectly understood calculation, 'if you do not like to give

me two hundred guineas, will (Rule 344) you give me a farthing for the first nail* the horse has in his shoe, two farthings for the second, four for the third, and *so go doubling throughout the whole* (Rule 141) twenty-four? for there are no more than (Rule 487) twenty-four nails in all his shoes.' The gentleman gladly accepted the condition, and ordered the horse *to be led away* to his stables.

However, the horse-dealer added, 'I do not *mean*, Sir, to *tie you down* to this last proposal, which (Rule 271), upon consideration, *you may like* as little as the first; all that I require is, that, if you are dissatisfied *with* your bargain, you will promise to pay me down the two hundred guineas which I first asked' (Rule 395). *This* the gentleman willingly *agreed to*, and then called the steward to (Rule 526) calculate the sum, for he was *too much of a gentleman* to be able to do it himself.

Why, *voyons*. A shrewd fellow, *un rusé compère*. * Insert *which* after *nail*. And so, &c., *et ainsi de suite en doublant*. To be led away—turn, 'that one should put' (imp. subj. *mettre*). To mean, *avoir l'intention*. To tie down, *imposer*: omit *to*. You may like = 'may please you.' With, *de*. Agreed to this = 'accepted this condition.' Too much of a gentleman, *trop grand seigneur*.

No. III.—THE HORSE-SHOE. (3.)

The steward *sat down with* his (Rule 89) pen and ink, and after some time gravely *wished* his master *joy*, and asked him (dat.), 'in what part of England the estate was situated that he was going to purchase?' 'Are you mad?' *replied* the gentleman: 'it is not an estate, but a horse, that *I have just bargained for*; and here is the owner of him (Rule 86), to whom I am going to pay the money.' 'If there be any madness, Sir,' replied the steward, 'it certainly is not on my side: the sum you have ordered me to calculate *comes* just to seventeen thousand (Rule 162) four hundred (Rule 161) and seventy-six pounds, *besides* some shillings and pence: and surely no man *in his senses* would give this price for a horse.' The gentleman was very much surprised to hear the *assertion* of his steward; but when, upon examination, he found it *no more than* the truth, he was very glad to *compound* for his

MISCELLANEOUS VERSIONS,

WITH REFERENCES, WHERE NECESSARY, TO GRAMMAR RULES.

* * The numbers refer to Rules in the Syntax. Where reference is made to Part I. it will be specially so stated.

No. I.—THE HORSE-SHOE. (1.)

There was a *gentleman* who *was* extremely *fond of* beautiful horses, and did not *grudge* to give the highest prices for them. (Rule 221.) One day a horse-dealer *came to him*, and showed him (*en*) one so handsome, that he thought it superior to all he had ever seen before. He mounted him, and found his *paces* equally excellent; for, though he *was* (Rule 296) full of *spirit*, he was gentle and tractable *as* could be wished. So many perfections delighted the gentleman, and he eagerly demanded the price. The horse-dealer answered, that he would *abate* nothing of two hundred guineas; the gentleman, although he admired (Rule 296) the horse, would not consent to give it; and they were just on the point of *parting*. As the man was *turning his back*, the gentleman *called out to him*, and said, 'Is there no possible way of our agreeing? (Rule 378) for I would give you *anything in reason* for such a beautiful creature.'

A gentleman, not *gentilhomme*. To be fond of, *aimer*. To grudge, *hésiter*. Came to him, *vint le trouver*. Pace, *allure*. Spirit, not *esprit*. As, *autant que*. To abate, *rabattre*. To part, *se séparer*. To turn the back, *s'en aller*. Called out to him, *le rappela*. In reason = reasonable.

No. II.—THE HORSE-SHOE. (2.)

'*Why*,' replied the dealer, who was a *shrewd fellow*, and perfectly understood calculation, 'if you do not like to give

me two hundred guineas, will (Rule 344) you give me a farthing for the first nail* the horse has in his shoe, two farthings for the second, four for the third, and *so go doubling throughout the whole* (Rule 141) twenty-four? for there are no more than (Rule 487) twenty-four nails in all his shoes.' The gentleman gladly accepted the condition, and ordered the horse *to be led away* to his stables.

However, the horse-dealer added, 'I do not *mean*, Sir, to *tie you down* to this last proposal, which (Rule 271), upon consideration, *you may like* as little as the first; all that I require is, that, if you are dissatisfied *with* your bargain, you will promise to pay me down the two hundred guineas which I first asked' (Rule 395). *This* the gentleman willingly *agreed to*, and then called the steward to (Rule 526) calculate the sum, for he was *too much of a gentleman* to be able to do it himself.

Why, *voyons*. A shrewd fellow, *un rusé compère*. * Insert *which* after *nail*. And so, &c., *et ainsi de suite en doublant*. To be led away—turn, 'that one should put' (imp. subj. *mettre*). To mean, *avoir l'intention*. To tie down, *imposer*: omit *to*. You may like = 'may please you.' With, *de*. Agreed to this = 'accepted this condition.' Too much of a gentleman, *trop grand seigneur*.

No. III.—THE HORSE-SHOE. (3.)

The steward *sat down with* his (Rule 89) pen and ink, and after some time gravely *wished* his master *joy*, and asked him (dat.), 'in what part of England the estate was situated that he was going to purchase?' 'Are you mad?' *replied* the gentleman: 'it is not an estate, but a horse, that *I have just* bargained for; and here is the owner of him (Rule 86), to whom I am going to pay the money.' 'If there be any madness, Sir,' replied the steward, 'it certainly is not on my side: the sum you have ordered me to calculate *comes* just to seventeen thousand (Rule 162) four hundred (Rule 161) and seventy-six pounds, *besides* some shillings and pence: and surely no man *in his senses* would give this price for a horse.' The gentleman was very much surprised to hear the *assertion* of his steward; but when, upon examination, he found it *no more than* the truth, he was very glad to *compound* for his

foolish agreement, *by* giving the horse-dealer the two hundred guineas, and dismissing him.

Sat down with = 'took.' To wish joy, *féliciter*. To reply, *reprendre*. To have just, *venir de*. To come to, *monter à*. Besides, *plus*. In his senses, *sensé*. Assertion, *affirmation*. No more than = 'the simple.' To compound for, *racheter*. By, *en*.

No. IV.—THE BOASTER.

A certain man, (who had) lately come from abroad, was one day *giving an account* of his travels. 'Among other places,' said he, 'I have been at Rhodes; and though that city, you know, is (Rule 296) the most famous in the world for great leapers, yet I outdid them all. With a leaden *poise* in each hand, *away I flew* like a deer or greyhound, and cleared thirty good yards at least. Oh! how the fools *all gaped and stared* to see themselves so much outdone in their own way: *I thought I should have died* (note, page 373) with laughing (Rule 378, note) at them.' As none (Rule 109) of the Boaster's friends deigned to answer him, 'Indeed!' said he, 'what (Rule 249) I have told you is all true; and if you do not choose to believe me, only go to Rhodes, and you will find hundreds and hundreds (Rule 168) who can tell you the same thing.' 'Nay,' said one of those (Rule 260) who were in the room, 'only suppose yourself to be at Rhodes this moment, and *take the same leap* over again, and then we shall be convinced of it (Rule 221) without any further *trouble*.'

To give an account, *faire le récit*. Poise, *poids*. To fly away, *partir*. To gape and stare, *rester ébahi*. Nay, *ce n'est pas nécessaire*. To take a leap, *faire un saut*. Trouble, not *trouble*.

No. V.—THE ORIGIN OF ASSES.

Before being asses (Rule 378), asses were horses (Part I. page 6). They had a (Rule 82) firm *leg*, a small head, short ears, and *long hair* on the tail instead of a tuft of *short hairs*. Now (Rule 482) it happened that one of these horses, the

grandfather of all the asses, one day finding himself up to his middle in grass (Part I. page 6), said to himself, 'This grass is too coarse for me, what (Rule 248) I want is *some of the finest*, so delicate that no other horse *has* ever tasted the like.' He left that pasture in search of *a finer*. Farther on he found grass coarser than that (Rule 260) he had just left; he became angry. Still farther, on the borders of a marsh, he found *rushes*, and trampled upon them. Then he went round the marsh, and entered a barren country, still in search of his *fine-fleur*, but he no longer found even moss. He was hungry (Part I. page 102), looked about him, and saw some thistles in a hollow, and ate them with a good appetite. Then his ears began *to grow*, he had a tuft of hairs upon his (Rule 82) tail; he wished (Rule 375) to neigh, and began to bray. He was the first ass!

Leg, *jarret*. Long hair, *crin*. Short hairs, *poils*. Some of the finest, *de la fine-fleur*. A finer, the same. Rushes, *flèches d'eau*. To grow, *pousser*.

No. VI.—REMINISCENCES OF A VOLUNTEER, A.D. 1920. (1.)

You ask me to tell you, my grandchildren, something about my own share in the great events that happened fifty years *ago*. 'Tis sad (work) turning (Rule 378) back to that bitter page in our history, but you may perhaps take profit in your new homes from the lesson it teaches. For us in England it came too late. And yet (Rule 489) we had plenty of warnings, if we had only *made use* of them. The danger did not come on us unawares. It burst on us suddenly, 'tis true; but its coming was *foreshadowed* plainly enough to open our (Rule 82) eyes, if we had not been wilfully blind. *We English* have only ourselves to blame for the humiliation *which has been brought on the land*. Venerable old age! Dishonourable old age, I say, when it follows a manhood dishonoured as ours (Rule 237) has been. I declare, even now, though (Rule 296) fifty years have passed, I can hardly look a young man in the face when I think I am one of those (Rule 260) in whose (Rule 276) youth happened this degradation of Old England—one of those who betrayed

(Rule 430) *the trust* handed down to us unstained by our forefathers.

Ago, *il y a*. To make use of, *tirer parti de*. To foreshadow, *annoncer*. We English, *nous autres Anglais*. Which has been brought on the land, *qui nous accable*. Trust, *dépôt*.

NO. VII.—REMINISCENCES OF A VOLUNTEER, A.D. 1920. (2.)

Fools that (Rule 286 β) we were! We thought that all this wealth and prosperity were sent us by Providence, and could *not stop coming*. In our blindness, we did not see that we were merely a big workshop, *making up* the things which came from all parts of the world; and that if other nations *stopped* sending (Rule 378) us *raw goods* (to work up), we could not produce them ourselves. True, we had in those days an advantage in our cheap coal and iron; and had (Rule 332 ϵ) we taken care not to waste the fuel, it might have lasted us longer. But even then there were (Part I. page 64) signs that coal and iron would soon become cheaper in foreign parts; while (Rule 494) as to *food* and other *things*, England was not *better off* than it is (Rule 235) now. We were so rich simply because other nations from all parts of the world were in the habit (Rule 332 γ) of sending their *goods* to us to be sold or manufactured; and we thought that this would last for ever. And so, perhaps, it might have lasted, if we had only taken proper means to keep it; but, in our folly, we were too careless even to insure our prosperity, and *after* the course of trade was *turned away* it would not come back again.

Fools, *insensés*. Stop coming, *tarir*. To make up, *mettre en œuvre*. Stop, *cesser*. Raw goods, *les matières premières*. Food, *des céréales*. Things, *denrées*. To be well off, *être bien partagé*. Goods, *produits*. To turn away the course, *déplacer le courant*. After, *lorsqu'une fois*.

No. VIII.—REMINISCENCES OF A VOLUNTEER, A.D. 1920. (3.)

In a very few days, although the telegraphs and railways were (Rule 296) intercepted right across Europe, the main facts *oozed out*. An embargo had been *laid* on all the shipping in every port from the Baltic to Ostend; the fleets of the two great Powers had *moved out*, and it was supposed were assembled in the great northern harbour, and troops were hurrying on board all the steamers detained in these places, most of which (Rule 276) were British vessels. It was clear that invasion was intended. Even then *we might have* been saved, if the fleet had been ready. The forts which guarded the flotilla were perhaps too strong for shipping to attempt (Rule 361, 14); but an ironclad or two, handled as British sailors knew how *to use them*, might have destroyed or damaged a part of the transports, and delayed the expedition, giving (Rule 378, note) us what we wanted—time. But then the best part of the fleet had been decoyed down to the Dardanelles, and what (Rule 249) remained of the Channel squadron was looking after Fenian filibusters off the west of Ireland; so it was ten days before (Rule 361, 3) the fleet was got together, and by that time it was plain the enemy's preparations were too far advanced to be stopped by a *coup-de-main*.

To ooze out, *se faire jour*. To lay an embargo, *mettre un embargo*. To move out, *sortir*. We might have, *nous aurions pu*. To use them, *le faire*.

No. IX.—REMINISCENCES OF A VOLUNTEER, A.D. 1920. (4.)

I had just (Part I. page 139) come up to town by train as usual, and *was walking to* my office, when the newsboys began to cry, 'New edition! Enemy's fleet in sight!' You may imagine the scene in London! It was about ten o'clock (Part I. page 105) that the first telegram came; an hour later the wire announced that the admiral had signalled to form line of battle, and shortly afterwards that the order was given to *bear down* on the enemy and engage. At twelve came the announcement, 'Fleet opened fire about three miles *to leeward of us*,'—that is, the ship with *the cable*. So far all had been

expectancy; then came the first token of calamity. 'An ironclad has been *blown up*'—'the enemy's torpedoes are doing great damage'—'the flag-ship is laid aboard the enemy'—'the flag-ship appears to be sinking'—'the vice-admiral has signalled to' . . . There the cable became silent, and, as you know, we heard no more till two days afterwards. The solitary ironclad which escaped the disaster *steamed in* Portsmouth.

To walk to, *se rendre à pied à*. To bear down on, *faire voile sur*. To leeward of us, *sous notre vent*. The cable, i.e. the telegraphic cable, *le câble*. To be blown up, *sauter*. To steam into, *entrer à toute vapeur*.

No. X.—WHALE-FISHING. (1.)

Some whales are caught by the *Greenlanders*, who have a sufficient excuse for persecuting (Rule 378) them *with* continual attacks, *in their total want* of vegetables, and every species of food which the earth affords. But the Europeans, who are too (nice and) *squeamish* to eat his flesh, send out great numbers of ships every (Rule 140) year to destroy the poor whale, merely *for the sake of* the oil which his body contains and the *elastic bones*, which are known by the name of whale bone, and applied to several purposes. When those that go upon this dangerous expedition discern a whale floating at distance, they instantly send out a large boat to (Rule 52) pursue him. Some of the men row (along) as gently as possible, while the person *that is appointed* to attack the creature stands upon the fore-part of the boat, holding in his hand sharp harpoon, with which he is prepared to wound his prey. This is fastened to a long cord that *lies ready coiled up* in the boat, so that they may *let it out* in an instant when the whale is struck; for such is his prodigious force, that should (Rule 332 δ) the least impediment *occur* to stop the rope in its passage, *he* would instantly draw the boat after him (Part I. page 26, 8) down to the bottom of the sea.

Greenlander, *Groënlandois*. With, *de*. In their total want, *en qu'ils manquent totalement*. Squeamish, *difficile*. For the sake, *pour avoir*. Elastic bones, *fanons*. To go upon, *entreprendre*. That is appointed, *qui doit*. To lie, *se trouver*. To coil up, *rouer*. To let off, *filer*. To occur, *survenir*. (Remember that 'whale' is fem. in French.)

No. XI.—WHALE-FISHING. (2.)

To prevent these dangerous accidents, a man *stands* constantly ready to *divide* the rope with a hatchet, *in case it should happen* to entangle (Rule 332 δ); and another is continually pouring water over it, for fear (Rule 361, 7) the swiftness of the motion should *cause* it to take fire. The poor whale, being thus wounded, darts away with inconceivable rapidity, and generally plunges to the bottom of the sea. The men have a prodigious quantity of cord ready (Rule 543) to let out, and when their *store* is exhausted, there are generally other boats ready to supply more (Rule 459). Thus is the poor animal overpowered and killed, in spite of his immense bulk and irresistible strength; for, gradually wearied *with* his own efforts and the loss of blood, he soon relaxes in his speed and rises again to the top of the water. Then it is that the fishers, who have pursued him all the time with the *hopes* of such an opportunity, approach him anew, and attack him with fresh harpoons, *till*, in the end, his strength is (Rule 361, 10) entirely exhausted.

To stand, *se tenir*. To divide, *couper*. In case it should happen to entangle, *si par hasard elle ...* To cause, *faire*. Store, *provision*. With, *de*. Hopes, singular. Till, *jusqu'à ce que*. In, *à*.

No. XII.—WHALE-FISHING. (3.)

Then the conflict is soon *at an end*; in a short time *he breathes his last*, and turning upon his back, floats like some large vessel upon the surface of the sea. The fishers then approach, and (supply *en*) cut off the fins and other valuable parts, which they *stow* on board their ships; the *blubber* is received into large hogsheads, and *when boiled*, to purify it, composes the common oil which is applied to so many useful *purposes*. The remains of this vast body are left a prey to various fish and to the Greenlanders, who carefully collect every fragment they can find, and apply it to their own use. Sometimes they *go in pursuit* of the whale themselves; but when they *do* (Rule 235, 3) it is in large numbers; and they attack him nearly *in the same manner* as the Europeans, only,

as *they are not so well supplied* with cord, they fix the skins of seals, which they have inflated (Rule 395) with air, to the ends of the thongs that are tied to their harpoons; and this serves *both* to weary out the prey, who drags them with him (Part I. page 26) under the water, and to discover him the instant he approaches to the surface.

At an end, *fini*. To breathe his last, *rendre le dernier soupir*. To stow, *entasser*. Blubber, *graisse*. When boiled = after having been, &c. Purposes, *usage*. To go in pursuit, *se mettre à la poursuite*. In, *de*. They are not, &c. = they have not such a good provision. Both, *en même temps*.

No. XIII.—ROUND THE WORLD.

(All numbers to be given in full, for which see page 294.)

I believe (Rule 357) we are now about midway on our tour, unless Shanghai *should prove* to be the culminating point. The distance we have *come* has been about 12,000 miles, 8,500 by sea and 3,500 by land. A voyage across the Pacific from San Francisco to Yokohama by the direct line is about 4,700 or 4,800 miles; but at this season our captain *steered* southerly some (Rule 129) 10 or 12 degrees of latitude, to (Rule 526) avoid northern storms, and the ship's log showed a total distance of 5,250 miles, which occupied twenty-four days and four hours from port to port.

A *fraction over* nine miles an (Rule 32) hour on a Pacific sea is slow progress as compared with Atlantic voyages between Liverpool and New York; but the economy of coal for a voyage of over 5,000 miles is a serious consideration when at least 1,400 tons *have to be* provided for the voyage, and if (Rule 332, δ) by any accident or detention the supply *should run short*, there is no intermediate coaling station.

Should prove, *ne se trouvât être*. To come, *parcourir* (and consult Rule 395). To steer, *mettre le cap*. A *fraction over*, *quelque chose de plus que*. Have to be = one must (invert the order). To run short, *venir à manquer*.

No. XIV.—THE DEATH OF CHARLES IX. (1.)

The dreadful massacre of St. Bartholomew *took* place in the reign of Charles IX. (Rule 171); on which occasion the English court *went into mourning*. The singular death of Charles has been regarded by the Huguenots as an interposition of divine justice; he died (Part I. page 58) bathed in his blood, which burst from his veins. The horrors of this miserable prince on his *dying-bed* are forcibly depicted by the anecdotes (supply *which*) I am now collecting. I shall premise, however, that Charles was a mere instrument in the hands of his mother, the political and cruel Catherine of Medicis.

King Charles, feeling himself near (Rule 543) his end, after having (Rule 378) passed some time without pronouncing (Rule 378) a word, said, as he turned himself on one side, and as if he seemed to awake, 'Call my brother!' The queen-mother was present, who immediately *sent for* the Duke of Alençon (who was afterwards Henry III.) (Rule 171). The king perceiving him, turned *his* (Rule 82) back, and again said, 'Let (Rule 286 *ι*) my brother come!' The queen, his mother, replied, 'Sir, I do not know whom you mean; here is (Rule 536) your brother.' The king was displeased, and said, 'Let (Rule 286 *ι*) them bring my brother the King of Navarre; it is he (Rule 254) who is my brother.'

To take place, *avoir lieu*. To go into mourning, *prendre le deuil*. Dying-bed, *lit de mort*. To send for, *envoyer chercher*.

No. XV.—THE DEATH OF CHARLES IX. (2.)

The queen-mother, observing (Rule 383) the dying monarch's resolute order, *sent for* him; but, for reasons known only to herself, she commanded the captain of the guards to (Rule 374) conduct him under the vaults. They went to the King of Navarre, and desired him to come (and) speak to the king: at that moment, this prince has since (Rule 465) repeatedly said, he felt a shuddering and apprehension of death *so much that* he would not go. But King Charles *persisting on his coming*, the queen-mother assured him that he should

receive no injury. In this promise, however, he put little trust. He went, accompanied by the Viscount d'Auchy, on whose (Rule 276) word he chiefly relied. Having, however, observed under these vaults a great number of halberdiers and arquebusiers in ranks, he would have (Rule 435) returned, when the viscount and the captain reassured him that no harm should happen (Part I. page 64) to him. The soldiers bowed, and their behaviour was respectful.

To send for, *envoyer chercher*. So much that, *au point que*. Persisting, &c., turn : as King Charles wished absolutely to see him.

NO. XVI.—THE DEATH OF CHARLES IX. (3.)

By a private staircase he entered the chamber of the king, who, immediately on (page 374, note) perceiving him, turned towards him, and stretched out his (Rule 82) arms. The King of Navarre was affected ; he sighed and wept, and fell on his (Rule 82) knees at the side of the bed. Charles embraced, and having kissed him, said, ‘ My brother, you lose a good master and a good friend. I know it is not you who occasions (Rule 430) me so much *trouble* ; had I (Rule 332 *ê*) believed what they said, you would not have been *alive* ; but I have always loved you. It is to you alone (that) I trust my wife and daughter ; earnestly do I recommend them to your care. Do not trust (Rule 185) the queen ; but God protect you ! ’ (Rule 286 *ι*).

The queen-mother here interrupted him, ‘ Ah, Sir, do not say that ! ’ ‘ Yes, madam, I must say it ; it is the truth. Believe me (Rule 182), my brother ; love me ; assist my wife and daughter, and implore God *for mercy* on me. Adieu, my brother, adieu ! ’ The King of Navarre remained till his majesty expired.

Trouble, not *trouble*. Alive = *en vie*. For mercy = to have mercy.

INDEX TO SYNTAX.

[THE NUMBERS REFER TO RULES, NOT TO PAGES.]

A

À, preposition. Compared with *en*; peculiar meanings of *à*; *à* or *ou* between two numbers, 503. List of verbs which require *à* before infinitive, 373

Accourir, 436

Adjectives, 67–108. Agreement with noun or pronoun, 67–76. Difference of meaning according as placed before or after noun, 103. Used adverbially, 77. Compounded of two words, 78–81. Possessives, used in reference to bodily affections, 82–85. *Son*, *sa*, *ses*, *leurs*, 86–88. Repetition of possessive adjective, 89–94. Definite article, variable or not, with superlatives, 95–97. Position of adjective with regard to noun, 98–103. Followed by *de* or *à*, 104–108

Adverbs, 439–500. Formation of, 439–440. Place of, 441–445

Afin que, mood governed by, 361

Ailleurs, 446

À la fois, 471

Autour, 447

Alors, 448

À moins que, mood governed by, 361

Appréhender, use of *ne* with, 585

Après, 506

À qui mieux mieux, 479

Arrêter, 356

Article, Definite, 1–18. With names of countries, 15–17. With verbs, &c., used substantively, 18. *Indefinite Article*, suppression of, 20, 32. With *peu*, 33. Position of, 34. Peculiar use of, 35. *Partitive Article*, 36–40. Suppression of, 36–39. Case of, 40

Assez, 451

Attendu, 76

Au cas que, mood governed by, 361

Au devant de, 512

Auparavant, 449

Au pis aller, 486

Auprès de. Difference between *auprès de*, *près de*, and *au prix de*, 538

Aussi, 452. *Aussi bien*, 452

Aussitôt, 450

Autant, 452

Autrefois, 471

Autrui, 297–298

Auxiliaries, 433. Rules for the use of *avoir* or *être*, 433–438. List of verbs which require sometimes *avoir*, sometimes *être*, 436

Avant, 504

Avant de, *avant que de*, *avant que*, 539

Avant que, mood governed by, 361

Avec, 505

Avoir garde, suppression of *pas* with, 576

Avoir l'air, 75

Avoir peur, use of *ne* with, 585

Avant, 388

430.) It is not us that one should pity; it is you, and those like you (*vos pareils*), who lead a scandalous life. 9. It is my brother and I who worked hardest to get him elected (Rule 379), and he hardly even thanked us. 10. We grope about in the darkness like men who have lost their way.

EXERCISE L.

Use of Auxiliary AVOIR or ÊTRE.

(Pages 391 to 394. Rules 433 to 438 inclusive.)

1. (Rule 434.) Where can your brother be? We had promised (reflect.) to meet here at one o'clock. He must have lost his way (*s'égarer*). 2. After having (Rule 378) fought for about half an hour, they had sat down to rest a little, when some one signalled a policeman, and they were obliged to decamp. 3. (Rule 435.) They sent for the doctor in all haste, but he could not get there before the morning. The poor fellow had died during the night. 4. After having (Rule 378) come from so far, it was a great nuisance (*tristesse*) to find no one at home. 5. When you have (Rule 342) arrived at that pitch of grandeur you will probably despise your old friends. 6. (Rule 436.) As soon as it has (Rule 341) ceased raining you can take this letter to the post for me. 7. When we arrived in India, the great rains had ceased. 8. You ought to know (how) to speak French, you have lived five years in Paris. 9. I amused myself immensely at my friends' house. I rode nearly every day. 10. My mother has not come down, because she has a slight headache; she says you are to have breakfast without waiting (Rule 378) (for) her. 11. (Rule 438.) We shall be late; the porter has not yet brought down half my things (*effets*), and the train starts in a quarter of an hour. 12. You ought not to have brought that horse out of the stable: I want him to have two or three days' rest.

As pages 395 to 438, Rules 439 to 567, contain matter concerning adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions, more suitable for reference than for exercises, no exercises will be given on those Rules.

EXERCISE LI.

Negatives, and especially NE.

(Pages 439 to 445. Rules 568 to 582 inclusive.)

Position of Negative Particles in a Sentence.

1. (Rule 574) *Je n'ai rien fait.* I have done nothing.
2. We cannot induce him to work.

Suppression of PAS or POINT.

3. (Rule 576.) We dare *not* foretell anything about (*de*) the weather. It has *not* ceased (pres.) raining since we have been here (pres.). 4. I *cannot* (cond. of *savoir*) conceive anything so stupid as his conduct. *Never mind!* It is no business of ours. 5. Is there anyone here present who is *not* of my opinion? 6. Why, what has become of you (turn: what have *you become*)? I have not seen you for a month. 7. I walked about in the wood for two or three hours without meeting a living soul. 8. I have been scolding (pres.) you for ten minutes, and you do *not* say a word in reply! 9. (Rule 577.) I have looked about (*chercher*) everywhere, and I have found neither letter nor parcel; I think you must have made some mistake. 10. (Rule 580.) I have been in Germany for about eighteen months, and have learnt a good deal of German, but I still write it much better than I speak it. 11. (Rule 581.) You are not more advanced than *I was* after a year's stay in the country.

EXERCISE LII.

Negatives—continued.

(Pages 445 to 448. Rules 583 to 593 inclusive.)

1. Well! I am off, unless you wish me to stay a little longer. 2. (Rule 584.) We can *never* have ten minutes' chat (*causer*) without his coming (Rule 376) to interrupt us. 3. I knew him to be a Frenchman, even before he opened his mouth.

Verbs of Fearing, Doubting, &c.

4. I was afraid lest the train should arrive late: we should have had (*il aurait fallu*) to spend the whole day in Paris. 5. (Rule 587.) Are you not afraid lest the house should catch fire (lest the fire should take (*prendre à*) the house)? There is nobody left to look after it. 6. I doubt not but that my successor will have much more talent and capacity than myself. 7. You may sit here in perfect security. I will take very good care (*empêcher*) that no one comes to disturb you. 8. I have even forbidden by an express law that anyone should dare to pronounce your name in my presence (*devant moi*). 9. (Rule 593.) I was very near giving him a box on the ear, he answered me so impertinently. 10. She is far from being as pretty as her mother (*il s'en faut beaucoup*).

MISCELLANEOUS VERSIONS,

WITH REFERENCES, WHERE NECESSARY, TO GRAMMAR RULES.

••• The numbers refer to Rules in the Syntax. Where reference is made to Part I. it will be specially so stated.

No. I.—THE HORSE-SHOE. (1.)

There was a *gentleman* who *was* extremely *fond of* beautiful horses, and did not *grudge* to give the highest prices for them. (Rule 221.) One day a horse-dealer *came to him*, and showed him (*en*) one so handsome, that he thought it superior to all he had ever seen before. He mounted him, and found his *paces* equally excellent; for, though he *was* (Rule 296) full of *spirit*, he was gentle and tractable *as* could be wished. So many perfections delighted the gentleman, and he eagerly demanded the price. The horse-dealer answered, that he would *abate* nothing of two hundred guineas; the gentleman, although he admired (Rule 296) the horse, would not consent to give it; and they were just on the point of *parting*. As the man was *turning his back*, the gentleman *called out to him*, and said, 'Is there no possible way of our agreeing? (Rule 378) for I would give you *anything in reason* for such a beautiful creature.'

A gentleman, not *gentilhomme*. To be fond of, *aimer*. To grudge, *hésiter*. Came to him, *vint le trouver*. Pace, *allure*. Spirit, not *esprit*. As, *autant que*. To abate, *rabattre*. To part, *se séparer*. To turn the back, *s'en aller*. Called out to him, *le rappela*. In reason = reasonable.

No. II.—THE HORSE-SHOE. (2.)

'*Why*,' replied the dealer, who was a *shrewd fellow*, and perfectly understood calculation, 'if you do not like to give

me two hundred guineas, will (Rule 344) you give me a farthing for the first nail* the horse has in his shoe, two farthings for the second, four for the third, and *so go doubling throughout the whole* (Rule 141) twenty-four? for there are no more than (Rule 487) twenty-four nails in all his shoes.' The gentleman gladly accepted the condition, and ordered the horse *to be led away* to his stables.

However, the horse-dealer added, 'I do not *mean*, Sir, to *tie you down* to this last proposal, which (Rule 271), upon consideration, *you may like* as little as the first; all that I require is, that, if you are dissatisfied *with* your bargain, you will promise to pay me down the two hundred guineas which I first asked' (Rule 395). *This* the gentleman willingly *agreed to*, and then called the steward to (Rule 526) calculate the sum, for he was *too much of a gentleman* to be able to do it himself.

Why, *voyons*. A shrewd fellow, *un rusé compère*. * Insert *which* after *nail*. And so, &c., *et ainsi de suite en doublant*. To be led away—turn, 'that one should put' (imp. subj. *mettre*). To mean, *avoir l'intention*. To tie down, *imposer*: omit *to*. You may like = 'may please you.' With, *de*. Agreed to this = 'accepted this condition.' Too much of a gentleman, *trop grand seigneur*.

No. III.—THE HORSE-SHOE. (3.)

The steward *sat down with* his (Rule 89) pen and ink, and after some time gravely *wished* his master *joy*, and asked him (dat.), 'in what part of England the estate was situated that he was going to purchase?' 'Are you mad?' *replied* the gentleman: 'it is not an estate, but a horse, that *I have just bargained for*; and here is the owner of him (Rule 86), to whom I am going to pay the money.' 'If there be any madness, Sir,' replied the steward, 'it certainly is not on my side: the sum you have ordered me to calculate *comes* just to seventeen thousand (Rule 162) four hundred (Rule 161) and seventy-six pounds, *besides* some shillings and pence: and surely no man *in his senses* would give this price for a horse.' The gentleman was very much surprised to hear the *assertion* of his steward; but when, upon examination, he found it *no more than* the truth, he was very glad to *compound for* his

Que, 282. With infinitives, 283. With the sense of *comment*, 284. Followed by *que*, 285. Peculiar uses of, 286. *Que* with subjunctive mood, 364

Quel, 133

Quelconque, 136

Quelle heure est-il? Quelle heure est-ce? 247

Quel que, 134. Mood governed by, 362

Quelque, adjective, 126-132, 362

Quelque, adverb, 128, 491. Mood governed by, 362

Quelquefois, 471

Quelque peu, 485

Quelqu'un, 315-317

Qui, absolute, 279. Peculiar uses of, 280. Used interrogatively, 281

Quiconque, 311-312

Qui que, mood governed by, 362

Qui que ce soit, 313

Quoi, 287. Relative, 288-291. Interrogative, 292-293. Interjectional, 294. Peculiar uses of, 294

Quoi que, 295-296. Mood governed by, 362

Quoi que ce soit, 314

Quoique. mood governed by, 362

R

Rajeunir, what auxiliary used with, 436

Rentrer, what auxiliary used with, 438

Résoudre, what mood followed by, 356

Rester, what auxiliary used with, 436. Impersonal, Part I. p. 60

Rien, indefinite pronoun or substantive, 318, 319. Without *ne*, 320. As substantive, 321. Peculiar signification of *rien*, 322

Rien moins que, 480

S

Sage, 103

Sans, peculiar meaning with *plus*, 529

Sans que, mood governed by, 361

Sauf, 530

Savoir, peculiar meaning of conditional of, 353. Suppression of *pas* with, 576

Se, 209-210. Dative and accusative, 211. Repetition of *se*, 211

Selon, 531

Semi, 76

Sept, 153

Seul, 103

Si, 452

Si ce n'est que, 363

Sinon que, mood governed by, 361

Si peu que, mood governed by, 361

Si — que, mood governed by, 362

Six, 152

Soi, 213-219. Employed with regard to persons, 214. Use in reference to an impersonal verb or infinitive, 215. *Lui* used for *soi*, 216. Used in reference to defined objects or persons, to give precision to the sentence, 217. Taken in a general sense, 218. Used in reference to plural of things, 219

Soi-même, 220

Soit que, mood governed by, 361

Son, sa, ses, leurs, 86-88

Sonner, 436

Sortir, 436, 438

Soudain, 492

Sous, 532

Souvent, 493

Subject. Two subjects joined by *ou*, in what number to put the verb, 424-425. Two subjects joined by *ni*, 426

Subjunctive Mood, 356-370. With verbs which require sometimes the subjunctive, sometimes the indicative, and with impersonal verbs, 356-359. In interjectional and ejaculatory sentences, 360. With conjunctions, &c., 361-365. With *qui que*, *quel que*, &c., 362. With *que*, 364. With *tout que*, 365. With relative pronouns, preceded by a negative or

relative, 366-368. Rule of action, 369-370
intives, collective, require verb singular or plural number, 427-

sé, 76
ser, 357

T

is, 494
 452. *Tant soit peu*, 485
t, 495
tôt ou tard, 496
 37. *Tel quel*, 138
urs, 497
 139-147
tout à coup, *tout d'un coup*,
t de suite, 498
fois, 471. *Toutes les fois*, 471
que, mood governed by, 365
ler, use of *ne* with, 585
 499
 149
de trop, *par trop*, 500
ement, 204

U

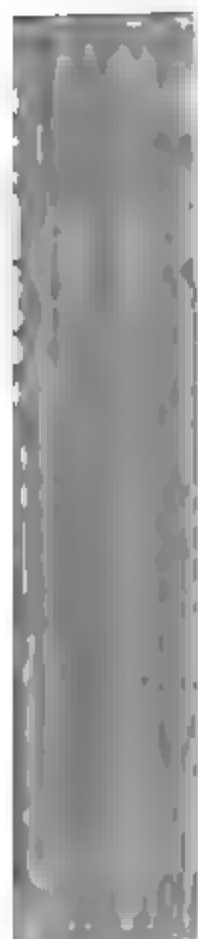
ne, article indefinite, 19
ie, 103
u, idiomatic and familiar, 485

V

Valu, 416
Verb, 323-438. Active, conjugated with *avoir*, 324. Active, conjugated with *être*, 325. Indicative mood, present tense, 326-331. Imperfect tense, 332. The preterite, 333-336. The compound tense, 337-339. Future, 340-345. The conditional, 346-355. Subjunctive mood, 356-370. Infinitive mood, 371-382. Present participle, 383-389. Past participle, 390-417
Verbal Adjective, 384-389
Vers, 535
Vieillir, with what auxiliary used, 436
Vilain, 103
Vingt, 159
Voici and *voilà* compared, 536
Vu, 76

Y

Y, pronoun. Employed instead of *à lui*, *à elle*, *à eux*, *à elles*, 225. Employed in speaking of persons in a general sense, 226. Employed to avoid repetition of pronouns, 227. Meaning *thither*, *there*, *in it*, 228. Idiomatic uses of *y*, 229



CRITICAL OPINIONS of this VOLUME.

‘ An excellent school-book.’—ATHENÆUM.

From LA PRESSE, *Paris Newspaper*, September 4, 1868:—

‘ Nous avons sous les yeux une nouvelle grammaire française pour les Anglais, portant ce titre : *Eton French Grammar and Exercise Book*, par M. TARVER, Professeur de Français au Collège d’Eton.

‘ C’est un petit livre, imprimé avec le soin que les Anglais savent apporter jusque dans leurs modestes éditions classiques, et qui a déjà le mérite, essentiel dans une grammaire, d’être court, puisqu’il ne contient pas 196 pages in-18.

‘ Ce n’est, il est vrai, qu’une première partie, mais elle contient les noms, les adjectifs, les pronoms, les verbes, les adverbes, les prépositions, les conjonctions, les interjections, c’est-à-dire les mots mêmes qui constituent les différentes parties du discours dans toute espèce de langue. L’Auteur y donne une étude spéciale et approfondie sur les verbes, et particulièrement sur les verbes irréguliers.

‘ Ce qui nous a frappé dans cette GRAMMAIRE, c’est, après la clarté, la netteté et l’exactitude des définitions, le soin intelligent avec lequel l’Auteur, analysant les différentes parties du discours, suit et indique l’emploi de ces parties et la forme variée qu’elles revêtent selon le génie des deux langues.’

APPROVED FRENCH SCHOOL-BOOKS,

By **LÉON CONTANSEAU**,

Many Years French Examiner for Military and Civil Appointments.

A NEW PRACTICAL DICTIONARY

OF THE

FRENCH AND ENGLISH LANGUAGES,
IN TWO PARTS:

FRENCH AND ENGLISH — ENGLISH AND FRENCH.

Containing the following improvements:

1. New Words in general use in each Language not to be found in other Dictionaries.—2. Compound Words not translated literally.—3. Prepositions annexed to the French Verbs and Adjectives, shewing what Case they govern.—4. Acceptations of the Words separated by Figures, with *directions* as to the proper Word.—5. Examples of the most familiar Idioms and Phrases.—6. The principal Tenses of all Irregular Verbs.

New Edition. In 1 vol. post 8vo. pp. 970, price 10s. 6d. bd.

or, PART I. *French and English*, price 5s. 6d. cloth.

PART II. *English and French*, price 5s. 6d. cloth.

OPINION OF VICE-CHANCELLOR SIR W. P. WOOD.

(*Judgment given in favour of M. CONTANSEAU in
SPIERS versus BROWN.*)

The learned judge, after having put aside Dr. Spiers' School Dictionary as not to be compared with *M. Contanseau's Practical French Dictionary*, says:—'Mr. Contanseau has produced an entirely different work from that of the plaintiff, and *unquestionably a most valuable and ingenious practical work.*'

'A close examination of this volume leads us to prefer it for all practical purposes to any similar work we have ever met with.....We can conscientiously recommend this volume as the best for practical tuition, and for purposes of general reference, that has ever fallen under our notice. We do not doubt that the care and intelligence bestowed by Mr. Contanseau on its preparation will be amply repaid by the standard reputation it must attain.'—PRESS.

'This is a work which deserves high commendation, and is very far from being a mere compilation, which is the prevailing defect of all text-books. It is now the best French Dictionary.'

JOURNAL OF EDUCATION.

'The plan is admirable, and the execution worthy of the plan.'

ATHENÆUM.

London: LONGMANS and CO.

A POCKET DICTIONARY
OF THE
FRENCH AND ENGLISH LANGUAGES;
BEING A

CAREFUL ABRIDGMENT OF THE AUTHOR'S
PRACTICAL FRENCH AND ENGLISH DICTIONARY,

Preserving all the most useful features of the Original Work
condensed into a much smaller Volume.

New and Revised Edition. Pocket size, 3s. 6d.

Of these two works the larger or *PRACTICAL DICTIONARY*, intended mainly for the use of schools, contains a more full vocabulary, together with many phrases and idioms which are necessarily excluded from the plan of a pocket volume. The *POCKET DICTIONARY*, adapted for beginners, tourists, and travellers, aims at the utmost conciseness of definition, while it still retains for general use the features of accuracy, completeness, and orderly arrangement to which the immediate and enduring success of the *Practical Dictionary* is fairly attributable.

A FRENCH GRAMMAR,
IN TWO PARTS:
I. ACCIDENCE. II. SYNTAX.

With Vocabularies, Conversational Lessons, and copious Exercises
both in French and English, with Foot-notes, forming
a simple course of French Instruction.

New Edition. 12mo. price 4s. bound.

'The number of modern French Grammars is legion, and their character is, very few good, most of them bad, and a considerable portion indifferent. Mr. Contanseau's must be reckoned as amongst the very best of the first category, since it is not only elaborate, but also simple, the author's aim being not to puzzle and bewilder, but to make the road to the acquirement of a most difficult foreign language as easy as possible.'—*BELL'S WEEKLY MESSENGER.*

'We know no other book of the kind which conveys the instructions required so concisely, so emphatically, and so judiciously.'

CIVIL SERVICE GAZETTE.

London: LONGMANS and CO.

THE FIRST STEP IN FRENCH:

OR,

AN EASY METHOD OF LEARNING THE ELEMENTS OF
THE FRENCH LANGUAGE,

Containing :—1. A Vocabulary of Useful Words intended for Exercises in Pronunciation.—2. A few simple Rules of Grammar.—3. Easy Exercises, both in French and English.—4. A selection of easy and entertaining Pieces in French for Reading and Translation.

New Edition. 12mo. price 2s. 6d. bound.

‘There exists no better Elementary Guide within our knowledge.’

SPECTATOR

‘It is a long time since we have seen such an encouraging introduction to a foreign tongue.’—JOHN BULL.

‘The whole arranged and executed in masterly style.’—ATHENÆUM

KEY TO FIRST STEP AND GRAMMAR, New Edition, 3s.

PREMIÈRES LECTURES :

BEING A SELECTION OF INSTRUCTIVE AND ENTERTAINING
STORIES IN FRENCH, AND EASY POETRY.

With English Notes.

New Edition. 12mo. price 2s. 6d. bound.

A GUIDE TO FRENCH TRANSLATION:

BEING A SELECTION OF

INSTRUCTIVE AND ENTERTAINING ENGLISH EXTRACTS.

With Notes to assist in the Translation,
and to exhibit a Comparison of French and English Idioms.

New Edition. 12mo. price 3s. 6d. bound.

KEY TO THE GUIDE TO FRENCH TRANSLATION.

New Edition. 12mo. price 3s. 6d. bound.

‘This is one of the very best books of the class to which it belongs that we have ever met with.’—BELL'S WEEKLY MESSENGER.

‘These are two exceedingly valuable manuals on the art of French translation, which cannot fail to have an extensive and permanent

London: LONGMANS and CO.

circulation. The former book consists of a tasteful and appropriate selection of *morceaux* from the works of some of the most celebrated French and English authors, arranged progressively.....The various exercises are judiciously divided into chapters, each chapter containing a complete subject in history, biography, or travel; and in translating the English exercises into French the student is greatly assisted by copious foot-notes.'—SCOTTISH PRESS.

ABRÉGÉ DE L'HISTOIRE DE FRANCE,

FROM

THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE YEAR 1860.

Compiled from the works of Guizot, Sismondi, De Barante, Thiers, Michelet, &c. expressly for the use of Schools and Students graduating for *Examinations*.

New Edition. 12mo. price 3s. 6d. bound.

'An admirable class-book of French history, deducing the course of events from the Gauls down to the present period, and useful alike in our English schools both for French and historical exercises.'

CRITIC.

'Mr. CONTANSEAU's volume is adapted particularly to schools and students graduating for examinations. The author's great experience as a popular instructor and examiner for military and civil appointments has availed him well in the compilation of this work, which, taking up French history from the earliest time to the present year, constitutes a perfect analysis of the subject, written with the most conscientious desire of truth, in the best taste, and with striking impartiality, while the style in which the book is penned is as pure in language as its accuracy of statement and attention to chronology are commendable.'

JOHN BULL.

PROSATEURS ET POÈTES FRANÇAIS;

OR,

SELECTIONS FROM THE BEST FRENCH AUTHORS.

WITH AN INTRODUCTION OF EASY PIECES.

Arranged in Chronological Order, from the Age of Louis XIV. to the Present Day, with Biographical Sketches.

New Edition. 12mo. pp. 640, price 6s. 6d. bound.

'Le recueil que M. LÉON CONTANSEAU, professeur de littérature française au Collège Militaire d'Addiscombe, vient d'offrir au public, sous le titre de *Prosateurs et Poètes Français*, est, nous n'hésitons pas à le dire,

London: LONGMANS and CO.

ce qui a été publié de mieux. Le choix des morceaux, dont le plus grand nombre appartient à nos auteurs modernes, est des plus heureux, et nous ne pouvons que recommander cet excellent volume à la jeunesse des écoles d'Angleterre.'

COURRIER DE L'EUROPE.

'Mr. Contanseau's *Prosateurs et Poètes Français* is, in our opinion, the best and most attractive compilation that has ever made its appearance in this country.'

MORNING ADVERTISER.

PRÉCIS DE LA LITTÉRATURE FRANÇAISE:

DEPUIS SON ORIGINE JUSQU'À NOS JOURS.

Compiled expressly for the use of Schools and Students
Graduating for *Examinations*.

New Edition. 12mo. price 3s. 6d. bound.

'This *Précis* will at once command many admirers. . . . In these days of competitive examinations, the present well-digested *tome* will be found of immense value to the student. But we sincerely commend the work to the general reader as one of much interest. The specimens of literature presented have been selected with the finest taste and the soundest judgment. . . . For those who are fond of snatches at French literature, Mr. Contanseau's last work will be much prized—gems are presented without the trouble of selecting them.'

MORNING ADVERTISER.

'The utility of this work cannot fail to strike anyone who looks carefully into it. The matter is copious, and selected with great judgment, and the method employed in arranging it is excellent. We have here in a compact volume a real history of French authors and their works, from the earliest period to the present time; the biographical notices and general remarks on style, choice of subjects, and influence on society, being well calculated to give the reader a fair impression of the merits of each author, and of the place he holds in the republic of letters.'—CIVIL SERVICE GAZETTE.

* * The above Series of Works form a complete Course of Modern French for Students in Schools and Colleges, and carefully adapted for use in Young Ladies' Schools.

London: LONGMANS and CO.

CONTANSEAU'S APPROVED FRENCH SCHOOL-BOOKS, FORMERLY

A COMPLETE COURSE OF MODERN FRENCH.

Latest Corrected Editions now on sale :—

NEW PRACTICAL DICTIONARY of the **FRENCH** and **ENGLISH** LANGUAGES. By **LEON CONTANSEAU**, many years French Examiner for Military and Civil Appointments. Post 8vo. price 10s. 6d.

PART I. *French-English*, price 5s. 6d. **PART II.** *English-French*, price 5s. 6d.

A POCKET DICTIONARY of the **FRENCH** and **ENGLISH** LANGUAGES; being a careful Abridgment of the Author's *Practical French and English Dictionary*, preserving all the most useful features of the original work condensed into a much smaller Volume. New and Revised Edition. Pocket size, 3s. 6d.

OF these two works the larger or **PRACTICAL DICTIONARY**, intended mainly for the use of schools, contains a more full vocabulary, together with many phrases and idioms which are necessarily excluded from the plan of a pocket volume. The **POCKET DICTIONARY**, adapted for beginners, tourists,

and travellers, aims at the utmost conciseness of definition, while it still retains for general use the features of accuracy, completeness, and orderly arrangement to which the immediate and enduring success of the *Practical Dictionary* is fairly attributable.

THE FIRST STEP in **FRENCH**: an Easy Method of Learning the Elements of the Language: 1. Vocabulary of Words intended for Exercise in Pronunciation; 2. A Few Simple Rules of Grammar; 3. **Easy Exercises** in French and English, with Conversations on Ordinary Topics; 4. Selection of Easy and Entertaining Pieces in French, for Reading and Translation. Revised Edition, price 2s. 6d. **KEY**, 3s.

PREMIERES LECTURES: a Selection of Instructive and Entertaining Stories from the best French Authors who have written for the Young, with English Notes, followed by a few Easy Poetical Pieces suitable to be committed to Memory. Revised Edition 12mo. 2s. 6d.

MODERN FRENCH GRAMMAR: comprising Vocabularies, Conversational Lessons, and copious Exercises composed from the best Authors of the Present Day. With Hints for the English Pupil in brief Grammatical Footnotes. New Edition, remodelled and enlarged Price 4s. **KEY**, 3s.

GUIDE to **FRENCH TRANSLATION**; being a Selection of Instructive and Entertaining English Extracts, with Hints for their Translation into French; adapted to exhibit a Comparison between the French and English Idioms. Eleventh Edition, price 3s. 6d. **KEY**, being a close French Translation, price 3s. 6d.

PROSATEURS et **POÈTES FRANÇAIS**; or, Selections from the best French Authors, arranged in Chronological Order, from the Age of Louis XIV. to the Present Day: with Biographical Sketches, and an Introduction of Easy Pieces. Ninth Edition. Price 6s. 6d.

PRÉCIS de la **LITTÉRATURE FRANÇAISE**, depuis son Origine jusqu'à nos Jours. Compiled expressly for the use of Schools and Students graduating for the Competitive and other Examinations. Second Edition. Price 3s. 6d.

ABRÉGÉ de l'**HISTOIRE** de **FRANCE**, from the Earliest Times to the Year 1860. Compiled from the Works of Guizot, Sismondi, De Barante, Thiers, Michelet, &c. for the use of Schools and Students Price 3s. 6d.

* * The above Series of Works form a complete Course of Modern French for Students in Schools and Colleges, and carefully adapted for use in Young Ladies' Schools.

London

ernoster Row.

